الصف الثانى الثانوى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

New Hello!

& King Lear

By A Group Of Supervisors





معاك
MaƷak App
تطبيق
التعلُم التفاعلى



2nd Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

MODULE 1 Health and Safety

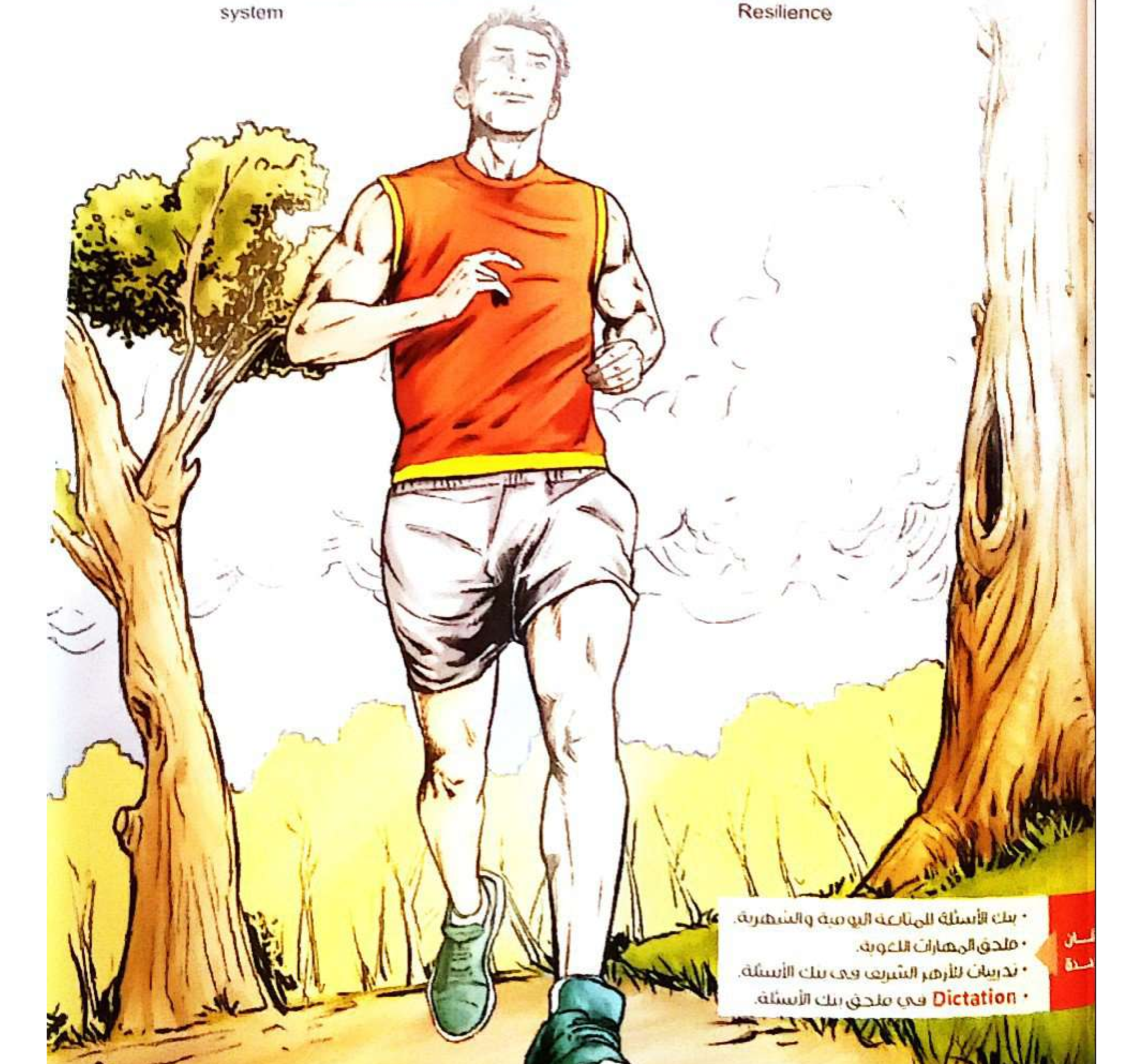
MODULE 2 Making connections

UNIT 1 Staying healthy

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 2 : 7

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :**
  A poster about how to perform first aid
- **Writing :**
  A persuasive email to a friend
- **Listening :**
  A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system
- **Speaking :**
  Suggesting solutions to problems. Persuading
- **Language :**
  Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
- **Life skills :**
  Resilience



- بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
- ملحق المهارات اللغوية.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة.
- **Dictation** في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 6 : 9 WB pages 2 & 3

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

act(ed) (v)	يتصرَّف/يسلك - تَصَرُّف/ سلوك
action (n)	القيام بشىء - تَصَرُّف - حَدَث
react(ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتصرف بناء على
reaction (n)	استجابة - رد فعل
allow(ed) (v)	يدع / يترك - يسمح
allowance(n)	سماح - علاوة
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	الإنعاش القلبى الرئوى
guide(d) (v/n)	يُرشِد - مُرشِد
guidance(n)	إرشاد
infect(ed) (v)	يُصيب بعدوى - يلتهب
infection(n)	عدوى - مرض مُعدِى
infectious(adj)	مُعدِى - مسبب للعدوى
operate(d) (v)	يُشغِّل - يجرى جراحة
operation(n)	تشغيل - عملية جراحية
perform(ed) (v)	يقوم بـ - يؤدى
performance (n)	أداء -عرض
resilience(n)	المُرُونَة - اللين
severe(adj)	شديد - حادّ
technique(n)	أسلوب / تِقْنِيَّة

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

active(adj)	نشيط
ambulance(n)	عربة إسعاف
athlete(n)	رياضيّ - لاعب ألعاب القوى
athletic(adj)	المركز الرياضى
AHC = Athletic Heart Centre	للقلب
available(adj)	مُتاح - متوافر
bandage(n)	ضمادة
base(n)	قاعدة - أساس
bleed - bled - bled (v)	ينزف
bone(n)	عظمة
breathing(n)	التنفس
flat(adj)	مُستو - مُسطح
fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ
immediately(adv)	في الحال / فوراً
injure(d) (v)	يصيب- يؤذى
injured(adj)	مُصاب
injury(n)	إصابة
instructions(n)	أوامر / تعليمات
lock(ed) (v/n)	يقفل - يشبُك - قفل
major(adj)	رئيسي - كبير
medical(adj)	طبيّ
normal(adj)	طَبيعى - عاقل
pioneer(n)	رائد

centre(n)	منتصف - وسط
check(ed) (v)	يفحص
chest(n)	الصدر
collaboration(n)	تعاون
competition(n)	مسابقة - منافسة
damage(d) (v/n)	يصيب- يؤذى - تَلَف
details(n)	تفاصيل
disease(n)	مَرَض
educate(d) (v)	يُعلِّم
else (adv)	أيضاً - آخَر
emergency(n)	الطوارئ
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجِّع - يُحفِّز
examination(n)	فحص - امتحان
executive (n)	تنفيذى
expert (n - adj)	خبير
first aid (kit)	(صندوق) الإسعافات الأولية

place(d) (v)	يضع - مكان
press(ed) (v)	يضغط
producer(n)	مُنتِج
respond(ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتجاوب
responsibility(n)	مسئولية
rise - rose - risen (v)	يرتفع
sign(n)	علامة - إشارة
sudden(adj)	مفاجئ
survive(d) (v)	ينجو - يبقي حياً
technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
tight(adj)	مشدود - ضيق
train(ed) (v)	يتدرب - يُدَرِّب
trophy(n)	البطولة / التتويج الرياضي - كأس
wrap(ped) (v)	يغلف

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلُّم المُستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise		Understand
perform(ed) (v)	يقوم بـ	to do an action
infection(n)	مرض مُعدي	a disease caused by a virus or bacteria
react(ed) (v)	يستجيب	to do something because something else has been done
severe(adj)	شديد - حادّ	(of a disease) very serious خطير
technique(n)	أُسْلُوب / تِقْنِيَّة	a way of doing something with a skill

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. Some patients don't .... well to antibiotics. (أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)

a. retrain b. refresh c. react d. recycle

2. Vaccination التطعيم is essential to protect people exposed to COVID 19 ....
   a. affection b. infection c. reflection d. effect

(القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)

3. Archaeologists now use modern .... such as ultrasonic rays.
   a. tricks b. magics c. techniques d. designs

(ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)

4. Don't be strict صارم/حازم all the time, You need some .... to be able to adapt to different situations. (احمد موافى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. resilience b. resilient c. sick d. sickness

5. Doctors do their best to fight .... diseases. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. infectious b. suspicious c. vulgar d. fabulous

6. He was taken to a bigger hospital as his injury was ....
   a. tiny b. danger c. severe d. infection

(اسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

7. COVID-19 does ....
   a. allow b. operate c. lock d. infect

8. .... is short for اختصار لـ cardiopulmonary resuscitation.
   a. CDR b. CRD c. CPR d. CBR

9. My father does not .... any of us to return home late at night.
   a. allow b. operate c. lock d. infect

10. It is necessary to know how to .... CPR in case you should help in an emergency. حالة طوارئ
    a. perform b. make c. allow d. guide

11. You need much more training to improve your ....
    a. guide b. expert c. infection d. performance

12. As a foreigner غريب in Egypt, I need someone to .... me.
    a. cause b. guide c. publish d. develop

13. He gets a / an .... of 2000 pounds a month.
    a. allowance b. athlete c. persuasion d. a & c

14. Young people need .... They do not have enough experience in life.
    a. operation b. performance c. guidance d. a & b

15. Dr Magdy Yacoub used to .... on people with heart problems.
    a. allow b. operate c. infect d. affect

16. CPR stands for cardiopulmonary ....
    a. rescue b. repetition c. reaction d. resuscitation

17. I did not expect his violent عنيف .... to my comment.
    a. reaction b. disease c. first aid d. base

18. I did not attack him. I .... in self-defence. دفاع عن النفس
   a. educated b. acted c. allowed d. guided

2 Important vocabulary

19. Several Olympic .... were accused of مُتّهم بـ taking performance enhancing drugs. منشطات (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
   a. athletes b. athletics c. athletic d. doers

20. All citizens must work hard to achieve progress in .... with the government. (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
   a. collection b. collaboration c. civilization d. innovation

21. Of the six people injured in the crash, only two .... (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. survived b. served c. existed d. ate out

22. I don't believe what you have said about the competition. You should .... your sources. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. check b. shake c. shock d. chink

23. .... is short for Athletic Heart Center. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
   a. CPR b. AHC c. ARE d. URL

24. You should read the .... before using a new electrical set. جهاز
   a. inspections b. infections c. instructions d. symptoms
   (إسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

25. To stop the bleeding, نزيف .... a bandage firmly around the injured limb.
   a. chop b. peel c. remove d. wrap
   (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

26. The engine of this car needs careful ....
   a. solution b. safety c. examination d. technology

27. You can talk to the .... director. He is the one in charge المسئول here.
   a. locked b. immediate c. tight d. executive

28. It is necessary for a football pitch ملعب to be .... with no slopes. ميل
   a. flat b. fat c. fit d. float

29. You need to put a / an .... on the cut to stop the bleeding.
   a. injury b. bandage c. allowance d. muscle

30. Your headache will surely .... to this strong painkiller. مُسكِّن
   a. press b. act c. rise d. respond

31. The ambulance took the .... man to the nearest hospital.
   a. health b. healthy c. injured d. injuring

32. When the lungs are infected, ... becomes very difficult.
   a. breathing b. allowing c. bleeding d. wrapping

33. The club's cupboard is full of ....
 a. sicknesses b. shoulders c. injuries d. trophies
34. The police launched شن a / an .... attack on the terrorists إرهابيين which were not prepared.
 a. abroad b. ill c. sudden d. suddenly
35. Use the fire exit مَخرَج الحريق in case of ....
 a. allowance b. emergency c. guidance d. hygiene
36. After the accident, I saw a man ....
 a. blood b. bleed c. bleeding d. b & c
37. Your heart and lungs are in your ....
 a. shoulder b. chest c. head d. back
38. Prices .... as a result of the Russian attack on Ukraine.
 a. pressed b. acted c. rose d. responded
39. Naguib Mahfouz was a real .... He was the first Arab writer to write great novels.
 a. pioneer b. follower c. athlete d. performer
40. I asked you to .... the vase carefully on the table. Why did you drop it?
 a. bleed b. place c. press d. lie
41. .... the door before you go to bed.
 a. Allow b. Operate c. Lock d. Infect
42. There's a deep cave at the .... of the mountain.
 a. reaction b. disease c. first aid d. base
43. .... the red button to turn on the machine.
 a. Press b. Act c. Rise d. Respond

3 Definitions

44. To .... is to do an action. (احمد موافى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. infect b. boost c. perform d. react
45. To .... is to do something because something else has been done.
 a. perform b. react c. act d. operate
46. When an illness or injury is very serious, we say it is ....
 a. immune b. severe c. available d. medical
47. A / An .... is a way of doing something with a skill.
 a. technique b. organ c. immune system d. cell
48. A / An .... is a disease caused by a virus or bacteria.
 a. infection b. operation c. virus d. guidance



Part II Vocabulary Study

تلويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

call	the emergency services يتصل بخدمات الطوارئ	**have**	a healthy heart لديه قلب سليم
cause	a disease يسبب مرض		a responsibility لديه مسئولية
develop	your skills تنمى مهاراتك		good hygiene يتبع قواعد النظافة الجيدة
do	an action يتصرَّف - يتخذ إجراء		severe injuries لديه إصابات بالغة
	a sport يمارس رياضة	**make**	sure يتأكد
do / perform	a job يؤدى مهمة عمل	**miss**	the chance يُضَيِّع الفرصة
	CPR يقوم بالإنعاش القلبى الرئوى	**pass**	an exam يجتاز امتحان
	first aid يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية	**stay**	safe يبقى بأمان
get	an infection يُصاب بمرض مُعدِى	**suggest**	solutions to يقترح حلول لـ
give	infection يعدى - يصيب بعدوى		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
collaboration	تعاون	partnership, cooperation
disease	مَرَض	illness
follow	يتَّبع	obey, carry out
guide	يُرشِد - ينصح	direct, advise
normal	طبيعى - مألوف	usual, regular, ordinary, average
normal	عاقل - سوى	sane, rational
perform	يقوم بـ - يؤدى	act, take action, carry out
react	يستجيب	respond
severe	شديد - حادّ	acute, serious, grave, dangerous, profound
severe	عنيف - قوى	fierce, violent, strong

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
disease/illness	مَرَض	health, well-being	الصحة
encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	discourage ... from	يثني ... عن
follow	يتّبع	break, disobey	يخالف
guide	يُرشِد - ينصح	mislead, misguide	يضلل
lock	يشبك - يقفل	unlock	يفتح - يفك
move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من	move away from	يبتعد عن
normal	طبيعي - مألوف	abnormal, unusual	غير طبيعي - غير مألوف
normal	عاقل - سوى	insane, irrational	غير عاقل - معتوه
react	يستجيب	cease	يمتنع/يتوقف
severe	عنيف - قوى	gentle, mild	لطيف - معتدل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

infect		
infect (ed)(v)	يعدى - يلتهب	- Coronavirus patients can infect others.
infection (n)	عدوى - مرض مُعْدِى	- Coronavirus patients can give others the infection.
infectious (adj)	مُعْدِى - مسبب للعدوى	- Coronavirus disease is infectious.
infected (adj)	مُلتهب - مُصاب بالعدوى	- He is well. He is no longer infected.
Perform		
perform (ed)(v)	يقوم بـ - يؤدى	- I can perform CPR.
performance (n)	أداء -عرْض	- The performance of CPR needs skill.
performer (n)	مُؤدِّى - مُمثِّل	- He is a good performer.
react		
react (ed)(v)	يستجيب - يتصرف	- She reacted angrily to my suggestion.
reaction (n)	استجابة - رد الفعل	- She showed an angry reaction to my suggestion.
reactor (n)	مُفاعِل	- Nuclear reactors المفاعلات النووية are dangerous to people's health.

reactionary (adj)	مُتحفِّظ	- He is a reactionary person who refuses any change.
	severe	
severity (n)	شِدَّة - حِدَّة	- I didn't expect the severity of her reaction.
severe (adj)	شديد - حادّ	- I didn't expect her severe reaction.
severely (adv)	بشدة - بحدة	- I didn't expect she would react severely.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

be right to	يكون محقاً فى	normal breathing	التنفس الطبيعى
become a pioneer in	يصبح رائدًا فى	on a flat surface	على سطح مستوٍ
call for help	يطلب المساعدة	on top of	فوق
check every detail	يتحقق من كل جزئية	react quickly	يتصرف بسرعة
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ	send blood around	يضخ الدم خلال
explanation of / for	تفسير / توضيح لـ	severe injury	إصابة شديدة
follow the instructions for	يتّبع التعليمات الخاصة بـ	small enough to	صغير بما يكفى لكى
in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة	stay fit	يظل لائقًا بدنيًا
keep the heart strong	يحافظ على القلب بصحة جيدة	sudden death	الموت المفاجئ
		take up a sport	يبدأ ممارسة رياضة
		medical support for	الدعم الصحى لـ

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

allow ... to	يدع / يترك / يسمح لـ ... أن	look around	يبحث فى المكان المحيط
care about	يهتم بـ	place ... on	يضع ... على
disagree about	يختلف على	press down	يضغط لأسفل
forget about	ينسى أمر	pull ... out	يرفع - ينزع / يخلع
forget to	ينسى أن	rise up	يرتفع - يعلو
get into	يدخل إلى	seem to	يبدو أن
get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)	take up	يقبل القيام بـ - يبدأ ممارسة ...

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

athlete - athletic - athletics

- **athlete (n)** رياضىّ (أسم يطلق على ممارسى الرياضة خاصة فى ألعاب القوى)
  - Runners, swimmers and cyclers are athletes.

• **athletic (adj)** رياضيّ (صفة للأشخاص أو الأشياء)

- Our athletic champions won three gold medals.

• **athletics (adj)** ألعاب القوى

- Running, swimming and cycling are athletics.

breathe - breath

• **breathe (d) (v)** يتنفس

- The performance of CPR helped the injured man breathe normally.

• **breath (n)** النَّفَس

- It is normal for your breath to be warm.

encourage - discourage

• **encourage + object مفعول to + inf.** يشجع شخص علي القيام بشيء

- His mother encourages him to do a sport to keep fit.

• **encourage + (inf. + ing) / n.** يشجع علي

- The government encourages starting private businesses.

• **discourage + object مفعول from + (inf. + ing)** يُثْني ... عن / يصرف ... عن

- I discourage Rodayna from listening to bad songs.

infection - illness - disease - sickness

• **infection (n)** عدوي / مرض (ناتج عن الفيروسات والبكتيريا)

- Smallpox الجدرى and COVID- 19 are dangerous infections.

• **illness (n)** مرض / إعياء (خلل بالجسد أو العقل)

- She suffers from a serious illness.

• **disease (n)** مرض (من نوع معين مثل الانفلونزا أو السرطان ...)

- Flu is a common disease in winter.

• **sickness (n)** إعياء (يمنع من القيام بالعمل مثلا)

- My sickness stopped me from going to school.

raise - rise

• **raise(d)(v) + مفعول** يرفع- يجمع مال - يُربّي - يطرح موضوع أو سؤال

- Wars raise prices. ترفع

- This charity raises money for the poor. تجمع مال
- Parents work hard to raise their children. يُربي
- Sama raised an important question during the lecture. طرحت

- **rise (rose - risen) (v)** (بدون مفعول) يرتفع - يزداد - تُشرِق - ينهض
  - Prices rise during wars. ترتفع / تزداد
  - The sun rose and warmed the area. أشرقت
  - I rose to welcome my guests. نهضت

sign - signal

- **sign (n)** لافتة (يافطة)
  - You can know the distance from road signs.
- **signal (n)** إشارة (تردد موجات الراديو والهاتف المحمول ...)
  - There is no signal in this remote area.
- **sign/signal (n)** إشارة/علامة (على شيء /بداية شيء/نهاية شيء ...)
  - He paid some of the price in advance مقدماً as a sign (=signal) of readiness. الجاهزية/الاستعداد.

technique - method - way - means

- **technique (of / for) (n)** تقنية (تحتاج مهارة ويجب أن يتم تَعَلُّمها والتَدَرُّب عليها)
  - Try to use a different technique to solve the problem.
- **method (of / for) (n)** طريقة (أسلوب شائع ومتعارف عليه للقيام بالأشياء)
  - This shop allows different methods of payment.الدفع
- **way (n)** طريقة / كيفية القيام بالأشياء
  - I like the way she talks to little children.
- **means (n)** وسيلة / وسائل / أداة (تستخدم كأسم مفرد أو جمع بنفس الشكل)
  - The underground is the best means of transport in Cairo.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. You mustn't .... CPR unless the person is lying on his/ her back.

   a. do b. open c. make d. carry e. perform

2. When there's a pandemic, جائحة you may .... an infection.
a. do b. get c. suggest d. give e. make

3. You can do ....
a. a sport b. sure c. an action d. safe e. the chance

4. "Coronavirus is a severe disease." In this sentence, 'severe' is antonymous with ....
a. gentle b. serious c. mild d. tired e. acute

5. "From her behaviour, it is clear that she is not normal." The word "normal" here can be replaced by ....
a. sane b. insane c. irrational d. unusual e. rational

6. "You are obliged to follow the law." In this sentence, 'follow' is the antonym of ....
a. carry out b. boost c. obey d. break e. disobey

● ✪ MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It's necessary to know how to .... First Aid. (القاهرة - ام كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. perform c. suggest d. a & b
2. Experts are asked to .... solutions to the problems the society faces.
   a. do b. perform c. suggest d. a & b
3. You need to .... a good hygiene in order to keep healthy.
   a. have b. do c. make d. call
4. If you want to succeed in life, never .... any chance to learn.
   a. miss b. get c. a & b d. cause
5. Bacteria and viruses .... a lot of infections.
   a. miss b. take c. a & b d. cause
6. '.............' is to mild as 'irrational' is to 'normal'.
   a. Gentle b. Severe c. Unusual d. Abnormal
7. She encouraged me to save my money. She .... me from buying unnecessary things.
   a. wanted b. supported c. discouraged d. forced
8. **A**: Do you want to move it .... the wall ? **B**: No, move it closer.
   a. nearer to b. away from c. a & b d. towards

9. If your child wants to take .... a new sport, a doctor must check his heart pulse first. (... ٢٠٢٣)

a. in b. up c. out d. off

10. A : Is your offer still available ? **B**: Forget .... it. I've changed my mind.

a. to b. from c. about d. to

11. She follows the instructions .... driving a car carefully.

a. for b. to c. from d. on

12. You .... to leave this job. It is boring.

a. right b. are right c. have right d. b & c

13. The clever paramedic succeeded in the .... of CPR and the man started to breathe normally.

a. perform b. performance c. performer d. performed

14. You don't realise the .... of the weather in Canada in winter.

a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity

15. Be careful or you will be .... with smallpox.

a. infect b. infection c. infectious d. infected

16. I don't know what his .... to my suggestion will be like.

a. immune b. immunity c. react d. reaction

17. Children need .... from their parents.

a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity

18. Children need their parents to .... them.

a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity

19. There was a big .... above the entrance of the metro station.

a. sight b. signal c. sign d. mark

(بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

20. The plane is the fastest .... of transport.

a. approach b. method c. technique d. means

21. I tried to .... her to take that decision.

a. encourage b. discourage c. boast d. infect

22. I tried to .... her from taking that decision.

a. encourage b. discourage c. boost d. infect

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Text

How to Perform First Aid كيف تقوم بالإسعافات الأولية

(SB page 7)


step (1)


step (2)


step (3)

❶ If you find an ill or injured[1] person, you must check[2] the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to[3] the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she seem[4] to be very ill? Does he/she have severe[5] injuries[6]?

❷ If the person is awake[7] but not bleeding[8], you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for signs [9] of injury or infection [10]. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

❸ If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her shoulder[11] or foot and shout to see if he/she reacts[12], and remember to check for normal[13] breathing[14].

❹ If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency[15] services[16] immediately[17] (123).

❺ If you know how to perform[18] CPR,[19] you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying[20] on his/her back[21] on a flat[22] surface such as the floor.

❻ Place[23] your hand on the centre[24] of the person's chest[25]. Put your other hand on top of[26] the first hand and lock[27] your fingers together[28]. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

❼ You don't have to press[29] down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on his/her chest and allow[30] it to rise up[31] again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times[32] a minute until the person starts breathing again.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُصاب
(2) يفحص
(3) يدنو من
(4) يبدو
(5) شديد
(6) إصابات
(7) مُستيقظ - واعي
(8) ينزف
(9) علامات - إشارات
(10) عدوى
(11) كتف
(12) يستجيب
(13) طبيعى
(14) التنفس
(15) الطوارئ
(16) خدمات
(17) فى الحال
(18) يقوم بـ
(19) الإنعاش القلبى
(20) مُستلقى
(21) الظهر
(22) مستوى - مسطح
(23) ضع
(24) منتصف - وسط
(25) الصدر
(26) فوق
(27) يقفل
(28) معًا
(29) يضغط
(30) يدع
(31) يرتفع
(32) مرات

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 8)

Athletic Heart Centre (AHC)

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes[1] believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However,[2] health experts agree that athletes must get a special[3] heart examination before they can be completely[4] sure that they don't have a problem.

For example[5], in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer[6] from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down[7] while he was training. Sadly,[8] although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive.[9]

Fortunately,[10] Egypt became a pioneer[11] in athletic heart care[12] in 2018 when it established[13] the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East[14] in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail[15] of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.[16]

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director[17] of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published[18] a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death.

Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance[19] to learn about the importance of heart examinations[20] to stay fit and healthy.

Check Vocabulary

(1) رياضيون
(2) مع ذلك
(3) خاص
(4) تماماً
(5) علي سبيل المثال
(6) لاعب كرة قدم
(7) يسقط
(8) من المُحزِن
(9) يبقي حياً
(10) لحسن الحظ
(11) رائد
(12) رعاية
(13) ينشئ
(14) الشرق الأوسط
(15) تفاصيل
(16) بالخارج
(17) المدير التنفيذي
(18) ينشر
(19) يضيّع الفرصة
(20) فحوصات

Keeping a healthy heart

(WB page 3)



Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from[1] heart disease?

Your heart pumps[2] about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means mum and dad as well as[3] the children.

Try to walk, cycle,[4] swim or play games outside as often as you can[5]. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up[6] a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine,[7] but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthily,[8] too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels[9] before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life![10]

Check Vocabulary

(1) يظل معافي من
(2) يضخ
(3) بالإضافة إلي
(4) يركب دراجة
(5) كثيراً قدر المستطاع
(6) يبدأ
(7) بخير
(8) بطريقة صحية
(9) ملصقات
(10) مدي الحياة

3 Video script

How to perform CPR

(SB page 8)

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance arrives.

So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Check Vocabulary
(1) قاعدة اليد
(2) عظمة
(3) منطقة الصدر
(4) يضغط

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base of your hand[1] on the bone[2] in the centre of their chest[3]. Then, put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press[4] 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

Part IV Language

must / have to

1 must — يجب أن / من الضرورى أن / من اللازم أن

Active Statement الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم	Subj. الفاعل + must / mustn't + inf. المصدر ... . - I must follow the school rules. - You mustn't drive a car without a licence.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	Must + subj. + inf. ...? - Must you speak loudly all the time?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. أداة استفهام + must + subj. + inf. ...? - What must we do when the traffic light is red?
Passive Statement المبنى للمجهول	Obj. المفعول + must / mustn't + be + p.p. ... . - The school rules must be followed. - A car mustn't be driven without a licence.

Brief Notes ملاحظات موجزة

1 يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد (must) :

- Students must to follow the school rules. (✗)
- Students must follow the school rules. (✔)

٢ يُمكن استخدام (must) كإسم بمعنى (ضرورة / فَرْض):

- Following the school rules is a must.
- Working hard is a must to reach your goals.

لاحظ استخدام (to) بعد (must) فى المثال السابق لكن (must) هنا اسم وليست فعل.

٣ لا توجد صيغة ماضى لـ (must) للتعبير عن الضرورة وفى هذه الحالة نستخدم (had to) لتؤدى نفس الغرض فى الماضى :

- I must take my driving test yesterday. (✗)
- I had to take my driving test yesterday. (✔)

كما يمكن استخدام تعبيرات بديلة فى الماضى لتعطى معنى قريب من (must) مثل :

- It was necessary to + inf. … .
- It was necessary to take my driving test yesterday.
- It was a necessity to + inf. … .
- It was a necessity to take my driving test yesterday.
- It was a must to + inf. … .
- It was a must to take my driving test yesterday.

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A driver must .... a driving licence.
   a. holds b. to hold c. hold d. holding
2. One .... obey the law.
   a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
3. One .... break the law.
   a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
4. The law .... broken.
   a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
5. The law .... followed.
   a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
6. Defending homeland الدفاع عن الوطن is a ....
   a. must b. necessary c. necessity d. a & c
7. In the past, people .... hunt for food.
   a. must b. mustn't c. had to d. had

Uses of "must"

- تُستخدم (must + inf.) فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن القوانين والقواعد العامة :

ex. - Drivers must wear seatbelts.

٢ التعبير عن الالتزام الداخلى النابع من رغبة شخصية إذا كان الفاعل (I – We) :

ex. - I must work hard for the exams. (رغبتى الشخصية فى النجاح هى التى تفرض عليَّ ذلك)
- I must buy a present for my mother tomorrow. (أمى لم تفرض عليَّ شراء هدية لها)
- We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (أصدقائنا لم يطلبوا هدايا)

٣ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مُقرّب أومن طبيب لمريض مثلا) :

ex. - You must stop smoking.
- You must wash your hands before you eat.

٤ توجيه الدعوة بقوة (دعوة حارّة لشخص مُقرّب) :

ex. - Sama, you must come to my birthday party tonight.
- You must come and see us at the weekend.

٥ تحفيز شخص مُقرّب على القيام بشيء ما (التزكية / التوصية) :

ex. - You must buy this villa. It is a bargain. صفقة رابحة

٦ تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للإنتقاد أو اللوم :

ex. - Must you talk while you are eating? (انتقاد سلوك غير مقبول)
- Why must you shout at me all the time? (لوم أو عتاب)

Uses of "mustn't"

- تُستخدم (mustn't + inf) فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن المنع أو التحريم (prohibition) أو عدم السماح (طبقاً للقوانين والقواعد والأعراف) :

ex. - You must not park outside the entrance.
- You must not make loud noise after 9 o'clock.
- You mustn't park here. It's forbidden.
- You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

٢ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مقرب أومن طبيب لمريض مثلا) :

ex. - You mustn't waste your time, son.
- You mustn't eat sweets. It is dangerous because you are diabetic. مريض بالسكر

٣ التحذير من القيام بشىء قد يترتب عليه ضرر أو خطورة :

ex. - You must not give your visa card details to anyone.
- You mustn't tell this news to anyone. It's a secret.

Other ways to say "mustn't"

- هناك طرق عديدة للتعبير عن المنع / التحريم مثل :

1 **- It isn't / legal قانونى / permitted مسموح ... + to + inf. مصدر ... .**

= It is illegal غير قانونى / against the law + to + inf. ... .

= Subj. + be + not + allowed / permitted + to + inf. ... .

= (Inf. + ing) + be + (not allowed / against the law) ... .

ex. - It isn't permitted (legal) to park your car here.

- It is illegal (against the law) to park your car here.
- You aren't allowed to park your car here.
- Parking your car here isn't allowed (legal / permitted).
- Parking your car here is illegal (against the law).

2 **- It is banned / prohibited / forbidden ممنوع / محظور + to + inf. ... .**

= Subj. + be + banned / prohibited/ forbidden + from + (inf. + ing) ... .

= (Inf. + ing) + be + banned / prohibited/ forbidden ... .

ex. – It is banned/ prohibited / forbidden to park your car here.

= You are banned/ prohibited / forbidden from parking here.

= Parking your car here is banned/ prohibited / forbidden.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A visitor to a hospital .... smoke. It is banned.

   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't

2. A visitor to a hospital .... stop smoking there. It is banned.

   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't

3. "You must come and have dinner with me." This is a ....

   a. must b. necessity
   c. suggestion d. warm invitation

4. "You .... stop taking this medicine until I tell you to do so," said Dr Mustafa.

   a. banned to b. must be c. mustn't d. don't have to

5. In an open-book examination, it is .... to use your school book.
a. legal b. illegal c. a must d. prohibited

6. Having got a red card in the last match, you are .... from taking part in the tomorrow's match.
a. permitted b. banned c. obliged d. licensed

7. "Must you wear this white suit for the funeral جنازة ?!" This question shows ....
a. permission b. banning c. approval d. disapproval

2 have to / has to يجب أن / من اللازم أن

Active Statement المبنى للمعلوم	**Subj.** الفاعل **+ have to / has to + inf.** المصدر **... .** - You have to follow the school rules. - Sama has to pay the electricity bill tomorrow.
Negative النفى	**Subj.** الفاعل **+ don't / doesn't + have to + inf. ... .** - You don't have to get up early. We are on holiday. - Rodayna doesn't have to buy a pen. She has two pens.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	**Do / Does + subj. + have to + inf. .....?** - Do they have to wait for the manager? - Does Ahmed have to attend the meeting?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q.W.** أداة استفهام **+ do / does + subj. + have to + inf. .....?** - What does Abdu have to do to join the club?
Passive statement المبنى للمجهول	**Obj.** المفعول **+ have / has + to be + p.p. ....** - The electricity bill has to be paid.

Brief Notes ملاحظات موجزة

١ تُستخدم (has to) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he - she - it) بينما تُستخدم (have to) مع باقى الضمائر (I - we - you- they):

- Sama have to be at work on time. (✗)
- Sama has to be at work on time. (✔)
- You has to follow the traffic rules. (✗)
- You have to follow the traffic rules. (✔)

---

٢ لاحظ أن نفى (have / has to) الشائع هو (don't / doesn't have to) وليس (haven't / hasn't to) :

- Ahmed hasn't to get up early on Fridays. (✗)
- Ahmed doesn't have to get up early on Fridays. (✔)
- We haven't to finish all the reports today. (✗)
- We don't have to finish all the reports today. (✔)

---

٣ فى الإنجليزية البريطانية تُستخدم (have / has got to) مثل (have / has to) كالتالى :

- Rodayna has got to check the inbox every morning. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Rodayna hasn't got to check the inbox every morning. (نفي)
- Has Rodayna got to check the inbox every morning? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- How often has Rodayna got to check the inbox? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The inbox has got to be checked every morning. (مبنى للمجهول)

- تذكر أن صيغة الماضى من (have / has got to) هى (had to) وليس (had got to) :

- Malak had got to borrow money after losing her purse. (✗)
- Malak had to borrow money after losing her purse. (✔)

---

٤ تُستخدم (need / needs to) مثل (have / has to) كالتالى :

- Yara needs to take a language course. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Yara doesn't need to take a language course. (نفي)
- Does Yara need to take a language course? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What does Yara need to take ? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- A language course needs to be taken by Yara. (مبنى للمجهول)

- تذكر أن (needn't) لا يتبعها حرف الجر (to) :

- Mum needn't to go shopping every day. (✗)
- Mum needn't go shopping every day. (✔)

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rokaya .... to stay at work until five o'clock.
   a. must b. mustn't c. have d. has
2. Mohammed has .... his driving licence.
   a. renew b. to renew c. to be renewed d. b & c
3. Rokaya and Leen .... to stay at work until five o'clock.
   a. must b. mustn't c. have d. has
4. I have .... the baby.
   a. to feed b. feed c. to be fed d. be fed
5. The baby has ....
   a. to feeding b. feed c. to be fed d. be fed
6. .... to leave now ?
   a. Have you b. Have you got c. Do you have d. b & c
7. Ayman .... to do all these jobs alone.
   a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. haven't d. don't have
8. Ayman and Ashraf .... to do all these jobs alone.
   a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. haven't d. don't have

Uses of "have to / has to"

1. التعبير عن الالتزام المفروض من الخارج (أى يوجد اجبار) مثل الإلتزام بالقوانين والقواعد فى مواقف محددة فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل :

ex. - I have to pay the bill الفاتورة or the internet service will be disconnected.
- My children have to study ancient history at school next year.

2. تُستخدم **(will have to + inf.)** للتعبير عن شئ من المهم القيام به فى المستقبل :

ex. - The flight is at six in the morning, so we'll have to get up very early.

3. تُستخدم **(had to + inf.)** كصيغة الماضى من **(have to / must)** للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بصفة عامة فى الماضى :

ex. - Aya had to cook the family dinner yesterday. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Aya didn't have to cook the family dinner yesterday. (نفى)
- Did Aya have to cook the family dinner yesterday? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What did Aya have to do yesterday? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The family dinner had to be cooked (by Aya) yesterday. (مبنى للمجهول)

mustn't & don't / doesn't + have to + inf.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (mustn't) و (don't / doesn't + have / need to) :

① تعبر (mustn't) عن الإلزام (لا يجب – غير مسموح – ممنوع) :

ex. - Students don't have to make noise in the exam room. (✗)
- Students don't need to make noise in the exam room. (✗)
- Students mustn't make noise in the exam room. (✔)

② تعبر (don't / doesn't have / need to / needn't + inf.) عن شيء ليس من الضروري (lack of necessity) القيام به (لكن يستطيع الفاعل القيام به إن أراد):

ex. - Students mustn't get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✗)
- Students don't have to get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✔)
- Students don't need to get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✔)
- Students needn't get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✔)

didn't need to & needn't have + p.p.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't + need / have to + inf.) و (needn't have + p.p.) :

① تعبر (didn't + need / have to + inf.) عن شيء كان الفاعل يعلم أنه ليس ضرورياً لذلك لم يقم به :

ex. - It was raining, so I didn't need to water the flowers.
(It wasn't necessary, so I didn't do that.)

② تعبر (needn't have + p.p.) عن شيء لم يكن الفاعل يعلم انه ليس ضرورياً ولذلك تم القيام به :

ex. - Ali needn't have bought meat. We have enough in the freezer.
(Ali didn't know that we have enough meat, so he bought more unnecessarily.)

Mini Test 4

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You .... to renew your driving licence next month.
   a. have b. will have c. must d. a & b
2. I .... to stay up late last night to look after my baby sister who was ill.
   a. have b. didn't have c. had d. needn't
3. Mr Abdulrahman .... to buy a tenth-generation laptop because his old one has become old-fashioned.
   a. had got b. had c. has d. have
4. A new shirt had .... and ironed before you wear it for the first time.
   a. washed b. to wash c. be washed d. to be washed

5. You .... smoke in a public place.
   a. mustn't b. must c. haven't to d. don't have to
6. You .... buy a new pen. You can borrow mine.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. haven't to d. didn't have to
7. I don't have any money, so I .... to find an ATM.
   a. have b. need c. a & b d. must
8. You needn't .... out in this bad weather. You can get what you need delivered to your home.
   a. go b. to go c. have to go d. b & c
9. I knew I had enough time. So, I ....
   a. needn't have hurried b. needn't to hurry
   c. needn't hurry d. didn't have to hurry

General Exercise On Language

Apply

تنويه • مختارات من امتحانات الإدارات مُرتَّبة بشكل متدرِّج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. All people .... wear masks because of coronavirus. It's a rule. (طا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. might b. must c. should d. can
2. My aunt was in hospital. I .... visit her yesterday. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. had got to b. needn't c. must d. had to
3. My little sister isn't allowed to play this game because she .... be more than eight years old to play it, and she's just four ! (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. mustn't b. has to c. has got d. doesn't have to
4. You .... eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. should
5. You .... smoke in public places. It is not allowed. (إدفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. had to
6. Omar isn't here, he .... leave early. (أسيوط - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. has to b. had to c. have to d. need to
7. We all .... smoke in petrol stations. (أحمد موافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. ought b. mustn't c. needn't d. should
8. His car broke down, so he .... go to work by bus. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. had to b. has to c. didn't have to d. must

9. You .... do all this hard work alone. It is my duty to help you.
   a. need to   b. have to   c. don't need to   d. must

(أحمد عرابي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)

10. I have to talk to Osama. I .... forget to call him. (غرب سلسبيل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. must   b. mustn't   c. have to   d. don't have to

11. There's plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You .... decide now. (غرب سلسبيل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. don't need to   b. have to   c. mustn't   d. will have to

12. This is a valuable book. You .... take good care of it and you .... lose it. (غرب سلسبيل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. must/don't need to   b. needn't/mustn't
   c. must/mustn't   d. needn't/don't have to

13. You .... wear a tie if you want to go to that restaurant. It is one of their rules ! (أهليونوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
   a. must   b. have to   c. don't have to   d. should

14. His temperature is normal, so he .... this medicine now. (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. needn't take   b. had to take
   c. should have taken   d. must take

15. You .... turn on the central heating. It's automatic. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. mustn't   b. don't have to   c. must   d. shouldn't

16. You .... buy that book. You can borrow mine. (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. mustn't   b. needn't   c. shouldn't   d. can't

17. "You .... leave the school without my permission," said the head teacher. (مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. shouldn't   b. mustn't   c. needn't   d. mustn't to

18. "No parking" sign means that you .... park here. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. mustn't   b. aren't allowed to
   c. are allowed to   d. must

19. It is prohibited to smoke here. That means you .... smoke here.
   a. can't   b. must   c. needn't   d. have to

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

20. If you go to Egypt, you .... forget to visit the pyramids. They are great. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. don't have to   b. needn't   c. don't need to   d. mustn't

21. What have you done? You .... so much sugar to my tea. Now, I can't drink it. (... بنبل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. didn't have to add
   b. needn't add
   c. needn't have added
   d. don't have to add

22. Since this is a private parking area, you .... its use. (...طوسس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. don't have to
   b. are allowed to
   c. are banned from
   d. mustn't

23. It's already hot. You .... this heavy coat. Keep it in your bag.
   a. should have brought
   b. needn't have brought
   c. didn't have to bring
   d. must have brought

(...سوان - محمد مكاوى الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

24. The red light means stopping. This sentence expresses ....
   a. intention
   b. expectation
   c. obligation
   d. common belief

(...طوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

25. We .... talk together. It was an exam. (...العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. mustn't
   b. didn't have to
   c. weren't allowed to
   d. needn't

26. It was .... first aid. (...الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. must to do
   b. must to doing
   c. a necessity to do
   d. a necessity to doing

تنويه • ذاكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4



SB pages 10 , 11 WB pages 4 , 5

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boost(ed) (v)	يُعزِّز - يوطِّد - يدعم	immune(adj)	ذو مناعة - مُحصَّن
boost(n)	تعزيز - توطيد - دعم	organ(n)	عضو (بالجسم)
cell(n)	خلية	viral(adj)	فيروسى - واسع الانتشار
immune system(n)	الجهاز المناعى	virus(n)	فيروس

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

behave(d) (v)	يتصرف	Olympic (adj)	أوليمبي
brain(n)	المخ	ordinary(adj)	عادي- معتاد
brilliant(adj)	بارع/ذكى - لامع	perfect(adj)	كامل/تام - ممتاز
champion(n)	بطل	persuade(d) (v)	يُقْنِع
championship(n)	بطولة	persuading(n)	الإقناع
cough(ed) (v/n)	يسعل / يكح - السعال	persuasive(adj)	مُقنِع
course(n)	مقرر تعليمى	pleasure(n)	سعادة/سرور
cover(ed) (v/n)	يُغطى - غطاء	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
diet(n)	نظام غذائى	reason(n)	سبب
explanation(n)	شرح - تفسير	regular(adj)	مُنتظِم
flu(n)	إنفلونزا	regularly(adv)	بانتظام
heart(n)	القلب	remind(ed) (v)	يُذَكِّر
improve(d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يتحسن	separate(ed) (adj - v)	منفصل - يفصل - ينفصل
join(ed) (v)	يلتحق بـ - ينضم إلى		
label(n)	مُلصَق	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
lie – lay - lain (v)	يستلقِى - يتمدد	sick(adj)	مريض
lung(n)	الرئة	simple(adj)	بسيط
microscope(n)	ميكروسكوب	situation(n)	موقف

mistake(n)	خطأ	support(ed) (n - v)	الدعم - يدعم
muscle(n)	عضلة	unfortunately(adv)	لسوء الحظ
video games(n)	ألعاب الفيديو		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
boost(v) يُعزّز - يوطّد - يدعم	to help someone or something to improve يتحسن or get better
cell (n) خلية	the smallest separate منفصل part of a plant or animal
immune system(n) الجهاز المناعى	a way that your body protects يحمى you from disease المرض
organ(n) عضو (بالجسم)	a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
virus(n) فيروس	very small living thing كائن حى that causes disease

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. The liver الكبد is a/an .... and so is the heart. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. member   b. organ   c. planet   d. virus
2. A/An .... can make a lot of people very ill. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. muscle   b. orange   c. virus   d. brain
3. The .... system protects you from infections and diseases. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. immune   b. digestive   c. respiratory   d. circulatory
4. Coronavirus "COVID 19" is a .... disease. (سيدى سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. bacteria   b. viral   c. viruses   d. fungi
5. Encouraging children's good behaviour helps .... it.
   a. boost   b. delete   c. injure   d. cut
6. COVID-19 attacks and destroys the .... of the lungs. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. virus   b. cells   c. allowance   d. bandage

2 Important vocabulary

7. Our manager is very .... He can make you do what he wants easily.
(اسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. aggressive b. persuasive c. available d. cooperative
8. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your ....
(أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. muscle b. cell c. surface d. lungs
9. I strongly .... the view that education should be available to everyone.
(ميت سلسبيل ٢٠٢٢)
a. support b. risk c. disrespect d. disagree
10. She has one of the most .... minds in the country. She's really one of a kind. فريدة من نوعها
(هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
a. horrific b. brilliant c. horrible d. a & b
11. She pays .... visits to her grandma every Friday.
a. separate b. regular c. persuading d. simple
12. The .... on the packet shows the ingredients. المكونات
a. champion b. flu c. label d. diet
13. Cancer is a/an .... disease.
a. serious b. flat c. infected d. gentle
14. He was ...., so he took two days off. إجازة لمدة يومين
a. infection b. disease c. sickness d. sick
15. It's usual for a person who has flu to ....
a. operate b. lock c. cough d. smell
16. You need to rest in bed if you have a bad ....
a. champion b. flu c. label d. diet
17. The baby is .... peacefully في سكينة in bed.
a. lying b. laying c. laid d. lain
18. The heart is the .... that does most of the work in the body.
a. medicine b. boost c. muscle d. hand
19. I'd like to get a clear .... for your negative situation. I want to understand.
a. allowance b. explanation c. performance d. examination
20. Following the right .... helps you keep healthy and fit.
a. champion b. flu c. label d. diet
21. The charger is a .... piece of equipment attached with the mobile in the same package.
c. persuading d. simple

3 Definitions

22. The .... system is the system in your body that protects it against illness. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. immune b. respiratory c. digestive d. movement
23. A/An .... is the smallest separate part of a plant or animal.
 a. sell b. organ c. immune system d. cell
24. To .... is to help someone or something to improve or get better.
 a. infect b. boost c. perform d. react
25. A/An .... is a very small living thing that causes disease.
 a. infection b. operation c. virus d. guidance
26. A/An .... is a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart.
 a. technique b. organ c. immune system d. cell

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	exercise	يتدرب	**have**	flu	يعاني من الإنفلونزا
get	a cold	يصاب بنزلة برد	**make**	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
	a virus	يصاب بعدوى فيروسية	**sound**	perfect	يبدو ممتازًا
	better	يتحسن	**stay**	calm	يظل هادئًا
	enough sleep	يحصل على نوم كافٍ	**take/do**	a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
boost	يُعزِّز - يدعم	improve, enhance, support
boost	يزيد - يروج لـ	increase, promote, publicise
brilliant	بارع/ذكي - لامع	excellent, intelligent
persuasive	مُقنِع	convincing
improve	يُحسِّن - يتحسن	enhance
separate	منفصل	disconnected, isolated

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
boost	يزيد - يروج لـ	decrease, hinder	يقلل - يعوق
brilliant	بارع/ذكي - لامع	ordinary, common	عادي
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	find it easy to	يجد من السهل أن
improve	يتحسن	deteriorate, decline	يتدهور - يتلاشى
persuasive	مُقنِع	unconvincing	غير مُقْنِع
separate	منفصل	connected, related	متصل - مرتبط

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

boost	
boost (ed)(v) يُعزِّز/ يوطِّد / يدعم	- The new hotel will boost tourism in our area.
boost (n) تعزيز / دَعْم	- The new hotel will be an important boost to tourism in our area.
immune	
immunize/ise(d) (v) (يُطعِّم) ضد الأمراض - يُحصِّن	- This vaccine المصل immunizes us against coronavirus.
immunity (n) المناعة - الحصانة	- This vaccine provides us with immunity against coronavirus.
immune (adj) ذو مناعة - ذو حصانة	- This vaccine makes us immune to coronavirus.
virus	
virus (n) فيروس	- This disease is caused by a virus.
viral (adj) فيروسي - واسع الانتشار	- This is a viral disease.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as possible	بقدر الإمكان	in the first place	في المقام الأول
come very close to	يدنو جداً من	living thing	كائن حي
exercise regularly	يتدرب بانتظام	move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من
get ill more often	يمرض كثيراً	stays up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
get sick from	يصاب بالإعياء من	such as	مثل

healthy hearts	قلوب بصحة جيدة	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
in difficult situations	فى المواقف الصعبة	two-day course	برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	protect ... from / against	يحمى ...من
fall down	يسقط / يقع	place ... on	يضع ...على
fight against	يكافح / يقاتل ضد	remember to	يتذكر أن
go out	يخرج	reply to	يرد على
hear from	يسمع من (يتواصل مع)	stay up	يسهر
look forward to + (inf. + ing)	يتطلع إلي	talk to	يتحدث إلى / مع
		worry about	يقلق على

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

boost - boast

- **boost (ed) (v)** يُعزِّز - يدعم - يُقوِّي
  - Eating fresh fruit and vegetables boosts the immune system.
- **boast (ed) (v)** يفتخر - يتباهى- (يَفشُر)
  - He is a boring person. He boasts about his rich family all the time.

lie - lay

- **lie - lay - lain - lying (v)** يرقد / يتمدد - يكمن في - يقع / يوجد
  - He lay in bed to rest. (رقد / تمدد)
  - The problem lies in that he doesn't want to work hard. (تكْمُن في)
  - Egypt lies in the north of Africa. (تقع / توجد)
- **lay - laid - laid - laying (v)** يضع - تَبِيض - يُعدّ / يُجَهِّز
  - He laid the glass carefully on the floor. (وضع)
  - The bird has laid two eggs. (وضع البيض)
  - Mum started to lay the table for lunch. (تعدّ)
- **lie - lied - lied - lying (v)** يَكْذِب - يُضلِّل
  - He lied when he said that his uncle is an ambassador. سفير
- **lie to + شخص** يَكْذِب على
  - Don't lie to your mother again.
- **lie about + شئ** يَكْذِب بخصوص
  - He lied about his job. He is a driver, not a lawyer.

organ - member

• **organ (n)** عضو من أعضاء الجسم

- The heart and the brain are the most important organs.

• **member (n)** عضو (في فريق أو مجموعة أو نادي ... إلخ)

- The manager welcomed the new members of the staff.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Rodayna .... a language course.
   a. made b. did c. stayed d. took e. increased
2. One can get a ....
   a. cold b. calm c. perfect d. better e. virus
3. "The first-minute goal boosted the team's confidence." The verb 'boosted' here is synonymous with ....
   a. decreased b. hindered c. supported d. enhanced e. proved
4. We sat under a tree to protect us .... the burning sun.
   a. from b. with c. against d. to e. for
5. A: Do you find it .... to work abroad ?
   - B: Not in the least. It is interesting.
   a. hard b. hardly c. difficult d. common e. persuasive

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We should follow the precautionary measures الإجراءات الاحترازية or we'll .... the virus. (القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. miss b. get c. play d. cause
2. Don't .... the same mistake as I did. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
   a. do b. make c. try d. return
3. The exercise I have .... is enough for today.
   a. stayed b. done c. made d. called
4. To keep healthy, you need to .... enough sleep.
   a. cause b. suggest c. get d. stay
5. Don't .... to others. People always appreciate those who tell the truth.
   a. lay b. lain c. lie d. laid

6. "I'm sure this advertisement will boost the product." What does the word 'boost' in this sentence mean?
   a. Promote b. Fail c. Decrease d. Hinder
7. If you go on staying .... late, you will fall ill. (السودان ٢٠٢٢)
   a. down b. forward c. up d. up on
8. Please, place the microscope carefully .... the table.
   a. for b. on c. to d. b & c
9. She looks forward .... Paris for the first time.
   a. to visiting b. visit c. to visit d. visited
10. Try to keep away from direct sunlight .... much as possible.
   a. by b. for c. as d. like
11. I'm worried about my brother in Italy. I haven't heard .... him for ages.
   a. with b. about c. of d. from
12. It is important for a driver to think ....
   a. fastly b. fast c. quickness d. quiet
13. Your encouragement تشجيع has given me ....
   a. boost b. boosts c. a boost d. boosted
14. Your encouragement has .... my confidence.
   a. boost b. boosts c. a boost d. boosted
15. Some scientists think that people who have caught COVID-19 do not have complete .... from catching it again.
   a. immune b. immunity c. react d. reaction
16. The heart is the .... responsible for sending blood around the body.
   a. member b. organ c. boost d. sense
17. Egypt is an important .... of the international society.
   a. member b. organ c. muscle d. sense
18. Do your best to .... the sales of the your products.
   a. infect b. lay c. boast d. boost
19. Stop .... about things you have not done.
   a. infecting b. laying c. boasting d. boosting
20. He .... about his exam results. He got a low mark.
   a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain
21. A hen .... some eggs in that hole.
   a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain
22. The child .... on the floor and soon fell asleep.
   a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 11)

Hi Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure[1] themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, right[2]?



I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast[3] and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations.[4] You don't have to become an expert,[5] just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course[6] your friends want to do sounds[7] perfect.[8]

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

Check Vocabulary

(1) يصيب - يؤذى
(2) هل هذا صحيح
(3) يفكر بسرعة
(4) مواقف
(5) خبير
(6) دورة تدريبية مدتها يومان
(7) يبدو
(8) رائع / جيد

(WB page 5)

To : healthtoday@mail.com
From : shady@mail.com

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure[1] to see them. Unfortunately,[2] because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean[3] and stay healthy.[4]



Check Vocabulary

(1) سعادة – بهجة
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) يحافظ على النظافة
(4) يحافظ على الصحة

At the moment, many people in my area have the flu[5] and so these things are even more important than usual.[6] What can I do to persuade[7] my cousins to change how they behave?

They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough,[8] they do not cover[9] their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty.[10]

They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind[11] them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to[12] older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to[13] hearing from you.

Yours,

Shady

Check Vocabulary

(5) نزلة البرد
(6) معتاد / مألوف
(7) يقنع
(8) يكح - يسعل
(9) يغطي
(10) يتسخ
(11) يُذكِّر
(12) ينقل عدوى البرد لـ
(13) يتطلع إلى

2 Listening Text

The Immune System

(SB page 10)

Our organs[1] are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain[2] that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system[3] comes from the cells and organs that work together to protect us from[4] diseases.



Check Vocabulary

(1) أعضاء
(2) المخ
(3) الجهاز المناعي
(4) يحمينا من

The immune system does this by destroying[5] things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary,[6] like the kind of cold[7] we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious[8] like the COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into [9] a part of the body, a message[10] is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts[11] by sending cells[12] to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against[13] a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost[14] our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves.[15] We also need to exercise regularly.[16] We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active[17] as possible.[18]

We also need to make sure[19] that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least[20] seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid[21] getting a virus or an infection in the first place.[22]

We also need to do things like covering[23] our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

Check Vocabulary

(5) تدمير
(6) عادي
(7) نزلة برد
(8) خطير
(9) يدخل
(10) رسالة
(11) يستجيب
(12) خلايا
(13) يكافح - يحارب ضد
(14) يُعزِّز
(15) أوراق النبات
(16) بانتظام
(17) نشيط
(18) قدر المستطاع
(19) يتأكد
(20) علي الأقل
(21) يتجنب
(22) في المقام الأول
(23) تغطية

Part IV Language

تنويه • راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

Exercise On Language

تنويه • التدريبات مُرتبة تصاعديًا طبقًا لمستويات التفكير حسب هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Wait a minute, Ali: You .... take a taxi. I will give you a lift.
   a. have to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. must
2. You .... see a doctor. You look very ill.
   a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. don't have to
3. You .... spend too much money. You won't have any left for your holiday.
   a. should b. mustn't c. don't need to d. have to
4. You .... take an umbrella if you are going to Egypt. It doesn't often rain there.
   a. haven't to b. don't need to c. must d. need to
5. You .... take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.
   a. must b. don't have to c. need to d. mustn't
6. You .... speak so loudly. We are in the library.
   a. need to b. mustn't c. needn't d. don't have to
7. When you arrive in another country, you .... show your passport.
   a. mustn't b. should c. have to d. don't need to
8. What do I .... do to get a driving license?
   a. must b. have to c. will have to d. have got to
9. Why did you .... go to hospital?
   a. must b. have to c. will have to d. have got to
10. Does he .... bring the money with him?
    a. have to b. need c. ought to d. have got to
11. You .... help me if you don't have time. I can do it myself.
    a. don't have to b. hasn't got to c. have to d. mustn't

12. Hurry up, Rodayna. We .... be late.
   a. didn't have to   b. mustn't   c. haven't got to   d. needn't
13. He .... tell me again. I can remember everything he said.
   a. doesn't have to   b. haven't got to
   c. mustn't   d. needn't to
14. Nada .... buy a new tablet. Her old one is still very good.
   a. mustn't   b. don't need   c. hasn't got   d. doesn't have to
15. My aunt was in hospital. I .... visit her yesterday.
   a. had got to   b. needn't   c. must   d. had to
16. I've warned you before. You .... play football in the street.
   a. don't have to   b. needn't   c. mustn't   d. don't need to
17. Ahmed can't come out with us this evening. He .... work.
   a. must   b. has to   c. need to   d. should
18. My old dictionary is useless. I .... buy a new one.
   a. don't have to   b. need   c. mustn't   d. must
19. He hasn't been asked to do more jobs, so I think he ....
   a. don't have to   b. haven't got to
   c. don't need to   d. hasn't got to
20. I'm sorry. You .... bring your pet into school.
   a. haven't got to   b. mustn't   c. don't have to   d. needn't
21. It's a secret, OK? You .... tell anyone else.
   a. must   b. mustn't   c. have to   d. don't have to
22. I know it's raining, but you .... wear all these clothes.
   a. don't need   b. mustn't   c. needn't to   d. don't have to
23. You aren't allowed to stop here. You .... do that.
   a. don't have to   b. needn't   c. mustn't   d. haven't got to
24. I .... get up early tomorrow. I'm going away and my train leaves at 7 : 30.
   a. must   b. need   c. had to   d. have got
25. I'm not deaf. You .... shout.
   a. are not permitted   b. are prohibited
   c. aren't allowed   d. don't have to
26. In most parks, you .... walk on the grass.
   a. needn't to   b. aren't allowed to
   c. don't have   d. haven't got

27. If you come to Britain, you .... come and visit us. We'd love to see you.
 a. will b. must c. need d. ought

28. He had to come early because it .... necessary.
 a. is b. was c. will be d. had

29. I .... be at work at 8 a.m. or my boss will be furious.
 a. should have b. must c. need d. have to

30. I .... phone my friend this evening. I promised him I would.
 a. need b. have to c. should have d. must

II Special cases

31. You .... buy a pen. I can lend you one.
 a. need to b. needn't c. should d. haven't to

32. We .... forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
 a. haven't got to b. mustn't c. should d. have to

33. You .... any more salt to the food. Now, we can't eat it.
 a. needn't have added b. should add
 c. didn't have to add d. need to add

34. We .... give our homework to the teacher until next week.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. should d. need to

35. You .... such a long essay. The teacher asked for 300 words and you have written 700.
 a. needn't have written b. had to write
 c. didn't have to write d. should have written

36. Have you ever .... go to hospital?
 a. must b. had to c. has to d. need to

37. According to my promise, I .... remember to phone my brother Ahmed tonight.
 a. don't have to b. must c. mustn't d. have got

38. Here's your present. You .... open it before your birthday!
 a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. don't need to

39. It's a holiday today, so we .... go to school. However, the school library is open.
 a. don't have to b. mustn't c. have got to d. have to

40. You can't turn right here. You .... to turn left.
 a. must b. have c. has got d. should

41. If you go to Egypt, you .... forget to go to the Pyramids. They are great.
 a. don't have to b. needn't c. don't need to d. mustn't

42. You .... be noisy. Dad is trying to listen to important news.
 a. needn't b. don't have to c. mustn't d. haven't got to

43. She's really a nice person. You .... meet her.
 a. must b. have to c. have got to d. need

44. My eyesight isn't very good. I .... wear glasses for reading.
 a. must b. have to c. needn't d. can't

III Check your understanding

45. Tomorrow is a public holiday, so you ....
 a. mustn't get up early
 b. needn't have got up early
 c. have to get up late
 d. needn't get up early

46. I wasted much money on that food. ....
 a. I needn't buy it
 b. I needn't have bought it
 c. I didn't need to buy it
 d. I didn't have to buy it

47. Which of the following best suits one of the written items of a law?
 a. Students must wear the school uniform.
 b. Students have to wear the school uniform.
 c. Students need to wear the school uniform.
 d. Students had to wear the school uniform.

48. Which of the following is most appropriate when you talk to a schoolmate who isn't wearing the school uniform?
 a. You mustn't wear the school uniform.
 b. You have to wear the school uniform.
 c. You can wear the school uniform.
 d. You needn't wear the school uniform.

PART THREE

Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5&6

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

تنويه • أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية(King Lear)كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات فى الجزء المخصص لذلك فى نهاية الكتاب.

act(n)	فصل (في مسرحية)	kingdom(n)	مملكة
answer(n)	رد - إجابة	make ... happy	يُسعِد (شخص)
ask ... to marry	يطلب... للزواج من	play(n)	مسرحية
beauty(n)	الجمال	pleased to meet	سعيد بلقاء
character(n)	شخصية - حرف	riches (n) = wealth	الثروة
divide ... into two	يقسم ... نصفين	scene(n)	مَشْهَد
Duke(n)	دوق (لقب أوروبي)	shout about (phr. v)	يُصرِّح بـ
duty(n)	الواجب	Sir(n)	سير (لقب أوروبي)
foolish (adj - n)	أحمق	sword(n)	سيف
give ... away (phr. v)	يتنازل عن	third(n)	ثُلث ($\frac{1}{3}$)
give an answer to	يرد على - يُجيب علي	title(n)	لقب

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My grandfather gave .... all his riches to a charity. (الجيزة - اكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. out b. in c. up d. away
2. King Lear has wanted to divide his .... into three parts. (أدا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. boredom b. random c. kingdom d. freedom
3. I decided to .... my money between my two sons and two daughters.
   a. give b. make c. divide d. a & c

4. Everyone likes ....
   a. beautiful b. beauty c. beautifully d. beautify
5. Bad friends know you only for your ....
   a. poverty b. wealthy c. rich d. riches
6. Every citizen has a .... towards their country.
   a. duty b. beauty c. play d. kingdom
7. It is not .... of you to take such an important decision without careful thinking.
   a. stupid b. foolish c. sensible d. a & b
8. A: What is your job ....? B: I am an accountant.
   a. dress b. address c. title d. chance
9. In ancient times, a soldier used to fight using a ....
   a. gun b. sword c. title d. bomb
10. A: .... to meet you, sir. B: Me, too.
   a. Please b. Pleasant c. Pleasing d. Pleased

Part II Grammatical Hints

stop + obj.

- stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf.+ ing) = stop + obj. مفعول + (inf.+ ing) يمنع .... من أن ...

ex. - We must stop people from polluting the river.

= - We must stop people polluting the river.

stop + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً

ex. - On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruit.

- stop + (inf. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم – أو مؤقت)

ex. - My uncle has stopped smoking and his health is better now.

he or she versus they

هناك اسماء وضمائر تستخدم كمذكر او كمؤنث مثل:

- person - child - teacher - researcher - doctor - student ... etc.

- someone - somebody - everyone ... etc.

وعندما نشير الى أى من الأسماء والضمائر السابقة وما يشبهها بضمير يمكن ان نتبع أىً من الطرق التالية :

١. استخدم ضمائر أو صفات الجمع (they - them - their - theirs)

ex. - I hear a child crying. They may be hungry. Their mother must feed them.

٢. استخدم ضمائر المذكر و المؤنث كالتالي : (he or she - him or her - his or her - his or hers)

ex. - I hear a child crying. He or she may be hungry. His or her mother must feed him or her.

٣. استخدم ضمير المذكر فقط أو المؤنث فقط إذا كان المتحدث متأكداً من النوع :

ex. - This is a school for boys. A student has written his name on the desk. He is careless.

start / begin + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

يأتي بعد (start / begin) المصدر مضافا له (ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعني:

ex. - He began working / to work for this company last year.

لكن بعد (starting / beginning) نستخدم (to + inf.) فقط:

ex. - I was starting to do my homework when the phone rang. (Not : starting doing)

as

١. يُستخدم بعدها اسم يدل علي الوظيفة أو المرحلة العمرية أو الدور أو المظهر:

ex. - As a boy, he worked in a bakery.

- He works as a police officer.

٢. يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون إختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول:

ex. - He works hard as required. (= as it is required)

٣. تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة:

ex. - She broke the cups as she was taking them to the kitchen. (= when /while)

- As he makes a lot of mistakes, he doesn't get good marks. (= Because)

like

١. تُستخدم كحرف جر بمعني (مثل / يشبه) مع أفعال منها :

(be / look /sound / feel / taste / seem / eat / drink / grow....)

ex. - She looks like her aunt.

- He eats like a horse.

٢. تُستخدم لاعطاء أمثلة بعدها بمعني : **(for example / such as)**

ex. - Colours like green, pink, and red are suitable for you.

Sentence adverb

هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغير معني الجملة بالكامل ، و غالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل:

Fortunately/Luckily لحسن الحظ - **Strangely** من الغريب - **Sadly** من المحزن -
Interestingly من المثير للإهتمام - **Surprisingly** من المُدهش ...

ex. - Fortunately, I had enough money.
- Strangely, he agreed to help us.

Verb + adj.

يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد:

be يكون - **look** يبدو - **seem** يبدو - **appear** يبدو - **sound** يبدو - **taste** يعطي مذاق -
feel يعطي شعورًا أو ملمس - **smell** يعطي رائحه

ex. - Ahmed looks happy. - He seems a nice boy. = He seems nice.
- Mum's food smells delicious.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The traffic policeman stopped me .... in front of the bank.
   a. to park b. from parking c. parking d. b & c
2. The child looked .... with his new toy.
   a. happy b. happily c. happiness d. happening
3. ...., my team lost the match.
   a. Sad b. Sadness c. Sadly d. Saddened
4. Viruses .... COVID-19 and SARS have caused thousands of deaths.
   a. as b. like c. such d. as if
5. .... a student, you should study hard
   a. As b. Like c. Such d. As from
6. Because she was hungry, she stopped .... a cold drink and a snack from the supermarket.
   a. from buying b. buying c. to buying d. to buy

7. She stopped .... junk food because it is harmful.
   a. buy b. buying c. to buying d. to buy
8. It will start ....
   a. to rain b. raining c. to raining d. a & b
9. It is starting ....
   a. to rain b. raining c. to raining d. a & b
10. A person should know what .... goal in life is.
   a. his b. her c. their d. our

Part III Language Skills

1 Writing Tips - Persuading الإقناع - إرشادات خاصة بالكتابة

- عند محاولة إقناع شخص ما بالقيام بشئ ما يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية :

- **It's great that + جملة ...** إنه لشيء عظيم أن ...
  - It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course!
- **I really think you should + inf. ....** أعتقد فعلاً أنه يجب عليك أن ...
  - I really think you should join the course.
- **Everyone has to + inf. ....** يجب على الجميع أن ...
  - Everyone has to know how to do first aid.
- **You never know when + جملة ...** لا يمكنك أن تعلم متى ...
  - You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them.
- **You would want ...., right?** إنك قد تريد أن ... ، هل هذا صحيح؟
  - You would want other people to help you too, right?
- **I'm sure you would + inf. ....** إنني متأكد أنك سوف ...
  - I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations.
- **You don't have to + inf. ....** إنك لست مضطراً لأن ...
  - You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone.
- **........... sounds perfect.** إن ... يبدو رائعاً.
  - The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

2 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

Model email

Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words to your friend John to persuade him to learn how to perform first aid. Your name is Ashraf and your email is ashraf@mail.com and your friend's email is john@mail.com.

To: john@mail.com
From: ashraf@mail.com
Dear John,

How are you ? I hope you are your best. I have heard they are starting a course in the local hospital to teach the citizens in the neighbourhood how to do first aid. I write this email to you to try to persuade you to join the course with me.

Perhaps you know it is great to learn a new skill that is very useful. I really think you should join the course. First of all, I would like to tell you why it is important to learn how to perform first aid.

Everyone has to learn this skill because they may need it one day. You never know when an accident happens. When accidents happen, there are people who are badly injured. Some of them may not be able to breathe. What would you do then?

Perhaps you would say that you would call the emergency services, right? Of course, you must call the emergency services. But what if the nearest emergency service centre is far away? What would you do then? Would you stand there doing nothing for the people that were dying because you could not help ?

I'm sure you would want to help. However, you can't help unless you know how to help. Performing first aid needs special skills you should learn. The first aid course is a golden chance you should never miss. By the way, the course is free. I hope very much that you would agree to join the course with me.

I'm looking forward to your positive reply.

Yours,

Ashraf

3 Translation الترجمة

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

① Translate into Arabic :

1. It has been proven that nothing remains impossible in science. In the not-too-distant future, we will be treating all diseases to cure them and not only to manage them.
2. Climate change has disastrous effects on the future of life on earth. If the effects of climate change make our environment hostile, the populations of some countries may be decreasing.
3. According to estimations, around 400 million patients have diabetes worldwide. Unfortunately, scientists' efforts to find a cure for diabetes haven't yet been successful.

② Translate into English :

١. يتوقع الخبراء أن يزداد عدد سكان العالم إلى عشر مليارات بحلول عام ٢١٠٠، وهذه الزيادة تتطلب بالضرورة زيادة في إنتاج الغذاء وتوفير المزيد من المساكن والخدمات.
٢. من المؤكد أن فرق البحث تعمل على إيجاد علاجات فعَّالة لأمراض مثل السكر والتهاب المفاصل، لكن هذا قد يستغرق إنجازه وقتًا طويلاً وستستفيد منه الأجيال القادمة.
٣. قد تتحول بعض الأراضي الزراعية إلى صحراء وهو ما يُعرف بالتصحر، وهذه سوف ينتج عن الجفاف والتغير المناخي المتوقع.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

according to	طبقاً لـ	arthritis	التهاب المفاصل
AIDS	مرض الإيدز	field	مجال
desertification	التصحر	generations	الأجيال
disastrous	كارثى	in case	فى حالة
distant	بعيد	necessarily	بالضرورة
effective	فعَّال	pressure	ضغط
efforts	جهود	providing	توفير
estimations	التقديرات	requires	تتطلب
experts	الخبراء	services	الخدمات
hostile	عدائى - عدوانى	threat	تهديد
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	worldwide	فى كل أنحاء العالم
diabetes	مرض السكر		

Part IV Just for Advanced Level للفائقين فقط

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

boost

• **boost (ed) (v)** يُعزِّز - يُنعِش - يُقوّي

- The new decisions of the government have boosted the economy.
- The new advertisement will surely boost the sales. المبيعات

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **boost someone's confidence / ego** يُعزِّز ثقة ... بنفسه

- My father's encouraging words boosted Sama's confidence.

• **boost someone's morale** يرفع معنويات ...

- The first goal boosted the team's morale.

• **boost / boost up = raise (v)** يرفع / يرفع إلى أعلى

- The child wanted me to boost him to look out from the window.

• **boost (to / for) (n)** تعزيز - إنعاش

- The tourist season is a real boost to the economy.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- provide / give a boost يعطي دفعة - get / receive a boost يتلقى دعم
- morale / ego boost دفعة معنوية - دعم معنوي

cell

• **cell** خلية (حيوانية / نباتية)

- Our bodies consist of a great number of cells.

• **cell** زنزانة (حجرة داخل سجن)

-The dangerous criminal was locked alone in a cell.

• **cell** جهاز لتوليد الكهرباء

- Some street lights depend on solar cells. الخلايا الشمسية

• **cell** تنظيم سرى صغير

- The police have arrested some terrorist cells. الخلايا الإرهابية

• **cell phone** تليفون محمول (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)

- The battery of my cell phone was empty, so I couldn't call you.

immune

لديه مناعة ضد - مُحصّن ضد (لا تُستخدَم قبل الاسم)

- **immune (adj)**
  - He has caught smallpox الجدرى before, so he is immune for life

الاستجابة المناعية - رد فعل جهاز المناعة

- **immune response / reaction**
  - Because he is healthy, his immune response succeeded in fighting the virus.

لديه حصانة ضد - لا يتأثر بـ (لا تُستخدَم قبل الاسم)

- **immune (to / from) (adj)**
  - Old people are sometimes immune to new ideas.
  - Parliament members are immune from arrest.

المناعة ضد - الحصانة ضد

- **immunity (to / from) (n)**
  - People who have got the virus before have immunity to it.

يُحصِّن ضد

- **immunize (against) (v)**
  - In Egypt, all children are immunized against infectious diseases.

علم المناعة

- **immunology (n)**
  - He is expert in immunology.

عالم متخصص في علم المناعة

- **immunologist (n)**
  - He is an immunologist.

infect

- **infect (ed) (with) (v)** يَعدي - يصيب بمرض ≠ disinfect يُعقِّم / يُطهِّر
  - A lot of people have been infected with COVID- 19.

يلوث بـ (غالبًا تكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول)

- **infect (ed) (with) (v)**
  - The vegetables from this farm are infected with harmful chemicals.

يَعدِي - ينتقل بالإيحاء

- **infect (ed) (with) (v)**
  - Keep your children away from that bad boy. His bad behaviour will infect them.

عدوى - مرض مُعْدي

- **infection (of / in) (n)**
  - He has a bad infection in the right eye.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- suffer from an infection — يعاني من عدوى
- get / develop an infection — يُصاب بعدوى
- treat / fight / combat an infection — يعالج / يكافح عدوى
- spread an infection — ينشر عدوى
- be exposed to an infection — يعاني من عدوى
- clear up an infection — يزيل العدوى / التلوث
- serious / severe / acute infection — عدوى شديدة

- **infectious (adj)** نَاقل للعدوى - مُعْدي
  - Flu is an infectious disease.
- **infected (adj)** مُصاب بالعدوى
  - I didn't know I was infected until I had been examined by a doctor.

virus

- **virus (n)** فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
  - This virus does not infect people.
- **virus (n)** فيروس حاسوبى (برنامج ضار)
  - It was a virus sent in an email that destroyed my laptop.
- **virulent (adj)** شديد العدوى
  - Coronavirus is so virulent.
- **viral (adj)** فيروسى
  - She has a viral infection.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **carry a virus** حامل للفيروس
- **get / contract a virus** يُصاب بفيروس
- **be infected with a virus** يُصاب بفيروس
- **be exposed to a virus** مُعرض للإصابة بفيروس
- **pass on / transmit a virus** يعدى بفيروس
- **a virus spreads** ينتشر الفيروس
- **go viral** ينتشر بسرعة (على وسائل التواصل)

2 Word Formation تكوين الكلمات

-ion / - ance

تُستخدم النهايتان (ion-) و (ance-) لتكوين الأسماء من بعض الأفعال :

-ion		-ance	
Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
act يؤدي / يتصرف	action أداء - حدث	allow يسمح	allowance سماح - علاوة
infect يعدي - يلتهب	infection عدوى	guide يرشد	guidance إرشاد
operate يُشغِّل	operation تشغيل	perform يؤدي	performance أداء -عرْض

لاحظ حذف حرف (e) غير المنطوق عند إضافة النهايات (- ion / - ance)

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. His strength as a politician .... in that he is a good speaker.
   a. lies b. lays c. lain d. laid
2. I .... the little baby up so that she could pick an apple from the branch.
   a. boasted b. boosted c. rose d. a & c
3. He was arrested because he joined a criminal ....
   a. severity b. organ c. muscle d. cell
4. These children have been vaccinated تم تطعيمهم. They are ....
   a. immune b. immune people
   c. immune children d. b & c
5. Ibrahim is really a good student. His energy and enthusiasm حماس have .... all the students in the class.
   a. spoiled b. diseased c. infected d. a & c
6. Once I tweeted the news, it went .... It was retweeted by thousands of people.
   a. various b. viral c. infected d. infectious
7. He .... strongly against my suggestion. He refused to discuss it.
   a. boosted b. disagreed c. opposed d. reacted
8. Being short, he asked his uncle to give him a/an .... up to reach the bookshelf.
   a. pump b. left c. infection d. boost
9. His good manners have made him .... to evil ideas.
   a. immune b. available c. influenced d. affected
10. A person who is .... has an illness and could pass it to those around him.
    a. infection b. infected c. infectious d. infectiously

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- الإختيار الصحيح هو الفعل (lies) بمعني (تَكمُن / تُوجَد) - لا يمكن استخدام الفعل (lain) مع أنها تؤدي نفس المعني لأنها تصريف ثالث - لا يمكن استخدام الفعل (lays / laid) لأنه يعني (يضع - تبيض - يُعِدّ)
2.	b	- الإختيار الوحيد المناسب للمعني والصحيح لغوياً هو (boosted) بمعني (رفع)
3.	d	- الإسم (cell) هنا يعني (خلية أو مجموعة إجرامية)
4.	a	- الصفة (immune) بمعني (مُحصَّن ضد) لا يأتي بعدها الإسم الموصوف
5.	c	- الفعل (infected) هنا له معني إيجابي مجازي (أثرت إيجابياً في)
6.	b	- التعبير (go viral) يعني (ينتشر بسرعة كبيرة على الإنترنت)
7.	d	- وجود حرف الجر (against) جعل الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح هو (reacted) لأن الفعلين (disagreed / opposed) لا يُستخدمان معه في هذا السياق
8.	d	- التعبير (give a boost) يعني (يرفع)
9.	a	- التعبير (immune to) يعني (لا يتأثر بـ - مُحصَّن ضد)
10.	c	- الصفة (infectious) بمعني (مُعْدِي) هي الإختيار المناسب لمعني الجمل

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... wear this yellow tie? To me, it is old-fashioned.
   a. Do you have to b. Need you to
   c. Must you d. Do you need to

2. Since this is a private parking area, you .... its use.
   a. don't have to b. are allowed to
   c. are banned from d. mustn't

3. You .... to the office. It wasn't necessary.
   a. had to go b. needed to go
   c. needn't have gone d. have to go

4. Policemen .... wear a uniform. It is a general rule.
   a. have to b. should c. need to d. must

5. I .... get up early on school days.
a. mustn't b. have to c. don't have to d. must

6. Owing to the fact that tomorrow is a national holiday, I .... get up early.
a. needn't to b. haven't to c. mustn't d. won't have to

7. More money has been wasted. You .... bought all these toys.
a. can't have b. should have
c. need have d. needn't have

8. Your brother .... get his visa before travelling to the USA.
a. needn't b. need c. has to d. must

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- يتضح من سياق الكلام أن المتكلم يسأل لأنه يتحدث عن عدم إعجابه برباط العنق الأصفر وليس الزي الرسمي أو الضرورة
2.	c	- الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغوياً من ناحية البناء والمعني هو (are banned from)
3.	c	- الإختيار الصحيح من ناحية الزمن هو (needn't have gone) كما أنه الوحيد الذي يناسب المعني
4.	d	- الفعل الناقص (must) هو الأدق وليس (have to) لأن السياق يتحدث عن قاعدة عامة غير مرتبطة بزمان أو مكان أو أشخاص
5.	b	- الصيغة (have to) هي الأدق وليس (must) لأن السياق يتحدث عن إلزام خارجي يفرضه القانون في موقف محدد وليس التزام شخصي
6.	d	- الإختيار الأدق والأصح لغوياً ومن حيث المعني هو (won't have to)
7.	d	- الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغوياً من ناحية البناء والمعني هو (needn't have)
8.	c	- الصيغة (has to) هي الصحيحة لأن السياق يتحدث عن إلزام خارجي يفرضه القانون في موقف محدد

Test on Unit 1

• Understand • Apply • Create



Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. As a driver, you should be able to .... first aid in case of emergency.
   a. receive b. do c. buy d. consume e. perform

2. This charity .... money for helping the poor.
   a. decreases b. hinders c. raises d. supports e. collects

3. The security asked the visitors to follow the security rules properly. The opposites of "follow" are ....
   a. obey b. rescue c. break d. disobey e. disappear

4. It's not easy to be employable these days unless you .... your skills.
   a. decrease b. develop c. prove d. remove e. improve

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. Mr Ayman applies the latest .... in business management.
   a. resilience b. techniques c. pioneers d. emergency

6. To keep fit, try to take .... a sport.
   a. up b. down c. off d. out

7. I .... the umbrella, it was not raining. (مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. needn't have taken b. don't need to take
   c. needn't to take d. needn't take

8. We .... to wear a uniform at school. (الجيزة - اكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. have b. must c. should d. can

9. You .... eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to

10. She had already had her lunch. You .... her all these sandwiches.
   a. don't need to buy b. needn't buy
   c. needn't have bought d. didn't have to buy

(القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

11. I have been tired all week. I .... get more sleep.
a. don't have to b. must c. needn't d. have got

12. I think you .... see a doctor.
a. may b. ought c. have to d. should

13. I want to go to university. I .... apply before the deadline.
a. shouldn't b. need to c. don't need d. mustn't

14. In some countries, children .... wear school uniform.
a. don't need b. mustn't c. don't have d. don't need to

15. My son .... study mathematics at school next year so that he can join the faculty of engineering.
a. need b. has to c. needn't d. needn't have

16. On receiving his e-mail this morning, I .... reply soon or he'll start to worry.
a. don't need to b. don't have to c. need to d. mustn't

✪ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer : (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

Do you wish you could be in perfect health your entire life? Recent scientific research has shown that if people just practised three simple behaviours, they could not only **prolong** their lives but make them healthier as well. If you are willing to commit to leading a longer and healthier life, first, eat the right foods in the right amounts. Three-fourths of your plate should be filled with fruits, vegetables and the whole grains. If you can't give up eating meat, choose **lean meat**. Eat poultry, fish, beans and foods that are low in saturated fats, cholesterol, salt and sugar. People who wish they could more easily control the amount they eat may find that using a smaller plate will help.
Next, exercise at least 30 minutes a day at least three days a week . If you exercise five or more days a week of at least 75 minutes each time, the result will be even better for you. **This** helps increase muscle, strengthen bones and improve balance.

Third, make sure to get sufficient sleep. If you are over the age of 18, you probably need seven to nine hours to sleep each night. If you cannot get that much sleep, take a short nap for 20-30 minutes per day. These

behaviours are the keys to living a longer and healthier life. Imagine, if you had started these behaviours years ago, you would be way ahead of the game!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

17. What is the main idea of the passage?
    a. Showing the importance of sleep
    b. Encouraging people to practise sports
    c. Telling people what to eat
    d. Giving advice on how to stay healthy
18. The underlined word "**This**" refers to ....
    a. doing exercise
    b. eating healthy food
    c. sufficient sleep
    d. all of them
19. Why do you think people need to keep themselves healthy ?
    a. To build strong muscles
    b. To enjoy their lives
    c. To improve balance
    d. To go on the game
20. According to the passage, the underlined word "**prolong**" means ....
    a. shorten
    b. lengthen
    c. widen
    d. weaken
21. Which of the following sentences is **NOT** correct ?
    a. We are what we eat
    b. Eat the right foods in the right amounts
    c. We should get enough sleep
    d. Eat food high in saturated fats
22. The expression "**lean meat**" refers to ....
    a. red meat
    b. meat rich in fat
    c. fish meat
    d. meat low in fat
23. Which of the following best summarizes the last paragraph ?
    a. You are way ahead of the game if you practise well.
    b. Children under the age of 18 don't need to sleep well.
    c. You are the winner in the long run if you eat, exercise and sleep well.
    d. All of us get tired if we don't sleep well.
24. Who is the intended audience for this article ?
    a. Only children and kids
    b. Elderly people
    c. Both the young and the old
    d. Sportsmen and women



Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

The immune system is made of cells and organs to protect us from infections and diseases. It is the army that shoulders يقوم بـ the task of defence الدفاع in the human body. (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

2. Translate into English :

لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسباً للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبة التطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة، لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

How to keep healthy and fit

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

تنويه • للتدريب علي أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ ،بنك الأسئلة.

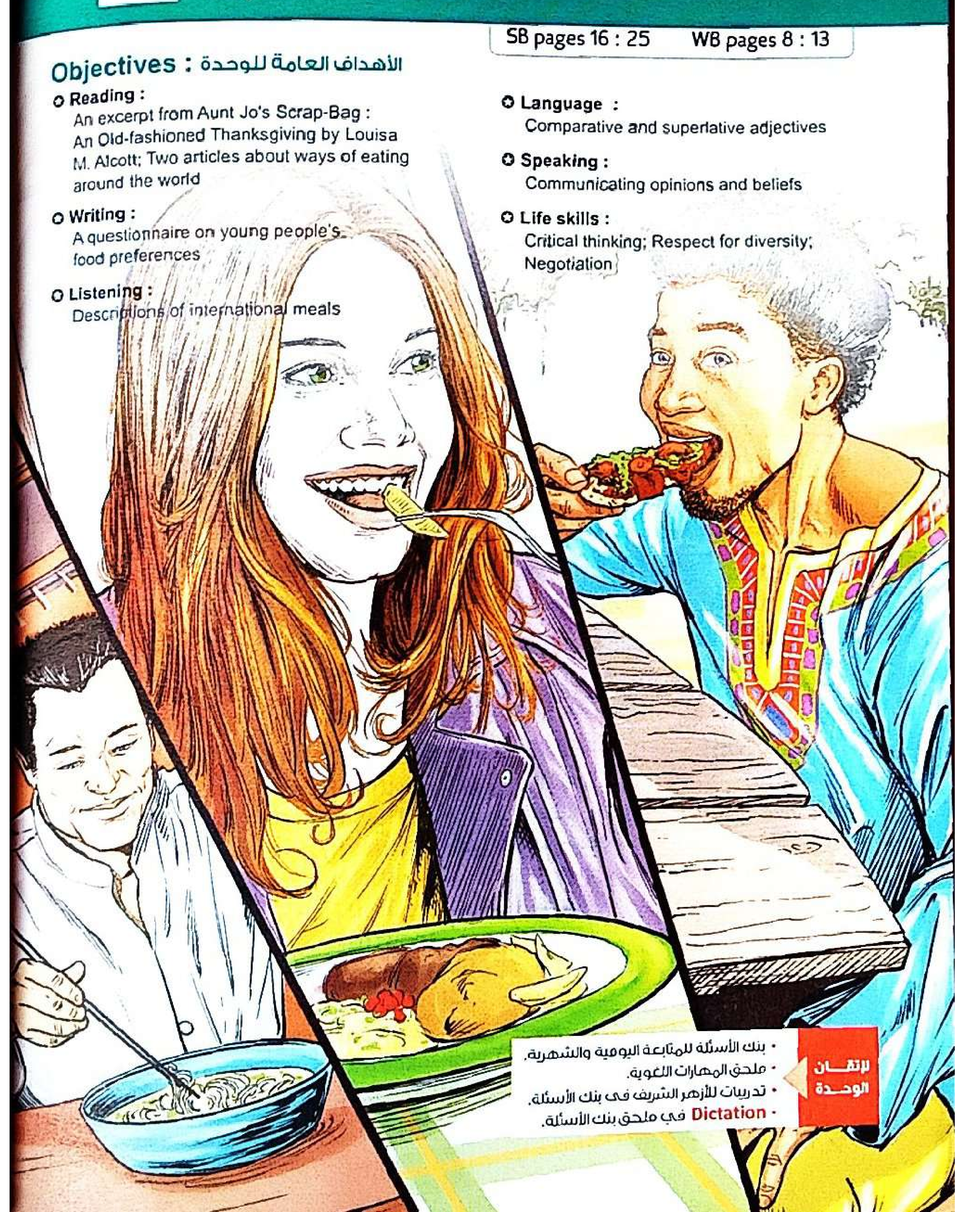
UNIT

2 Eating around the world

SB pages 16 : 25 WB pages 8 : 13

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :**
  An excerpt from Aunt Jo's Scrap-Bag : An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world
- **Writing :**
  A questionnaire on young people's food preferences
- **Listening :**
  Descriptions of international meals
- **Language :**
  Comparative and superlative adjectives
- **Speaking :**
  Communicating opinions and beliefs
- **Life skills :**
  Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation



لإتقان الوحدة

- بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
- ملحق المهارات اللغوية.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى بنك الأسئلة.
- Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2



SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 8 & 9

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amount(n)	كمية	prepare(d) (v)	يُعِدّ / يجهِّز
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ - يُحْيِي مناسبة	rare (adj)	نادر
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	salty (adj)	مالح
expensive(adj)	غالي الثمن	serve(d) (v)	يخدم / يقدم طعام أو شراب
get together	يلتقي	spicy (adj)	مُتَبّل - به توابل
occasion(ed) (n - v)	مُنَاسَبَة - يُسبب	strong(adj)	نفّاذ (ذات رائحة قوية)
popular(adj)	منتشر - شائع	traditional(adj)	تقليدي

تنويه • من المُهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

chips(n)	رقائق البطاطس	oysters(n)	المحّار
cookies(n)	بسكويت - ملفات تعريف الارتباط	passenger(n)	المسافر - الراكب
cornbread(n)	خبز الذرة	pie(n)	فطيرة
curious(adj)	فضولي	prawns(n)	جمبري كبير - قريدس
curry(n)	الكاري (نوع من البهارات الهندية)	pumpkin(n)	اليقطين
customer(n)	زبون	recent(adj)	حديث
delicious(adj)	لذيذ	roast lamb(n)	لحم ضأن مشوي
dessert(n)	الحلوى (بعد الوجبة الرئيسية)	roast(n/adj)	(لحم) مشوي
dish(n)	صنف من الطعام - طبق	roasted(adj)	مشوي - محمص
event(n)	مناسبات هامة - حدث	seafood(n)	طعام البحر
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد	shellfish(n)	الصدفيات - المحاريات
extract(ed) (n - v)	اقتباس - يقتبس	smell(n)	الرائحة
feed - fed - fed(v)	يُطعم - يُغذي	snow(n)	الجليد
festival(n)	عيد - مهرجان	spring rolls(n)	رقائق السبرنج رول (أكلة)
fried(adj)	محمّر - مقليّ	survive(d) (v)	يبقي حيًا
gather(ed) (v)	يلتقي -يتجمع	sweet potatoes(n)	بطاطا
grapes(n)	العنب	takeaway (n)	وجبات جاهزة
herring(n)	الرنجة	Thanksgiving(n)	عيد الشكر

laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك - يقول ضاحكًا	turkey(n)	الديك الرومى
mealtimes(n)	أوقات الوجبات	vegetable(n/adj)	أحد الخضروات - متعلق بالخضروات
native(adj)	محلي - أصلي	wake - woke - woken(v)	يستيقظ - يوقظ
old-fashioned(adj)	عتيق - قديم جدًا	whatever(adj)	أيًا كان/مهما كان

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلُّم المُستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise		Understand
amount(n)	كمية	- a quantity كمية of something - how much of something there is
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ - يُحيي مناسبة	to do something fun ممتع to show that an event مناسبة is special خاص
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	to have a meal وجبة outside your home
get together	يلتقي	- to meet people and spend time with them - to meet with other people
occasion(n)	مُناسبَة	a time when something special happens
prepare(d) (v)	يُعدّ / يجهّز	to get something ready for use
serve(d) (v)	يخدم / يقدم طعام أو شراب	to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal
traditional(adj)	تقليدي	following a way of doing something that has existed موجودة for a long time

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The food's quite ...., but it's really nice. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)

a. tasty b. delicious c. expensive d. tasteful

2. They .... delicious seafood here in this restaurant. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. eat out b. help c. serve d. celebrate

laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك - يقول ضاحكًا	turkey(n)	الديك الرومى
mealtimes(n)	أوقات الوجبات	vegetable(n/adj)	أحد الخضروات - متعلق بالخضروات
native(adj)	محلي -أصلي	wake - woke - woken(v)	يستيقظ - يوقظ
old-fashioned(adj)	عتيق - قديم جدًا	whatever(adj)	أيًا كان/مهما كان

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التَّعَلُّم المُستهدفة _ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
amount(n) كمية	- a quantity كمية of something - how much of something there is
celebrate(d) (v) يحتفل بـ - يُحيي مناسبة	to do something fun ممتع to show that an event مناسبة is special خاص
eat out يأكل خارج المنزل	to have a meal وجبة outside your home
get together يلتقي	- to meet people and spend time with them - to meet with other people
occasion(n) مُناسبَة	a time when something special happens
prepare(d) (v) يُعدّ / يجهِّز	to get something ready for use
serve(d) (v) يخدم / يقدم طعام أو شراب	to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal
traditional(adj) تقليدي	following a way of doing something that has existed موجودة for a long time

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The food's quite ...., but it's really nice. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
   a. tasty b. delicious c. expensive d. tasteful
2. They .... delicious seafood here in this restaurant. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. eat out b. help c. serve d. celebrate

3. It's my sister's eighteenth birthday today, so my family are going to .... this evening.

   a. create b. serve c. concentrate d. celebrate

4. This dish is .... and delicious. Enjoy! (الإسكندرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

   a. rotten b. spicy c. nasty d. dusty

5. People no longer use .... means of communication. They have become old-fashioned. (أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

   a. modern b. global c. artificial d. traditional

6. Thanksgiving is a day when families .... to remember the wonderful memories. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

   a. get away with b. get together c. get at d. get off

7. A person who is obese has to reduce the .... of food they eat.

   a. occasion b. amount c. chopsticks d. extract

(أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)

8. My mother has .... a delicious meal of chicken and rice.

   a. prepared b. celebrated c. done d. dropped

(أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)

9. The Great Pyramid is .... with tourists from all over the world.

   a. salty b. rare c. popular d. expensive

10. I'm meeting my old friends today on the .... of Omar's wedding.

    a. tradition b. occasion c. funeral d. b & c

11. I have my meals indoors most of the time, but every now and then I ....

    a. catch up with b. find out c. get together d. eat out

12. My friends and I .... in the club at weekends to play football.

    a. gather b. get together c. scatter d. a & b

13. Some spices have a .... smell.

    a. strong b. fried c. grilled d. b & c

14. Mo'men Zakaria has a/an .... disease from which we all hope he will soon recover.

    a. salty b. rare c. popular d. expensive

2 Important vocabulary

15. Of the six people injured in the crash, only two ....

(الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)

a. survived b. served c. existed d. ate out

16. Some .... from trees, like cinnamon, can be used as drinks.

a. constructs b. abstracts c. distracts d. extracts

(ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

17. The 6th October Victory is a great .... in our contemporary history.

(اجا ٢٠٢٢)

a. series b. accident c. event d. episode

18. We have a vegetable garden in our house. In this sentence, the word "vegetable" is a/an ....

(ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. determiner

19. The boys .... at nine to watch the match at the café.

a. roasted b. existed c. gathered d. fried

20. This car make is no longer produced. It is ....

a. fashionable b. fashion c. old-fashioned d. modern

21. To .... meat is to cook it without liquid in an oven.

a. roast b. exist c. gather d. wake

22. Which of the following is/are seafood?

a. Prawns b. Herring c. a & b d. Lamb

23. We say that someone is .... when they want very much to know about things.

a. stupid b. impolite c. traditional d. curious

24. This chef has created this delicious ....

a. bowl b. pot c. dish d. plate

25. Fish, shellfish and oysters are ....

a. seabed b. seafood c. sea level d. sea life

26. Eid al-Adha and Christmas are .... which most Egyptians celebrate.

a. parties b. weddings c. funerals d. festivals

27. **A:** How do you like your fish, Sir? **B:** ...., please.

a. Fry b. Fried c. Frying d. Grilling

28. A/An .... is a type of shellfish that can be eaten, and that produces a jewel called a pearl. اللؤلؤ

a. oyster b. pie c. pumpkin d. cornbread

29. Dinosaurs .... on the earth millions of years ago.

a. roasted b. existed c. gathered d. woke

3 Definitions

30. A/An .... is a quantity of something or how much of something there is.

a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. option

31. To .... is to do something fun to show that an event is special.

a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out

32. To .... is to have a meal outside your home.

a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out

33. To .... is to meet people and spend time with them.

a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out

34. A/An .... is a time when something special happens.

a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. option

35. To .... is to get something ready for use.

a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out

36. To .... is to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal.

a. prepare b. get together c. serve d. eat out

37. To be .... means following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time.

a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple

38. A/An .... is a very large orange fruit that grows on the ground, or the inside of this fruit.

a. oyster b. pie c. pumpkin d. cornbread

39. .... is a day when people in the USA and Canada give thanks to God for the good harvest and for health.

a. Thanksgiving b. Celebration
c. Sham El-Nessim d. The Big Friday

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	good luck يجلب الحظ السعيد	**get**	together يلتقي -يتجمَّع
do	something fun يقوم بشيء مُبهج	**make**	noise يحدث ضجيجًا
fall	asleep يستغرق بالنوم	**serve**	the food يقدم الطعام
have	... for dessert يأكل ... كحلوي	**spend**	time with يقضي وقتًا مع
	a meal يتناول وجبة	**take**	place يَحْدُث
	whatever we liked نحصل على ما نشاء		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
delicious	لذيذ	tasty, mouthwatering
gather	يلتقي - يتجمع	collect, crowd, meet up, get together
old-fashioned	عتيق - قديم جدًا	traditional, conventional, outdated
popular	منتشر - شائع	famous
rare	نادر	unique, scarce
traditional	تقليدي	conventional, customary, old-fashioned

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
delicious	لذيذ	tasteless	بلا طعم
gather	يلتقي - يتجمع	scatter	ينتشر
old-fashioned	عتيق - قديم جدًا	modern, fashionable, new	حديث - على الموضة
popular	منتشر - شائع	unknown, unpopular	غير معروف
rare	نادر	ordinary, usual, common	عادي/شائع
traditional	تقليدي	unconventional, modern, novel	غير تقليدي - حديث

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

celebrate	
celebrate (d) (v) يحتفل بـ - يُحْيي مناسبة	- We celebrated Sama's success yesterday.
celebration (n) احتفال	- We gave a celebration on the occasion of Sama's success yesterday.
celebrity (n) شخص مشهور	-Mohammed Salah is a football celebrity.
celebrated (adj) مشهور	- Mohammed Salah is a celebrated footballer.
occasion	
occasion (ed) (v) يُسبب	- Your success has occasioned us real happiness.
occasion (n) مُناسَبَة	- We were really happy on the occasion of your success.
occasional (adj) متقطع - عابر	- I pay my uncle occasional visits.
occasionally (adv) أحيانًا	- I occasionally visit my uncle.
prepare	
prepare (d) (v) يُعِدّ / يجهِّز	- I prepared well for my presentation.
preparation (n) تجهيز - تحضير	- I made good preparations for my presentation.
prepared (adj) مُعَدّ - مستعد - جاهز	- I was well-prepared for my presentation.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a bit worried about	قَلِق قليلًا على	I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر
a large amount of	كمية كبيرة من	in different colours	بألوان مختلفة
a Thanksgiving dinner	عشاء عيد الشكر	in fact,	في الحقيقة
all the time	طوال الوقت	it's a lot like	إنه يشبه كثيرًا

almost all	تقريبًا كل	late at night	في وقت متأخر من الليل
almost none	تقريبًا لا أحد / لا شيء	me too	وأنا أيضًا
at a time	في المرَّة الواحدة	Native Americans	سكان أمريكا الأصليين
at least	علي الأقل	on different occasions	في مناسبات مختلفة
at Thanksgiving	في عيد الشكر	on the menu	في القائمة
be curious about	يشعر بالفضول / لديه حب استطلاع بخصوص	on the side of	علي جانب
easy to remember	يسهل تذكره	ready to/for	جاهز/مستعد لـ
for example,	علي سبيل المثال	that sounds great	ذلك يبدو عظيمًا
for most people	بالنسبة لمعظم الناس	there's such a lot to do	لدينا الكثير لنقوم به
get ... ready	يجهز شيئًا ما	visit ... for Thanksgiving	يزور ... في عيد الشكر
here is (= Here's)	ها هو / ها هي	with help from	بمساعدة من

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يخص - ينتمي إلي	keep out of	يبتعد عن الطريق
catch up with	ينضم إلى / يتواصل مع - يلحق بـ	look after	يرعي - يعتني بـ
choose to	يختار أن	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
choose from	يختار من بين	wait for	ينتظر
dig .... out of	يستخرج ... من	look like	يشبه

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

amount – quantity – level

- **amount (n)** كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)
  - The doctor advised me to reduce the amount of salt in my food.
- **quantity (n)** كمية / مقدار محدد من شيء ما (تُستخدم غالبًا في الأوامر والتعليمات المكتوبة)
  - Add the right quantity of salt to your food.
- **level (n)** مستوي أو نسبة محددة من شيء ما
  - I want to measure أقيس the level of cholesterol in my blood.

decide – (to/on/that)

- **decide to + inf.** يقرر أن - يتخذ قرارًا بأن (+ مصدر الفعل)
  - We decided to spend the mid-year holiday in Aswan.

• **decide that + subj. + verb** يقرر أن - يتخذ قرارًا بأن (+ جملة)

- We decided that we will spend the mid-year holiday in Aswan.

• **decide on + (n) / (inf. + ing)** يختار (+ اسم)

- We decided on Aswan to spend the mid-year holiday in.
= We choose Aswan to spend the mid-year holiday in.

event - occasion - opportunity

• **event (n)** حدث هام / مناسبة هامة

- The match between Al Ahly and Zamalek is the main event this week.

• **occasion (n)** مناسبة اجتماعية أو احتفال

- Sham El-Nessim is an important occasion.

• **opportunity / chance (n)** فُرصة

- Go and talk to the manager. Don't miss the opportunity.

traditional - old-fashioned - modern

• **traditional (adj)** تقليدى / تراثى (قد يكون مقبول أو غير مقبول الآن)

- Bedouins البدو still wear traditional clothes.
- I don't like his traditional way of thinking.

• **old-fashioned (adj)** عتيق الطراز / عفا عليه الزمن (لم يعد مقبولًا أو مُفضلًا الآن)

- She looks strange in her old-fashioned dress.

• **modern (adj)** عصري - حديث

- The mobile is a modern invention.

serve - surf

• **serve (d) (v)** يخدم / يقدم (طعام أو شراب)

- She is trained to serve meals in five-star hotels.

• **surf (ed) (v)** يركب الأمواج (علي اللوح)

- You need a lot of training to be able to surf safely.

• **surf (ed) (v)** يتصفح (الإنترنت)

- Don't waste your time in surfing the Net.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. You can have ....
   a. a meal b. together c. asleep
   d. noise e. whatever you like
2. A meal that is 'delicious' is ....
   a. tasteless b. tasty c. hot
   d. mouthwatering e. chilli
3. "Luxor and Aswan are popular tourist attractions." This means that Luxor and Aswan are not ....
   a. unknown b. well-known c. unpopular
   d. famous e. familiar
4. Something that is traditional is ....
   a. fashionable b. modern c. conventional
   d. unconventional e. customary
5. To be rare is antonymous with to be ....
   a. ordinary b. common c. unique
   d. scarce e. seldom

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. In an open buffet, guests can .... whatever they like to eat or drink. (أحمد موافى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. fall b. make c. serve d. have
2. The accident .... place in front of the cinema.
   a. got b. brought c. made d. took
3. The kid .... asleep while watching a cartoon and his mother took him to bed. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. fall b. fell c. felt d. filled
4. Let's .... together after graduation to see if our dreams have come true. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. go b. bring c. get d. make
5. The food .... in this restaurant is nice.
   a. fallen b. spent c. served d. done
6. Your company صُحْبة .... me good luck.
   a. goes b. brings c. makes d. takes

7. Sama laughs loudly whenever her brother .... something fun.
   a. spends b. uses c. gets d. does
8. This machine used to .... loud noise.
   a. get b. bring c. make d. take
9. Football is popular all over the world. The synonym of "popular" is .... (محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. special b. private c. common d. personal
10. Mohammed Salah is a worldwide football ....
   a. celebrate b. celebrity c. celebration d. celebrated
11. We are preparing a small .... for my father's birthday tomorrow.
   a. celebrate b. celebrity c. celebration d. celebrated
12. It is .... that some people eat salted herring on Sham El-Nessim day.
   a. tradition b. traditional c. tradition d. illegal
13. It is a/an .... that some people eat salted herring on Sham El-Nessim day.
   a. tradition b. traditional c. tradition d. illegal
14. He .... visits me in my distant farmhouse.
   a. occasion b. occasional c. occasionally d. regular
15. He pays me .... visits in my distant farmhouse.
   a. occasion b. occasional c. occasionally d. regularly
16. He is busy .... for his wedding.
   a. preparing b. prepared c. preparation d. prepares
17. He is busy making sure that everything is .... for his wedding.
   a. preparing b. prepared c. preparation d. prepares
18. You must have at .... five years' experience to get the job.
   a. least b. last c. list d. lost

(سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

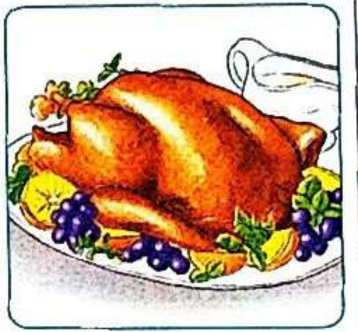
19. I was a .... worried about his exam results.
   a. bit b. lot of c. much d. more
20. Farmers dig potatoes .... the earth.
   a. for b. out c. of d. out of
21. **A:** You will meet all your close friends tomorrow. - **B:** I can't wait!
   This means that 'B' .... his / her close friends.
   a. doesn't want to meet
   b. doesn't like
   c. wants very much to meet
   d. isn't yet ready to meet

22. He still finds himself a stranger who does not belong .... this place or these people.
    a. to b. in c. into d. a & b
23. We are having turkey .... Friday lunch.
    a. on b. in c. with d. for
24. You have three colours to choose ....
    a. of b. from c. for d. to
25. .... the Internet wastes my time.
    a. Serving b. Servicing c. Saving d. Surfing
26. She was responsible for .... drinks in the party.
    a. serving b. servicing c. saving d. surfing
27. The water in the Nile reached its top .... yesterday.
    a. quantity b. amount c. level d. a & c

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving *(SB page 17)*



In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers(1). Many(2) died, but some(3) were able to grow food and survive(4) with help from Native(5) Americans.

Thanksgiving(6) is a day when families get together(7) to remember these events.(8) It is celebrated(9) in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An Old-Fashioned(10) Thanksgiving. Here is an extract(11):

When they woke,(12) there was still a large amount of (13) snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المسافرين
(2) الكثيرون
(3) البعض
(4) يبقي حيًا
(5) محلي -أصلي
(6) عيد الشكر
(7) يلتقي
(8) مناسبات هامة
(9) يحتفل
(10) عتيق
(11) اقتباس
(12) استيقظوا
(13) كمية كبيرة من

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "Ma[14] said that we could have whatever we liked,[15] but she didn't expect us to have a traditional[16] Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey[17]?"asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly. All you children have to do is keep out of the way,[18] and let[19] Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare[20] the big meal,[21] they got out all the spoons,[22] dishes, pots[23] and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa[24] will be here by that time[25] and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve[26] the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a bit[27] worried about the turkey. It's so big!"

"I know," said Prue. "I fed[28] it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.[29]

Check Vocabulary

(14) أمي
(15) كل ما نشاء
(16) تقليدي
(17) الديك الرومي
(18) يغادر المكان
(19) يترك / يدع
(20) يُعِد
(21) وجبة
(22) ملاعق
(23) إناء
(24) أبي
(25) قبل ذلك الوقت
(26) يقدم
(27) قليلًا
(28) أطعم
(29) ضحكت

New Year Celebrations around the World

(WB page 8)

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate[1] the start[2] of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion.[3]

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out[4] at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular dish[5] is always tamales,[6] which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together[7] with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is traditional[8] to eat twelve grapes[9] to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular[10] amount[11] of grapes

Check Vocabulary

(1) يحتفل بـ
(2) بداية
(3) مُناسَبَة
(4) يأكل خارج المنزل
(5) صنف من الطعام
(6) تماليس (وجبة مكسيكية)
(7) يلتقي – يتجمع
(8) تقليدي
(9) العنب
(10) مُعيَّن
(11) كم – مقدار

late at night,[12] when the clock reaches midnight,[13] or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare[14] a fish called 'herring'[15] at least[16] five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale[17] for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the smell[18] is very strong.[19]

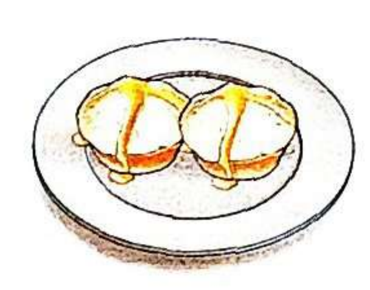
في وقت متأخر من الليل (12)
منتصف الليل (13)
يُعِد (14)
الرنجة (15)
علي الأقل (16)
الحوت (17)
الرائحة (18)
نفّاذة (19)

2 Listening Texts



A Thanksgiving invitation

(SB page 17)



Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious[1] about the food you eat.

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a lot like[2] chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else[3] do you have?

Amy : We have a special[4] kind of bread, called cornbread[5]. It's delicious[6]. And we have sweet potatoes.[7] They're like normal[8] potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for dessert?[9]

Check Vocabulary

فضولي (1)
يشبه كثيرًا (2)
أيضًا (3)
خاص - مميز (4)
خبز الذرة (5)
لذيذ (6)
بطاطا (7)
عادي (8)
الحلوى (9)

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin[10] pie.[11] It's very sweet and heavy[12]. Sometimes I fall asleep[13] after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda : Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with[14] friends and family. That's why[15] we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

Check Vocabulary
(10) اليقطين
(11) فطيرة
(12) كثيف
(13) يستغرق في النوم
(14) ينضم إلي
(15) لهذا السبب

Meals from around the world

(SB page 16)

Nasi goreng

Nasi goreng[1] is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words 'nasi goreng' mean 'fried[2] rice' in Indonesian.[3] Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the spiciest[4] meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply[5] the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying[6] rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns[7] to the pan. It's a bit saltier[8] than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper[9] than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either[10] in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

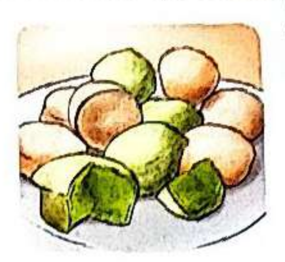
Check Vocabulary
(1) نازي جورينج (أكلة اندونيسية)
(2) محمّر
(3) اللغة الاندونيسية
(4) الأكثر تتبيلًا
(5) ببساطة
(6) تحمير
(7) جمبري كبير - قريدس
(8) أكثر ملوحة
(9) أرخص
(10) إما

Oysters

Oysters[1] are a type of shellfish[2] that people dig[3] out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer[4] than most other types of seafood[5] and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu[6] in French[7] restaurants.

Check Vocabulary
(1) المحار
(2) الصدفيات
(3) يستخرج بالحفر
(4) أكثر ندرة
(5) طعام البحر
(6) قائمة طعام
(7) فرنسي

Mochi



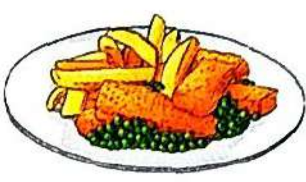
Mochi[1] are sweet, round[2] rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular[3] type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck.[4] Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat,[5] white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

Check Vocabulary

(1) موتشي (حلوى يابانية)
(2) مستديرة
(3) منتشر - شائع
(4) الحظ
(5) مستو - مسطح

(WB page 9)

Food in the UK



The UK did not used to be known for[1] its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips.[2] The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other takeaway food,[3] too. The British[4] also like spicy food. Indian[5] food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular.

One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is roast[6] lamb,[7] which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They mostly[8] eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور بـ
(2) رقائق البطاطس
(3) الوجبات السريعة
(4) البريطانيون
(5) هندي
(6) مشوي
(7) لحم الضأن
(8) في الغالب

3 Video script section

Festival meals from different countries

(SB page 17)

Check Vocabulary
(1) أعياد
(2) الفتة
(3) ملفوف الربيع

People in different countries celebrate different festivals,[1] but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid al-Adha every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion is a traditional fattah.[2] Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls,[3] noodles, fish and chicken.

Part IV Language

Comparative and Superlative forms صيغ المقارنة و التفضيل

1 Adjectives الصفات

1. الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم و تأتي غالبا قبله :

ex. - He bought an expensive mobile yesterday.
- I saw a frightening animal in the fields.

2. يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد الافعال التقريرية مثل :

be - look يبدو - **seem** يبدو - **appear** يبدو - **sound** يبدو - **taste** يعطي مذاق - **feel** يعطي شعورًا أو ملمس - **smell** يعطي رائحه .....

ex. - Leen felt cold.
- Ahmed looks happy.
- Mum's food smells delicious.

٣ الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقًا :

afraid خائف - **awake** مستيقظ - **asleep** نائم - **alone** وحيد - **alight** مُضاء - **alive** حيّ

ex. - Roaa feels afraid when she is left alone.
- We were happy that he was alive.

٤ تأتى الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

someone – somebody – something – somewhere

noone – nobody – nothing – nowhere

anyone – anybody – anything – anywhere

everyone – everybody – everything – everywhere

ex. - I met somebody important. (Not: important somebody)
- He needs to buy everything necessary. (Not: necessary everything)

Mini Test 1



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My brother has got a ....
   a. mobile good b. good mobile
   c. well mobile d. mobile well

2. You look .... You must have passed your driving test.
   a. happy b. happily
   c. happiness d. unhappy

3. I was surprised to see a / an .... in the dark street.
   a. afraid boy b. boy afraid
   c. boy who was afraid d. a & c

4. He knows ....
   a. an evil nobody b. an anybody evil
   c. an evil anybody d. nobody evil

2 Comparative and Superlative Forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
Use الإستخدام	تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين: - Arabic is easier than English. - A lion is more dangerous than a fox. - Chicken is less expensive than meat.	تُميّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أكثر من طرفين): - French is the easiest subject. - The lion is the most dangerous animal. - The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - fast - faster - old - older يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - large - larger - close - closer يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير اذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصيرثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - big - bigger - thin - thinner - hot - hotter - fit - fitter	يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلي الصفة القصيرة : - fast - the fastest - old - the oldest يُضاف (the ...+ st) فقط إلي الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - large - the largest - close - the closest يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير اذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصيرثم يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلي الصفة القصيرة: - big - the biggest - thin - the thinnest - hot - the hottest - fit - the fittest
Adjectives ending in (y) الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y)	تتحول (y) المسبوقة بحرف ساكن إلي (ier) : - easy - easier - happy - happier - lazy - lazier - healthy - healthier	تتحول (y) المسبوقة بحرف ساكن إلي (the ...+ iest) : - easy - the easiest - happy - the happiest - lazy - the laziest - healthy - the healthiest
Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلي صيغة المقارنة كالتالي: - more أكثر/less أقل + adj. صفة - more/less beautiful - أكثر/أقل جمالًا	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلي صيغة التفضيل كالتالي: - the most الأكثر/the least الأقل + adj. صفة - the most/the least beautiful - الأكثر/الأقل جمالًا

ملاحظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

١ يمكن أن نستخدم (less) قبل الصفات القصيرة (ولا يمكن استخدام (more)) :

ex. - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. - Ali is less strong than Ahmed.

٢ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية أو إضعاف الصفة:

slightly بدرجة طفيفة - a bit قليلًا - a little قليلًا - even كثيرًا - much كثيرًا - a lot كثيرًا - far كثيرًا - ....

ex. -Travelling by train is much slower than travelling by plane.
- The weather today is a little colder than yesterday.

٣ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) :

(يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل وضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل)

ex. - He is taller than I am. = He is taller than me.
- We earn more money than they do. = We earn more money than them.

٤ يمكن استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين :

ex. - Hadeer is the taller of the two sisters.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The cheetah is .... the deer. غزال
   a. fast   b. faster   c. faster than   d. the fastest
2. The cheetah is .... animal ever.
   a. fast   b. faster   c. faster than   d. the fastest
3. The environment in the countryside is .... that in the city.
   a. healthier   b. healthier than   c. healthiest   d. the healthiest
4. The countryside has .... environment ever.
   a. healthier   b. healthier than   c. healthiest   d. the healthiest
5. The tortoise is .... animal.
   a. the least fast   b. fastest   c. the fastest   d. the faster

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية :
(first/second/third/fourth...etc.)

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:
my – his – her – your – our – their – its – .....'s

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist.
- Is Ahmed your youngest brother?

٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :
(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة :

ex. - He is the best player in the team.
- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمع :

ex. - Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(جـ) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات :

ex. - The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية :
(first/second/third/fourth...etc.)

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:
my – his – her – your – our – their – its – .....'s

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist.
- Is Ahmed your youngest brother?

٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :
(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة :

ex. - He is the best player in the team.
- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمع :

ex. - Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(جـ) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات :

ex. - The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

3 Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة

Adj./adv.	Comparative	Superlative
- bad سيء - badly بشكل سيء	- worse أسوأ / بشكل أسوأ	- the worst الأسوأ / بالطريقة الأسوأ
- far بعيد - fore سابق/مُسبق	- farther أبعد - further أبعد/أكثر - former أسبق	- the farthest الأبعد - the furthest الأبعد/الأكثر - the first الأول - the foremost الأسبق
- good جيد - well بصحة جيدة	- better أفضل / بطريقة أفضل	- the best الأفضل / بالطريقة الأفضل / الأكثر
- late متأخر / متأخرًا	- later أكثر تأخرًا - latter الآخر/الثاني	- the latest الأكثر تأخرًا - the last الأخير
- little قليل الكمية	- less أقل	- the least الأقل
- many كثير العدد - much كثير الكمية - a lot of كثير للكمية والعدد	- more أكثر	- the most الأكثر

Mini Test 3

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ali is 65 kg and Omar is 72, so Ali is .... than Omar.
   a. heavier b. more heavy c. less heavier d. less heavy
2. An elephant is .... than a cow.
   a. the biggest b. much big c. much bigger d. less big
3. A modern BMW is .... expensive than this old Fiat.
   a. much more b. much c. the most d. most
4. Sama is .... of the two sisters.
   a. younger b. the younger
   c. youngest d. the more young
5. Dubai has the first .... building in the world.
   a. bigger b. the bigger c. biggest d. the biggest

6. Green is my wife's .... favourite colour.
 a. most b. the most c. the more d. the less

7. Rodayna is the most helpful person .... the family.
 a. of b. with c. a & b d. in

8. I have two brothers. One is a doctor and the .... is an engineer.
 a. later b. latter c. latest d. late

9. My car is .... than yours.
 a. good b. well c. better d. best

4 Equalatives صيغ التعبير عن التساوي

١ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:

as + adj. الصفة + as

ex. - Aya is as old as Nada. They are both 17.
- Drinking fresh juice is nearly as useful as eating fresh fruit.

٢ في حالة النفي تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

not + as/so + adj. الصفة + as

ex. - I am not as old as Omar. = - I am not so old as Omar.

٣ لاحظ أن :

as + adj. الصفة + as = the same + الإسم من الصفة + as

ex. - Ahmed is as tall as Hussein. = - Ahmed is the same height as Hussein.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun اسم + as) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	size حجم	long	length طول مسافة أو مدة
deep	depth عُمْق	old / young	age عُمْر
expensive / cheap	price سعر	strong	strength قوة
far / near	distance مسافة	wide	width عَرْض/اتساع
high / tall	height ارتفاع/عُلُوّ/طول		

ex. - The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.
= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Amir is as .... as Omar.
   a. old b. older c. the oldest d. oldest
2. Mr Mohammed and his cousin Adel were born on 26th September, 1976. This means that Adel is .... Mohammed.
   a. older b. older than c. as old as d. so old as
3. This old car is not .... that modern one.
   a. as fast as b. so fast as c. less faster than d. a & b
4. Omar is as tall as Ahmed. Ahmed is the same .... as Omar.
   a. high b. height c. tall d. length

Check your understanding

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة المقارنة بدون (than) :

- Hany is more intelligent than Samy.
= Samy is intelligent, but Hany is more intelligent.

٢ لاحظ استخدام صيغة (كلما ...... كلما ....) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

The + صفة مقارنة + جملة السبب , + the + صفة مقارنة + جملة النتيجة

- Studying hard makes you get higher marks.
= The harder you study, the higher marks you get.

٣ لاحظ الصيغ التالية:

1. جملة تفضيل = No + جملة تساوي

- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
= No river in the world is as long as the Nile.

2. جملة تفضيل + subj. + have/has + ever + p.p. ......

= Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ...... + such + (a/an) + adj. صفة + noun اسم
= Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ...... + (a/an) + noun اسم + as + adj. صفة + as + noun اسم

- She is the most beautiful girl I have ever seen.
= - I have never seen such a beautiful girl.
- Ali is the cleverest boy I have ever known.
= - I have never known a boy as clever as Ali.

3. طرف أول + be + as + صفة + as + طرف ثان

- الطرف الأول + has / have + the same + الاسم من الصفة + as + الطرف الثاني
= الطرف الأول + and + الطرف الثاني + have + the same + الاسم من الصفة
= الطرف الأول + and + الطرف الثاني + be + of the same + الاسم من الصفة

- Aya is as beautiful as Mariam.
= Aya has the same beauty as Mariam.
= Aya and Mariam have the same beauty.
= Aya and Mariam are of the same beauty.

Mini Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My grandmother is old, but my grandfather is ....
   a. as old b. older c. older than d. the oldest
2. The more you exercise, ... you get.
   a. the fittest b. fitter c. the fitter d. more fit
3. Ahmed is the cleverest student in class. No student in class is .... him.
   a. as clever as b. as cleverer as c. a & b d. the cleverest
4. I am as old as you. We both are .... the same age.
   a. to b. on c. as d. of

General Exercise On Language — Apply

تنويه: التدريبات التالية مرتبة تصاعديًا حسب مستويات التفكير طبقًا لهرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't like this jacket. It is .... than I have expected. (أبو سعيد ٢٢-٢٠٢٣)
   a. large b. larger c. the largest d. largest
2. She is a really nice person - one of .... people I know. (أشت سلسيل ٢٢-٢٠٢٣)
   a. the nicer b. the nice c. the most nice d. the nicest
3. It's a very valuable painting. It's .... painting in the gallery. (أشت سلسيل ٢٢-٢٠٢٣)
   a. the most valuable b. more valuable
   c. the more valuable d. a valueless

4. The giraffe is .... animal of all. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. tall b. the tallest c. taller d. more tall
5. The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't .... I thought. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
 a. near b. far as c. as far as d. farthest
6. There are .... people at the meeting than at the last one. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
 a. fewer b. fewest c. few d. the fewest
7. Let's leave. This's .... film I have ever watched. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
 a. a bad b. a worse c. the worst d. worst
8. This is .... persuasive person I have ever seen. (أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. the most b. less c. the more d. least
9. Omar worked .... all of us. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. hard b. hardest c. harder than d. so hard as
10. I think it will be warmer next week .... this week.
 a. than it is b. as it is c. than is it d. as is it

(أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

11. Out of the films I've seen, this one is .... (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. sad b. sadly c. sadder d. the saddest
12. He is not .... reliable as his friend. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. lessen b. less c. more d. so
13. Tomorrow, I will be .... We can meet then. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. busy b. busier c. less busier d. less busy
14. The second exercise is .... more difficult than the first.
 a. so b. as c. rather d. many

(بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

15. Yesterday was cold but today is .... (مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. much more cold b. even less colder
 c. even colder d. such a cold
16. .... you practise something, the weaker you are at it.
 a. The most b. The more c. The less d. The least

(أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

17. Ziad is the .... of the twins. (أجا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. as tall as
18. Personally, I hate travelling by bus. Trains are .... (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. much more comfortable b. more comfortable than
 c. a lot most comfortable d. far least comfortable

Murad is 50 kilograms heavier than her.

19. Murad is .... than Haidy. He is 50 kilograms heavier than her.
    a. much heavier
    b. much lighter
    c. slightly heavier
    d. slightly lighter

(الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)

20. The Old Man and the Sea is Hemingway's .... book. (ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)
    a. popular
    b. more popular
    c. most popular
    d. the most popular

21. My youngest son's .... concern nowadays is the internet.
    a. the biggest
    b. bigger
    c. the bigger
    d. biggest

(أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

22. Read the example below then choose the best sentence that gives a similar meaning.
    - The mother and her baby are healthy. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
    a. The mother is as well as her baby.
    b. The mother and her baby are the same healthy.
    c. The mother is as good health as her baby.
    d. The mother is the same healthy as her baby.

23. I love all my family, but I love my father .... of all.
    a. more
    b. much
    c. the more
    d. most

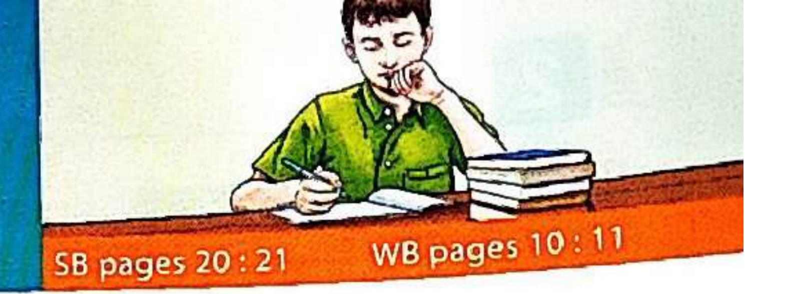
(مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

24. Green is my wife's .... favourite colour. (أحمد حوافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
    a. most
    b. the most
    c. the more
    d. the less

25. We need to grow food more .... (أحمد حوافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
    a. sustain
    b. sustainable
    c. sustainably
    d. a & c

26. The taller the basketball player is, the .... (القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
    a. best
    b. good
    c. well
    d. better

تنويه • ذاكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.



PART TWO | LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 20 : 21 WB pages 10 : 11

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

difficult(adj)	صعب	personal(adj)	شخصي
give ... a taste of their own medicine	يسقي ... من نفس الكأس	personally(adv)	شخصيًا/بشكل شخصي
option(n)	اختيار - بديل	remember(ed) (v)	يتذكر
past(n - adj)	الماضي	repeat(ed) (v)	يكرر - يعيد
		simple(adj)	بسيط

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

achieve(d) (v)	يحقق / يُنجِز	lamb(n)	لحم الضأن - حَمَل
attractive(adj)	جذاب	light(adj - n)	خفيف - ضوء
beef(n)	لحم بقري	mind map(n)	خريطة ذهنية
beliefs(n)	معتقدات	name(d) (v)	يُسمِّي / يذكر اسم
bowl(n)	سلطانية	phrase(n)	عبارة
chópsticks(n)	عيدان الأكل (يستخدمها الصينيون)	product(n)	مُنتَج
		questionnaire(n)	استبيان
complicated(adj)	مُعقَّد - مُركب	relatives(n)	أقارب
confused(adj)	متحيِّر	respect(ed) (v - n)	يحترم - احترام
consider(ed) (v)	يَعتَبِر أن - يفكر في	rest(ed) (n - v)	المُتبقى - راحة - يستريح
design (ed) (v)	يُصمِّم/يضع تصميم	rude(adj)	وقح
details(n)	تفاصيل	share(d) (v)	يشارك - يتقاسم
distant(adj)	بعيد	taste(d) (v/n)	يتذوق - مذاق
foreigner(n)	شخص أجنبي	the British(n)	البريطانيون
general(adj)	عام	type(n)	نوع
heavy(adj)	دَسِم (تصف الطعام)	vertically(adv)	رأسيًا
introduce(d) (v)	يُقدِّم		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعَلُّم المُستهدفة _ هام جدًا.

Memorise		Understand
option(n)	خيار- بديل	a choice اختيار you can make in a particular معيّن situation
personal(adj)	شخصي	belonging يخص or relating يتعلق بـ to one person, rather than وليس to other people or to people in general بصفة عامة
simple(adj)	بسيط	not difficult or complicated معقد to do or understand

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. If you want to make someone suffer, give them a .... of their own medicine. (الدونيين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. test b. taste c. spoonful d. drop
2. Stop interfering with my .... life. It's nothing of your own business.
   a. special b. personal c. common d. public
3. I'll show you how to use this user-friendly application. I'm sure you'll find it very ....
   a. difficult b. complex c. complicated d. simple
4. You have no other .... Take it all or leave it all.
   a. option b. tradition c. questionnaire d. event
5. It is .... to me to do all these jobs alone. I need somebody to help me.
   a. easy b. simple c. difficult d. different
6. What happened in the .... can't be changed.
   a. future b. past c. days to come d. b & c
7. Keep a diary to help you .... what you are supposed to do.
   a. forget b. remind c. remember d. avoid

8. It is foolish of you to .... your mistakes.
a. apologise for b. learn from c. avoid d. repeat

9. ...., I prefer we go to Alexandria for the summer holiday.
a. Personally b. Personal c. Vertical d. Vertically

2 Important vocabulary

10. .... are a pair of thin sticks that are used for eating with , especially in China. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. Forks b. Choppers c. Spoons d. Chopsticks

11. I need help with this lesson because I find it .... (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated

12. About sixty-five close friends and .... attended the wedding.
a. officers b. enemies c. relatives d. passengers
(ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)

13. Rokaya was .... after her grandmother who had the same.
a. considered b. named c. achieved d. introduced

14. He lives in a/an .... village, which makes it difficult to visit him very often.
a. light b. heavy c. distant d. attractive

15. When someone is .... , they are socially incorrect in behaviour.
a. polite b. cute c. brilliant d. rude

16. .... are people who do not change their traditions easily.
a. The British b. British c. British city d. British man

17. He is healthy and fit because he eats .... food and does regular exercise.
a. heavy b. light c. tight d. a & c

18. He .... his new friend to us.
a. considered b. rested c. achieved d. introduced

19. I can't eat anything else. I've already had a .... meal.
a. light b. heavy c. distant d. simple

20. You are expected to show respect to other people's ....
a. believe b. believes c. beliefs d. believers

21. He gets .... when I give him several instructions at a time.
a. confused b. confusing c. simple d. traditional

22. He has .... great success as a surgeon. He is well-known all over the country.
a. considered b. named c. achieved d. introduced

23. A good writer is supposed to have a/an .... style to make him popular among readers.
a. rude b. heavy c. distant d. attractive

24. A/An .... is a written list of questions that are answered by a number of people so that information can be collected from the answers.
a. research b. questionnaire c. test d. examination

25. It is good behaviour to show .... to old people.
a. respect b. disrespect c. rudeness d. greed

26. Buying all these toys is .... a waste of money.
a. considered b. named c. achieved d. introduced

27. Concentrate on the general ideas, not the small ....
a. lambs b. beefs c. beliefs d. details

3 Definitions

28. To be .... means not difficult or complicated to do or understand.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple

29. A/An .... is a choice you can make in a particular situation.
a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. option

30. To be .... means belonging or relating to one person, rather than to other people or to people in general.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	a great deal of يحقق الكثير من	make	a choice	يختار
get	confused يتحير		a good breakfast	نعد إفطارًا جيدًا
go	abroad يسافر إلي الخارج		a lot of difference	يحدث فرقًا كبيرًا
show	respect يُظهر الاحترام		noise	يُحدث ضجيجًا
sound	nice يبدو لطيفًا	use	simple language	يستخدم لغة بسيطة

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
confused	متحيِّر	puzzled, perplexed, mystified
difficult	غير ملائم	inconvenient, inappropriate, unsuitable
difficult	صعب	hard, confusing, mystifying - mysterious - complicated
heavy	ثقيل الوزن	weighty, overweight
heavy	قوي	forceful, strong
personal	شخصي - خاص	private, individual
respect (n)	احترام	esteem, regard
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم بـ	obey, follow
respect (v)	يحترم	esteem, show regard for

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
difficult	صعب	easy, simple	سهل - بسيط
difficult	غير ملائم	convenient	ملائم
heavy	دَسِم	light	خفيف - ضوء
heavy	قوي	gentle	لطيف
heavy	ثقيل الوزن	thin, light	نحيف
heavy	غزير (تصف المطر)	light	خفيف
personal	شخصي - خاص	general, public	عام
respect (n)	احترام	contempt, disrespect	احتقار - ازدراء
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم بـ	ignore, disobey	يخالف - يعصي
respect (v)	يحترم	scorn	يحتقر - يزدري
simple	بسيط	complicated, complex	مُعقَّد

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

option	
option (n) اختيار - بديل	- I had two options.
optional (adj) اختياري (ليس إجباري)	- This offer is optional.

personal		
personify (v)	يُجسِّد	- Salah personifies the values of self-dependence and perseverance. الاعتماد على النفس والمثابرة
person (n)	شخص	- Mr Khalid is a good person.
personality (n)	شخصية	- She has got a strong personality.
personal (adj)	شخصي	- He has some personal problems
personally (adv)	بشكل شخصي	- Personally, I don't want to accept this offer.
simple		
simplify (v)	يبسط	- A good teacher can simplify complicated information.
simplicity (n)	البساطة	- I like your style أسلوب because of its simplicity.
simple (adj)	بسيط	- I like your style because it is simple.
simply (adv)	ببساطة	- This essay is simply very good.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a great deal of	كثير من	distant past	الماضي البعيد
as part of	كجزء من	in general,	بصفة عامة
at all	على الإطلاق	light food	طعام خفيف
at the weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية	likely to	أكثر عُرضة لـ/ من الممكن أن
be careful about	يحرص على	small changes to	تغييرات صغيرة في

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

come from	يأتي من	help with	يساعد في
decide on	يختار / يحدد	relate to	يتعلق بـ
expect ... to	يتوقع من ... أن	start with	يبدأ بـ
find out (about)	يكتشف (عن)	think about	يفكر في

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

fried - grilled

• **fried (adj)** مقلي / مُحمَّر (في الزيت)

- She likes fried potatoes.

• **grilled (adj)** مشوي (في شواية أو علي الفحم)

- I like grilled fish.

optional - free

• **optional (adj)** اختياري (ليس إجباري)

- This question is optional. You don't have to answer it.

• **free (adj)** مجاني (بدون مقابل)

- The drinks are free on Fridays only.

• **free (adj)** حُرّ (غير محبوس أو مقيد)

- I want to hear your free opinion.

• **free (adj)** متفرغ (غير مشغول)

- We can meet at the weekend. We both will be free.

personal - private - public

• **personal (adj)** شخصي (يخص الحياة الشخصية للفرد)

- Don't ask a lot of personal questions. People don't like to talk about that.

• **private (adj)** خاص (غير عام - لا تريد إطلاع الأخرين عليه)

- He goes to work in his private car.(تخصه هو / ملكه)
- She doesn't want to discuss her private life with you. (تخصها هي)

• **public (adj)** عام

- Mass media affect public opinion.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. I am sure you will make a ....

a. different b. difference c. choose
d. choice e. chose

2. "I find this question very difficult." This means that the question is .... for me.

a. hard b. confusing c. confused
d. easy e. familiar

3. Hot pepper has a strong taste." The adjective 'strong' in this sentence is antonymous with ....

a. gentle b. weak c. sweet
d. powerful e. mighty

4. "You have to respect the law." In this sentence, 'respect' can be replaced by ....

a. disobey b. break c. scorn
d. obey e. follow

5. "She shows much respect to her husband." The word 'respect' can be replaced by ....

a. disrespect b. esteem c. regard
d. rudeness e. cowardly

6. "He looked confused and didn't know what to say." The word 'confused' here is an antonym of ....

a. annoyed b. clear-headed c. puzzled
d. bad-tempered e. confident

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The choice you have recently .... was not the best one.

a. fallen b. made c. served d. gone

2. You must .... respect to your teachers.

a. show b. use c. get d. do

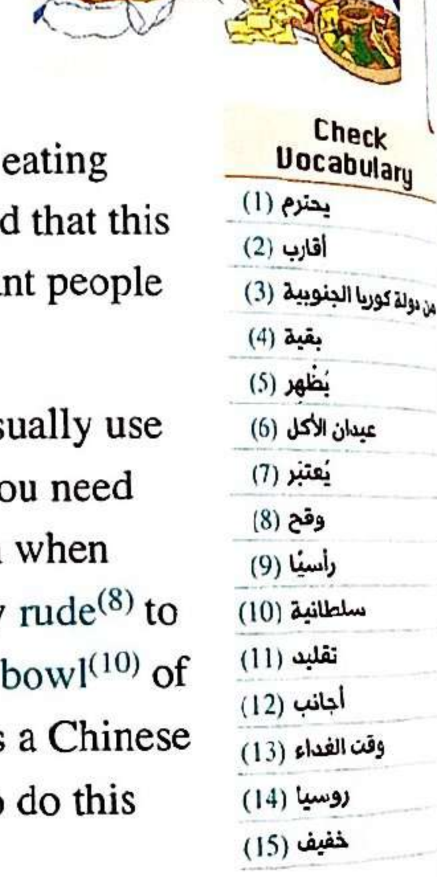
3. It is better if a teacher .... simple language to explain the lesson.
   a. shows b. uses c. gets d. does
4. "He looked confused and didn't know what to say." The word 'confused' here means ....
   a. clear-headed b. confident c. puzzled d. a & b
5. His ideas are not traditional. They are ....
   a. conventional b. novel c. old-fashioned d. b & c
6. .... is to complicated as unconventional is to traditional.
   a. Simple b. Conventional c. Modern d. Novel
7. Something that is not personal is ....
   a. public b. private c. special d. local
8. "We had a heavy dinner." This means our dinner was not ....
   a. light b. overweight c. gentle d. thin
9. This question is .... You needn't answer it.
   a. traditions b. traditional c. options d. optional
10. As a writer, he is famous for the .... of his style.
   a. simplify b. simplicity c. simple d. simply
11. As a writer, he is famous for his ability to express his ideas quite ....
   a. simplify b. simplicity c. simple d. simply
12. His strong .... makes him influential.
   a. person b. personality c. personal d. a & b
13. I haven't decided .... a place for the meeting yet.
   a. to b. on c. of d. that
14. I have nothing to do at the moment. This means I am ....
   a. optional b. option c. free d. freedom
15. You don't have to pay for the child's meal. It is for ....
   a. optional b. free c. expensive d. cost
16. .... fish is cooked directly on the fire.
   a. Grilled b. Cooked c. Fried d. Baked
17. .... fish is cooked directly in the oil.
   a. Grilled b. Cooked c. Fried d. Baked

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 21)

Can you find three ways that people show respect when they have meals together?



A. Personally, I think it's important to respect[1] our older relatives.[2] When South Korean[3] families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest[4] of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows[5] your respect for the most important people in your family.

B. As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks[6] to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered[7] very rude[8] to put your chopsticks vertically[9] into your bowl[10] of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition,[11] but for me, foreigners[12] who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

C. In my opinion, lunchtime[13] isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia[14] it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light[15] food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يحترم
(2) أقارب
(3) من دولة كوريا الجنوبية
(4) بقية
(5) يُظهر
(6) عيدان الأكل
(7) يُعتبر
(8) وقح
(9) رأسيًا
(10) سلطانية
(11) تقليد
(12) أجانب
(13) وقت الغداء
(14) روسيا
(15) خفيف

Writing a professional questionnaire

(WB page 10)

When you write a questionnaire, the type of questions you use is important. The questions should use simple language and shouldn't be difficult to understand. You don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask personal questions. People generally won't want to answer these. Ask one thing at a time. Make sure you don't have two questions in one, for example, 'Do you go abroad often with your friends'. And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember. When you are ready, decide on the best time to ask your questions - before people start to forget !

What do people eat for breakfast in your country ?

(WB page 11)



Adam : As your probably know[1], people eat very different things for breakfast around the world.

Shady : Yes, they do. In my opinion[2], breakfast is the best meal of the day. What do people eat in other countries ?

Adam : Let's start with the UK. It is thought that[3] the British have the most unhealthy traditional breakfast. They have fried eggs, beans, toast and fried meat.

Shady : Personally[4], I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. What about the French ?

Adam : I understand that[5] the French have a much smaller breakfast : just a croissant or piece of bread.

Shady : That sounds nice, but for me[6], I'm happy with my usual breakfast of bread, cheese and an egg ! One piece of bread would be too little.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لعلك تعلم أن
(2) فى رأيى
(3) يُعتقد أنَّ
(4) شخصيًا
(5) إننى أدرك أن
(6) بالنسبة لى

2 Listening Text

Tips on Writing a questionnaire

(SB page 20)

When you're writing a questionnaire,[1] you need to ask the right[2] questions. Some questions are a lot more useful[3] than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.[4]



Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful[5] to use simple language. If you use complicated[6] language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings.[7] Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' instead.[8]

Thirdly, don't have too many options.[9] People get confused[10] when there are more than six options to choose from.[11]

Don't ask personal[12] questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time.[13] Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the distant[14] past, especially if they are about something that was boring.[15]

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

Check Vocabulary

(1) استبيان
(2) صحيح
(3) مفيد
(4) اختلاف
(5) مفيد
(6) معقد
(7) معاني
(8) بدلًا من ذلك
(9) خيارات
(10) متحيّر
(11) يختار من بين
(12) شخصي
(13) في المرة الواحدة
(14) بعيد
(15) ممل

Part IV Language

تنويه • راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثانى.

Exercise On Language



تنويه • التدريبات التالية مرتبة تصاعديًا حسب مستويات التفكير طبقًا لهرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Football is............ popular game in Egypt.
   a. the most   b. less   c. most   d. more
2. This is .... picture I've ever seen.
   a. the nicest   b. nicest   c. nicer   d. nice
3. This computer is not .... expensive as that I bought yesterday.
   a. most   b. as   c. less   d. more
4. She is as .... as Sama. They are the same height.
   a. long   b. heavy   c. high   d. tall
5. A chair is............ comfortable than a sofa.
   a. least   b. little   c. the least   d. less
6. This is the .... company in the world.
   a. more big   b. biggest   c. bigger   d. most big
7. English is .... than any other language.
   a. the easiest   b. more easy   c. easier   d. easy
8. You look much............ than yesterday.
   a. the happiest   b. more happy   c. happier   d. happy
9. This is the .... test I've ever taken.
   a. hardest   b. less hard   c. harder   d. hard
10. He is not .... reliable as his friend.
   a. lessen   b. less   c. more   d. so
11. The food is not nearly so .... as it was in the past.
   a. the best   b. worse   c. better   d. good
12. Alaa is a .... doctor than Omar.
   a. the best   b. best   c. better   d. good
13. Water is the .... expensive of all liquids.
   a. more   b. less   c. least   d. most

14. An elephant is........... as a tiger.
    a. as fast b. fastest c. faster d. not as fast
15. Bill is much........... than Tom.
    a. the most intelligent b. least intelligent
    c. more intelligent d. intelligent
16. Nobody in our company is .... Abdulrahman.
    a. as efficient b. most efficient than
    c. as efficient as d. efficient
17. Climbing is the .... dangerous sport in the world.
    a. as b. less c. most d. more
18. He has much .... friends than me.
    a. more b. the least c. most d. many
19. Women are .... divers than men.
    a. worst b. the worst c. worse d. bad
20. Cars are twice as .... as they were a few years ago.
    a. more expensive b. most expensive
    c. expensive d. less expensive
21. Which do you think is .... city in the world ?
    a. exciting b. more exciting
    c. most exciting d. the most exciting
22. A woolen suit is not as .... as the clothing climbers use today.
    a. waterproof b. more waterproof
    c. less waterproof d. most waterproof
23. Mount Fuji is .... mountain in Japan.
    a. highest b. highest c. most high d. the highest
24. Mr Hassan doesn't earn .... money as I do.
    a. the most b. more c. so much d. as many
25. Her friend is .... than her.
    a. the wealthiest b. wealthier
    c. wealthiest d. wealthy

2 Special cases

26. Which is ...., the Nile or the Amazon?
    a. as long b. the longest c. longer d. long
27. You didn't do as .... work as I did.
    a. much b. least c. less d. more
28. The warmer the weather is, the .... I feel.
    a. more good b. best c. better d. good

29. It is .... colder here than in Cairo.
a. most b. more c. much d. very

30. I don't read as .... books as you do.
a. many b. most c. more d. much

31. Of the four students, Bassim is ....
a. clever b. cleverer c. cleverest d. the cleverest

32. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even ....
a. most pretty b. prettier c. prettiest d. pretty

33. Today is .... hotter than yesterday.
a. more b. less c. least d. a little

34. He was the team's .... player.
a. the best b. best c. better d. the better

35. It was .... of her to waste all her money.
a. least foolish b. foolish
c. less foolish d. more foolish than

36. Tablets are becoming .... popular nowadays.
a. more and more b. much and more
c. more and less d. less and more

37. That is the most beautiful scene I ....
a. has ever seen b. ever see
c. have ever seen d. ever seen

38. The more books she reads, ... ignorant she is.
a. more b. the less c. much d. less

39. Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked ....
a. badly b. more badly c. the worst d. worse

40. Those are my two laptops. One is an Apple and the .... is an HP.
a. late b. later c. latest d. latter

41. This is my first .... successful book.
a. more b. most c. the most d. the least

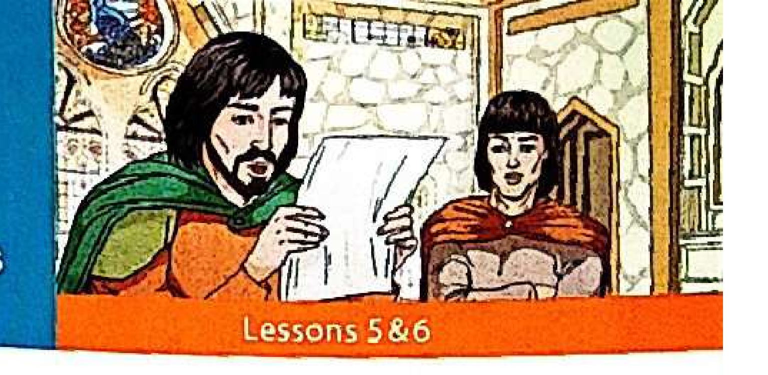
42. This secretary seems ....
a. more lazy b. lazily c. lazy d. laziest

3 Check your understanding

43. Sama doesn't have as long hair as Rodayna. Whose hair is less long?
a. Sama's b. Rodayna's c. Both d. None

44. Rokaya has the same cleverness as Leen. This exactly means ....
   a. Both Rokaya and Leen are clever
   b. Neither Rokaya nor Leen is clever
   c. Rokaya isn't so clever as Leen
   d. Rokaya is as clever as Leen
45. I have never seen such an intelligent young man. This exactly means ....
   a. This young man is very intelligent
   b. This is the first time I have seen such an intelligent man
   c. I have never seen intelligent young men before
   d. I haven't ever seen intelligent young men before
46. Mohammed Omar is the tallest person at school.
   This exactly means ....
   a. Mohammed Omar is as tall as everyone at school
   b. no one at school is taller than or even as tall as Mohammed Omar
   c. someone at school is as tall as Mohammed Omar
   d. no one at school is less tall than Mohammed Omar
47. If you go on eating a lot of rice, you will put on even more weight.
   This means ....
   a. the more rice you eat, the less weight you put on
   b. the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on
   c. the less rice you eat, the more weight you put on
   d. the more rice you eat, the more weight you lose
48. Naglaa is clever, but Esraa is cleverer. This means ....
   a. Esraa is less clever than Naglaa
   b. Naglaa is much cleverer than Esraa
   c. Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa
   d. Naglaa is as clever as Esraa
49. This is the youngest tree in my garden. What does this mean?
   a. No other tree in my garden is as young as this one.
   b. Only another tree in my garden is as young as this one.
   c. Some other trees in my garden are as young as this one.
   d. Some other trees in my garden are the same age as this one.
50. This is the cheapest shirt in the shop. What does this mean?
   a. This shirt is the same price as another one.
   b. This shirt is more in price than another one.
   c. This shirt has the same price as another one.
   d. This shirt has the least price in the shop.

PART THREE | Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه
• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear). بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة فى الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

تنويه
أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نَص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات فى الجزء المخصص لذلك فى نهاية الكتاب.

anger(n)	غضب - سَخَط	pleased(adj)	مسرور
angry(adj)	غاضب	scene(n)	مَشْهد (فى مسرحية أو فيلم)
deceive(d) (v)	يخدع	send ... away (phr. v)	يطرد
deserve(d) (v)	يستحق	serious(adj)	جاد / خطير
exit(ed) (v - n)	يخرج / يغادر / يترك - مَخْرَج	stage directions	تعليمات خشبة المسرح
ill(adj)	سيء / ردىء	succeed(ed) (v)	ينجح - يتبع / يَخْلِف
income(n)	الدَخْل	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم
inheritance(n)	تَركة - ميراث	surprised(adj)	مندهش
lie(d) (v - n)	يكذب - كذبة	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق بـ - الثقة
loyalty(n)	طاعة / ولاء / إخلاص	truth(n)	الحقيقة - الصدق
my heart is broken	قلبي منفطر (حزين جدًا)		

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Our .... to our country is something we are born with.
   a. truth b. income c. existence d. loyalty
   (مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

2. I think she .... punishment for her bad behaviour.
   a. reserves b. conserves c. deserves d. preserves
   (أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

3. I strongly .... the view that education should be available to everyone. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)

a. support b. risk c. disrespect d. disagree

4. Don't .... anyone who lies. (الجيزة - اكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)

a. ignore b. trust c. beg d. cart

Part II Grammatical Hints

استخدام تعبيرات الكمية كضمائر Using quantifiers as pronouns

يمكن أن تُستخدم تعبيرات الكمية التالية كضمائر تشير إلي عدد أو كمية:
والضمير يعمل عمل الاسم ويحل محله ويتبعه الفعل

some – any - many - much - little - few - each - either - all - every - both - none ... etc.

A ship arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many (=Many passengers) died, but some (=some passengers) were able to grow food and survive.

ex. - A lot of students dream about joining the Faculty of Medicine, but only few (= few students) can achieve this goal.

called يُسَمَّي / يُدعي

لاحظ استخدام (called) في الصيغة التالية:

... noun + who / which / that + be + called ... .

= ... noun + called ... .

ex. - I have a little daughter who is called Sama.
= I have a little daughter called Sama.

ex. - Abdulrahman wrote a story which is called Sad Horizon.
= Abdulrahman wrote a story called Sad Horizon.

Try + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- **try to + inf.** يحاول أن يفعل شئ مع بذل مجهود

ex. - I tried to answer the question.

- **try + (inf. + ing)** يجرب ليرى النتيجة (لا يوجد بها بذل أى مجهود)

ex. - Try taking an aspirin. Your headache might disappear.

let / allow + obj. مفعول ...

لاحظ الفرق بين (let - allow) في الصيغة التالية:

... let + obj. مفعول + inf. ... .

... allow + obj. مفعول + to + inf. ... .

ex. - The manager does not let anyone smoke in the office.
- The manager does not allow anyone to smoke in the office.

في حالة عدم وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing):

ex. - The manager does not allow smoking in the office.

else ايضاً / اخر

تستخدم (else) بعد أدوات الاستفهام بمعنى (ايضًا) :

• Q.W. أداة استفهام + else أيضًا ..... ?
- Who else did you meet?
- Where else have you been?

تستخدم (else) بعد تراكيب (some - any - no - every) بمعنى (اخر) :

• someone / anyone / something / anything .... + else آخر
- Someone else is knocking on the door.
- I don't want anything else. Thank you.

كما يمكن استخدام (else) بعد (or) للتحذير :

- Do your homework or else you will be punished.

that / which is why + جملة = so + جملة لذلك

- She was very ill. That's why she stayed at home.
= She was very ill, so she stayed at home.

The + Nationalities

تستخدم (the) قبل صفات الجنسية التالية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة ويتبعها فعل جمع:

- The British / the English / the Irish / the Welsh / the Spanish / the French / the Dutch / the Swiss
- The British are generally tradition lovers.

كما تستخدم (the) بنفس الطريقة قبل صفات الجنسية المنتهية بـ (ese) :

- The Japanese / the Chinese/ the Sudanese........ etc.
- The Japanese are hard-working people.

اما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب ان تجمع بعد (the) لتؤدي نفس المعني:

- The Egyptians / the Russians/ the Arabs/ the Scots/ the Turks...etc.
- The Egyptians have a great history and a promising future.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a close friend .... Abdul Nasser.
   a. is called b. who is called c. called d. b & c
2. I tried .... him, but he refused.
   a. helping b. to help c. to helping d. help
3. I advise you to try .... another key. It might open the lock.
   a. using b. to use c. to using d. use
4. My father doesn't allow any of us .... loud music at night.
   a. play b. to play c. playing d. played
5. My father doesn't allow .... loud music at night.
   a. play b. to play c. playing d. played
6. My father doesn't let any of us .... loud music at night.
   a. play b. to play c. playing d. played
7. When I arrived home, I didn't hear the voices of my brothers and sisters. .... were already in bed.
   a. Every b. Some c. All d. Each
8. I don't want to have pizza. I'll have something ....
   a. else b. too c. also d. as well
9. Who .... did you meet at the party yesterday?
   a. also b. as well c. as well as d. else
10. He was tired. That's why he went to bed early." In this context, 'That's why' can be replaced by '............' .
    a. as b. so c. also d. else
11. The French .... people who like fashion and beauty.
    a. has b. is c. are d. was

Part III Language Skills

1 Writing Tips – introducing personal opinion and general belief

* التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي والمعتقدات المُتَعارف عليها :

عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **Personally, I think that +** جملة ... شخصيا (أعتقد أن) ...
- Personally, I think that he will win the race.

- **I understand that … but for me + جملة …** إنني أدرك أن … لكن بالنسبة لي …
  - I understand that England is a great country, but for me Egypt is the greatest country ever.
- **In my opinion, + جملة …**
  - In my opinion, education is the best investment استثمار in the country's future. في رأيي …

عند التعبير عن المعتقدات السائدة يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **It's believed / thought that + جملة …**
  - It's believed (thought) that the Ancient Egyptians discovered America! يُعتقَد أن …
- **As you probably know, + جملة …**
  - As you probably know, no one can travel abroad without having a passport. لعلك تعلم أن …

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

Model Essay

*** Write an essay of about 180 words about the "the ideal food" :**

The ideal food

What is your opinion about ideal food? Does it mean delicious food? Does it mean healthy food? Without any doubt, the answer is both. The ideal food is both delicious and healthy. However, it is important for food to be healthy more than being delicious.

What are the qualities of healthy food? There are different qualities of healthy food. The first of these qualities is that it must contain everything the body needs. A healthy diet has the right amounts of protein, fats and carbohydrates. It should also have all the vitamins that the body needs.

Healthy food must be the right amount of everything. Too much food will surely lead to health problems like putting on weight. Too little food will lead to weakness and food-deficiency نقص problems. The rule is: Get enough of everything.

It is important for food to be delicious. Food is one of the enjoyments of life. However, don't let your love for delicious food make you forget that food must be healthy in the first place. If the deliciousness of food makes you enjoy your meal, your health makes you enjoy your life. To sum up, ideal food is healthy, delicious and of the right amount.

3 Translation الترجمة

تلويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

① Translate into Arabic :

1. Forests, despite being major suppliers of oxygen, are being destroyed at an incredible rate, which is regarded as a threat to life on earth.
2. The Egyptian government finalized plans to establish a new administrative capital as it's the only solution to Cairo's congested streets and it will be home to all government bodies.
3. Many famous sports teams have recently added a new member to their organizations - a nutritionist. Athletes have become aware that food affects their performance.

② Translate into English :

١. تحتوي جميع الكائنات الحية على جينات تتحكم في كل ما يخص الكائن الحي، مثل سرعة النمو والشكل العام وحتى الأمراض التي يمكن أن يُصاب بها.

٢. إن عدد السكان في مصر في زيادة مستمرة طول الوقت، وهذا يتطلب استصلاح المزيد من الأراضي الصحراوية، لإنتاج المزيد من الطعام الذي يلبي احتياجاتهم.

٣. يعارض الكثير اجراء أي تجارب علمية تهدف الى التدخل في تكوين الطبيعة البشرية، ووضح ذلك في المعارضة الكبيرة لاستنساخ بعض الكائنات الحية أو حتى بعض البشر باستخدام الهندسة الوراثية.

٤. إن غزو الصحراء، وتحويلها الى أرض خضراء هو أملنا الوحيد في مستقبل أفضل للأجيال القادمة، دون الحاجة لاستخدام الهندسة الوراثية التي يخشى الناس أضرارها.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

administrative capital	عاصمة إدارية	harms	أضرار
athletes	الرياضيون	human nature	الطبيعة البشرية
aware of	على دراية بـ	incredible	غير معقول
balanced	متوازن	interference	تدخل
bodies	هيئات	inventions	الاختراعات
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	living beings	الكائنات الحية
cloning	استنساخ	major supplier	المصدر الرئيسي
congested	مزدحم	mankind	البشرية
deprive	يَحْرِم	motivated	بدافع /مدفوعاً بـ
desert reclamation	غزو / إستصلاح الصحراء	nutritionist	أخصائي تغذية
destroy	يدمّر	object	يعارض
diets	أنظمة غذائية	performance	أداء
discoveries	الاكتشافات		

establish	ينشئ	population	(عدد) السكان
experimentation	التجريب	rate	مُعَدَّل
finalize	يعد	research	البحث
form	تكوين	satisfy	يُلَبِّي
fulfill their needs	يلبي احتياجاتهم	than before	عن ذي قبل
generations	أجيال		

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للفائقين فقط

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amount

- **amount (of) (n)** كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)
  - Parents should increase the amount of time they spend with their children.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a considerable amount of كَمّ معقول من
- a small / tiny amount of كَمّ ضئيل من
- no amount of ... can / will .... فلن ... مهما زادت كمية
- No amount of medicine will help you unless you control what you eat.
- any amount of ما يكفي من
- The hospital doesn't have any amount of oxygen cylinders اسطوانات.

- **amount (ed) (v) + to + noun** ما يقرب من / ما يصل إلي حد
  - He spent what amounted to three months doing the research.

celebrate

- **celebrate(d) (v)** يحتفل بـ (بدون حرف جر)
  - We celebrated Sama's birthday last Friday.
- **celebrated = famous (adj)** مشهور
  - Professor Magdi Yacoub is a celebrated heart surgeon.
- **celebration (n)** احتفال
  - The New Year celebration was wonderful.
- **celebrity (n)** شخص مشهور / نجم (اسم يُعد)
  - Messi is a sporting celebrity.

• **celebrity (n)** الشهرة (اسم لا يُعد)
- Celebrity isn't all good. Some famous people suffer from it.

• **celebratory (adj)** احتفالي
- I gave a celebratory dinner for the success of the deal. الصفقة

occasion

• **occasion (n)** مناسبة (اجتماعية أو احتفال)
- I have met you on several occasions before.

• **occasion (for) (n)** وقت مناسب لـ
- When I finished the deal, I knew it was the occasion for celebrating it with my family.

• **occasion = cause / reason (n)** سبب (لا تُعد بهذا المعنى)
- I have my own occasion to refuse his offer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **If (the) occasion arises** إذا استدعت الضرورة
- If occasion arises when I am in Cairo, I will need to borrow some money from you.

• **on occasion** أحيانًا (في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)
- On occasion, I go for a walk by the Nile.

• **on the occasion of** بمناسبة
- On the occasion of his success, he was given a BMW as a present.

• **occasion(ed) (v)** يسبب حدوث
- Our team's great performance has occasioned us real happiness.

• **occasional (adj)** غير منتظم / عَرَضي /قليل
- Real friends usually forgive يغفر your occasional mistakes.

• **occasionally (adv)** بين الحين والآخر - قلّما
- My old friends and I meet very occasionally.

traditional

• **traditional = conventional (adj)** تقليدي - نابع من التقاليد
- He still follows the traditional family values.
- In the countryside, some people still have a traditional way of life.

• **tradition - traditions (n)** تقليد - تقاليد
- He still follows the traditions and values of family life.

• **in the tradition of** على نهج / على خطى / متشابه فى الاسلوب
- This man is a politician in the tradition of John kennedy.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

▶ تلويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح ◀

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... of persuasion إقناع will make her agree. She is stubborn. عنيدة
   a. Amount b. An amount c. No amount d. Any amount
2. " You have no occasion to be sad. You have got the full mark." The word 'occasion' in this sentence means ....
   a. reason b. event c. influence d. a & c
3. "He is a football celebrity." In this sentence, 'celebrity' is a synonym of ....
   a. fame b. star c. popularity d. celebrated
4. "He enjoys his celebrity." In this sentence, 'celebrity' is a synonym of ....
   a. famous b. star c. popularity d. celebrated
5. His style of writing is in the .... of Naguib Mahfouz.
   a. celebrated b. celebration c. occasion d. tradition
6. When I saw him counting a lot of money, I knew it was the best .... to ask him to pay back my money.
   a. celebrity b. event c. celebration d. occasion
7. The queen's visit .... them unforgettable excitement.
   a. simplified b. amounted c. celebrated d. occasioned
8. Although it wasn't his fault, he gave what .... an apology.
   a. amount in b. amounted to c. amount of d. no amount
9. By ...., the bride العروسة wears a white dress.
   a. celebration b. celebrity c. tradition d. traditional

No.	Answer & Explanation		الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	التعبير المنفي (No amount) هو الصحيح في ظل وجود الفعل المثبت (will make) وحسب معنى الجملة	
2.	a	التعبير (There's no reason) يعني (لا يوجد مبرر لـ)	
3.	b	كلمة (celebrity) بمعنى (شخصية مشهورة) هي مُرادف لكلمة (star) في هذا السياق	
4.	c	كلمة (celebrity) بمعنى (الشهرة) هي مُرادف لكلمة (popularity) في هذا السياق	
5.	d	التعبير (In the tradition of) يعني (على نهج / بنفس أسلوب)	
6.	d	الإسم (occasion) بمعنى (مناسبة / فُرصة) هو الصحيح حسب معنى	
7.	d	الفعل (occasioned) بمعنى (سبَّبت) من بين الإختيارات هو الصحيح حسب معنى وبناء الجملة	
8.	b	التعبير (What amounted to an apology) يعني (ما يُشبه اعتذار)	
9.	c	التعبير (By tradition) يعني (حسب التقاليد)	

2 Language Exercise for Advanced level تدريبات قواعد للفائقين

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You can swim as fast as ....
 a. hers b. his c. him d. he
2. For .... information, please telephone us.
 a. farthest b. further c. furthest d. far
3. Your answer looks right, but mine looks ....
 a. righter b. more righter c. more right d. a & c
4. .... people are entering the competition this year than last year.
 a. Least b. Little c. A few more d. A few
5. It is usual for an apple to taste ....
 a. worst b. badly c. good d. well
6. What do you like .... about playing football?
 a. less b. most c. the less d. many
7. The teacher told us .... an interesting story.
 a. so b. thus c. very d. such
8. Don't go any .... That dog might be dangerous.
 a. close b. closer c. the closest d. closet

9. Sama is .... of two sisters.
   a. more young b. youngest c. the younger d. younger
10. He is the cleverest member .... the group.
   a. of b. in c. into d. with
11. He is the cleverest member .... all groups.
   a. of b. to c. into d. with
12. Rodayna is quieter than ....
   a. me is b. I am c. am I d. mine
13. Yesterday was cold but today is ....
   a. much more cold b. even less colder
   c. even colder d. such cold

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	بعد الصيغة (as + adj. + as) يأتي ضمير مفعول في حال عدم وجود جملة
2.	b	تُستخدم صفة المقارنة (further) بمعنى (أكثر / المزيد من)
3.	d	كل من (righter – more right) صحيحتين كصيغتي مقارنة من الصفة (right) بمعنى (صحيح)، ولا يمكن استخدام (more) قبل صفة تنتهي بـ (er) الخاصة بالمقارنة
4.	c	السياق يتطلب صفة مقارنة نظراً لوجود (than)
5.	c	الفعل (taste) بهذا المعنى من الأفعال التقريرية التي يأتي بعدها صفة وليس ظرف
6.	b	التعبير (like … most) يعني (أكثر شيء يحبه في …)
7.	d	بعد (such) يأتي (a / an + adj. + noun)
8.	b	التعبير (go closer) يعني (يدنو من / يقترب أكثر من)
9.	c	يمكن استخدام (the) قبل صفة المقارنة إذا كانت تقارن بين طرفين وبعدها (of)
10.	b	حرف الجر (in) هو الأدق بعد صفة التفضيل إذا كان بعده اسم مفرد
11.	a	حرف الجر (of) هو الأدق بعد صفة التفضيل إذا كان بعده اسم جمع
12.	b	في حالة وجود جملة بعد (than) الخاصة بالمقارنة فيُستخدَم قبل هذا الفعل ضمير فاعل
13.	c	تُستخدم (even) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة للمعنى، والإختيار (a) خاطئ لأنه لا يمكن استخدام (more) قبل صفة تنتهي بـ (er) الخاصة بالمقارنة

Test on Unit 2

Understand   Apply   Create





Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Don't try to interfere. يتدخل It is something ....
   a. personal   b. private   c. privacy   d. person   e. personality
2. Heavy rains have unexpectedly hit Egypt this winter. This means .... rain hit Egypt.
   a. a lot of   b. little   c. light   d. much   e. plenty of
3. When something is difficult, it is ....
   a. foreigner   b. hardly   c. complicated   d. hard   e. interested
4. We should teach our children to know how to respect old people. The antonyms of "respect" are ....
   a. protect   b. ignore   c. appreciate   d. support   e. disobey

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. If something is ...., you have no right to try to know about it.
   a. special   b. personal   c. common   d. public
6. You have to pay your debt now. It is the only .... available.
   a. option   b. tradition   c. questionnaire   d. event
7. My villa is big, but yours is ....
   a. the biggest   b. bigger   c. so big   d. more big
8. The white blouse is nice, but I think the pink one is even ....
   a. less nice   b. nicer   c. nicest   d. nice
9. Today is .... colder than yesterday.
   a. more   b. less   c. bit   d. a bit
10. He was our school's .... head teacher.
    a. the best   b. best   c. better   d. the better
11. It was .... of her to stop arguing with him.
    a. wisest   b. wise   c. less wise   d. more wise
12. Smartphones are getting .... popular nowadays.
    a. more and more   b. much and more
    c. more and less   d. less and more

13. The more you eat, ... fit you get.
    a. the most b. the less c. most d. the least
14. This is his second .... successful film.
    a. more b. most c. the most d. the least
15. This car is large. Mine is ....
    a. the smallest b. smaller c. as small d. the smallest
16. Not all children are naughty. some .... quiet.
    a. look b. looks c. are looking d. looked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

What makes rice popular

It is thought that rice is eaten by more than half of the world's population. What makes it so popular? The rice plant grows in every continent in the world except for Australia. It is not expensive to grow and it is full of important vitamins, which make you healthy. It also has a lot of carbohydrates to give you energy.

Another reason is so popular is that there is not just one type of rice: there are 40,000 different types. It is perhaps not surprising, then, that rice can be cooked in many different ways.

In Egypt, people love rice dishes such as Rozz Me-ammer, which is rice with butter and chicken. In Europe, rice is the main ingredient in Spain's famous Paella, which is a mixture of rice, vegetables, and meat or fish. In Italy, they love Risotto, a rice dish with cheese, olive oil and meat or vegetables. Even in Britain, where rice does not grow, the most popular take-away food is hot Indian curries with rice, or Chinese food with rice.

People love rice in Asia. In Thailand, if you want to ask a person if they have eaten, you ask, "Have you had rice yet?" In China and Korea, the word for food is the same as the word for rice. In Iran, the best cooks are the people who can cook the best rice!

Rice is not only delicious and healthy. In Japan, many people eat Sushi: small balls of rice which people often eat with fish. Traditionally, the rice was used to help **preserve** the fish.

It is believed that more and more people will eat rice in the future and it will probably continue to be one of the world's most famous types of food.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. Which of the following is not a reason that rice is very popular?
 a. It is not expensive to grow
 b. There are many ways to eat it
 c. You can buy it in any shop
 d. It is healthy

18. Which rice dish is spicy?
 a. Pella
 b. Rozz Me-ammer
 c. Risotto
 d. Curry

19. The word for rice and food is probably the same in China and Korea because ....
 a. rice is part of all meals
 b. people have to eat rice
 c. there are not many words in these language
 d. you can only buy rice in the shops

20. The underlined word "**preserve**" means that rice ....
 a. tastes better
 b. lasts for a longer time than usual
 c. is cooked
 d. becomes salty

21. Rice is popular in Britain although it is ....
 a. cheap
 b. expensive
 c. not grown there
 d. healthy

22. Rice recipes are .... in different countries in the world.
 a. exactly the same
 b. different
 c. typical
 d. identical

23. It can be inferred يستنتج from the passage that rice is ....
 a. not a tasty dish
 b. a difficult dish to be prepared
 c. easy to be cooked
 d. an uncommon dish

24. Rice has lots of ....
 a. fats
 b. vitamins
 c. protein
 d. carbohydrates

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Food shortage is one of the most important problems that is expected to face us in the coming years. That's why we have to find out urgent solutions before it is too late.

(بسيون – ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

2. Translate into English :

من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك ولياقتك عن طريق تناول الأطعمة المناسبة بالكميات المناسبة، كما يجب ألا ننسى الدور الهام الذى تلعبه الرياضة فى الحفاظ على الصحة.

....

....

....

....

....

....

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

Your favourite dish or dishes

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

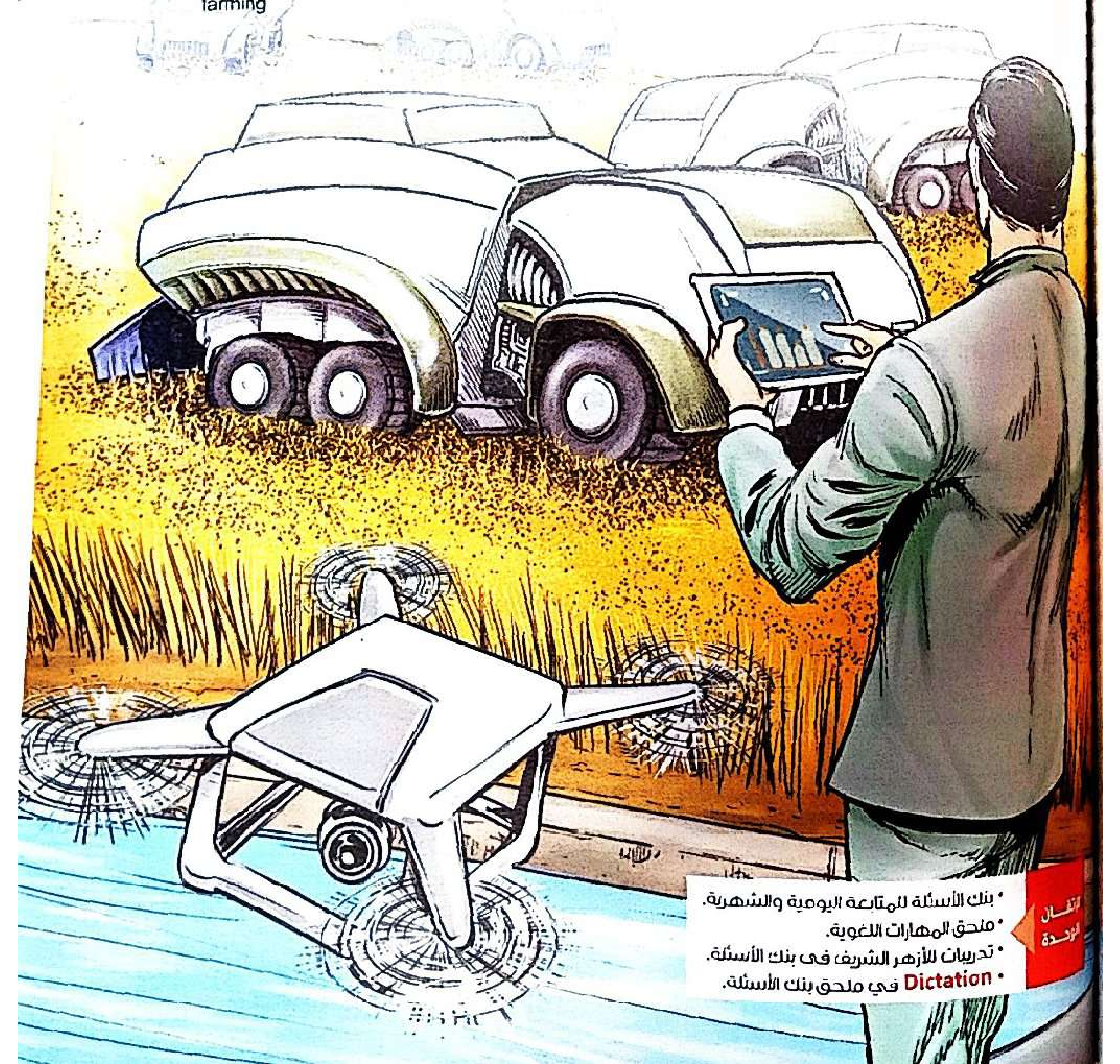
تنويه • للتدريب علي أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ .بنك الأسئلة.

UNIT
3 The future of food

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 14 : 19

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :**
  Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming
- **Writing :**
  Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary
- **Listening :**
  An interview with an expert on sustainable farming
- **Speaking :**
  Speculating about the future
- **Language :**
  Will / Be going to; Future continuous
- **Life skills :**
  Problem solving



إتقان الوحدة

- بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
- ملحق المهارات اللغوية.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى بنك الأسئلة.
- Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 14 : 15

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture(n)	(علم) الزراعة	million(n)	مليون
billion(n)	مليار	percent (adj - adv)	بالمائة (٪)
crop(n)	محصول غذائي	produce(d) (v)	يُنتِج
earth(n)	كوكب الأرض - تراب	produce(n)	مُنتَج زراعي
farming(n)	الزراعة	production(n)	إنتاج
innovation(n)	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	source(n)	مصدر
innovator(n)	مُبتكِر - مُخترِع	sustainable(adj)	مُستَدَام / دائم- صديق للبيئة
innovative(adj)	مُبتَكَر	variety(n)	تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف
livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع		

تنويه • من المُهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

cause(d) (v/n)	سبب - يُسبِّب	involve(d) (v)	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضَمِّن
change(d) (n - v)	تغيير - تَغَيُّر - يتغير	island(n)	جزيرة
chemicals(n)	المواد الكيميائية	keep - kept - kept(v)	يرعي - يستمر في
climate (n)	المناخ	land(n)	المساحة - الأرض اليابسة
create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر	level(n/adj)	مُستوَى - مُستوي
damage(d) (v - n)	يدمر / يُتلف - تَلَف	mention(ed) (v)	يَذْكُر - يتحدث عن
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمِّر - يُخَرِّب	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - مُنظمة
dry(adj)	جاف	project(n)	مشروع
education(n)	تعليم	proposal(n)	اقتراح - عرض
effect(n)	تأثير - أثر	rainforest(n)	غابة استوائية
electric(adj)	كهربي	real(adj)	حقيقي
electricity(n)	الكهرباء	remove(d) (v)	يزيل
elsewhere(adv)	في مكان آخر	researcher(n)	باحث
energy(n)	الطاقة	run - ran - run(v)	يدير / يشرف علي
environment(n)	البيئة	save(d) (v)	يُنقِذ - يدَّخر/يوفر
extraordinary(adj)	استثنائي	seriously(adv)	بشدة - بشكل خطير
gas(n)	غاز		

grow - grew - grown (v)	ينمو - يزرع
growing(adj)	متزايد - نامي
guest(n)	ضيف
increase(d) (v)	يزداد - زيادة
instead(adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
invest(ed) (v)	يستثمر

solution(n)	حل
southern (adj)	جنوبي
space(n)	مساحة - مُتَّسع - الفضاء
speculate(d) (v)	يتكهن - يتنبأ - يتفكر
stuff(n)	أغراض / حوائج
vehicles(n)	مركبات

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التَعَلُّم المُستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
agriculture(n) (علم) الزراعة	the practice نشاط or science of farming
crop(n) محصول غذائي	a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food
earth(n) كوكب الأرض	the planet كوكب that we live on
farming(n) الزراعة	the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm
innovation(n) ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	(the introduction of الإتيان بـ) new ideas or methods
livestock(n) حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
produce(n) انتاج زراعي	food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold ليتم بيعها
production(n) انتاج	the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
source(n) مصدر	a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from
sustainable(n) مُستدام - صديق للبيئة	- able to continue without causing damage to the environment - able to continue for a long time
variety(n) تشكيلة - التنوع	a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Sheep, cows and horses are .... (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. algae b. seaweeds c. livestock d. crops
2. A well-known .... has created the material for this course. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. blogger b. linguistic c. abbreviation d. innovator
3. Sugarcane is an important .... in the south of Egypt such as Luxor and Aswan. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. dairy b. product c. dish d. crop
4. We need to find out more .... ways to develop Education in Egypt. (مطوبس – برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. unfortunate b. lucky c. sustainable d. terrible
5. Our company's new marketing ideas are .... (مطوبس – برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. innovate b. innovative c. innovation d. innovating
6. Modern farming techniques help increase the .... of farms.
   a. agriculture b. production c. innovation d. hydroponics
7. He has a .... of fashionable clothes.
   a. production b. livestock c. crops d. variety
8. The Nile is the main .... of fresh water in Egypt.
   a. source b. vegetarian c. product d. organisation
9. Most people in the countryside work in ....
   a. agriculture b. produce c. farming d. a & c
10. We live in the age of technological ....
    a. proposal b. rainforest c. summary d. innovation
11. Life on the .... depends mainly on the energy we get from the sun.
    a. floor b. earth c. ground d. soil
12. He studies .... to know all about plants and how to grow them.
    a. farmland b. soil c. industry d. agriculture
13. .... is what produces the food we eat, whether through plants or through animals.
    a. Farming b. Fire c. Hydroponics d. Production
14. Farmers sell their fresh .... to city dwellers. سُكّان
    a. farming b. farmland c. produce d. agriculture

2 Important vocabulary

15. Do you know what .... volcanoes to happen? (- طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
    a. reasons   b. results   c. causes   d. makes
16. How do you think you will put all that .... in this small bag? (- أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
    a. stuff   b. staff   c. stiff   d. stuffs
17. His .... that the system should be changed was rejected. (- مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
    a. propose   b. proposal   c. designation   d. creation
18. The government .... a lot of money in farming and education to develop them. (موافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
    a. speculates   b. spends   c. invests   d. protects
19. The test will .... answering questions about a paragraph. (- ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
    a. consist   b. exclude   c. involve   d. solve
20. The judge came to the .... that the thief wasn't telling the truth. (- ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
    a. experience   b. inclusion   c. conclusion   d. exclusion
21. It is necessary to .... sustainable food production methods.
    a. fight   b. cut down   c. create   d. remove
22. He is not sure about what will happen. He just ....
    a. speculates   b. protects   c. involves   d. makes sure
23. I think that modern farming methods are the best .... to the food shortage نقص problem.
    a. gap   b. type   c. investment   d. solution
24. He is too young to .... this large company. He doesn't have enough experience.
    a. run   b. heal   c. involve   d. introduce
25. He does a/an .... amount of work in a short time. No one else can achieve that.
    a. usual   b. normal   c. ordinary   d. extraordinary
26. ...., where it is usually rainy and hot, have a variety of wildlife.
    a. Seaweeds   b. Deserts   c. Rainforests   d. Rainfall

27. The papers you are looking for aren't in this safe خزينة . They might be .... in the office.
   a. where b. elsewhere c. where else d. b & c
28. In cities, there's not much .... to grow crops.
   a. farm b. place c. environment d. space

3 Definitions

29. .... is the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.
   a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture
30. .... is the practice or science of farming.
   a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture
31. A .... is a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from.
   a. production b. source c. seaweed d. produce
32. .... is (the introduction of) new ideas or methods.
   a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture
33. .... are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
   a. Planets b. Livestock c. Crops d. Hydroponics
34. The noun .... means a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way.
   a. variety b. farmland c. vegetarian d. hydroponics
35. .... is the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
   a. Production b. Source c. Seaweed d. Produce
36. .... is food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold.
   a. flour b. Source c. Seaweed d. Produce
37. A/An .... is a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food.
   a. earth b. livestock c. crop d. hydroponics
38. The .... is the planet that we live on.
   a. earth b. soil c. floor d. ground
39. .... means able to continue for a long time.
   a. Innovated b. Various c. Urban d. Sustainable

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

buy	stuff يشتري أشياء	**keep**	livestock يربي حيوانات مزارع
cause	damage يسبب ضرر / تلف	**make**	money from يكسب مال من
get	worse يزداد سوء	**make**	small changes يُحدث تغييرات طفيفة
get	smaller يقل - يصغر	**make**	seawater safe to drink يجعل ماء البحر صالحًا للشرب
get	(even) hotter يزداد سخونة	**produce**	gases ينتج غازات
get	warmer يصبح أدفأ	**speculate**	about the future يتكهن بالمستقبل
grow	crops يزرع محاصيل	**start**	fires يشعل نيران / حرائق
introduce	a problem يطرح مشكلة/يسبب مشكلة	**tell**	the difference يذكر الفرق
invest	billions of pounds in يستثمر مليارات الجنيهات في		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
extraordinary	استثنائي	amazing, incredible, exceptional
innovative	مبتكر	innovatory, original, novel
involve	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضَمِّن	include
keep	يحتفظ بـ	save, retain, hold on to
keep	يبقي / يظل / يستمر في	go on, carry on, persist in
keep	يَفي بـ - يُنفذ	obey, fulfil, comply with
keep	يُربي - يُدَجِّن	raise, look after
keep	يدير - يملك ويعمل في	manage, run
productive	مفيد - مُثمر	useful, constructive, profitable - fruitful - rewarding
productive	خِصب	fertile - fruitful - rich

run	يدير / يشرف علي	be in charge of, operate, manage - control
sustain	يصون - يحافظ علي	maintain
variety	التنوع	diversity
variety	نوع / صنف	sort, type, kind, class, category

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
extraordinary	استثنائي	ordinary, usual	عادي - مألوف
involve	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضمِّن	exclude	يستثني - يستبعد
keep	يحتفظ بـ - يُبقِي علي	lose, throw away, get rid of	يفقد - يتخلص من
keep	يَبقَي / يظل / يداوم علي	give up, stop	يمتنع أو يُقلِع عن
keep	يَفي بـ - يُنفِّذ	disobey, break	يخالف - يحنَث بـ
productive	مُنتِج - مُثمِر	unproductive, fruitless	عقيم - غير مُجدي
productive	خصب	sterile, barren	عقيم - مُجدِب
sustainable	مستدام	unsustainable	غير دائم - متقطِّع
variety	التنوع	uniformity	انتظام - تماثل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture		
agriculture (n)	(علم) الزراعة	- He is an expert in agriculture.
agriculturalist (n)	خبير في الزراعة	- He is an agriculturalist.
agricultural (adj)	زراعي	- He is an agricultural expert.
innovative		
innovate(d) (v)	يخترع - يبتكر	- He is able to innovate new techniques.
innovation (n)	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	- He is good at the innovation of new techniques.
innovator (n)	مبتكر / مُخترِع	- He is the innovator of several new techniques.

innovative (adj)	مبتَكر	- He came up with several innovative techniques.
	productive	
produce(d) (v)	يُنتِج	- We produce several crops on our farms.
production (n)	إنتاج	- Our production will increase if we use modern technology.
product (n)	مُنتَج (مفرد منتجات)	- Our high-quality products are sold all over the world.
producer (n)	مُنتِج	- Producers of children's clothes earn a lot of money.
produce (n)	انتاج زراعي	- Milk and cheese and other produce are sold in nearby towns.
productive (adj)	مُنتِج - مُثمِر	- The apple trees on this farm are really productive.
	sustainable	
sustain(ed) (v)	يصون - يحافظ على البيئة	- The new law will sustain economic growth.
sustainability (n)	الاستدامة - الحفاظ على للبيئة	- The new law will support the sustainability of economic growth.
sustainable (adj)	مُستَدَام / دائم- صديق للبيئة	- The new law will make economic growth sustainable.
sustainably (adv)	بشكل مُستَدَام - بشكل غير ضار بالبيئة	- The new law will support economic growth more sustainably.
	variety	
vary(ied) (v)	يتنوع - يختلف	- Flowers vary in colour and size.
variety (n)	تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف	- Flowers are available in a variety of colours and sizes.
various (adj)	عديد - متنوع	- We plant flowers of various colours and sizes.
variable (adj)	قابل للتغيُّر - متقلب / غير ثابت	- Electric fans have variable speed levels

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

about thirty percent smaller	أصغر بنسبة ٣٠٪ تقريبًا	growing world	العالم المتزايد
according to	طبقًا لـ / حسب	instead of	بدلًا من
as a result,	نتيجة لذلك - لذلك	on the island	على الجزيرة
by 2030	بحلول عام ٢٠٣٠	So what?	وماذا في ذلك؟
climate change	التغير المناخي	solutions to/for	حلول لـ
expert on/in/at	خبير في	sustainable solutions	حلول مُستدَامة
for years to come	لسنوات قادمة	welcome to	أهلًا بكم في
get cut down	يتم قطعها		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue to	يستمر في	live on	يعيش على / في
cut down	يقطع / يجتث - يقلل	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
deal with	يتعامل مع - يواجه	look for	يبحث عن
feel about	يشعر تجاه	persuade … to	يقنع … أن
fill in	يملأ (استمارة مثلًا)	remove … from	يزيل … من
heat … up	يَسْخَن - يُسَخِّن	think about/of	يفكر في
increase … by	يزيد … بنسبة	work with	يعمل مع / في
learn about	يتعلم عن		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

agriculture - farming

• **agriculture (n)** علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها

- Mr Gamil studied agriculture at Ain Shams University.

• **agriculture (n)** النشاط الزراعي

- In Egypt, agriculture should be one of the main sources of national income.

• **farming (n)** الزراعة (زراعة المحاصيل و تربية الحيوانات في المزارع)

- Sheep farming is common in Australia.

cause - reason + for/that/why

- **cause of + n / (inf. + ing)** السبب في (أن)
  - I want to know the cause of your objection. (+ noun)
- **reason for + n / (inf. + ing)** السبب في (أن)
  - I want to know the reason for your objection. (+ noun)
- **reason why/that + subj. + v** السبب في (أن)
  - I want to know the reason why/that you object. (+ sentence)

(grow) as a transitive or intransitive verb

لاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين (grow) كفعل لازم (بدون مفعول) أو كفعل مُتعدّي (يتبعه مفعول):

- **grow + no object** ينمو - يكبر - يزداد (وكثيرًا ما يتبعه صفة)
  - Rainforests grow in areas with heavy rain. تنمو
  - When children grow old, they start to depend on themselves. يكبر
  - The sheep on the farm grew in number. ازدادت

لاحظ ان :

- **grow + adj. صفة = become**
  - The boy grew tall. = The boy became tall.
- **grow + object** يزرع
  - Farmers grow food.

involve - contain - consist of

- **involve (d) = include (v)** يشتمل على/يتضمن
  - The job of a secretary involves answering phone calls.
  - = The job of a secretary includes answering phone calls.
- **involve (d) = include (v)** يُضمِّن/يُدرج / يضيف (إلى)
  - Mr Omar tries to involve all students in the discussion.
  - = Mr Omar tries to include all students in the discussion.
- **involve (d) = require (v)** يتطلّب/يستلزم
  - Coming first involves too much hard work.
  - = Coming first requires too much hard work.
- **contain (ed) (v)** يحتوي على (شيء بداخله أو ضمن مكوناته)
  - This file contains my personal photos.
  - I can't drink my tea because it contains a lot of sugar.
- **consist (ed) of** يتكوّن من (+ المكونات)
  - My flat consists of three bedrooms, a reception, two bathrooms and an American kitchen.

livestock - cattle

- **livestock (n)** حيوانات المزارع (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع)
  - Livestock is sold in this market on Wednesday.
  - Livestock are sold in this market on Wednesday.
- **cattle (n)** الماشية من أبقار وعجول (تأخذ فعل جمع)
  - Cattle are sold in this market on Wednesday.

source - resource

- **source (n)** مصدر (نحصل منه علي شيء ما) - منبع - سبب
  - Journalists usually keep their sources secret. مصدر
  - Ethiopia is an important source of the River Nile. منبع
  - Your success is the source of our happiness. سبب
- **resource (n)** مَوْرِد (مفرد موارد) - مَرجِع (مصدر تعليمي أو معلوماتي)
  - Egypt has a lot of natural resources. موارد
  - This book is an important resource for language teachers. مرجع

staff - stuff

- **staff** هيئة العاملين / طاقم العمل (في مؤسسة / شركة)
  - The new manager is meeting the staff for the first time tomorrow.
- **stuff** حوائج / لوازم / أشياء / أغراض (كلمة لا تُعدّ)
  - I don't like the stuff you are eating. What is it called?
  - The shop sells all kinds of stuff.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. The weather got ....
   - a. annoyed
   - b. even hotter
   - c. stuff
   - d. warmer
   - e. billions of pounds
2. This forest has 50 varieties of insects." The word 'variety' in this sentence is a synonym of ....
   - a. formality
   - b. sort
   - c. class
   - d. uniformity
   - e. uniform

3. He kept his promise. The verb 'kept' in this sentence is antonymous with ....
   a. broke   b. followed   c. fulfilled
   d. disobeyed   e. complied with
4. "He runs a supermarket." This means he .... it.
   a. races   b. speeds   c. manages
   d. works   e. operates
5. Which of the following gives the meaning of 'keeps' in: "He keeps livestock?"
   a. raises   b. rises   c. carries on
   d. looks after   e. includes
6. "He kept looking at the sea in silence." 'Kept' here means '............'.
   a. gave up   b. went on   c. saved
   d. stopped   e. carried on
7. "Salah is an extraordinary player." This means Salah is a/an .... player.
   a. amazed   b. amazing   c. credible
   d. incredible   e. ordinary
8. My uncle is expert .... keeping livestock.
   a. of   b. from   c. in
   d. on   e. to
9. We need urgent solutions .... these problems.
   a. from   b. to   c. as
   d. about   e. for
10. Last year, the farm............ was more than we had expected.
    a. produce   b. produced   c. productive
    d. production   e. productively

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This company .... much money from electronics. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. did   b. gave   c. made   d. spent

2. The livestock he .... on his farm are looked after by five workers.

a. keeps b. takes c. tells d. grows

3. It is Mr Ashraf who has .... this problem for discussion.

a. kept b. gave c. introduced d. damaged

4. We use 'will' to .... about the future.

a. speculate b. invest c. offer d. miss

5. The crops .... on our farm are watered directly from the Nile.

a. kept b. taken c. told d. grown

6. They .... millions of dollars in tourism.

a. speculated b. invested c. did d. missed

7. The manager involved him in his new staff. The antonym of the word "involved" in this sentence is ....

(دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. excluded b. included c. added d. recommended

8. "We must respect and encourage the variety of ideas." The word 'variety' in this sentence is a synonym of ....

a. diversity b. sort c. class d. b & c

9. We need to work hard for many years .... to rebuild our country.

a. come b. comes c. has come d. to come

10. Cutting down rainforests will make the climate heat ....

(أحمد موافى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. in b. out c. up d. down

11. The population of Egypt increased .... about 2% last year.

(بسيون – ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. off b. by c. of d. in

12. The interviewer asked me to fill .... the application form.

(الشرقية ـ اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)

a. in b. down c. up d. on

13. It is a necessity to stop cutting .... trees in forests.

a. up b. down c. for d. to

14. This is an .... area.

a. agricultured b. agricultures c. agriculturist d. agricultural

15. I got an .... to help me with the reclaimed المستصلحة land.
   a. agriculture b. agricultures c. agriculturist d. agricultural
16. Last year, the farm was more .... than we had expected.
   a. produce b. produced c. productive d. production
17. The types of fish living in the sea .... from one place to another.
   a. vary b. various c. variety d. varies
18. There are .... types of fish living in the sea.
   a. vary b. various c. variety d. varies
19. Our company has .... new marketing ideas.
   a. innovate b. innovates c. innovation d. innovated
20. Our company's new marketing ideas are ....
   a. innovate b. innovative c. innovation d. innovated
21. We can .... the environment by reducing pollution.
   a. sustain b. sustained c. sustainable d. unsustainable
22. Livestock .... needs a lot of experience.
   a. farming b. agriculture c. source d. resource
23. "I'm a member of the teaching .... of this school," said Mr Ashraf.
   a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation
24. **A:** Where are the camping ....? **B:** In the boot of the car.
   a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation
25. The broken kitchen pipe is the .... of the water on the kitchen floor.
   a. farming b. agriculture c. source d. resource

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

The future of farming

(SB pages 26 & 27)

1. New solutions[1] for our growing world

According to[2] the United Nations,[3] there will be almost 10 billion[4] people in the world by 2050. As a result,[5] we will have to increase[6] our food production[7] by[8] about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space[9] to keep more livestock[10] and grow more crops.[11] Instead,[12] they'll need to look for[13] more sustainable solutions[14] and this will involve[15] producing a wider variety[16] of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference[17] between the new burgers and real meat.

Check Vocabulary

- حلول (1)
- بحسَب (2)
- الأمم المتحدة (3)
- مليار (4)
- كنتيجة لذلك (5)
- يزيد (6)
- إنتاج (7)
- بنسبة (8)
- مساحة- مُتَسَع (9)
- حيوانات المزارع (10)
- محاصيل (11)
- بدلًا من ذلك (12)
- يبحث عن (13)
- حلول مُستدامة (14)
- يشتمل علي (15)
- تشكيلة (16)
- يذكر الاختلاف (17)

2. Changes in agriculture that can save the land

Researchers[1] from the United Nations (UN) have found that some kinds of agriculture[2] are seriously[3] damaging[4] the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to[5] farmers using too many chemicals,[6] so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals.

Check Vocabulary

- الباحثون (1)
- الزراعة (2)
- بشدة (3)
- يدمر (4)
- بسبب (5)
- المواد الكيميائية (6)

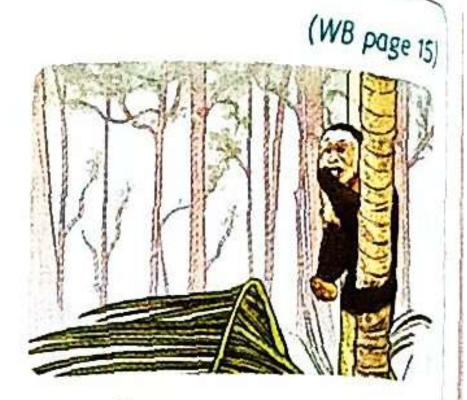
In southern Africa,[7] the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect[8] that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations[9] in technology to remove[10] water from the land and use it elsewhere.[11]

Check Vocabulary

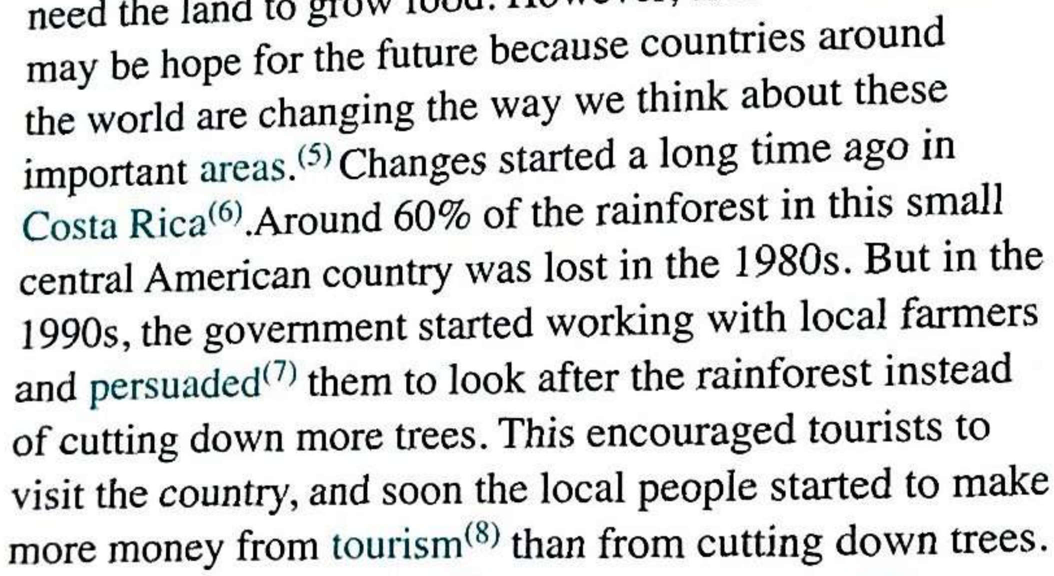
- (7) أفريقيا الجنوبية
- (8) يتوقع
- (9) ابتكارات
- (10) يزيل
- (11) مكان آخر

The future of forests

(WB page 15)



The world has been losing[1] millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down[2] so that[3] we have wood to make furniture,[4] and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas.[5] Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica[6].Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers and persuaded[7] them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism[8] than from cutting down trees.



It was a great success,[9] but things got worse[10] in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments[11] around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller[12] every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary[13] place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يفقد
- (2) تُقطع
- (3) لكي
- (4) أثاث
- (5) مناطق
- (6) دولة كوستاريكا
- (7) يُقنع
- (8) السياحة
- (9) النجاح
- (10) يزداد سوء
- (11) الحكومات
- (12) يقل
- (13) استثنائي

2 Listening Texts

The population problem in Egypt

(WB page 14)



The population[1] of Egypt is growing[2] by nearly two percent[3] a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on about[4] four percent of its land.[5] It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around[6] 128 million by 2030. So, what are the solutions to these problems?

One plan is to invest[7] billions of pounds in a new capital[8] city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects[9] that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

Check Vocabulary

(1) (عدد) السكان
(2) يتزايد
(3) بالمائة (٪)
(4) حوالي
(5) مساحة
(6) حوالي
(7) يستثمر
(8) عاصمة
(9) مشروعات

The rainforest in Borneo



(SB page 28)



Interviewer : Hello everyone. In today's show[1] I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert[2] on the rainforests[3] in Borneo. Welcome[4] to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types[5] of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And, what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large island[6] in South-East Asia,[7] and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently[8] the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual.[9]

Check Vocabulary

(1) عَرض - برنامج حواري
(2) خبير
(3) غابة استوائية
(4) مرحبًا
(5) أنواع
(6) جزيرة
(7) جنوب شرق أسيا
(8) حديثًا
(9) مُعتاد

And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall[10] on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately,[11] some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires[12] so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even[13] hotter, you see[14]. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over[15] the next few decades.[16] That would be terrible[17] for the animals and plant life[18] in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up[19] even more.

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will keep[20] cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed[21] their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques[22] and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organisation[23] will be running[24] an education[25] programme next month to help them.

Interviewer : Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

Check Vocabulary

(10) هطول الأمطار
(11) لسوء الحظ
(12) حرائق
(13) أكثر
(14) كما ترى
(15) عبر / على مدار
(16) عقود
(17) فظيع
(18) الحياة النباتية
(19) يسخن
(20) يستمر في
(21) يُطعم
(22) تقنيات
(23) مؤسسة
(24) يدير / يشرف على
(25) تعليم

3 Video script section

Three small changes to help the environment

(SB page 27)

Would you like to do more to help the environment[1] by living a more sustainable life? It's actually[2] easier than you might think. There are many small changes[3] you can make that will help to protect[4] the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a vegetarian,[5] but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous gases[6] and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often possible[7] to walk or ride[8] a bike instead and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much stuff![9]

Check Vocabulary

(1) البيئة
(2) في الواقع
(3) تغييرات
(4) يحمي
(5) نباتي
(6) غازات
(7) ممكن
(8) يركب
(9) أغراض / حوائج

Part IV Language

Future forms صيغ المستقبل

فى هذا الدرس سنعرض لكم بعض الأزمنة والطرق التى تعبر عن استخدامات مختلفة للمستقبل.

1 The Future Simple with "will + inf." المستقبل البسيط باستخدام "will + inf."

Form		The "will" future
Active	المبنى للمعلوم	Subj. + will + inf. ...... ex. - I will buy this mobile.
Passive	المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + will be + p.p. ...... ex. - This mobile will be bought (by me).

Uses of "will + inf." استخدامات "will + inf."

1. Future facts الحقائق المستقبلية	**ex.** - Nada will become four years old next Monday.
2. Prediction without evidence التنبؤ دون دليل	وفى هذه الحالة يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوى على أفعال مثل : **be sure, think, believe, expect, hope, wonder** , يتساءل **be afraid** , يخشى **doubt** يشك **ex.** - I think the match will be very exciting. - I doubt I'll go out tonight. ومن الممكن أن يُستخدم مع (will) بعض الظروف مثل : **perhaps, possibly, probably, surely, certainly, definitely** **ex.** - Perhaps I'll see him at the party. - I'll probably stay in Cairo for a week.
3. Quick decisions القرارات السريعة	**ex.** - That's the phone – I'll answer it.
4. Offers العروض	**ex.** - I'll go shopping with you if you like.
5. Request الطلب	**ex.** - Will you help me with my homework?
6. Warning التحذير	**ex.** - Take the medicine regularly or your health will get worse.
7. Promises الوعود	**ex.** - I will buy you a new mobile when you pass your final exam.
8. First conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى	**ex.** - If I have enough money, I will travel around the world.

Mini Test 1



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... this medicine after I have lunch.
   a. takes b. took c. will take d. will be taken
2. This medicine .... after I have lunch.
   a. takes b. took c. will take d. will be taken

3. I expect Omar .... first next term.
   a. comes b. came c. will come d. will be come
4. What a beautiful dress. I .... it.
   a. buy b. will buy
   c. am going to buy d. am buying
5. Leave this heavy bag. I .... it upstairs for you later.
   a. will carry b. am carrying
   c. am going to carry d. carry
6. Study for your exams or you .... them.
   a. fail b. will fail
   c. are going to fail d. won't fail
7. I .... to your birthday if I don't travel. I promise.
   a. will come b. won't come
   c. am going to come d. am coming
8. If it is late, I .... a taxi.
   a. takes b. am taking
   c. going to take d. will take

2 The future continuous (will / may + be + inf. + ing)

Form	The Future Continuous Tense زمن المستقبل المستمر
Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	**Subj. + will / won't + be + inf. + ing ... .** **ex.** - Reem will be doing the housework all morning tomorrow. **ex.** - At five next Friday, I will be visiting one of my old friends.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	**Will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...?** **ex.** - Will Reem be doing the housework all morning tomorrow ?
'Wh_' Q السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q.W. + will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...?** **ex.** - What will Reem be doing all morning tomorrow?

تستخدم (may) بدلا من (will) للتنبؤ بأحداث قد تكون مستمرة فى المستقبل فى حالة عدم التأكد :

subj. + may be + inf. + ing ... .

ex. - When Rodayna is 20, she may be studying medicine at university.

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم المستقبل المستمر في الحالات التالية :

1 التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمرًا في وقت معين في المستقبل:

ex. - Omar will be watching a football match at nine tomorrow.
- This time tomorrow, Sama will be travelling to Cairo with her family.

2 التنبؤ بحدث سيستمر لفترة في المستقبل:

ex. - The manager will be interviewing some applicants from three to five tomorrow.

3 التنبؤ بشيء سيكون سائد ومُتعارف عليه في المستقبل:

ex. - In 10 years' time, more people will be living in new cities.

4 التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمرًا عندما سيقع حدث آخر في المستقبل (لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية):

ex. - When you return home, I may be preparing lunch.

5 تُستخدم مع روابط السبب والنتيجة لتبرير شيء ما في المستقبل:

ex. - I can't go to the club next Friday because I will be planting some trees in my garden.

6 تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للطلب أو السؤال عن معلومة بشكل مهذب:

ex. - Will you be using your digital camera tomorrow?

7 غالبًا تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن أحداث مستمرة الآن ونتوقع أن تكون مستمرة أيضًا في المستقبل:

subj. + will/may + still لا يزال + be + inf. + ing

ex. - The number of people may still be increasing in the future.

8 غالبًا لا يُستخدم المستقبل المستمر أو أي من الأزمنة المستمرة مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية:

ex. - At seven tomorrow, the pool will be containing fresh water . (✗)
- At seven tomorrow, the pool will contain fresh water. (✓)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... the housework all morning tomorrow.
   a. will be done
   b. won't be done
   c. will be doing
   d. going to do

2. If you call me at five, I ………… in bed, but I am not sure.
   a. will be sleeping
   b. may be sleeping
   c. will sleep
   d. may sleep
3. From 5 to 7, I ………… physics.
   a. will be studied
   b. won't be studied
   c. going to study
   d. will be studying
4. Students ………… from home on their tablets in the future. It is just a possibility.
   a. may be studying
   b. may be studied
   c. will be studied
   d. won't be studied
5. I ………… for my exams, so I can't go out with you.
   a. will be studied
   b. will be studying
   c. going to study
   d. am not studying
6. People drive petrol cars now. They ………… petrol cars in thirty years.
   a. will be driven
   b. will still be driven
   c. will still be driving
   d. are still driven
7. I expect that I ………… the same friends in the future.
   a. will be having
   b. will be had
   c. will have had
   d. will be have

3 be + going to + inf.

Form	The "going to" form
Active المبنى للمعلوم	Subj. + am / is / are + going to + inf. … . ex. - We are going to build a villa.
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + am / is / are + going to be + P.P. … . ex. - A villa is going to be built (by us).

Uses of going to الاستخدامات

1. Personal plans and intentions الخطط الشخصية والنوايا	plan, have a plan, intend ينوي have intentions لديه النية ex. - My brother intends to live in Aswan. He is going to buy a flat there.
2. Prediction based on evidence or present reality التنبؤ القائم على دليل أو واقع حالى	و المقصود بالدليل هنا أنه يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بحدوث الشيء فى المستقبل: ex. - My aunt is pregnant حامل. She is going to have a baby.

3. Prepared decisions القرارات المسبقة	decided, have decided /made a decision / made up his mind اتخذ القرار ex. - I have decided to change my car. I'm going to buy a modern one.
4. Actions that are about to happen أحداث على وشك الوقوع	وفى هذه الحالة يمكن أن نستخدم بعض العبارات الخاصة بالتنبيه أو لفت الانتباه مثل: Watch out! = Look out! انتبه / Be careful! = Take care! احترس ex. - Look out! You are going to drop the plates.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... the next bus as planned.
   a. take b. will take
   c. am going to take d. am going to be taken
2. The next bus .... by me as planned.
   a. take b. will take
   c. is going to take d. is going to be taken
3. I have a plan. I .... the quality of our products.
   a. will increase b. will be increased
   c. is going to increase d. will have increased
4. He has already decided. He .... his old flat.
   a. is going to sell b. is going to be sold
   c. will have sold d. will sell
5. Be careful, honey. You ....
   a. will be falling b. are going to fall
   c. will be fallen d. will have fallen

4 The Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Form	The present continuous
Active المبنى للمعلوم	Subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing ... . ex. - Ahmed is watching the match at the stadium tomorrow.
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + am / is / are + being + P.P. ... . ex. - The match is being watched at the stadium (by Ahmed) tomorrow.

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها فى وقت محدد فى المستقبل) **(Future arrangements) :**

(لابد من وجود تعبير زمنى يدل على المستقبل)

① تدل التعبيرات الآتية على وجود ترتيبات : **arranged, made arrangements, prepared, ...**

ex. - Everything is arranged. We are leaving to Cairo at five tomorrow.
- She is flying to India in the summer.
- My brother is getting married next month.

② الإجتماعات واللقاءات الرسمية وكذلك المناسبات اللجتماعية (مثل حفلات أعياد الميلاد والزفاف والزيارات والمقابلات ...) تستلزم ترتيبات لذلك فهى غالبًا تكون فى صيغة المضارع المستمر بشرط تحديد وقت الحدوث :

ex. - Sama is celebrating her birthday party next Monday.
- My sister is getting married tomorrow.
- The manager is interviewing some applicants after tomorrow's meeting.
- We are meeting the minister at eleven o'clock next Tuesday.
- I am having lunch with my uncle next Monday.

③ يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية **(plans)** لكن استخدام **(going to)** أكثر شيوعًا:

ex. - According to the plan, he is making (= is going to make) the design of the new building.

④ غالبًا لا تُستَخدَم أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية وفعل (be) في الأزمنة المستمرة:

ex. - I am going to see the coral reefs الشعاب المرجانية in the Red Sea next month during my stay there. (Not: am seeing)

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some friends .... by me for lunch as arranged.
   a. will meet b. going to meet
   c. am meeting d. are being met

2. I .... some friends for lunch as arranged.
   a. will meet b. going to meet
   c. am meeting d. are being met

3. She .... to Paris at five tomorrow.
   a. will fly
   b. will be flying
   c. is flying
   d. b & c
4. My secretary .... me at tomorrow's meeting in New York. She has already travelled there.
   a. is replacing
   b. is being replaced
   c. will replace
   d. will have replaced
5. She .... about the latest developments at the meeting tomorrow.
   a. will be known
   b. knows
   c. is knowing
   d. is going to know

5 The Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Uses	Subject الفاعل + F.C. التصريف الأول / (inf. + s , es , ies) ...
Events on a timetable أشياء تحدث حسب جدول مواعيد مثل مواعيد وسائل المواصلات - البرامج - الأفلام ... إلخ.	**ex.** - The course starts in October. - This lesson doesn't finish until 2.30. - My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

6 General Notes on Future forms

ملاحظات عامة على صيغ التعبير عن المستقبل

1. هناك تعبيرات زمنية دالة على المستقبل بصفة عامة منها :

tomorrow / in the future / soon / قريبا / next (year /month / week / Friday...) ... etc.

2. الصفات الشخصية الدائمة لا تُعد دليلا و نستخدم معها (will + inf.) :

ex. - Shaza will pass her exams. She's a clever student.

3. الصفات الوقتية تُعد دليلا و يُفضل أن يُستخدم معها 'be going to'

ex. - Mohammed looks exhausted. I think he is going to sleep on his chair.

4. تُستخدم (shall) مع (I / We) لتقديم الإقتراحات و العروض :

ex. - Shall we have a cold drink ?

5. يستخدم المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد ادوات الربط الزمنية:

After / As soon as
When / The moment + حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) ⟶ مستقبل / جملة أمر

ex. - After I arrive (= have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.
- Tell Ahmed to call me when you see (= have seen) him.

Before / By the time + حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) ⟵ مستقبل / جملة أمر

ex. - Before I leave (= have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.
- Don't leave before you finish (= have finished) the report.

حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى (غالبًا) / جملة أمر + till / until + حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام

ex. - Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (= has arrived) home.
- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools/ has cooled.

٦ إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر فى المستقبل القريب فان ما يمنعك يكون مرتبا له، و يمكن فى هذه الحالة استخدام المضارع المستمر أو المستقبل المستمر:

ex. - I can't see you this evening. I'm visiting my uncle in hospital.
- I can't see you this evening. I'll be visiting my uncle in hospital.

General Exercise On Language



تنويه • التدريبات التالية مرتبة تصاعديًا حسب مستويات التفكير طبقًا لهرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ahmed .... for his final exams from 4 o'clock to 9 o'clock tomorrow. Don't call him at this time. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. will be revising
   b. will be revised
   c. will revising
   d. will revised

2. Habiba .... 16 next Friday. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. is going to be
   b. is being
   c. is
   d. will be

3. That man is driving at breakneck speed. He ....an accident.
   a. has
   b. is having
   c. about to have
   d. is going to have (ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

4. I get up late, so I usually miss the first lesson. It .... at 8 a.m. (محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. is starting
b. is going to start
c. will start
d. starts

5. He is flying to France next week. His flight .... off at 7 p.m. (ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. will take
b. is going to take
c. has taken
d. takes

6. This time next Friday, my son .... to Paris. (الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. will be flying
b. is going to fly
c. has flown
d. flies

7. He .... eighteen next week. (سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. is going to be b. is being c. will be d. is

8. We .... the minister at 10 o'clock next Monday. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

a. meet
b. are meeting
c. are going to meet
d. will meet

9. I .... hire a car to travel around Alexandria. This is my intention. (٢٠٢٢)

a. am going to b. may c. could d. will

10. I have made up my mind to spend the weekend in my village; I .... spend the weekend there. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

a. am going to b. will c. was going to d. may

11. We .... fish for dinner. It's been planned. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)

a. will have
b. having
c. are going to have
d. will have had

12. I think he .... fish for lunch. (أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. will have
b. having
c. are going to have
d. will have had

13. She wants to buy a new car, so she .... save much money. (ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. going to b. will c. is going to d. intends

14. My wife and I are good at learning languages, so our children .... good at languages too. (برنال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. will become
b. are going to become.
c. are becoming
d. will have become

15. Our flat .... next month. We have made our arrangements. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. is being renewed b. will be renewed
   c. is renewed d. renews

16. He will answer all the questions as soon as he .... school. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. is reaching b. reaches c. was reaching d. reached

17. Ali will return from London as soon as he .... his doctor's degree. (أجا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. get b. got c. has got d. had got

18. **A:** Osama phoned while you were out.
   B: Yes, I know. I .... him back. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. am calling b. will call
   c. am going to call d. will be calling

19. Right now, I'm working in a cafe. In 10 years' time, I hope I .... one of my own. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. run b. will be running
   c. am going to run d. ran

20. My brother will go to the park when he .... his homework. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. will finish b. has finished c. had finished d. finish

21. I can't visit my cousins in June because I .... for a charity. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. work b. will work
   c. am going to work d. will be working

22. Which of the following is correctly structured? (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
   a. By next year, I will buy a new car.
   b. By next year, I will have being bought a new car.
   c. By next year, I should have bought a new car.
   d. By next year, I will have bought a new car.

تنويه
• ذاكر القاعدة جيدًا واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 30 : 31 WB pages 16 : 17

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

algae(n)	الطحالب	summarise(d) (v)	يُلخص - يختصر
essay(n)	مقال	summary(n)	مُلخص
farming(n)	الزراعة	topic(n)	موضوع - فكرة رئيسية
farmland(n)	أرض زراعية	urban(adj)	حَضري - مُدُني
hydroponics(n)	الزراعة المائية (بدون تربة)	vegetarian(n)	شخص نباتي (لا يأكل اللحوم بأنواعها)
seaweed(n)	العُشب البحري		

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

Antarctica(n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	introduce(d) (v)	يطرح - يقدم
argue(d) (v)	يجادل - يناقش - يزعم	introduction(n)	مُقدمة - تقديم
argument (n)	جدال/نقاش - حُجة/رأي	leaf - leaves(adj)	ورقة (أوراق) نبات
available(adj)	مُتاح/متوفر	link(ed) (n/v)	رابط - يربط
boring(adj)	مُمل	lose - lost - lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر
chance(n)	فُرصة - الحظ	main(adj)	رئيسي/أساسي
conclude(d) (v)	يستنتج - يخلص إلي	miss(ed) (v)	يفوت - يفقد - يخسر
conclusion(n)	خاتمة - خُلاصة	negative(adj)	سلبي
contain(ed) (v)	يحتوي على	notice(d) (v)	يلاحظ
continent(n)	قارَّة	ocean(n)	مُحيط
control(led) (v)	يتحكم في	original(adj)	أصلي
description(n)	وَصْف	outdoors(adv)	خارج المباني
efficiently(adv)	بكفاءة	population(n)	(عدد) السكان
evidence(n)	دليل	replace(d) (v)	يحل محل - يستبدل
fact(n)	حقيقة	reuse(d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
factual(adj)	حقيقي	roof (n)	سطح (مبنَى)
fashion(n)	الموضة	several(adj)	عديد - كثير
flow(ed) (n/v)	تَدفُق - يتدفق	soil(n)	تربة زراعية
focus(ed) (v)	يُركز	specific(adj)	مُحدد
fresh(adj)	طازج	surprisingly(adv)	من العجيب

gap(n)	فراغ - فتحة - ثغرة	tasty(adj)	لذيذ
giant(n/adj)	عملاق	underline(d) (v)	يضع خطًا تحت
heal(ed) (v)	يلتئم - يمتلئ	usual(adj)	مُعتاد

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلُّم المُستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
algae(n) الطحالب	a very simple plant without stems جذوع or leaves that grows in or near water
hydroponics(n) الزراعة المائية	the process عملية of growing plants in water or sand, rather than بدلًا من in soil
seaweed(n) العُشب البحري	a plant that grows in the sea
summary(n) مُلخَّص	a short description that gives the most important information in a text
vegetarian(n) شخص نباتي	someone who does not eat meat or fish

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The main .... of the debate was the pros and cons of city life.

(اسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. topic b. interests c. response d. object

2. Don't ask me to read the whole article. .... it for me, please.

(السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)

a. Predict b. Summarise c. Keep d. Include

3. Being a/an ...., he eats no meat at all. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. farmer b. agricultural c. sports man d. vegetarian

4. Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called .... (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)

a. seabed b. seaweed c. sea life d. seashell

5. According to ...., plants are grown in water not in soil.
   a. nature   b. traditions   c. hydroponics   d. seaweeds

6. .... does not only mean growing plants, but it includes keeping animals as well.
   a. Farming   b. Agriculture   c. Hydroponics   d. Production

7. It is our duty to protect and increase .... to produce enough food for all people.
   a. earth   b. farmland   c. gap   d. solution

8. I have no time to read the whole report. Its .... is enough.
   a. detail   b. summary   c. phrase   d. ocean

9. Some people prefer .... life to rural ريفي one.
   a. clear   b. original   c. growing   d. urban

10. In the exam, you are asked to write a/an ...., not a single paragraph.
   a. summary   b. phrase   c. essay   d. sentence

2 Important vocabulary

11. This wound will take four weeks to .... (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. cure   b. treat   c. heal   d. deal

12. Terrorism has a .... impact on our economy as it destroys tourism. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. positive   b. positively   c. negative   d. negatively

13. It would be better if we .... old glass and plastic.
   a. concluded   b. included   c. introduced   d. reused

14. The New Administrative City is a/an .... project. Imagine building a complete smart city.
   a. usual   b. giant   c. specific   d. available

15. The .... of Egypt is about 104 million people.
   a. population   b. environment   c. rainforest   d. area

16. .... spare parts قطع غيار are much more expensive than fake ones.
   a. Stuff   b. Rainfall   c. Occasional   d. Original

17. The .... between services in the countryside and the city is very big.
   a. capital   b. percent   c. gap   d. a & c

18. All .... suggests that the new plan could help improve the agricultural sector. القطاع
   a. fire   b. evidence   c. flow   d. shows

19. .... instructions are detailed and exact. مضبوط
a. Usual b. Giant c. Specific d. Available

20. You .... your essay in the last paragraph.
a. conclude b. include c. introduce d. reuse

21. ...., such a short young man joined the basketball team.
a. Efficient b. Efficiently c. Surprising d. Surprisingly

22. To succeed in life, you aren't supposed to .... any chance available.
a. gain b. use c. miss d. win

23. Plants grow well in rich .... where it can take in nutrients مغذيات with water.
a. weather b. soil c. atmosphere d. climate

24. I .... fish to my shopping list.
a. concluded b. included c. healed d. reused

25. In the south of Aswan, the High Dam controls the .... of water into the Nile.
a. flow b. proposal c. dry d. growth

26. It is a waste of time .... with him. He won't be persuaded after all.
a. healing b. farming c. creating d. arguing

27. **A:** I have an appointment with Mr Omar.
B: I am afraid he is not ....
a. usual b. giant c. specific d. available

28. He does all his jobs .... He is skilled, hard-working and intelligent.
a. efficient b. efficiently c. surprising d. surprisingly

29. A good team member .... innovative ideas and discuss them with other team members.
a. focuses b. contains c. introduces d. reuses

3 Definitions

30. A/An .... is a person who doesn't eat meat or fish.
(سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. sociologist b. archaeologist c. vegetarian d. architect

31. .... is a method of growing plants without the use of soil, by using water through which nutrients are pumped. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. Farming b. Agriculture c. Hydroponics d. Production

32. .... is a name for plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. (ديسمبر ٢٠٢٢)
a. Sugar cane b. Algae c. Pin tree d. Pineapple

33. A .... is a plant that grows in the sea.
a. production b. source c. seaweed d. produce

34. A/An .... is a short description that gives the most important information in a text.
a. earth b. livestock c. agriculture d. summary

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

damage	the environment يُدمِّر البيئة	**keep**	cutting down trees يستمر في إزالة الأشجار
earn	money يكسب مال	**offer**	the best solution يطرح الحل الأفضل
give	an opinion يعطي رأي	**save**	money يدخر مال
make	sense ذو معني	**show**	the order يوضح الترتيب
	furniture يصنع لأثاث	**take**	ages يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
	... much healthier تجعل ... صحي بدرجة أكبر	**write**	a summary يكتب تلخيصًا

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
available	مُتاح/متوفِّر	reachable, obtainable
available	متفرِّغ/غير مشغول	free
boring	مُمِل	uninteresting, tedious, dull
conclude	يستنتج - يخلُص إلي	sum up, close, end
factual	حقيقي	actual, real, true
original	أصلي	native, first
original	حقيقي/أصلي	authentic, real, genuine
specific	مُحدَّد	particular, definite
summary	تلخيص	synopsis, outline
urban	حَضَري - مَدَني	civil

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
available	مُتاح/متوفِّر	unavailable, unobtainable	غير متاح
available	متفرغ/غير مشغول	busy, unavailable	مشغول
boring	مُمِل	interesting, exciting	شيِّق - مثير
conclude	يستنتج - يخلُص إلي	start, begin, open	يفتتح/يبدأ
factual	حقيقي	false, fictional	زائف - خيالي
original	حقيقي/أصلي	fake	مُزيَّف
poor soil	تربة رديئة	rich soil, fertile soil	تربة خصبة
specific	مُحدَّد	common, indefinite	عام/غير مُحدَّد
urban	حَضَري - مَدَني	rural, primitive	ريفي - بدائي

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all the evidence suggests that — تشير كل الدلائل إلى أن	link to — رابط لـ
And then? — وماذا بعد؟	open spaces — أماكن مفتوحة
areas with poor soil — مناطق ذات تربة رديئة	opinion about/of/on — رأي في
as much as you can — أقصي ما تستطيع	over the next decades — خلال العقود القادمة
based on — قائم على / مبني علي	the arguments against — دلائل النفي
due to the fact that — لأن	the arguments for — دلائل الإثبات
good for — مفيد لـ	the order in which things happen — ترتيب حدوث الأشياء
green space — مساحة خضراء	the reason why — السبب في أن
In fact, — في الحقيقة ...	the whole text — النص بالكامل
In my view, — من وجهة نظري	To conclude, — الخلاصة أن ...

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

encourage ... to — يشجع ... أن	heal (up) — يلتئم - يمتلئ
focus on — يُركِّز علي	look back at — ينظر مرة أخري إلي
go up — يرتفع	lose up to — يفقد ما يقرُب من
grow by — ينمو بمعدل ... / يزيد بنسبة ...	sell ... to — يبيع ... لـ
grow to — ينمو / يزداد حتى	

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

lose - miss

• lose (lost - lost) (v) يخسر (مال أو معركة أو مباراة ...)

- People who had trusted El-Mostareeh lost their money, livestock or cars.
- Our National team lost the final against Senegal.

• miss (ed) (v) يفوّت/يفوته (وسيلة مواصلات أو موعد)

- I missed the school bus.
- She doesn't want to miss the start of the film.

• miss (ed) (v) يعجز عن (تحقيق أو الوصول لشيء ما)

- He missed the world record by three seconds.

• miss (ed) (v) يفتقد (شخص)

- While I was abroad, I missed my family and friends.

outdoor - outdoors

• outdoor (adj) خارجيّ/ خلويّ (صفة تُستخدم قبل اسم فقط)

- Football is an outdoor sport.

• outdoors (adj) بالخارج/ في الخلاء (ظرف يصف فعل ولا يُستخدَم قبل اسم)

- Football is played outdoors.

summary - abbreviation

• summary (n) تلخيص / موجز (لكتاب / قصة / مقال / تقرير)

- I didn't read the novel itself. I only read a summary of it.

• abbreviation (n) اختصار (لكلمة أو عبارة)

- Dr is the abbreviation of the title 'doctor'.

7 Reading Numbers قراءة الأعداد

١. الأرقام من (٠) إلي (١٩) تُقرأ كالتالي:

0	zero	4	four	8	eight	12	twelve	16	sixteen
1	one	5	five	9	nine	13	thirteen	17	seventeen
2	two	6	six	10	ten	14	fourteen	18	eighteen
3	three	7	seven	11	eleven	15	fifteen	19	nineteen

٢. مضاعفات (١٠) تُقرأ كالتالي:

10	ten	50	fifty	90	ninety
20	twenty	60	sixty	100	(a /one) hundred
30	thirty	70	seventy	1,000	(a /one) thousand
40	forty	80	eighty	10,000	ten thousand

٣. لاحظ قراءة الأرقام التالية:

100,000	(a /one) hundred thousand
1,000,000	(a /one) million
1,000,000,000	(a /one) billion
1,000,000,000,000	(a /one) trillion

٤. عند قراءة عدد مكون من رقمين نبدأ بالعشرات ثم الآحاد و نفصل بينهما بـ(-) :

- **21:** twenty-one
- **47:** forty-seven
- **99:** ninety-nine

٥. تتم قراءة عدد مكون من ثلاث أرقام كالتالي :

عدد المئات + hundred + and + tens عشرات + units آحاد

- **136:** one hundred (and) thirty-six
- **571:** five hundred (and) seventy-one
- **999:** nine hundred (and) ninety-nine

٦. تتم قراءة الاعداد الكبيرة (أكثر من ثلاث أرقام) كالتالي :

أ. نُقَسِّم العدد بداية من اليمين إلي مجموعات من ثلاث أرقام

ب. نقرأ كل مجموعة علي حدة بداية من اليسار و نضع بعدها التمييز مثل:

(thousand / million / billion ....)

جـ. نفصل بين كل مجموعة و أخري بـ (,) و ليس (and)

لاحظ قراءة العدد التالي:

- 16,924,479,951:

sixteen billion, nine hundred and twenty-four million, four hundred and seventy-nine thousand, nine hundred and fifty-one

- 2006: two thousand and six

٧. في لغة التحدث غالبا تُقرأ الأعداد المكونة من أربع أرقام كل رقمين علي حدة بداية من اليسار:

- **1976:** nineteen seventy-six
- **2010:** twenty ten

٨. لا تُجمع الكلمات التالية اذا جاء قبلها عدد:

(hundred / thousand / million / billion ....)

- **83,464:** eighty-three thousand, four hundred and sixty-four
- **769:** seven hundred and sixty-nine

Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. Mr Mohammed is very busy at the moment. He is NOT ....
   a. busy b. available c. unavailable
   d. free e. unobtainable

2. We don't enjoy this film. It is ....
   a. exciting b. boring c. bored
   d. interesting e. dull

3. "I like urban life." The adjective 'urban' here is the antonym of ....
   a. civil b. rural c. primitive
   d. modern e. contemporary

4. "We would like you to give us specific examples." The adjective 'specific' here is synonymous with ....
   a. common b. usual c. indefinite
   d. definite e. particular

5. I can't read the whole work. It is better if you find its .... for me.
   a. synopsis b. outline c. full copy
   d. in-length e. whole

6. Plants grow well in .... soil.
   a. poor b. rocky c. rich
   d. fertile e. infertile

7. This copy is NOT .... It was not drawn by Leonardo da Vinci.
   a. fake b. false c. authentic
   d. genuine e. wrong

8. To 'conclude' an essay means to .... it.
   a. close b. open c. end
   d. start e. begin

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The solution you have .... to the problem can't be applied. لا يمكن تطبيقه
   a. speculated b. invested c. offered d. missed

2. It .... me ages to finish the summary of that book.
   a. kept b. took c. told d. grew

3. I was asked to .... my opinion, but I preferred to keep it to myself.
   a. keep b. give c. ask d. damage
4. Cutting down rainforests .... the environment.
   a. keeps b. gives c. introduces d. damages
5. "This statue is not original." The adjective 'original' in this sentence gives the antonym of ....
   a. first b. fake c. native d. a & c
6. "The teacher asked me to write an outline of the novel of about three pages." The word 'outline' can be replaced by ....
   a. title b. moral c. summary d. b & c
7. Focus .... your study and don't pay attention to anything else. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. in b. at c. on d. for
8. Cutting rainforests will make the climate heat ....
   a. in b. out c. up d. down
9. A palm tree can grow .... ten metres.
   a. to b. by c. with d. on
10. Plants do not grow well in .... soil.
   a. poverty b. poor c. richness d. rich
11. .... conclude, we have to look after our environment.
   a. To b. In c. Of d. With
12. He has lost .... five kilograms lately.
   a. up b. to c. up to d. from
13. She lost her necklace. That's the reason .... she looked unhappy.
   a. what b. of c. for d. why
14. Mr Ayman asked me to write a/an .... of the story of no more than 180 words.
   a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation
15. "SOS" is a/an .... for 'Save our souls".
   a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Is algae the future of food?

(SB page 30)

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry[1] for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae[2] are plants that grow[3] very quickly in water and wet[4] places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed,[5] and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean.[6]

In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe[7], because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

But, will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice.[8] Scientists are already using seaweed to replace[9] salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

Check Vocabulary

(1) جاف
(2) الطحالب
(3) ينمو
(4) مبلل
(5) العشب البحري
(6) المحيط
(7) يتنفس
(8) يلاحظ
(9) يحل محل

Hydroponics

(WB page 16)

With the population of the world predicted[1] to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production.

A possible solution to this problem is using something called hydroponics.[2]



Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without[3]

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتنبأ
(2) الزراعة المائية
(3) بدون

using any soil.[4] Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains[5] all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil.[6] Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, surprisingly,[7] it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused.[8] There are also fewer problems with insects.[9] Almost any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way.

Some people argue[10] that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control[11] the flow[12] of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer[13] the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, Antarctica[14] or even space.

Check Vocabulary

(4) التربة
(5) يحتوي على
(6) التربة الرديئة
(7) من العجيب
(8) يعيد استخدام
(9) حشرات
(10) يزعم
(11) يتحكم في
(12) تدفق
(13) يوفر
(14) القارة القطبية الجنوبية

Urban Farming

(WB page 17)



This essay will focus on[1] something my uncle is planning to do to help food production[2]: something called urban farming[3].

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs[4], gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يركز على
(2) انتاج الطعام
(3) الزراعة المدنية
(4) الاسطح المستوية

In my view[5], urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce[6] to local restaurants and markets.

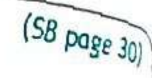
To conclude[7], urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence[8] suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor space[9].

Check Vocabulary

(5) من وجهة نظرى
(6) محصول
(7) ختامًا / فى النهاية
(8) دليل
(9) الفراغات الخارجية

1 Listening Texts

How to write a summary



Amir : Is that your homework, Hany?

Hany : Yes. What's wrong with it? It took me ages.[1]

Amir : I can see that. It's very long.

Hany : So, what?

Amir : Well, we were asked to write a summary,[2] and yours looks longer than the text[3] we're summarising[4]! You know it should be shorter, right?

Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss[5] anything important.

Amir : So, what was the text about?

Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.

Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text[6] and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the main[7] idea? How would I explain[8] it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.

Hany : But, you know me. I always forget something important.



Check Vocabulary

(1) استغرق مني وقتًا طويلًا
(2) تلخيص
(3) النص
(4) يلخِّص
(5) يُفوِّت
(6) النص بالكامل
(7) رئيسي
(8) يشرح - يوضح

Amir : Then you should read the text again. But the second time, underline[9] the most important words or phrases[10] in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions,[11] or phrases for times and places.

Hany : Okay.

Amir : After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete[12] sentences that fill in[13] the gaps[14] between those words.

Hany : I see.

Amir : It's also helpful[15] to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.

Hany : And then?

Amir : When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's clear,[16] and then look back at the original[17] text to see if you've included[18] all the important information.

(9) ضع خط
(10) عبارات
(11) أحداث
(12) كامل
(13) يملأ
(14) فراغات
(15) مفيد
(16) واضح
(17) أصلي
(18) يُضمِّن

Part IV Language

تنويه • راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

Exercise On Language

تنويه • التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. **A :** Can you come on Monday evening?
   B : I'd love to, but I .... tennis with friends.
   a. will play b. shall play c. going to play d. am playing
2. I .... my uncle off at the airport, so I can't meet you at nine.
   a. will be seeing b. will see
   c. will have seen d. will have been seen

3. It's arranged. We .... to the Red Sea this summer.
   a. are going   b. are going to   c. will go   d. go
4. I think my brother .... a doctor. He's very clever.
   a. is   b. is going to be   c. is being   d. will be
5. From five to seven next Monday, I .... a medical conference.
   a. will have attended   b. will be attended
   c. will be attending   d. am going to be attended
6. I .... eighteen next Monday.
   a. am going to be   b. will be   c. am being   d. be
7. The museum typically .... at 8 a.m.
   a. opens   b. is going to open
   c. is opening   d. will open
8. Doctors predict they .... chronic diseases.
   a. are treating   b. will treat
   c. are going to treat   d. will have treated
9. We've run out of sugar. I .... to the market and get some.
   a. will go   b. have gone   c. go   d. went
10. **A :** What would you like to start your lunch with, Sir?
    B : Mmm, I ....with lentil soup.
    a. will start   b. am going to start
    c. am starting   d. starts
11. My lesson .... at four o'clock this afternoon.
    a. is going to finish   b. finishes
    c. is finishing   d. be finished
12. It is very cloudy. I think it .... by the time we are leaving the office.
    a. shall rain   b. is going to be rainy
    c. will be rained   d. rains
13. By the time you receive my letter, I .... to Aswan.
    a. am going to travel   b. will be travelling
    c. will have travel   d. am travelling
14. I predict that Ahmed .... a part-time job during the next summer holiday.
    a. shall find   b. is finding   c. will find   d. finds
15. **A :** What are you doing next Saturday afternoon?
    B : I'm not sure. I .... at home.
    a. will be sleeping   b. may be sleeping
    c. will have slept   d. am sleeping

16. Soon after the exams, Rokaya .... to Aswan as planned.
    a. will travel
    b. has travelled
    c. is going to travel
    d. shall travel
17. I .... to Paris next Monday. It's all arranged by me.
    a. fly
    b. am flying
    c. will fly
    d. is going to fly
18. The drinks will ....
    a. be ordered
    b. be ordering
    c. have ordered
    d. order
19. It has already been decided. They .... a meeting when the new boss has arrived.
    a. will have
    b. are going to have
    c. having
    d. shall have
20. People .... in houses under water in twenty years' time.
    a. may have lived
    b. will be lived
    c. may be living
    d. are living
21. I .... tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
    a. 'm leaving
    b. 'll leave
    c. going to leave
    d. shall leave
22. I have an intention to study Russian. I .... for a course.
    a. am going to apply
    b. shall apply
    c. am applying
    d. applies
23. Mustafa joined the Faculty of Medicine two years ago. He .... as a doctor.
    a. will graduate
    b. is going to graduate
    c. graduates
    d. is graduating
24. This is the key of your new car. You .... it if you come first.
    a. are getting
    b. are going to get
    c. should get
    d. will get
25. I expect they .... the match tomorrow.
    a. win
    b. will win
    c. are winning
    d. are going to win
26. Don't worry. I'm sure you .... them again soon.
    a. see
    b. are seeing
    c. will see
    d. would see
27. I .... hire a car to travel around Alexandria. This is my intention.
    a. am going to
    b. may
    c. could
    d. will
28. In the future, every new book .... as an ebook.
    a. will publish
    b. was published
    c. will be published
    d. will have published

II Special cases

29. The temperature of the world .... in the future.
   a. will still be rising
   b. will still have risen
   c. is still rising
   d. still rises
30. **A :** .... your ebook tomorrow? **B :** No. You can borrow it.
   a. Will you have used
   b. Do you use
   c. Are you used
   d. Will you be using
31. Finish the reports today or you .... your job.
   a. will lose
   b. lose
   c. are losing
   d. are going to lose
32. This time next Friday, this car .... to me.
   a. will be belonging
   b. is belonging
   c. will have been belonged
   d. will belong
33. Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They .... the match easily.
   a. will win b. win c. are winning d. going to win
34. I can't travel at 9 a.m. tomorrow as I .... a meeting.
   a. have had b. going to have c. have d. will be having
35. Mai can't help you tonight. She .... on a science project.
   a. works
   b. is working
   c. won't be working
   d. will have worked
36. I want to buy a new villa, so I............ save a lot of money.
   a. am going to b. will c. am to d. will be
37. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I .... my homework.
   a. would be doing b. would do c. will be doing d. may do
38. She'll phone us as soon as she .... at Madrid Airport.
   a. arrived b. had arrived c. arrives d. arriving

III Check your understanding

39. The match starts at nine. That is according to a/an ....
   a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction
40. I'm sure he will come first. That is a/an ....
   a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

41. I'm flying to London at 6:30 next Friday. That is a/an ....
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

42. I am going to go shopping for clothes next Monday. This is my ....
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

43. I can't go for a walk tomorrow as ....
a. I will be helping mum at home. b. I will help mum at home.
c. I am helping mum at home. d. a & c

44. 'Will you be using your tablet tomorrow?". This means ....
a. I want you to turn off your tablet
b. I want to borrow your tablet
c. I want to tell you about the importance of your tablet
d. I know someone who wants to steal your tablet

45. "People will still be reading paperbacks in the future".
This means ....
a. people look forward to reading paperbacks
b. people don't read paperbacks at present
c. people read paperbacks at present
d. people didn't read paperbacks in the past

46. Rokaya has the intention to revise her physics lessons tomorrow. This means ....
a. Rokaya will revise her physics lessons tomorrow
b. Rokaya will be revising her physics lessons tomorrow
c. Rokaya is revising her physics lessons tomorrow
d. Rokaya is going to revise her physics lessons tomorrow

47. "He has arranged everything for his wedding next Thursday". This means ....
a. he is getting married next Thursday
b. he is going to get married next Thursday
c. he will get married next Thursday
d. he will have been married next Thursday

48. "It is the doorbell. I .... it".
a. am opening b. will open c. am going to open d. open



PART THREE | Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises

Lessons 5&6

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه
• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

تنويه
• أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية(King Lear)كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات فى الجزء المخصص لذلك فى نهاية الكتاب.

attack (ed) (v)	يهاجم	have a taste of her own medicine (idiom)	يشرب من نفس الكأس / ينال الجزاء من جنس عمله
attendants (n)	الحاضرون	honest (adj)	أمين
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	mad (adj)	مجنون
cart (n)	عربة كارو	rude (adj)	وقح
disguise (d) (v)	يتنكّر - يتخفى	servant (n)	خادم
drive ... mad	يصيب ... بالجنون - يفقد صوابه	the cart is pulling the horse (idiom)	الأمور ليست كما يجب أن تكون
encourage (d) (v)	يُشجِّع	wise	حكيم
guilty (adj)	مُذنِب		

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Some police officers prefer to .... to arrest the criminals when they have the chance. (الدقو - الردبسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. disguise b. a disguised c. in disguise d. disguised
2. He was found .... So, he was sent to prison.
   a. guilty b. rude c. honest d. mad
3. People tell their .... what to do.
   a. queens b. kings c. captains d. servants
4. It is a good thing of you to .... yourself well.
   a. behave b. disguise c. encourage d. help

5. If you say something .... by mistake, you'd better apologise at once.
a. kind b. rude c. polite d. well

6. The noise my little brothers and sisters make drives me ....
a. guilty b. wise c. honest d. mad

7. To .... means to try to make someone do something.
a. behave b. disguise c. encourage d. help

8. Being .... is a good quality.
a. wise b. rude c. angry d. mad

9. It is not logical منطقي that a .... goes in front of a horse.
a. boat b. herring c. card d. cart

10. I trust him because he is ....
a. guilty b. rude c. honest d. mad

Part II Grammatical Hints

so = as a result + جملة لذلك / نتيجة لذلك

• A lot of people drink polluted water, so / as a result they become ill.

للاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (as a result) في نهاية الجملة:

ex. - A lot of people drink polluted water. They become ill as a result.

Surprisingly = It is surprising that من الغريب أن ....

• **Surprisingly**, he didn't get angry.
= It is surprising that he didn't get angry.

so that / in order that / in the hope that + جملة لكي

• Scientists can modify some genes so that the tomatoes do not rot so quickly.

like = such as مثل / على سبيل المثال

• I don't eat sweet foods like (such as) cakes and candies.

because

• **Because / as / since** جملة سبب + جملة نتيجة .... لأن

ex. - Because / As / Since I was injured, I didn't play the match.
= I didn't play the match because / as / since I was injured.

• **Because of / Owing to / Due to** بسبب **/ Thanks to** بفضل **+ n / (inf. + ing) +** جملة نتيجة

ex. - Because of / Owing to / Due to being injured, I didn't play the match.
= I didn't play the match because of / owing to / due to being injured.

leaving out relative pronouns

١. يمكن ان يتم حذف كلًا من (who – which – whom – that) إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل:

ex. - This is the man who I called yesterday.

= This is the man I called yesterday.

٢. يمكن حذف كلًا من (who – which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا جاء بعدهم مبني للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف ضمير الوصل والفاعل ويبقي الفعل مضافا له (ing) :

ex. - The secretary who works here speaks five languages.

= The secretary working here speaks five languages.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا ضمير الوصل و (be) ويبقي التصريف الثالث للفعل.

ex. - The bully who was caught last month was sent to prison.

- The bully caught last month was sent to prison.

ج. إذا جاء بعدهم (be) كفعل أساسي وهنا يتم حذف ضمير الوصل و (be)

ex. - The food which is in the fridge is not fresh.

- The food in the fridge is not fresh.

٣. يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان بعده اسم أو صفة بعدها اسم:

ex. - Harry Keen, who is a talented footballer, played for Tottenham, England.

- Harry Keen, a talented footballer, played for Tottenham, England.

With + obj. مفعول + p.p. ...

لاحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

- **Because** + جملة مبنية للمجهول ... .

= **Due to / Because of + the fact that** + جملة مبنية للمجهول ... .

= **With + obj.** مفعول **+ p.p. + to + inf.** ... .

ex. - Because the population of the world is predicted to grow, we need to increase food production.

- Due to the fact that the population of the world is predicted to grow, we need to increase food production.

- With the population of the world predicted to grow, we need to increase food production.

get + P.P.

يمكن استخدام (get) حسب الزمن بدلًا من (be) في صيغة المبني للمجهول كالتالي:

- **Obj.** مفعول **+ be + P.P.** ... . = **Obj.** مفعول **+ get + P.P.** ... .

ex. - Criminals are arrested by the police. = Criminals get arrested by the police.

- I was promoted last month. = I got promoted last month.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I offered to help him in his difficult situation. ...., he refused.
   a. So b. That's why c. As a result d. Surprisingly
2. We work hard .... we can achieve our goals in life.
   a. because b. because of c. in order that d. in order to
3. She wasted her time. ....
   a. So, she failed the exam. b. As a result, she failed the exam.
   c. She failed the exam as a result. d. a, b & c
4. .... Rokaya loves children, she chose to be a primary school teacher.
   a. Because b. Due to
   c. So that d. In the hope that
5. .... her love for children, Rokaya chose to be a primary school teacher.
   a. Because b. Due to
   c. So that d. In the hope that
6. She is engaged to the young man .... you have played tennis with.
   a. who b. that c. no pronoun d. a, b & c
7. I feel sorry for the tall girl .... food in this restaurant.
   a. who serves b. serving c. served d. a & b
8. I don't like the food .... in this restaurant.
   a. who serves b. serving c. served d. a & b
9. With my team .... to win the cup, I was eager متلهف to watch the match in the stadium.
   a. predict b. predicted c. is predicting d. b & c
10. The victim .... stabbed طُعِن with a sharp knife.
    a. got b. was got c. is got d. get

Part III Language Skills

1 Writing Tips – Essay writing

* ارشادات خاصة بكتابة المقال :

١. عند التعبير عن الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال نبدأ بـ :

- **The subject of this essay is +** الموضوع ... موضوع هذا المقال هو ...
  - The subject of this essay is the future of farming.

OR: This essay will focus on + الموضوع ... سوف يركز هذا المقال علي ...
  - This essay will focus on the future of farming.

٢. عند التركيز علي مثال محدد نبدأ بـ :

- **In the case of / An example of + ... اسم** — فيما يخص ...
  - In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens.

٣. عند التعبير عن سبب حدوث شيء ما نستخدم :

- **... due to the fact that / because + ... جملة** — لأن ...
  - Cities are not good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space.

٤. عند التعبير عن المعلومات القائمة علي حقائق نستخدم :

- **All the evidence suggests+ ... جملة** — كل الدلائل / الشواهد تشير إلي أن ...
  - All the evidence suggests that urban farming could help us grow our own food in the future.

٥. عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي في موضوع المقال نستخدم :

- **In my opinion / view+ ... جملة** — من وجهة نظري ...
  - In my view, urban farming is a great idea.

٦. عند اختتام موضوع المقال نستخدم :

- **In conclusion / To conclude,+ ... جملة** — الخلاصة هي أن ...
  - To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea.

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

Model Essay

* **A model Essay about "The Future of Farming" from student's book Page (31)**

The future of farming

This essay will focus يُركز on the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface سطح is healing up يمتلئ and soon there will be less land that farmers can use. In the case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently. بكفاءة

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they are prepared for the future.

To conclude, الخلاصة agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

3 Translation الترجمة

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

① Translate into Arabic :

1. The Nile, which gives us life, is treated with a great deal of cruelty. Sometimes the pollution is put in the river deliberately and sometimes the river is polluted deliberately because of carelessness.
2. Water isn't the only thing that the Nile granted us. Formerly, the water from the Nile used to make the soil along its banks fertile.
3. Honesty is one of the most important qualities of a trader. Those who sell expired food must be fined.
4. It is always best to buy food from a reliable shop where you can buy not only tasty food but healthy as well.
5. There are now food safety organisations whose aim is to make sure that all the food that you buy is safe to eat.
6. Labels on the food may have a list of its ingredients, so you know the ingredients and whether they are natural or artificial.

② Translate into English :

١. الصحة تاج علي رؤوس الأصِحّاء لا يراه إلا المرضي، لذا لابد أن تحرص على تناول الغذاء الصحي والمياه النقية لكي تظل بصحة جيدة.

٢. يجب أن تكون اللحوم جيدة الطهي حتى لا تسبب أي ضرر، فالبكتيريا والجراثيم الموجودة باللحوم تحتاج إلي درجة حرارة عالية للتخلص منها.

٣. يقول الخبراء أن هناك ثلاث أُسُس للصحة الجيدة: الغذاء السليم وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام والحصول على قدر كاف من النوم يوميًا.

٤. إن عدم استغلال الزيادة السكانية يُعْتَبَر من أكبر المشكلات التي تواجهنا كمصريين، فكلما زاد عدد السكان في مصر كلما قلّ نصيب الفرد من الدخل القومي والخدمات.

٥. يجب أن نُرَشِّد استخدام المياه حتى لا نواجه الظمأ في المستقبل، فالعالم بأسْرِه يواجه خطر نُدرَة مصادر المياه العذبة.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

bank	ضفة	honesty	الأمانة
chief	رئيسي	individual	الفرد
consider	يعتبر	national income	الدخل القومي
crown	تاج	population	السكان
cruelty	قسوة	pure	نقي
a great deal of	كَمّ كبير من	services	الخدمات
formerly	في السابق	share	نصيب
getting enough sleep	الحصول على قدر كاف من النوم	sources	مصادر
grant	يمنح	stay healthy	تظل بصحة جيدة
harm	ضرر	threat	تهديد

Part IV Just for Advanced Level للفائقين فقط

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

1 More about key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture

- **agriculture (n)** علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها
  - He intends to study agriculture at university.
- **agriculture (n)** النشاط الزراعي
  - Agriculture employs about 40% of the population in Egypt.
- **agricultural (adj)** زراعي
  - It is against the law to build on agricultural land.
- **agriculturalist (n)** خبير زراعي
  - According to agriculturalists, this soil is not good for planting rice.

crop

- **crop (n)** محصول غذائي
  - The main crop we plant here is wheat.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- grow / plant a crop يزرع محصول غذائي
- bring in / harvest a crop يجني المحصول
- destroy / damage a crop يدمر المحصول
- a cash crop محصول مخصص للبيع
- a genetically modified crop محصول معدل وراثياً

- **crop(ped) (v)** يُثمِر - يُنتج الثمار أو الحبوب
  - Orange trees crop in winter.
- **crop(ped) (v)** يُقصِّر الشعر
  - Little children usually do not like to crop their hair short.
- **crop(ped) (v)** يقص الصورة
  - He cropped the photo to fit the frame.

innovation

- **innovate(d) (v)** يبتكر
  - He has an amazing ability to innovate new ideas for advertisements.
- **innovation (n)** ابتكار - اختراع - فكرة جديدة (اسم معدود)
  - A good teacher should come up with يأتي بـ innovations that help his students enjoy learning.
- **innovation (n)** الابتكار - الاختراع (اسم غير معدود)
  - The manager of our company encourages innovation in industry.الصناعة
- **innovative / innovatory (adj)** جديد - مُبتكَر - خلاق
  - His innovative ideas made the office very successful.

vary

- **vary (ied) (in) (v)** يتنوع - يُنوِّع
  - As a teacher, you need to vary your teaching methods. يُنَوِّع
  - The plants on the farm vary in size and colour. يختلف / يتنوع
- **variety (in) (n)** تَنَوُّع - نوع
  - The variety of programmes attracts viewers. تَنَوُّع
  - This zoo has about 3000 varieties of birds and animals. أنواع
- **various (adj)** عديد / متعدد / مختلف
  - This drink is available in various sizes.

sustainable

يصون - يحافظ على - يُبقى على
- **sustain(ed) (v)**
  - It is necessary for a teacher to sustain his students interest.

يعاني من (بدون حرف جر)
- **sustain(ed) (v)**
  - During COVID -19 pandemic, oil prices sustained a sharp drop. انخفاض
- **sustainable (adj)** صديق للبيئة ≠ - **unsustainable** ضار بالبيئة
  - A bike is a sustainable means of transport.

مُستدام / دائم
- **sustainable (adj)**
  - The government aims at achieving a sustainable economic growth. نمو

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lake Nasser has more than 15 .... of fish.
   a. hydroponics b. varieties c. sources d. livestock
2. This is not the .... You have made a lot of changes to it.
   a. plan original b. plan which is original
   c. original plan d. b & c
3. The Earth's surface is .... and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.
   a. recovering b. healing up c. getting better d. improving
4. With the population of the world ...., we will need more food and fresh water resources.
   a. is growing b. predict to grow
   c. predicting to grow d. predicted to grow
5. How do you think you will put all that .... in this small car?
   a. stuff b. stuffs c. staff d. staffs
6. The neighbour's sheep .... the grass in my field
   a. harvested b. cropped c. collected d. farmed
7. The livestock on this farm .... in good health.
   a. is b. are c. have d. a & b

8. All the .... of this farm is sold to the restaurants in the nearby town.

a. crops　　b. vegetables　　c. produce　　d. cattle

9. This expert has .... techniques that help farmers increase their production.

a. done　　b. taken　　c. introduced　　d. involved

10. .... is to soil as sustain is to maintain.

a. Earth　　b. Sand　　c. Water　　d. Rock

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- كلمة (varieties) بمعني (أنواع) هي الإختيار الصحيح
2.	c	- الصفة (original) بمعني (أصلي) لابد أن يأتي بعدها الإسم الموصوف
3.	b	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (heal up) مُستخدم هنا بشكل مجازي بمعني (يمتلئ - يتشبَّع)
4.	d	- السياق مبني للمجهول، فالإختيار (predicted to grow) هو صيغة مختصرة لعبارة الوصل (which is predicted to grow)
5.	a	- كلمة (stuff) بمعني (متعلقات / أغراض) هي اسم غير معدود ، أما كلمة (staff) بمعني هيئة عاملين فهي غير مناسبة للمعني
6.	b	- كلمة (cropped) هنا تعني (جذّت - التهمت)
7.	d	- يمكن استخدام فعل مفرد أو جمع بعد الإسم (livestock)
8.	c	- لابد من اختيار اسم مفرد مناسب أو اسم غير معدود نظراً لوجود (is) وكلمة (produce) هنا اسم غير معدود يعني (ناتج زراعي)
9.	c	- الفعل (introduced) هنا يعني (طرح - ابتكر)
10.	a	- السياق يتطلب مرادف لكلمة (soil) ويمكن استخدام كلمة (earth) بنفس المعني

2 Language Exercise for Advanced level تدريبات قواعد للفائقين

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Look where you are going. You .... into a hole.

a. will step　　b. will be stepped

c. are going to step　　d. are to step

2. My wife and I are good at learning languages, so our children .... good at languages too.
   a. will become
   b. are going to become
   c. are becoming
   d. will have become
3. Scientists are concerned whether enough food .... for so many people in the future.
   a. will be produced
   b. is produced
   c. will have been produced
   d. will produced
4. Ayman .... the staff of the office. He has made up his mind.
   a. is going to change
   b. is changing
   c. will change
   d. changes
5. For being stubborn, I expect she .... easily.
   a. won't persuade
   b. isn't going to be persuaded
   c. won't be persuaded
   d. is being persuaded
6. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I .... my homework.
   a. will have done b. will be done c. will be doing d. do
7. I doubt that he .... your kind offer.
   a. isn't going to accept
   b. isn't accepting
   c. don't accept
   d. won't accept

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	حدث على وشك أن يقع
2.	a	تنبؤ دون دليل
3.	a	السياق يتطلب مستقبل بسيط مبني للمجهول
4.	a	قرار مسبق، ويتضح ذلك من (he has made up his mind.)
5.	c	السياق يتطلب مستقبل بسيط مبني للمجهول
6.	c	حدث سيكون مستمر في المستقبل بما سيمنع القيام بشيء آخر
7.	d	تنبؤ دون دليل بعد (I doubt that)

Test on Unit 3

● Understand ● Apply ● Create





Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. If you .... more money, you can buy a new car.
   a. save b. spend c. earn
   d. waste e. sell

2. You can make ....
   a. small changes b. wrong c. the shopping
   d. a survey e. seawater safe to drink

3. The captain asked me to keep training. This means I .... training.
   a. depend on b. count on c. go on
   d. consist on e. carry on

4. I like films of the horror variety. The word "variety" can be replaced by ....
   a. save b. spend c. earn
   d. waste e. sell

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

5. This young man is a/an .... ; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. surveyor b. explorer c. discoverer d. innovator

6. Farmers keep .... such as cows and buffaloes to help them in their fields. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. livestock b. wild animals c. poultry d. dairy

7. .... are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of them are called seaweed. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Algae b. Fungi c. Reefs d. Pesticides

8. .... is the process of growing plants without using any soil. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Hydroponics b. Hydroelectric c. Hydrostatic d. Hydrophobia

9. Look out! You .... the vase. (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. 're going to hit b. will hit c. you're hitting d. hit

10. Don't worry; I won't leave until you .... (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
    a. have been arrived b. will arrive
    c. had arrived d. have arrived

11. According to the airline schedule, the plane to London .... at 7 pm tomorrow. (... ٢٠٢٢)
   - a. leaves
   - b. will leave
   - c. is leaving
   - d. is going to leave

12. Tomorrow afternoon, we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4:30. So at 4 o'clock, we .... tennis. (... سلسبيل ٢٠٢٢)
   - a. are going to play
   - b. will play
   - c. will be playing
   - d. play

13. Mariam is thinking about her holiday next week when she .... on the beach all day. (... ٢٠٢٢)
   - a. was lying
   - b. will be lying
   - c. would be lying
   - d. going to lie

14. At one o'clock tomorrow, I .... lunch with my friends. (... ٢٠٢٢)
   - a. eat
   - b. going to eat
   - c. will have eaten
   - d. will be eating

15. Daisy has sold her old car. She .... a new car. It is her plan. (القليوبية - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
   - a. will buy
   - b. is buying
   - c. is going to buy
   - d. buys

16. Can you tell me when the next train to Alexandria .... ? (القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
   - a. leaves
   - b. is leaving
   - c. will leave
   - d. is going to leave

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since **primitive** times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medical purposes. Today, some drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of willow trees أشجار الصفصاف.

Natural remedies علاجات are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used. The powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones.

Garlic الثوم is just one herb which has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as **it** is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop, you will be struck by different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription. However, about eighty per cent of those who **consult** a herbalist متخصص فى الأعشاب have already been to a doctor.

As a result of the worldwide interest in herbal medicines, Egypt has set aside 50,000 acres of land in Beni Suef and Minya for the cultivation of herbs with medical properties. If this experiment is successful, lots of countries may import herbs from Egypt in the near future.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. Some modem drugs are still based on ....
   a. chemicals
   b. ancient tombs
   c. herbs
   d. paintings
18. Garlic is used for treating ....
   a. skin problems
   b. hair problems
   c. eyesight
   d. hearing
19. Chemical medicines are .... herbal ones.
   a. safer than
   b. as dangerous as
   c. as safe as
   d. not so safe as
20. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....
   a. henna b. garlic c. hair d. the world
21. About .... of those who consult a herbalist have been to a doctor.
   a. 80% b. 18% c. 90% d. 88%
22. Egypt is expected to .... natural herbs in the near future.
   a. import b. buy c. export d. manufacture
23. The word " **primitive**" means ....
   a. primary b. modem c. ancient d. recent
24. The word "**consult**" means ....
   a. advise
   b. ask for advice
   c. complain
   d. devise



Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this serious problem. (سلسبيل ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

2. Translate into English :

يمكن أن تُستخدَم المياه الجوفية في الصحراء الغربية لتحويلها إلى أرض مزروعة، وهذا بدوره سيوفر فرص عمل للمواطنين ويساعد على تقليل الواردات وزيادة الصادرات. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

....

....

....

....

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

The most favourite and least favourite meals

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 20 : 23

تنويه
تقييمات تراكمية فى بنك الأسئلة

تنويه اختبار تراكمى على كل ثلاث وحدات فى الكراسة التفاعلية.

Part I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

amount (n)	كمية	large (adj)	كبير
athletes (n)	الرياضيون	likely (adj - adv)	على الارجح / فى الغالب / محتمل / متوقع
bandage (n)	ضمادة		
boost (ed) (v)	يدعم - يرفع - يزيد	local (adj)	محلي
boxer (n)	ملاكم	meal (n)	وجبة
boxing (n)	الملاكمة	prepare (d) (v)	يُعدّ / يجهز
certificate (n)	شهادة	register (ed) (v)	يُسجِّل
college (n)	كليَّة - مدرسة عليا	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
course (n)	برنامج تدريبي	runner (n)	عدَّاء
distance (n)	مسافة	search (ed) (v)	يبحث
energy (n)	طاقة	teenager (n)	مراهق
fatty (adj)	دهني	together (adv)	معاً
immune system (n)	جهاز المناعة	training (n)	التدريب
injured (adj)	مُصاب	variety (n)	تشكيلة - تنوع

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a cooking course يحصل على دورة تدريبية فى الطهى	give	... energy يمد ... بالطاقة
	training يتمرن		a reason يعطي مبرر
feel	(a lot) better يشعر بتحسن (كبير)	have	an accident يقع له حادث
get	a certificate يحصل علي شهادة	put	a bandage on يضع ضمادة علي

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

Expression	المعنى	Expression	المعنى
at the start	في البداية	less likely to be injured	أقل عُرضة للإصابة
a wide variety of	مجموعة متنوعة من	less likely to get ill	أقل عُرضة للمرض
fast food	وجبات سريعة	make me stronger	يجعلني أقوي
fatty food	طعام عالي الدهون	on my own	بمفردي
in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة	on their website	على موقعهم
in two weeks' time	خلال أسبوعين	search for	يبحث عن
instead of	بدلاً من	sit at a desk	يجلس على مكتب
larger amounts of	كميات أكبر من	talk to	يتحدث إلي

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 36)

Kareem

I'm a runner[1] who regularly[2] runs very long distances[3]. I need to eat large[4] amounts[5] of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough energy[6] to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to boost[7] my immune system,[8] which means that I'm less likely[9] to get ill and have to stop training[10]. I usually prepare[11] my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عدّاء
- (2) بانتظام
- (3) مسافات
- (4) كبير
- (5) كميات
- (6) طاقة
- (7) يدعم
- (8) جهاز المناعة
- (9) محتمل - متوقع
- (10) التدريب
- (11) يُعد

Amr

I'm a boxer,[1] so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other athletes.[2] When I started boxing,[3] I started eating in a different way. Instead of[4] three large meals[5] a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide variety[6] of food.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) ملاكم
- (2) الرياضيون
- (3) الملاكمة
- (4) بدلاً من
- (5) وجبات
- (6) تشكيلة

I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be injured.(7) Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, fatty(8) food, such as cakes and chocolate.

(7) مُصاب
(8) دهني

To: Aya@mail.com
From: Hadeer@mail.com

(SB page 38)

Hi Aya,

How are you today?

I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more energy(1) and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat.



Check Vocabulary

(1) طاقة
(2) برنامج تدريبي
(3) معاً
(4) محلي
(5) كلية
(6) مراهقين
(7) يُسجِّل
(8) يبحث

Do you want to do a cooking course(2) with me so we can learn together?(3) There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the local(4) college.(5) It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for teenagers!(6)

You don't need to go to the college to register,(7) you can do it on their website. Just search(8) for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.

Talk to you soon!

Hadeer

2 Listening Text

(SB page 37)

Interviewer : Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Gizeh who has just started to do an interesting hobby[1]. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam ?

Mariam : Yes, sure. In my free time, i'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had an accident[2].

Interviewer : That sounds great. So you can learn new skills[3] and help other people at the same time.

Mariam : Exactly. I'm doing a first aid course[4] with about twenty other young people at our sports centre[5].



Interviewer : And will you receive a certificate[6] at the end of the course ?

Mariam : Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can perform[7] basic[8] first aid.

Interviewer : Great ! So you're learning simple techniques[9] to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right ?

Mariam : Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a bandage[10] on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so I can learn as much as possible.

Interviewer : And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much ? What's so interesting about it ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) هواية
(2) حادث
(3) مهارات
(4) دورة تدريبية للإسعافات الأولية
(5) مركز رياضي
(6) شهادة
(7) يؤدي
(8) أساسي
(9) أساليب
(10) ضمادة / شاش

Mariam : Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.



Interviewer : So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic !



UNIT

4 Changing English

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 24 : 29

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :**
  An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
- **Writing :**
  A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects
- **Listening :**
  A speaker talking about messaging; Tips on how to write a successful blog post
- **Speaking :**
  A debate
- **Language :**
  Reported speech; reporting orders, requests and advice; could/should have + past participle
- **Life skills :**
  Communication

Mom, I did well n ze meetin
and I'm in my way back hom
hope u r happy, miss you de

- بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
- ملحق المهارات اللغوية.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة.
- **Dictation** في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

PART ONE | LESSONS **1 & 2**



SB pages 42 : 45 WB pages 24 : 25

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

abbreviation(n)	اختصار	innovator(n)	مُبتكر - مُخترِع
acronym(n)	اختصار بالحروف الأولى	linguist(n)	خبير لغة - عالِم لغة
advice (n)	نصيحة	misunderstand - misunderstood (v)	يُسئ فهم
advise(d) (v)	ينصح	necessarily(adv)	بالضرورة - حتمًا
emoji(n)	رمز تعبيري	negative(adj)	سلبي
formal(adj)	رسمي	positive(adj)	إيجابي
frown (n)	تجَهم - عبوس	request(ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
frown(ed) (v)	يعْبَس - يتجهم (يُكشِّر)	tone(n)	نبرة الصوت - طابع/أسلوب

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

actually(adv)	في الحقيقة	expressions(n)	تعبيرات(وجه)
admit(ted) (v)	يقرّ بـ - يعترف بـ	face-to-face(adj)	وجهًا لوجه
advantages(n)	مزايا	facial(adj)	وجهي (خاص بالوجه)
app (application)	تطبيق	immediate(adj)	فوري
appear(ed) (v)	يظهر	inform(ed) (v)	يعطي معلومة -يُعْلِم
apply(ied) (v)	يُطَبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	lovely(adj)	رائع
arrangement(n)	ترتيب	personal(adj)	شخصي
author(n)	مؤلف	positively(adv)	بشكل إيجابي
aware(adj)	علي علم - مُدْرِك	punctuation(n)	علامات الترقيم
basic(adj)	أساسي	purpose (n)	غرض
basically(adv)	اساسًا - فى الأساس	require(ed) (v)	يتطلّب - يستلزِّم
chat(ted) (n - v)	دردشة - يدردش	research(ed) (n - v)	بحث - يجري بحث

conversation(n)	حوار	response(n)	استجابة - رد
correct(ed) (adj - v)	صحيح - يُصحح	suitable(adj)	مناسب
deal - dealt(d) (v)	يتعامل - يتناول	teenager(n)	مُراهق
disadvantages(n)	عيوب	text messaging	التواصل عن طريق الرسائل النصية
everyday(adj)	يومي	warn(ed) (v)	يُحذِر

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التَعَلُم المُستهدفة _ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
abbreviation(n) اختصار	a short form صيغة of a word or expression تعبير
acronym(n) اختصار بالحروف الأولى	a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up تُكوّن the name of something
emoji(n) رمز تعبيري	an icon used in electronic messages and on websites
formal(adj) رسمي	used in official or serious جادّ situations
frown(v) يعبس (يُكشِّر)	to have an expression تعبير on your face that shows you are not happy
innovator(n) مُبتكر - مُخترِع	someone who introduces changes and new ideas
linguist(n) خبير لغة - عالم لغة	someone who studies or teaches linguistics اللغويات
misunderstand(v) يسئ فهم	to not understand properly
not necessarily(adv) ليس بالضرورة	a response استجابة to something that has been said that may not be true or correct
tone(n) نغمة الصوت / نبرة	the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Malak responded to my message with a red flower ....
(ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. finding b. procedure c. creation d. emoji

2. Donating money does not .... mean that someone is rich. It usually means they are generous.
(القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. positively b. negatively c. necessarily d. loudly

3. Alaa .... angrily when he read the letter that the office sent him.
(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. smiled b. rewarded c. frowned d. introduced

4. I don't like the .... of the article. I think it is full of hatred.
(السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
a. profile b. follow c. upgrade d. tone

5. .... are worried that the use of abbreviations and emoji will destroy the formal language.
(السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
a. Sections b. Procedures c. Bloggers d. Linguists

6. 'UN' is the .... of the United Nation.
(شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. abbreviation b. summary c. suffix d. prefix

7. FIFA is more of a/an .... for "Federation of International Football.
(مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. abbreviation b. emoji c. acronym d. thesaurus

8. When you invent something new, you are a/an ....
(سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. innovator b. discoverer c. explorer d. manager

9. Abbreviations mostly belong to .... language.
a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative

10. You can't use abbreviations in a/an .... email or letter.
a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative

11. .... usually read the followers' comments on their posts.
a. Expressions b. Procedures c. Bloggers d. Linguists

12. My grandma has given me some useful pieces of ....
a. advise b. advice c. section d. expression

13. "You don't need to work hard at all." This sentence gives us what can be described as .... advice.
a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative

14. I never expected you to .... me. I'm really shocked.
a. research b. frown c. communicate d. misunderstand

15. I repeated my ...., but still he refused.
a. acronym b. request c. advise d. tone

2 Important vocabulary

16. The tour guide .... the tourists not to go into the desert on their own. (التجريبية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. warned b. reused c. discouraged d. suggested

17. I don't know how to .... with this difficult situation.
a. require b. admit c. apply d. deal

18. I sent Ayman an email of thanks in .... to his kind offer.
a. response b. topic c. survey d. interest

19. 'Ma3ak ....' from El-Moasser will help you take online exams according to the new educational system.
a. Section b. Headline c. Purpose d. App

20. Your .... expressions reflect تعكس your feelings and reaction. رد الفعل
a. endless b. facial c. basics d. basically

21. Law .... to all citizens.
a. requires b. admits c. applies d. deals

22. You need to know how to deal with the problems of .... life.
a. everyday b. face-to-face c. aware d. personal

23. The .... on her face shows that she is disappointed. مُحبَطة
a. suffix b. procedure c. expression d. thesaurus

24. Would you kindly .... us of your new address?
a. research b. reuse c. include d. inform

25. The main .... of a fridge is to keep our food fresh for some time.
a. section b. headline c. purpose d. app

26. To be achieved, success .... planned hard work.
a. requires b. admits c. applies d. deals

27. There should be a/an .... summit قمة between the leaders of the two countries.
a. everyday b. face-to-face c. aware d. personal

28. The .... idea of the plan is great, but the details need rethinking.
a. endless b. facial c. basic d. basically

29. What you say is .... reasonable. معقول
a. endless b. facial c. basic d. basically
30. Some scientists are still .... a vaccine مصل for this disease.
a. researching b. warning c. interesting d. informing
31. Sadly, I .... that I have made a mistake.
a. require b. admit c. apply d. deal
32. Be .... of the dangers that threaten تهدد your country.
a. everyday b. face-to-face c. aware d. personal

3 Definitions

33. To .... is to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
a. frown b. understand c. smile d. blink
34. The one who knows many languages is called a/an ....
(العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. scientist b. linguist c. sociologist d. archaeologist
35. A/An .... is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym
36. .... language is used in official or serious situations.
a. Necessary b. Not necessary
c. Formal d. Informal
37. A/An .... is someone who introduces changes and new ideas.
a. blogger b. innovator c. messenger d. linguist
38. A .... is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.
a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix
39. To .... is to not understand properly.
a. frown b. understand c. misunderstand d. blog
40. "..............." is a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct.
a. Necessarily b. Not necessarily
c. Formally d. Informally
41. A/An .... is a short form of a word or expression.
a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym
42. A/An .... is a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something.
a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه: ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

Verb	Collocation	Verb	Collocation
do	wrong يرتكب خطأ	have	an argument يتجادل - يقع في خلاف
get	upset ينزعج	have	long conversations يجري حوارات مطوّلة
get	... wrong يفهم ... بشكل خاطئ	include	a question يُضمّن سؤالاً
get	advice يحصل علي النصيحة	introduce	new ideas يطرح أفكارًا جديدة
give	advice يعطي النصيحة	pass	an exam/ a test يجتاز امتحان
give	... bad news ينقل لـ ... أخبار سيئة	play	the piano يعزف على البيانو
give	the opposite meaning يعطي عكس المعني	post	personal information ينشر معلومات شخصية
go	home يذهب للمنزل	say	... in response to يقول ... ردًا علي
have	so much fun يمرح كثيرًا	take	a selfie يلتقط صورة لنفسه
have	a negative effect on له أثر سيء علي		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
appear	يظهر - يصل	come out, arrive
appear	يبدو	sound, seem, look
aware	علي علم - مُدْرِك	well informed, knowledgeable, conscious of, acquainted with, informed about /of
basic	أساسي - محوري	fundamental, primary, principal, chief
formal	رسمي	official, legal, authorized, licensed, documented
necessarily	حتمًا - بالضرورة	inevitably, automatically
request	يطلب	demand, seek
response	استجابة - رد	feedback, reply, reaction

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
aware	علي علم - مُدْرِك	unaware, unconscious, ignorant	جاهل بـ - غير مُلِمّ بـ
basic	أساسي - محوري	secondary, trivial, unimportant	ثانوي - تافه - غير مهم
basic	أساسي	extra - minor	إضافي - ثانوي
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي - ودي
misunderstand	يُسيء فهم	understand, grasp, take in	يفهم - يستوعب
necessarily	حتمًا - بالضرورة	possibly, not necessarily	ممكن -ليس بالضرورة
response	استجابة - رد فعل	action - request	فعل - طلب

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

abbreviation		
abbreviate(d) (v)	يختصر	- We abbreviate United Nations to UN.
abbreviation (n)	اختصار	- UN is the abbreviation of United Nations.
abbreviated (adj)	مُختَصَر	- We usually use abbreviated words in messaging.
blog		
blog(ged) (v)	يُدوِّن	- I always blog about some social problems.
blog (n)	مُدوَّنة (على الإنترنت)	- I have a blog about social problems.
blogger (n)	مُدَوِن	- I am a blogger about social problems.
linguist		
linguist (n)	خبير لغة - عالم لغة	- He is a famous linguist.
linguistics (n)	(علم) اللغويات	- He is expert in linguistics.
linguistically (adv)	لغويًا	- This expression is linguistically incorrect.

necessarily	
necessitate(d) (v) يستلزم / يتطلب	- This pain necessitates a surgery.
necessity (n) الضرورة	- It is a necessity for you to have a surgery.
necessary (adj) ضروري	- It is necessary for you to have a surgery.
necessarily (adv) بالضرورة – حتمًا	- He is not necessarily ill. He might be busy.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a guide to messaging	دليل المراسلة	fun to use	ممتع في استخدامه
all about	كل ما يخص	in response to	ردًا على
as a response to	كرد على – كاستجابة لـ	laugh out loud	يضحك بصوت عال (يقهقه)
as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن	messaging apps	تطبيقات التواصل
be aware of	على وعي بـ	messaging language	لغة المراسلة
be careful with	يحرص على	negative advice	نصيحة سلبية
be interested in	مهتم بـ	no longer able to	لم يعد قادرًا على
be unkind to	يقسو على	positive advice	نصيحة إيجابية
be upset with	غضبان من	see you later	أراك لاحقًا
different from / to	مختلف عن	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
does not necessarily mean	لا يعني بالضرورة أن	the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	What's up?	ماذا لديك؟ / ما الجديد؟
form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل	whether … or not	سواء … أم لا

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

advise … to / not to	ينصح … أن / ألّا	order … to / not to	يأمر … أن / ألّا
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	put … down	يترك
ask … to / not to	يطلب من … أن / ألّا	refer back to	يشير إلى
change … into	يغير … إلى	speak/talk to	يتحدث إلى
chat with	يدردش مع	thank … for	يشكر … على
come / go back	يعود	waiting for … to	في انتظار … أن
deal with	يتعامل مع	warn … to / not to	يُحذر … أن / ألّا
encourage … to / not to	يشجع … أن / ألّا		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

abbreviation - acronym

• **Abbreviation :** is a short form of a word or expression. "Dr" is the written abbreviation of "Doctor". "Mr" is the written abbreviation of Mister.

هو عبارة أن اختصار لكلمة / عبارة

Word / Expression	Abbreviation	Meaning
tomorrow	2moro	غداً
Great!	Gr8	عظيم!
Please	plz	من فضلك
thank you	thx	أشكرك
as soon as possible	ASAP	بأسرع ما يُمكِن
see you later	c u l8r	أراك لاحقاً
laugh out loud	LOL	تضحك بصوت عال
I don't know	Idk	لا أعرف - لست أدرى
rolling on the floor laughing	ROTFL	يضحك بشدة (يتدحرج على الأرض من الضحك)
be right back	BRB	سأعود
by the way	BTW	بالمناسبة (على فكرة)

• **Acronym :** is a word made up from the first letters of the name of something such as an organisation. هى كلمة مكونة من الأحرف الأولى لاسم شيء (مثلًا مُنظمة)

Words / Expressions	Acronym	Meaning
North Atlantic Treaty Organisation	NATO	حلف الناتو
Federation International de Football Association	FIFA	الفيفا (الاتحاد الدولى لكرة القدم)
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو (منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتربية والعلوم والثقافة)

Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome	AIDS	مرض نقص المناعة المكتسبة
Light Amplification by the stimulated emission of radiation	LASER	أشعة الليزر

لاحظ أن كلمة (abbreviation) قد تستخدم أحيانًا لتؤدى معنى (acronym).

everyday - every day

- **everyday (adj)** يومي (صفة تستخدم فقط قبل اسم)
  - Don't worry! It is an everyday problem.
- **every day (adv)** كل يوم (ظرف يُستخدم غالبًا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)
  - I go to school every day.
  = Every day, I go to school.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. You can either .... advice or .... it.
   a. go b. say c. get
   d. do e. give

2. My friend and I have had a/an ....
   a. argument b. conversation c. upset
   d. wrong e. negative

3. A good citizen is aware of the dangers that threaten their country." The adjective 'aware' here can be replaced by ....
   a. conscious b. unconscious c. ignorant
   d. knowledgeable e. malware

4. "The smile on her face does not necessarily mean she has no problems." We can use the adverb .... instead of 'necessarily' in this sentence.
   a. impossibly b. automatically c. recently
   d. really e. inevitably

5. "He takes in what you want to say." This means he .... what you want to say.
   a. understands b. misunderstands c. grasps
   d. takes out e. doesn't grasp

6. "Include only the basic facts in the report." The adjective 'basic' in this sentence is a synonym of ....

a. trivial b. fundamental c. principal
d. secondary e. unimportant

7. My father warned me .... that bad company. الصُحبة

a. that avoids b. so that we keep c. to keep
d. not to keep e. to avoid

8. This bike is different .... the one we saw yesterday.

a. with b. for c. after
d. from e. to

9. I hope you will .... in touch with us all.

a. keep b. stay c. sit
d. say e. tell

10. "Plz" is .... for 'please'.

a. the abbreviation b. short c. an acronym
d. title e. address

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Do you know how to............. the piano? (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)

a. go b. play c. get d. make

2. Do you think I .... wrong by telling him the truth? (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)

a. made b. got c. added d. did

3. I really .... upset when my father cancelled our trip to Alex. (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. went b. turned c. got d. held

4. You can drive your car if you .... a driving test. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. pass b. succeed c. support d. park

5. I didn't understand your question. I .... it wrong .

a. did b. made c. got d. had

6. The word advantage .... the opposite meaning of demerits.

a. goes b. plays c. takes d. gives

7. The coach said that he had .... me in the tomorrow's match squad.

a. included b. made c. stayed d. said

8. I can't help .... selfies.

a. going b. playing c. taking d. giving

9. I don't want to .... home now. Let's have a drink in that café.

a. go b. play c. take d. give

10. 'Formal' is to .... as 'interest' is to 'boredom'.

a. official b. authorized c. legal d. informal

11. Do you think it is a .... that I am in uniform?

a. necessitate b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily

12. Do you think it is .... that I am in uniform?

a. necessitate b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily

13. Playing a full match .... being fit.

a. necessitates b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily

14. 'Doctor' is .... to 'Dr'.

a. abbreviated b. abbreviation c. linguist d. linguistics

15. Text .... is easier on a smartphone than on a traditional mobile phone.

a. messages b. messaging c. concludes d. conclusion

16. He is old now. He .... longer has energy to fight as a boxer.

a. any b. no c. much d. a bit

17. I'm in a hurry. Please, reply to me as .... as possible.

a. far b. soon c. long d. tall

18. "SOS" is a/an .... of "Save our Souls".

a. abbreviated b. short c. acronym d. a & b

19. Which of the following is more of an abbreviation?

a. NATO b. AIDZ c. Gr8 d. a & b

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Text Messaging

(SB page 43)

Plz read this article[1] ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u 👍 it! 😊

For any readers who can't understand the language of text[2] messaging,[3] the translation is: Please, read this article as soon as possible. It's great.
I hope you like it.

LOL PLZ Thx! BRB XOXO ?? BTW

In text messages, abbreviations,[4] emojis[5] and numbers are all used to make communication[6] quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require[7] correct[8] spelling,[9] or difficult grammar and punctuation.[10]

Messaging language is appearing[11] in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis 😃 . Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!!!

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable[12] in formal[13] emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers[14] are no longer[15] able to speak or write using English correctly.

However, some linguists[16] suggest that the people who use messaging language are actually[17] language innovators,[18] introducing[19] new ideas into English. They argue[20] that messaging language is quick, short and communicates[21] a lot in a small space.[22]

Whether[23] or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic[24] abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

Check Vocabulary

(1) مقال
(2) نَص
(3) التراسل
(4) اختصارات
(5) رموز تعبيرية
(6) التواصل
(7) يتطلّب
(8) صحيح
(9) التهجّي
(10) علامات الترقيم
(11) يظهر
(12) مناسب
(13) رسمي
(14) مُراهقين
(15) لم يعُد
(16) اللغويون
(17) في الحقيقة
(18) مُبتكرين
(19) يُقدِّم - يطرح
(20) يجادل - يزعم
(21) ينقل - يوصِّل
(22) مساحة
(23) سواء
(24) أساسي

(WB page 25)

18:00

Monday 08:17 AM

90%

Hi Hazem! What's up? ✓✓

Hi Salem. How was the meeting with your teacher? ✓✓

- Very useful![1] Thx for asking.
  I asked him about my last exam. ✓✓

- Gr8! How did he react?[2] ✓✓

- I was worried when he started to frown[3], but then I understood that he was thinking carefully and the tone of his voice was very positive.[4] ✓✓

Tell me what he said, plz. 🙏

- He said I should have read the essay question more carefully because I misunderstood it, but he said that was not necessarily[5] the reason I got a low[6] mark.[7] The problem was that I shouldn't have used emojis in my essay. ✓✓

- I can't believe[8] you used emojis in your exam! ✓✓ 😆😆😆

Check Vocabulary

(1) مفيد
(2) يتصرف
(3) يعبس
(4) إيجابي
(5) بالضرورة
(6) منخفض
(7) درجة
(8) يُصدِّق

Hi Hamdi, I had so much fun this morning ! *(WB page 24)*
laugh out loud LOL. I was on TV, talking about tech, and I warned[1] people not to open any strange[2] emails. It was great (gr8) ! They asked me to go back next week! I'll see you later (cu 18r) and I will tell you all about it.

Khalid

Check Vocabulary

- يحذر (1)
- غريب (2)
- أنا مسرور جدًا (3)
- معلومات شخصية (4)
- يحضر (5)

Hey Nadia, thanks (thx) for your help ! I'm so glad[3] you advised me to change the photos on my blog. I don't know (idk) what I was thinking! My dad warned me not to post personal information[4] , but I didn't think about the photos. I'll change them as soon as possible (ASAP).

Judy

Yasser, why didn't you tell me that you can't find my book? I asked you to look after it. Can you please (PlZ) look for it again and bring[5] it to school tomorrow (2 moro)? **Medhat**

Nihal, aged[1] 16

(WB page 25)

A new girl has started at our school and I wanted to be friends with[2] her. I spoke to her in the playground[3] and we took a selfie[4] together. That afternoon I posted it online,[5] but she didn't like the photo and the next day at school she didn't speak to me. What did I do wrong?

Check Vocabulary

- بالغ من العمر (1)
- يكون صداقة مع (2)
- ملعب (3)
- صورة شخصية (4)
- على الإنترنت (5)
- يرسب (6)
- يهتم - يبالى (7)

Adam, aged 17

Last week, my friend sent me a text message to say that he was unhappy because he had failed[6] a test at school. It was late and I didn't know what to say, so I decided to reply in the morning. But then too many things happened in the morning and I forgot. Now he thinks that I don't care.[7] What should I have done?



2 Listening Text

(SB page 44)

Messaging

Presenter: Hello everyone, thanks for joining[1] me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about messaging.[2] My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy.

She is the author[3] of the book "A Guide to Messaging" which encourages[4] us to use messaging positively.[5] Welcome to the programme, Dr Magda.

Dr Magda: Thank you. It's lovely[6] to be here.

Presenter: So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset[7]. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she admitted[8] that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out loud[9] - in response[10] to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo.

She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda: This is a good example of why we need to be aware of[11] the advantages[12] and disadvantages[13] of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter: Because messaging is different to speaking face - to - face, isn't it?

Dr Magda: Exactly! Sometimes face - to - face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing.[14] And this is basically[15] because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she smiling[16] or frowning?[17] And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a joke[18]?

Check Vocabulary

(1) ينضم
(2) التراسل - المراسلة
(3) مؤلف
(4) يشجع
(5) بشكل إيجابي
(6) رائع
(7) منزعج
(8) أقر - اعترف
(9) بصوت عال
(10) رد
(11) على علم - مُدرك
(12) مزايا
(13) عيوب
(14) مُحيِّر - مُربك
(15) أساساً
(16) مبتسم
(17) عابس
(18) مزحة (نكتة)

Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements[19]. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice[20] all these things; facial[21] expressions,[22] body movements and the tone of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand[23] what the other person is trying to communicate.[24]

Presenter: So, that's the negative[25] side[26] of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda: Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with[27] friends, but remember that messaging is designed[28] to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations,[29] and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation[30] or acronym[31] as a response to your message.

Check Vocabulary

(19) حركات
(20) يلاحظ
(21) وجهي
(22) تعبيرات
(23) يسئ فهم
(24) يتواصل
(25) سلبي
(26) جانب
(27) علي اتصال بـ
(28) مُصمَم
(29) حوار
(30) اختصار
(31) اختصار بالحروف الأولى
(32) فوري
(33) بالضرورة
(34) تقليدي
(35) تماماً

Presenter: So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda: Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate[32] reply does not necessarily[33] mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said 'Can I call you?'

Presenter: So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional[34] communication is important.

Dr Magda: I am! Absolutely.[35] Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication.

Presenter: Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme…

3 Video script section

(SB page 43)

Smartphones are changing the way[1] we choose to communicate with[2] each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls[3]. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with[4] friends, make and check arrangements[5], send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds[6].

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially[7] between friends and family. Messaging increased by[8] 7000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising[9]. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers[10] send more than most adults[11].

Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone : that's important too.

Check Vocabulary

(1) طريقة
(2) يتواصل مع
(3) يجرى مكالمات تليفونية
(4) يبقى على اتصال مع
(5) يراجع/يتحقق من الترتيبات
(6) فى خلال ثوان
(7) على وجه الخصوص / خاصة
(8) يزداد بمقدار
(9) يزداد / يرتفع
(10) مراهقين
(11) بالغون سن الرشد

Part IV Language

Part 1: Reporting orders, requests and advice

تحويل جمل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى الكلام غير المباشر

❶ تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت **(افعل)** بالفعل في المصدر **(.inf)**:

ex. - "Help your mother, Yara", said Father. (مباشر)
= Father said, "Help your mother, Yara". (مباشر)
- Father asked Yara to help her mother. (غير مباشر)

❷ تبدأ جملة النهي **(لا تفعل)** بـ **(Don't / Never + inf.)** :

ex. - "Don't leave children alone, Azza", said Noha. (مباشر)
= Noha said, "Don't leave children alone, Azza". (مباشر)
= Noha warned Azza not to leave children alone. (غير مباشر)

٣ تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :

مُبَلِّغ + ← فعل إبلاغ + ← مخاطب + ← to / not to + ← inf. المصدر + ... باقى الجملة

مُبَلِّغ	فعل إبلاغ	مخاطب	to / not to	inf. + ...
Father	asked	Yara	to	help her mother.
Noha	warned	Azza	not to	leave children alone.

٤ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب بعد المُبَلِّغ **(المتكلم)**، مثل :

told قال لـ / أخبر - asked طلب - ordered أمر - commanded أمر - reminded ذكر - warned حَذَّر - advised نصح - encouraged شَجَّع - instructed أمر - invited دعي – wanted أراد - taught عَلَّم - expected توقع - threatened هدد + obj. المُخَاطَب......

٥ والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول **(me – him – her – it – you – us – them)** :

ex. - Nader told Salma to study hard.
- I advised her to be more serious.

٦ تُستخدم **(to + inf.)** بعد المُخاطب بمعنى **(أن)** :

ex. - He told me to exercise more.

٧ تُستخدم **(not to + inf.)** بمعني **(ألّا ...)** في صيغة النفي :

ex. - Areej asked him not to shout at her.

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخَاطب :

ex. - Omar said, "Give me your opinion, Sara". (مباشر)
- Omar asked Sara to give him her opinion. (غير مباشر)

٩ يتم حذف **(excuse me - pardon me - please ...)** وما شابه :

ex. - "Help your mother, please," said my father.
- My father asked me to help my mother.

١٠ يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التى تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس الطريقة السابقة – لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali.
= Ali asked Omar to help him.
- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej.
= I asked Areej to lend me 10 pounds.

⓫ يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التي تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس طريقة تحويل (Yes / No Questions) كالتالى :

Speaker + asked / inquired ... + if / whether + subj. ... .

ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali.
= Ali asked Omar if he could help him.
- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej.
= I asked Areej if / whether she could lend me 10 pounds.

⓫ فى حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات التالية يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.) :

يطلب ... ask - ينصح advise - يصمم insist - يوصى بـ recommend - يقترح suggest -

It + be + (vital ضرورى - essential / crucial ضرورى - important ...)

ex. - I asked that Sama get / should get ready.
- Rodayna suggested that I be / should be in charge of the project.
- It is important that Ashraf follow / should follow a diet.



يمكنك الإطلاع على الشرح التفصيلى للكلام غير المباشر بالكامل من كتاب Skill builder الملحق بكتاب المعاصر.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. "............ silence in the library, please," I said to Aya.
   a. Keep b. To keep c. Kept d. Not to keep
2. I asked Aya .... silence in the library.
   a. keep b. to keep c. kept d. not to keep
3. I asked Aya .... noise in the library.
   a. make b. to make c. made d. not to make
4. Mum .... Rahma to study hard.
   a. asked b. said c. advised d. a & c
5. Rodayna asked .... to show her how to prepare for a job interview.
   a. I b. my c. me d. mine
6. "Do you mind if I use your calculator?"
   a. I asked Nada to use my calculator.
   b. I asked Nada whether she minds if I use her calculator.
   c. I asked Nada to let me use her calculator.
   d. b & c

Part 2: should have – could have

1 should - should have

1. Should / shouldn't + inf. يجب أن / ينبغى أن

١ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة :

should / shouldn't + inf.

يجب / ينبغى أن / ألاَّ

ex. - You look very tired. You should take some rest. You shouldn't work more today.
- You shouldn't eat so much fast food. It's not good for you.

٢ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) لطلب النصيحة :

ex. - What should I see while I'm in Aswan ?
- Should Fady tell his boss about the lost file ?

٣ وتُستخدم (should + inf.) لتقديم اقتراحات (suggestion) أو عمل توصيات (recommendation) :

ex. - You should try the fish in this restaurant. It is great.
- You should get a map of Cairo before you go there.

٤ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الرأي الشخصي:

ex. - Sama should study engineering. She is very clever at maths.

٥ تُستخدم (should – ought to) كأفعال ناقصة للتعبير عن الإلزام بشكل مهذب:

should / ought to + inf.

يجب / ينبغى أن

ex. - You should do everything possible to help your parents.
= - You ought to do everything possible to help your parents.
- You shouldn't play loud music in your room at night.
- Guests should leave their hotel rooms by 10 am on the morning of their departure.
- She should not be here; it's for employees only.

- فى التعليمات الرسمية تُستخدَم (should + inf.) فقط وليس (ought to + inf.) :

ex. - Students should be prepared to take exams on their tablets.
- Travellers should be in the airport two hours before takeoff.

فى الأمثلة السابقة يمكن استخدام (must) لكن (should) تجعل أسلوب التعليمات أقل حدة

❶ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't) بعد (why) للاستفسار عن سبب الإلزام :

Why should + subj. + inf. ... ?

ex. - Why should I have to pay for the repairs ?
- Why shouldn't we ask questions during the meeting ?

❷ لاحظ الفرق بين (should / ought to + inf.) و (must + inf.) و (have to + inf.):

١. تعبر (should / ought to + inf.) عن إلزام أو واجب يفرضه الضمير أو الذوق العام :

ex. - You should write accurate data in the form.

في المثال السابق: بالرغم من أن كتابة البيانات الصحيحة يمثل ضرورة، إلا أن استخدام (should) يجعلنا نفهم أن المتحدث ليس له سلطة أو نفوذ على المُخَاطَب لكي يلزمه بكتابة البيانات الصحيحة.

ex. - They shouldn't allow parking here. The street is too narrow.

٢. تُستخدم (must / mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام عندما يكون المتحدث له سلطة أو نفوذ يُمَكِّنه من إلزام الفاعل بالقيام بالفعل أو عدم القيام به :

ex. - You must write accurate data in the form.
- They mustn't park here. It is a 'No Parking' area.

٣. تُستخدم (have to + inf.) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام عندما يكون الإلزام خارجي مفروض على الفاعل ولا يترك له اختيار :

ex. - I have to return the money before Monday.

(للمزيد عن (must / have to) يرجى مراجعة الوحدة الأولى)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He shouldn't .... on that wall. It's not safe.
   a. to sit b. sit c. sat d. sits
2. .... I help mum with the housework?
   a. Should b. Ought c. Ought to d. Should not
3. You .... play tennis. That's my suggestion.
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. need
4. I think he .... pay for half the goods. That's just an opinion.
   a. ought to b. has to c. should d. a & c
5. **A**: .... come to work earlier tomorrow?
   B: To check the preparations for the meeting.
   a. Why I should b. Why should I c. I should d. Should I

6. "You .... leave the office without my permission," said the manager.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. oughtn't d. needn't

7. "You .... leave the office without permission," said my colleague.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. could d. needn't

2. should be + (inf. + ing) الصيغة المستمرة

١ تتكون الصيغة المستمرة (continuous form) من :

ought to /should + be + (inf. + ing)

ex. - Omar should be travelling to Cairo now but he missed the train.
= Omar is supposed to be travelling to Cairo now but he missed the train.

٢ تشير هذه الصيغة إلى أن الفاعل لا يتصرف بالشكل الصحيح أو أنه لا يفعل ما هو مطلوب منه :

ex. - Tarek ought to be studying for his exams. He shouldn't be spending all his time chatting online.
- I shouldn't be telling you this. It's supposed to be a secret.

3. Should have + p.p. الصيغة التامة

١ تتكون الصيغة التامة (perfect form) من :

... ought to /should + have + p.p. ...

ex. - I didn't expect the weather to be so cold in London. I should have brought my jacket. I shouldn't have asked my old mother to come with me. I ought to have thought well before I made that journey.

٢ وتتكون الصيغة التامة فى المبنى للمجهول من :

... ought to /should + have been + p.p. ...

ex. - The email shouldn't have been read by Nada. It wasn't hers.

٣ تستخدم (should have+ p.p.) فى لوم أو انتقاد شخص على عدم فعل شىء كان من المفروض أن يفعله :

ex. - Karim should have cleaned his room. (لكن لم يقم كريم بذلك)
- Ahmed should have paid the bill. (لكن لم يدفع أحمد الفاتورة)

❸ تستخدم (shouldn't have+ p.p.) فى لوم أو انتقاد شخص على فعل شىء كان من المفروض ألا يفعله :

ex. - You shouldn't have got up so late. (لكنك استيقظت متأخراً بالفعل)
- The Emergency Exit doors shouldn't have been locked.
(لكن مخرج الطوارئ كان مغلقاً)

لاحظ : فى اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليزى عادة إلى اختصار نطق (should have) فتبدو للسامع (shoulda) أو (should've).

4. should - be supposed to - be meant to (للطلبة الفائقين)

لاحظ الفرق بين (should) و (be supposed to) و (be meant to) :

❶ فى حالات كثيرة يمكن استخدام (should – be supposed to – be meant to) بنفس المعنى تقريبًا :

ex. - He should be at home before midnight.
- He is meant to be at home before midnight.
- He is supposed to be at home before midnight.

❷ فى حالة التعبير عن الواجب (duty) أو الإلزام (obligation) فإن هذه الصيغ تؤدى نفس المعنى فى النفى فقط :

ex. - You shouldn't make loud noise late at night.
- You aren't supposed to make loud noise late at night.
- You aren't meant to make loud noise late at night.

الشرح الكامل لـ (be supposed to) و (be meant to) فى الوحدة الخامسة.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You should be .... for the guests when they arrive.
   a. wait b. waited c. waiting d. to wait
2. I don't know what you are doing here. You should .... the emails in your office at this moment.
   a. be typed b. be typing c. have typed d. to type
3. Areej should have .... the email.
   a. to sent b. sent c. sends d. send

4. You .... have arrived a bit earlier. The manager looked annoyed when you entered.
   a. should b. must c. ought to d. a & c
5. Aya shouldn't .... the present. It wasn't hers.
   a. have been opened b. be opened
   c. have opened d. to open
6. The email shouldn't .... by Nada. It wasn't sent to her.
   a. have been opened b. be opened
   c. have opened d. to open
7. "You shouldn't have shouted at your sister." What does this mean?
   a. You didn't shout at her. b. You are meant to shout at her.
   c. You shouted at her. d. b & c
8. You should have driven more carefully. This means you ....
   a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't
9. You shouldn't have wasted your time. This means that you ....
   a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't
10. "Sorry, Sama. I shouldn't have shouted at you yesterday." The speaker expresses his / her ....
   a. regret b. happiness c. obligation d. pleasure

2 could - could have

1. could – couldn't + inf.

① تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن قدرة عامة فى الماضى (مثل السباحة وقيادة السيارة والتحدث بلغة معينة ... إلخ) :

... could / couldn't + inf.

ex. - She could read at the age of five.
- I couldn't swim until the age of twelve.

② غالباً لا تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء محدد فى موقف معين فى الماضى (past achievement)، لكن تُستخدم الصيغ التالية:

... was / were able to + inf. كان قادرًا على

ex. - We were able to arrive home through traffic jam.

... managed to + inf. يتمكن أن

ex. - I managed to repair my car.

... succeeded in + (inf. + ing) ينجح فى أن

ex. - I succeeded in sending that email after many attempts. محاولات

❸ لكن تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء محدد فى موقف معين فى الماضى (past achievement) مع أفعال الحواس والإدراك مثل :

... could + smell, taste, see, hear, touch, think, believe, remember, understand ... etc.

ex. - I knew they were at home. I could hear their voices inside.
- She spoke to me before, but I couldn't remember her name.
- The food was terrible. I could taste nothing but salt.

❹ عند التعبير عن عدم القدرة أو عدم الإستطاعة فى الماضى نستخدم :

couldn't + inf. = wasn't / weren't + able to + inf.

ex. - I couldn't understand what he said.
= I wasn't able to understand what he said.

❺ استخدامات أخرى لـ (could + inf.) :

1- Making suggestions : تقديم الإقتراحات

Ali: What shall we do tonight? - We could go to the cinema.

2- Making requests : تقديم الطلبات

ex. - Could you open that door, please ?

3- Asking for permission : طلب الإذن

ex. - Could I use your office tomorrow ?

4- Expressing present / future possibility :

التعبير عن إمكانية حدوث شيء فى المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. - He could go by bus. (= Maybe he will go by bus.)
- She could be at home. (= Maybe she is at home.)

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I found a course at my local college where I .... train as a teacher.
   a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
2. I looked all over the house, but I .... find my phone.
   a. couldn't b. wasn't able to c. managed to d. a & b
3. "He could go there on his own if he wants." This is a ....
   a. permission b. duty
   c. past possibility d. future possibility
4. I .... able to solve the mystery. It was easy for me to do it.
   a. am b. was c. should be d. could be
5. They succeeded .... the problem with the tablet.
   a. to recognise b. to recognising
   c. in recognising d. a & c

2. could / couldn't be + (inf. + ing) الصيغة المستمرة

❶ تستخدم الصيغة المستمرة لعمل استنتاج ضعيف لحدث مستمر فى المضارع :

...could + be + (inf.+ing)... . = ...may/might + be + (inf.+ing)... .

ex. - I don't know what Aya is doing now. She could be watching TV.
= I don't know what Aya is doing now. She might be watching TV.

❷ تُستخدم الصيغة المستمرة المنفية (can't + be + inf. + ing) كنفى لـ (must) لعمل استنتاج قوى منفى لحدث مستمر فى المضارع :

...couldn't / can't + be + (inf.+ing)... . لا يمكن أن

ex. - I am sure Ali is at home now. He couldn't be visiting his uncle.
= I am sure Ali is at home now. He can't be visiting his uncle.

3. could – couldn't + have + p.p. الصيغة التامة

لاحظ تكوين الصيغة التامة فى المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول :

subj. + could + have + p.p. ... (مبنى للمعلوم)

obj. + could + have + been + p.p. ... (مبنى للمجهول)

ex. - He didn't call me. He could have lost his mobile.
- He didn't call me. His mobile could have been lost.

- وتُستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

❶ يمكن أن تعبر (could have + P.P.) عن استنتاج ضعيف فى الماضى :

... could + have + p.p. ... . = may / might + have + p.p.

ex. - He didn't visit us for a long time. He could have been busy.
- He didn't visit us for a long time. He might have been busy.

❷ لكن لاحظ أن (couldn't have + p.p.) تعبر عن استنتاج قوى منفى فى الماضى :

... couldn't + have + p.p. ... . = ... can't + have + p.p. ...

- Mr Ayman's passport is still in the office, so he couldn't (can't) have travelled abroad.

من غير الممكن أن يكون قد سافر وجواز سفره لا يزال فى المكتب.

❸ وتُستخدم (could have + P.P.) للتعبير عن حدث بديل (alternative possibility) -
أى حدث كان الفاعل يستطيع القيام به فى الماضى لكنه لم يفعل :

- Before you got this job, it was offered to me. I could have taken it but I thought you were better than me.

- فى المثال السابق: كان بإمكاني الحصول على وظيفتك قبل أن تأخذها فى الماضى لكننى لم أفعل وحصلت أنت عليها.

- I could have bought an iPhone instead of the Samsung.

- فى المثال السابق: كنت أستطيع شراء أيفون لكنني لم افعل واشتريت سامسونج بالفعل.

- She could have studied medicine but she chose to study business administration.

- فى المثال السابق: كان ممكنا فى الماضى أن تدرس الطب لكنها اختارت إدارة الأعمال.

❹ وتُستخدم (could have + p.p.) عند تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى لكنه لم يحدث :

- Moataz was driving at a mad speed. He could have killed us.

- كان يمكن أن يقتلنا بسبب السرعة لكن لم يحدث شىء والمتحدث فقط يتخيل شىء كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى.

لاحظ: فى اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليـزى عادة إلى اختصار نطق (could have) فتبدو للسامع :
- (could've) / (coulda) :

4. should have VS. could have

لاحظ الفرق بين (should have + p.p.) و (could have + p.p.) :

1 تُستخدم (should have + p.p.) للإنتقاد القوى أو توجيه اللوم لشخص مُقَرَّب - لاحظ الحوار التالى بين عادل ووالده : :

Adel: I failed my exam because I didn't study hard.
Father: You should have studied hard.

2 تُستخدم (could have + p.p.) للتعبير عن إمكانية لم تتحقق فى الماضى وهى أخف حدة من (should) - لاحظ الحوار التالى بين عادل وزميله بالمدرسة :

Adel: I failed my exam because I didn't study hard.
Schoolmate: You could have studied hard but you didn't.

Mini Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He .... have gone to the city centre. He did say he wanted to go shopping.
   a. can't   b. could   c. couldn't   d. mightn't
2. A: Their plane was delayed and they had to wait 20 hours in the airport.
   B: They .... have been very happy with the airline.
   a. must not   b. couldn't   c. must   d. might
3. They .... have been at the cafe but I didn't see them.
   a. must   b. can't   c. couldn't   d. could
4. Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in London? You .... with your uncle.
   a. could stay   b. managed to stay
   c. could have stayed   d. should stay
5. I travelled by train, but I .... by car.
   a. might have travelled   b. could travel
   c. could have travelled   d. can travel
6. A: I failed my math class.
   B: It was your fault. You .... Ann to help you with your math.
   a. could ask   b. should ask
   c. may ask   d. could have asked

7. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and you ....

a. may have killed
b. must have been killed
c. could have been killed
d. could have killed

General Exercise On Language



تنويه • التدريبات التالية مُرتَّبة بشكل متدرِّج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Reporting Orders

1. I .... them to turn the music down as I was trying to sleep. (الشرقية - الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. said
b. told
c. made
d. ordered to

2. I was recommended .... a study plan. (ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. making
b. make
c. to make
d. be made

3. You must buy me the present. You promised me .... (أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. not to buy
b. buying
c. not to forget
d. to forget

4. The assistant told me .... for the shirt over there. (أحمد موافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. whether to pay
b. if he pay
c. to pay
d. to have paid

5. That young man .... me for some advice. (ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. wondered
b. asked
c. inquired
d. explained

6. The teacher told us to do exercise No 4. This shows .... (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)

a. order
b. request
c. positive advice
d. negative advice

2 Should/Could

7. Ali .... have been unkind to his sister, Reem. He knew she would be upset. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)

a. could
b. couldn't
c. should
d. shouldn't

8. He went by bus but he .... have gone in his car. (أحمد موافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. may
b. could
c. must
d. needn't

9. I .... have downloaded that programme. Now I have a virus on my laptop. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

a. could b. shouldn't c. couldn't b. should

10. You .... have seen Nabil in the park this morning. He has been with me at my house all day. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't

11. You .... have wasted much time on playing games. It was bad. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. could

12. Dalia .... have bought the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. shouldn't b. won't c. could d. shall

13. Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in London? You .... with your uncle. (السنبللوين ٢٠٢٢)

a. could stay
b. managed to stay
c. could have stayed
d. should stay

14. I travelled by train. I .... by my car, but I felt tired. (أجا ٢٠٢٢)

a. had to travel
b. could have travelled
c. might have travelled
d. must have travelled

15. She .... have met Ayman in the club yesterday because he was ill. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

a. couldn't b. mustn't c. will d. should

16. I didn't know there was a meeting today. You .... me. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. should have told
b. should tell
c. needn't have told
d. had to tell

17. Which of the following is correctly structured to show regret? (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)

a. I should revise well for the exam.
b. I should have revised well for the exam.
c. I needn't revise well for the exam.
d. I oughtn't to have revised well for the exam.

18. Why did you tell your friends the secret? you .... nothing. (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. shouldn't have said
b. should have said
c. couldn't have said
d. couldn't say

19. I .... have taken the medicine today, but I can't remember.
(أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. must b. should c. needn't d. could

20. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and you ....
a. may have killed b. must have been killed
c. could have been killed d. should have been killed

21. I regretted buying this car. That means I .... it.
(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
a. should buy b. shouldn't buy
c. should have bought d. shouldn't have bought

22. Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and .... to hospital, but he didn't.
(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. didn't have to go b. has to go
c. should have gone d. had to go

23. I should have studied for the test. The speaker expresses his or her ....
(مطروح - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. triumph b. obligation c. regret d. happiness

24. At a restaurant, you .... pay the bill but you don't have to eat everything.
(القاهرة - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. have to b. don't have to c. must to d. shouldn't

25. I advise you not to eat fast food. It is bad for your health. This is the same meaning as ....
(الدقهلية - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. You weren't meant to eat junk food.
b. You shouldn't eat fast food.
c. You had better not to eat fast food
d. You hadn't better to eat junk food.

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 46 : 47 WB pages 26 : 27

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blog(ged) (n - v)	مُدوَّنة (على الإنترنت) - يُدوِّن	message(d) (n - v)	رسالة - يراسل
blogger (n)	مُدَوِّن	messaging(n)	التراسُل - المراسلة
communicate(d) (v)	يؤدي معني - يتواصل - يُبلِّغ	procedure(n)	إجراءات - نَهْج
communication(n)	التواصل - الاتصال	prefix(n)	مقطع بادئ
conclusion(n)	خلاصة - خاتمة	suffix(n)	مقطع ناهي
findings(n)	نتائج	selfie(n)	صورة ذاتية
headline(n)	عنوان رئيسي	sub-heading(n)	عنوان ثانوي (فرعى)
introduction(n)	مقدمة	thesaurus(n)	موسوعة مفردات

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

age(n)	عصر - عُمْر	modern(adj)	حديث
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف إلي	partner(n)	شريك/رفيق
anymore(adv)	لم يَعُدْ	powerful (adj)	قوي
blog post	منشور في مدونة	proper (adj)	صحيح - مناسب
check(ed) (v)	يفحص - يتحقق من	properly(adv)	بشكلٍ مناسب
cite(d) (v)	يستشهد بـ - يُنوِّه عن	receive(d) (v)	يتسلَّم
comment(ed) (n-v)	تعليق - يُعلِّق	recognisable(adj)	يسَهُل التعرف عليه
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	record(ed) (v - n)	يسجل - سِجل
debate(d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يتحاور	remain(ed) (v)	يبقي/يظل
disagree(d) (v)	يرفض	report(ed) (v)	تقرير - يبلغ عن
endless(adj)	مستمر - بلا نهاية	result(ed) (n/v)	نتيجة ينتج
frequently(adv)	غالبًا - كثيرًا	reuse(d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
Greek (an - adj)	يوناني	Russian (n - adj)	روسي
hobby(n)	هواية	section(n)	قسم

image(n)	صورة	society(n)	المجتمع
include(d) (v)	يُضمِّن - يضيف	speaker(n)	مُتحدث/ناطق - سماعة
interest(ed) (n-v)	اهتمام - يثير اهتمام - يُشوِّق	survey(n)	بحث استطلاعي
Latin (n - adj)	اللغة اللاتينية - لاتيني	tip(n)	نصيحة
member(n)	عضو	title(n)	عنوان - لقب
misuse(d) (v)	يسيء استخدام	topic(n)	موضوع - فكرة رئيسية
		uncomfortable(adj)	غير مريح

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التَعَلُم المُستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise		Understand
blog (n)	مُدوَّنة	a personal website diary for other people to read
findings(n)	نتائج	information that is discovered as the result of research into something
messaging(n)	التراسُل - المراسلة	the system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment
prefix(n)	مقطع بادئ	a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word
procedure(n)	إجراءات - نَهْج	a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
selfie(n)	صورة شخصية	a photograph you take of yourself
suffix(n)	مقطع ناهي	a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word
thesaurus(n)	موسوعة مفردات	a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Sama .... me the good news she had heard.
   a. communicated b. toned c. frowned d. messaged
2. Sama .... the good news she had heard to me.
   a. communicated b. toned c. frowned d. a & b

3. You give your final opinion in the essay's ....
a. tone b. conclusion c. introduction d. main body

4. The .... of the research surprised everyone.
a. findings b. selfie c. messaging d. emoji

5. In the .... paragraph, you tell the readers what you are going to write about and how you are going to do so.
a. tone b. conclusion c. introduction d. body

6. You can use .... for the different parts of the report.
a. sections b. headlines c. sub-headings d. apps

7. Smartphones provide a more advanced متقدم .... system.
a. findings b. selfies c. messaging d. emojis

8. The .... of the essay tells the reader what the topic of the essay is.
a. section b. headline c. sub-heading d. app

9. I wonder if you could tell me the .... for applying for a passport.
a. suffixes b. procedures c. expressions d. thesaurus

2 Important vocabulary

10. I don't believe what you have said about the competition. You should .... your sources. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. check b. shake c. shock d. chink

11. His ideas are not traditional. They are .... (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. old-fashioned b. conventional c. ancient d. modern

12. Don't .... sugar in the shopping list. We have enough of it.
a. research b. reuse c. include d. inform

13. When writing an essay, focus on the main ....; don't get distracted. يتشتت
a. tip b. topic c. age d. image

14. He objected to my suggestion so .... that I thought I had made a big mistake.
a. powerful b. powerfully c. proper d. properly

15. His objection to my suggestion was so .... that I thought I had made a big mistake.
a. powerful b. powerfully c. proper d. properly

16. I got tired of your .... complaints. شكوي Isn't there anything positive in your life ?
a. endless b. facial c. basic d. basically

17. A lot of young people .... social media in a way that affects their health and wastes their time.
a. compare b. cite c. post d. misuse

18. Readers are invited to .... on the novel.
a. aim b. comment c. lie d. favour

19. I put the jewel in its .... place.
a. powerful b. powerfully c. proper d. properly

20. I put the jewel .... in its place
a. powerful b. powerfully c. proper d. properly

21. Face-to-face .... know the reaction of their listeners from their facial expressions.
a. speakers b. procedures c. bloggers d. languages

22. It is honest من الأمانة to .... your sources of information.
a. react b. cite c. comment d. misuse

23. We have had a/an .... about the effects of messaging on modern society.
a. aim b. comment c. debate d. record

24. I visit him .... That means I visit him a lot or often.
a. frequently b. anymore c. properly d. uncomfortably

25. Our school library has a large physics ....
a. section b. headline c. sub-heading d. conclusion

26. After doing research, scientists .... the results.
a. compare b. interest c. respond d. misuse

27. She .... at coming first this term.
a. aims b. comments c. debates d. records

28. Some researchers are doing a/an .... into energy use in our town.
a. response b. topic c. survey d. interest

29. Basketball has never been a/an .... of mine.
a. response b. topic c. survey d. interest

30. Dr Ahmed can give us several useful .... on how to do first-aid.
a. tips b. topics c. advice d. advise

31. She holds the world .... for long-distance running.
a. aim b. comment c. debate d. record

32. Omar does not smoke .... He used to be a heavy smoker.
a. no longer b. anymore c. properly d. uncomfortably

3 Definitions

33. A photo that I take of myself is called a/an .... (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
a. message b. selfie c. call d. email

34. A .... is a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word.
a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix

35. A/An .... is a personal website diary for other people to read.
a. blog b. innovator c. messaging d. linguist

36. Information that is discovered as the result of research into something is known as ....
a. findings b. suffix c. thesaurus d. selfie

37. A .... is a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings.
a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix

38. The system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment is known as ....
a. blog b. massaging c. messaging d. linguist

39. A/An .... should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
a. subheading b. headline c. conclusion d. address

40. A .... is a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word.
a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix

41. A/An .... is a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way.
a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym

42. A .... is a photograph you take of yourself.
a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. selfie

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

create	new words يبتكر كلمات جديدة	**make**	different sounds يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
do	the same ... يفعل نفس ...	**make**	a negative comment يعطي تعليق سلبي
feel	special يشعر بالتميُّز	**make**	a joke يمزح
give	an opinion يُبدي رأي	**make**	new words يبتكر كلمات جديدة
interest	the reader يثير اهتمام القارئ	**make**	sense ذات معنى
take	photos يلتقط صور	**sound**	difficult يبدو صعبًا
take	notes يدوِّن ملاحظات		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
compare	يقارن	contrast, analyse
include	يُضمِّن - يضيف	involve, take in, add, insert
interest (n)	انتباه - تشويق	attentiveness
interest (n)	اهتمام - مراعاة	concern
interest (n)	هواية	hobby
interest (v)	يثير اهتمام - يُشوِّق	be of interest to, appeal to, attract, fascinate
procedure	إجراء	method
proper	مناسب	suitable, convenient, right
recognisable	مُميَّز	obvious, definite

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
include	يُضمِّن - يضيف	exclude, leave out, omit	يستثني - يستبعد - يحذف
interest (n)	انتباه - تشويق	boredom	الملل
prefix	مقطع بادئ	suffix	مقطع ناهي
proper	مناسب	improper, inappropriate	غير مناسب
recognisable	مُميَّز	indefinite, ambiguous	غير محدد/غامض

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

communicate	
communicate(d) (v) يتصل - يتواصل	- Sama has the ability to communicate with others.
communication (n) اتصال - تواصل	- Sama finds communication with others easy.
communicator (n) مُفوَّه - بليغ	- Sama is a good communicator.
communicative (adj) مُفوَّه - يجيد التواصل	- Sama is communicative with others.
conclude	
conclude(d) (v) يستنتج - يُخْلُص إلي	- I concluded my essay. - From my replies, the interviewer concluded that I am the best for the job.
conclusion (n) خلاصة - خاتمة	- I wrote the conclusion of my essay.
concluding (adj) ختامي	- I wrote the concluding paragraph of my essay.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at a different time	في وقت آخر	known as	معروف كـ
a 15-year-old daughter	ابنة تبلغ من العمر ١٥ عام	on social media	علي وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
at least	علي الأقل	on their phones	علي هواتفهم المحمولة
be friends with	يكون صداقة مع	rather than	بدلاً من - أفضل من
in general,	بصفة عامة	since = ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
innovator with language	مبدع في اللغة	suitable for	مناسب لـ
introduction paragraph	فقرة المقدمة	that's why	لهذا السبب
keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ	the findings of a survey	نتائج دراسة استطلاعية

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add to/into	يضيف إلي	reply to	يرد علي
agree with	يتفق مع	start with	يبدأ بـ
come from	يأتي من	take … away	يُبعد
continue (to+ inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يستمر في أن	talk about	يتحدث عن
disagree with	يختلف مع	tell … to / not to	يخبر … أن / ألا
learn about	يتعلم عن		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

diary - blog

• **diary = journal** مذكرة / مفكرة ورقية (يكتب فيها الشخص يومياته)

ex. - Some people think that it is old-fashioned to keep a diary.

- I enjoy reading my grandfather's diary.

• **blog = weblog** مُدونة علي الإنترنت (لآراء شخص معين أو تختص بموضوع معين)

ex. - On my blog, I usually post wise sayings. أقوال مأثورة

photo - selfie

• **photo = photograph** صورة بالكاميرا (يلتقطها شخص لآخر/ آخرين)

ex. - You have to attach your photo to the form. استمارة

• **selfie** صورة بالكاميرا (يلتقطها شخص لنفسه بمفرده أو لآخرين معه)

ex. - I don't like the selfie I have just taken. I'll take another one.

society - community

• **society (n)** المجتمع (كلمة عامة تصف الناس الذين يحكمهم قانون واحد أو تنظيم مؤسسي واحد)

- Try to be a good member of your society.

• **society (n)** جمعية - اتحاد

- You can buy things at a cheaper price at the cooperative society الجمعية التعاونية

• **community (n)** مُجتمع محليّ

- The new monorail will help the whole community.

• **community (n)** طائفة/فئة/جالية

- The Egyptian community in Morroco welcomed our team.

title - address

• **title (n)** لقب عائلي

- My name is Toqa Ashraf Fathi. My title is Fathi.

• **title (n)** مُسمي وظيفي

- What is your job title?

• **title (n)** عنوان (كتاب/مقال/درس …)

- The title of Unit 4 is 'Changing English'.

- **address (n)** عنوان (منزل/عمل ...)
  - I wrote the address on the envelope.
- **address (n)** عنوان (بريد الكتروني/موقع انترنت ...)
  - Write the email address in this line.
- **address(ed) (v)** يُخاطِب
  - She addresses her manager politely.

8 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
mis-	happens in the wrong way يسيء / لا يُحسن	understand يفهم use يستخدم	misunderstand يسيء الفهم misuse يسيء استخدام
re-	happens again يعيد / مرة أخري	use يستخدم do يفعل write يكتب	reuse يعيد استخدام redo يعيد فعل rewrite يعيد كتابة
un-	gives a word the opposite meaning تعطي عكس الكلمة	like مثل do يفعل comfortable مُريح changed متغير	unlike علي عكس undo يلغي / يُبطِل uncomfortable مُتْعِب unchanged ثابِت / كما هو

9 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-able	means possible ممكن / قابل لـ	read يقرأ change تغيُّر recognise يتعرف علي	readable يمكن قراءته changeable قابل للتغيُّر recognisable يُمكِن التَعرُّف عليه
-er	makes the noun for a person تعطي اسم الشخص	do يفعل write يكتب use يستخدم care يرعي speak يتحدث	doer فاعل writer كاتب user مُستخدِم carer ممرضة منزلية speaker مُتحدِّث
-less	means without بدون / ينقصه	care رعاية use استخدام end نهاية power قوة	careless مهمل useless بدون فائدة endless بلا نهاية powerless ضعيف / واهن

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. Modern technology and online messaging have led to .... new words.
   a. doing b. creating c. sounding
   d. making e. interesting

2. "He didn't like the way I talked to him, so he refused to include my name in his group." The verb 'include' is antonymous with ....
   a. exclude b. leave out c. involve
   d. take in e. analyse

3. "Squash interests me." This means it .... me.
   a. annoys b. attracts c. appeals to
   d. bores e. bears

4. If something is proper, it is ....
   a. improper b. inappropriate c. suitable
   d. wrong e. convenient

5. When you describe something as 'recognisable', you mean it is ....
   a. indefinite b. definite c. ambiguous
   d. obvious e. difficult

6. It took us three hours to get there. We went on .... walk to get there.
   a. three hour's b. three hours' c. three hours
   d. a three-hour e. three-hour's

7. I started this business three years ago. I haven't travelled abroad ....
   a. ago b. since c. ever since
   d. for e. along

8. Rodayna continued .... homework.
   a. doing b. to doing c. do
   d. to do e. being done

9. Adding spices .... food makes it tastier.
   a. at b. by c. to
   d. from e. into

10. My father told us ....
    a. keep quiet b. to keep quiet c. shout
    d. to shout nervously e. not to shout

11. With my mobile, I have taken tens of .... to me with my friends.
a. selfies b. paintings c. photos
d. apps e. games

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

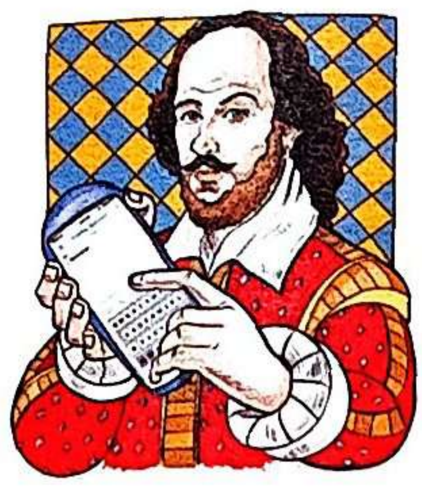
1. I was the only student in class to answer that question, which made me .... special.
a. feel b. do c. say d. interest
2. A successful writer always .... his readers.
a. fails b. does c. says d. interests
3. Sorry, but what you say doesn't .... any sense.
a. include b. make c. get d. have
4. "You need to follow some procedures." The noun 'procedure' here means ....
a. prefixes b. hobbies c. methods d. suffixes
5. 'Interest' and 'boredom' are ....
a. antonyms b. synonyms c. acronyms d. a & c
6. He finds it difficult to find suitable words to .... his ideas and feelings.
a. communicable b. communication
c. communicate d. communicates
7. He finds the .... of his ideas and feelings very difficult.
a. communicable b. communication
c. communicate d. communicates
8. Charlie was a 32-..............-old man. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. years b. years' c. year's d. year
9. Please, be careful when you take this .... It will be put on my university ID.
a. selfie b. painting c. photo d. a & c
10. I lost my .... in the fire.
a. diary b. dairy c. blog d. blogger
11. I enjoy reading the comments on my .... posts.
a. diary b. dairy c. blog d. blogger



Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Shakespeare and the English language *(SB page 46)*



Language is always changing, and new words are created(1) all the time. We need new words to describe(2) new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But, when everyone started doing it, the word 'selfie'(3) became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove(4) words and phrases(5) that we don't use anymore.

Shakespeare was a great innovator(6) with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and connecting(7) words to make new words. He also added prefixes(8) and suffixes,(9) for example, he created 'uncomfortable'(10) from 'comfortable'(11).

Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound(12) difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تُبتكر
(2) يصف
(3) صورة شخصية
(4) يزيل
(5) عبارات
(6) مبتكر
(7) يربط
(8) مقاطع بادئة
(9) مقاطع ناهية
(10) غير مريح
(11) مريح
(12) يبدو

Endless change التغير المستمر

(WB page 26)

The Romans spoke a language called Latin[1] and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany[2] when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 years later. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using and misusing[3] foreign[4] words ever since.[5]

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French,[6] who arrived in 1066.

Unlike[7] the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar[8] meanings. French words are recognisable[9] because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion,[10] which is a French word.

In the modern age,[11] we often reuse[12] old words from the past to make new international[13] words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter is Greek[14] and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian[15] speaker[16] living in America.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اللغة اللاتينية
(2) دولة ألمانيا
(3) يسئ استخدام
(4) أجنبي
(5) منذ ذلك الحين
(6) اللغة الفرنسية
(7) علي عكس
(8) متشابه
(9) يسهل التعرف عليه
(10) قصر (سراي)
(11) عصر
(12) يعيد استخدام
(13) دولي
(14) يوناني
(15) روسي
(16) مُتحدِث

Emoji Fun !

(SB page 47)

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing because our grandparents think the messages are from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than[1] proper[2] words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can receive[3] and read replies[4] which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel special[5] and they will want to communicate more. So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

Check Vocabulary

(1) بدلاً من
(2) مناسب
(3) يتسلم
(4) ردود
(5) مميز

A summary of a survey into social media use

(WB page 27)

Introduction

The aim[1] of this report is to summarise[2] the findings[3] of the survey[4] into the time students spend using social media.[5]

Procedure

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked[6] about using it. We recorded[7] our results[8] and compared[9] them.

Check Vocabulary

(1) هدف
(2) يلخِّص
(3) نتائج
(4) بحث استطلاعي
(5) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
(6) يكره
(7) يسجل
(8) نتائج
(9) يقارن
(10) عضو
(11) تعليق

Findings

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that at least one member[10] of their family had made a negative comment[11] about it.

يبقي على تواصل مع (12)
اهتمامات (13)
هوايات (14)

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to keep in touch with[12] their friends, and to follow their interests[13] or hobbies.[14]

Conclusion

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

2 Listening Text

Tips on writing a blog post

(SB page 47)

Check Vocabulary
منشور المدونة (1)
الموضوع (2)
يخبر - يُعلم (3)
عنوان رئيسى (4)
مناسب (5)
أقسام (6)
عنوان فرعى (7)
فقرة تقديمية (8)
كن واضحًا (9)
غرض / هدف (10)

Speaker 1 :

Tips on how to write a successful blog post[1]

1. Start with your topic[2]. Think about what will interest and inform[3] your reader.
2. Start with a headline[4] for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable[5] photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections[6] of your blog. Add a sub-heading[7] for each section/ new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph[8]. Be clear[9] what the purpose[10] of this blog post is. Speak to the reader - use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.

7. Write a conclusion[11]. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself use "we".
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently[12]. Use an online thesaurus[13] to avoid[14] repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense[15] to them?
10. Cite[16] all your sources of information.

(11) خاتمة
(12) مرارًا وتكرارًا
(13) معجم المترادفات
(14) يتجنب
(15) تعطى معنى
(16) يستشهد بـ

Part IV Language

تنويه • راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثانى.

Exercise On Language 

تنويه • التدريبات التالية مُرتّبة بشكل متدرّج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Ayman should have .... the problem with his staff.
   a. to discuss b. discussed c. discussing d. discuss
2. He is already late. He should .... the apples with other farmers on the field now.
   a. be picking b. be picked c. have picked d. to pick
3. Ola went to a healthcare centre where she .... get medical help.
   a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
4. We searched the house, but we .... find the lost keys.
   a. couldn't b. wasn't able to
   c. managed to d. managed to
5. .... you succeed in finding a place to stay?
   a. Had b. Could c. Does d. Were

6. You should always .... your hands before you eat.
a. to wash b. wash c. be washed d. washing
7. What .... do to keep fit?
a. should I have b. I should have c. I should d. should I
8. A: I don't know which sport to choose?
B: You .... try playing tennis. It's a great game.
a. shouldn't b. should be c. couldn't d. should
9. I think healthcare .... free for everyone.
a. should b. should be
c. should have d. shouldn't have
10. We should be .... mum with the housework now.
a. help b. helped c. helping d. to help
11. I haven't .... sleep very well recently.
a. been able b. been able to c. managed d. able to
12. .... you get me some sugar, please ?
a. Need b. Have c. Must d. Could
13. I .... drive a car until I was 40. Then I moved to a farther house, so I had to learn.
a. am not able to b. was able to
c. couldn't d. b&c
14. He went by bus but he .... have gone in his car.
a. may b. could c. must d. needn't
15. It began to rain and there were no taxis. At last, I .... arrive home.
a. was able to b. couldn't c. wasn't able to d. managed
16. Mum said we .... go out for ice cream after dinner.
a. have b. need c. could d. must
17. They .... go shopping yesterday because the shops were all closed.
a. shouldn't b. can't c. couldn't d. mightn't
18. They .... win the match yesterday.
a. succeeded b. were able c. managed to d. can
19. The prisoner .... escaping.
a. could b. was able c. managed to d. succeeded in

20. My motorbike broke down in the middle of nowhere, but luckily I .... to fix it.
    a. could b. ought to c. should d. was able
21. I was feeling sick yesterday. I .... eat anything.
    a. can't b. couldn't
    c. am not able to d. wasn't able
22. She succeeded .... the puzzle.
    a. in doing b. does c. did d. for doing
23. My father encouraged me .... accept that bad offer.
    a. whether b. that c. to d. not to
24. The teacher asked the children .... and listen before they crossed the road.
    a. not to look b. against looking
    c. about looking d. to look
25. I ordered her .... it that day or it would be too late.
    a. that send b. if she sent c. to send d. not to send
26. The assistant told me .... for the shirt over there.
    a. whether to pay b. if he pay c. to pay d. to have paid
27. The policeman instructed the drivers .... so fast.
    a. to drive b. not to drive c. drive d. that drives

2 Special cases

28. "You .... leave the school without my permission," said the head teacher.
    a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. could d. needn't
29. "You .... leave the school without permission," said my schoolmate.
    a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. could d. needn't
30. I .... pay the bill to get the internet service back.
    a. must b. have to c. should d. could
31. We .... be kind and helpful to our neighbours.
    a. mustn't b. have to c. should d. could
32. You .... have returned home so late. Your father was furious when you entered.
    a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. couldn't d. a & c

33. Omar oughtn't .... the cake. It wasn't for him.
    a. have been eaten
    b. be eaten
    c. to have eaten
    d. eat
34. The cake shouldn't .... by Omar. It wasn't for him.
    a. have been eaten
    b. be eaten
    c. have eaten
    d. eat
35. They ought .... at the traffic lights. They were fined.
    a. stop
    b. to stop
    c. to have stopped
    d. to have been stopped
36. She should have used the knife more carefully. This means she ....
    a. does
    b. doesn't
    c. did
    d. didn't
37. Amira shouldn't have eaten more rice. This means that she ....
    a. do
    b. don't
    c. did
    d. didn't
38. You should have bought the computer when it .... on sale.
    a. is
    b. was
    c. has
    d. had
39. I .... understand the lesson after you had explained the main points to me.
    a. could
    b. was able to
    c. succeeded in
    d. a & b
40. "He could have gone there on his own if he ....
    a. wants
    b. wanted
    c. has wanted
    d. will want
41. I don't know where Ahmed is. He could .... the horse.
    a. feed
    b. have fed
    c. have been fed
    d. be feeding
42. I didn't know where Ahmed was. He could .... to feed the horse.
    a. go
    b. have gone
    c. have been gone
    d. be gone
43. I .... here when I was young but I can't really remember.
    a. could be
    b. could have been
    c. should be
    d. should have been
44. I .... to the cinema, but I decided to watch a film on TV.
    a. could go
    b. could be gone
    c. could have gone
    d. should go

45. I thought I saw Ayman in the office that morning but it .... him. He was in London that day.

a. can't be
b. couldn't be
c. could have been
d. couldn't have been

46. You destroyed the screen. You .... have read the instructions properly.

a. couldn't
b. can
c. must
d. mustn't

47. I had my mobile on the bus on my way home. It .... in the office.

a. couldn't leave
b. can't leave
c. couldn't have been left
d. couldn't have left

48. He suggested that we .... the film as it was great.

a. see
b. have seen
c. sees
d. seeing

49. My parents suggested .... exercise every day.

a. me to do
b. that I do
c. me doing
d. I have done

50. My friend .... me to be careful about fast cars when I crossed a busy street.

a. reported
b. suggested
c. warned
d. recommended

51. My father recommended .... a book about space technology.

a. me read
b. me reading
c. to me read
d. that I read

3 Check your understanding

52. "You shouldn't talk during the lesson." Who is the possible speaker ?

a. The teacher
b. The head teacher
c. A classmate
d. a & b

53. "You mustn't talk during the lesson." Who is the possible speaker?

a. The teacher
b. The head teacher
c. A classmate
d. a & b

54. "You should be helping mum with the housework." This means ....

a. You are already helping mum with the housework
b. You are supposed to be helping mum with the housework
c. You are meant to have helped mum with the housework
d. You don't have to help mum with the housework

55. "We should be wearing seatbelts ....

a. but we are wearing them.
b. although we are wearing them.
c. but we aren't wearing them.
d. b & c

56. "Ashraf should have been careful with his money."
What does this mean ? ....
a. Ashraf was careful with his money.
b. Ashraf isn't careful with his money.
c. Ashraf wasn't careless with his money.
d. Ashraf wasn't careful with his money.

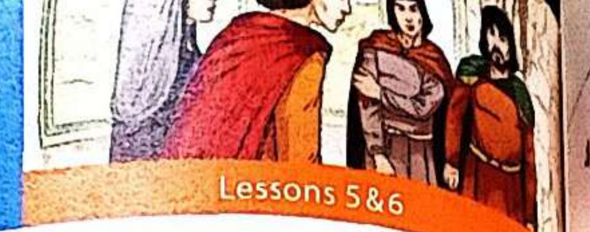
57. "I should have studied for the test." The speaker expresses his / her ....
a. happiness b. obligation c. regret d. triumph

58. Which of the following choices is the most accurate to say you find some difficulty winning the race?
a. I could win the race.
b. I was able to win the race.
c. I managed to win the race.
d. b & c

59. Which of the following choices is / are correct?
a. I couldn't win the race.
b. I wasn't able to win the race.
c. I managed in winning the race.
d. a & b

60. "He could operate the machine." This means ....
a. he had the ability, so it was easy for him.
b. he didn't have the ability, so it was not easy for him.
c. he didn't have the ability, so he operated it by luck.
d. a & c

61. "He managed to operate the machine." This exactly means ....
a. he succeeded in operating it.
b. he could operate it.
c. he couldn't operate it.
d. a & b

PART THREE | Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises

Lessons 5&6

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه
• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد من بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

تنويه
أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نَص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

a stab in the back	خيانة - طعنة في الظَهر	guard (ed) (n - v)	حارس - يحرس
beg (ged) (v)	يتسول - يتوسَّل	my heart is broken	إنني في غاية الحزن
beggar (n)	مُتسوِّل	persuade (d) (v)	يُقنع
call out	ينادي - يتحدث بصوت عالٍ	plot (ted) against	يتآمر ضد
		port (n)	ميناء
change his mind	يُغيِّر رأيه	pretend (ed) (v)	يتظاهر - يدَّعي
disbelief (n)	تكذيب - عدم اعتقاد	profit (ted) (v - n)	يستفيد - يربح - فائدة - ربح
faithful to (adj)	مُخلِص لـ		
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع - يتتبع	reward (ed) (n - v)	مكافأة - يكافئ
get here	يصل إلى هنا		

Exercises On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. When I asked him for money, he .... to be deaf. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. attended b. pretended c. intended d. recommended
2. One of the two criminals .... against the other one and reported the police. (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. rewarded b. profited c. begged d. plotted
3. The ship stayed in the .... due to the bad weather.
   a. guard b. port c. reward d. disbelief

4. The .... at the gate asked me who I was going to visit.

a. guard b. beggar c. reward d. disbelief

5. I'm sure I will be able to .... him to accept the offer.

a. persuade b. follow c. pretend d. profit

6. I will give a valuable .... to whoever finds my lost papers.

a. guard b. port c. reward d. disbelief

7. When you benefit from something, you .... from it.

a. persuade b. follow c. pretend d. profit

8. I .... her to the station to make sure she would catch her train.

a. persuaded b. followed c. pretended d. profitted

9. Some .... ask for money out of profession, not out of need.

a. guards b. beggars c. reward d. disbelief

10. A true friend remains ....

a. silent b. formal c. faithful d. abbreviated

11. We looked at her in .... when she said that she had passed the driving test without training.

a. guard b. port c. reward d. disbelief

Part II Grammatical Hints

make + object + inf. / adj.

- **make + مفعول + inf.** يجعل / يجبر
  ex. - My father made me water the trees in the garden.
- **make + مفعول + adj.** يجعل
  ex. - Good news makes us happy.

everyday – every day

- **everyday (adj)** يومى (صفة تأتى قبل الاسم)
  ex. - Going to the club is one of my everyday habits.
- **every day (adv)** كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتى فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة)
  ex. - I go to the club every day. = Every day, I go to the club.

whether ... or ... سواء ... أو ...

١. تُستخدم (whether .... or ....) بمعنى (سواء ... أو ...) للتعبير عن بديلين :

Whether + بديل أول + or + بديل ثان

ex. - You will be late whether you take a taxi or go by bus.

٢. تُستخدم (whether ... or not) بمعنى (سواء ... أو لا) لنفى التأثير :

- I will tell the truth whether you like it or not.

aged + عدد سنوات = at the age of + عدد سنوات = when he / she was + عدد سنوات

ex. - He died in 2014, aged 86.
= He died in 2014 at the age of 86.
= He died in 2014 when he was 86.

like مثل X unlike على عكس

- تُستخدم (like / unlike) كحروف جر بمعنى (مثل – على عكس):

- Like his father, Ahmed is hardworking. They are similar.
- Unlike her mother, Rody is tall. They are different.

Compound adjectives that have numbers

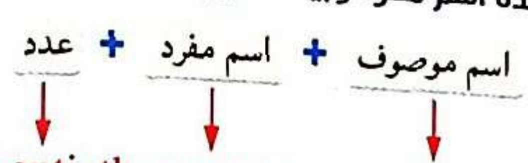
الصفات المركبة التى تتضمن أرقام

١. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتى بعدها :



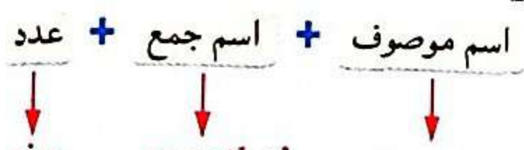
ex. - Rodayna has a nine - year - old brother.

٢. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتى بعدها :



ex. - She is an expert on twentieth-century history.

٣. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم جمع كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتى بعدها :



- Sama joined a six months' course.

٤. فى حالة وجود كلمة time بعد التعبيرات السابقة نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد و (s') فى حالة الجمع :

ex. - I will leave in an hour's time.
- In two years' time, my brother will be living in his own flat.

other than - rather than

• **other than** بخلاف / غير

ex. - You should eat another source of protein other than red meat.

• **rather than** أفضل من – بدلا من

ex. - I suggest that you do a sport rather than chat online all the time.

Exercise On Language Hints

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He visits his old parents .... It is a habit of his.
   a. every day b. everyday c. today d. to a day
2. It is habitual of him to pay a / an .... visit to his old parents.
   a. every day b. everyday c. today d. to a day
3. Just your presence حضور makes us ....
   a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & b

4. We are made .... by your presence.
a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & c

5. I will go out .... you go with me or not.
a. weather b. whether c. although d. as

6. Mr Younes died in 2011, ... 107 years old.
a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age

7. Mr Younes died in 2011 when he .... 107 years old.
a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age

8. Mr Younes died in 2011 at the .... of 107 years old.
a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age

9. .... her father, Leen has a serious character. They both work hard.
a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like

10. .... her mother, Aya has long hair. Her mother's is short.
a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like

11. In a .... time, I'll have paid back your money.
a. month's b. months' c. monthly d. a & c

12. There's a seven - .... - tall tree in front of our house.
a. a metre b. metre c. metres d. metres'

Part III Language Skills

1 Writing Tips - Writing a blog post كتابة منشور مدوَّنة

*** Tips on how to write a successful blog post.**

* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة منشور مُدوَّنة جيد (نص الاستماع الخاص بكتاب الطالب صفحة ٤٧).

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.

١. ابدأ بالفكرة الرئيسية وفكر فيما سيثير اهتمام القارئ ويعطيه معلومة.

2. Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.

٢. ابدأ بعنوان رئيسى لمدونتك، ويجب أن يخبر العنوان الرئيسى القارئ عن موضوع المدونة، ويجب أن يكون قصيرًا ويعطى معلومات وأن يكون ممتعًا ويجعل القارئ يرغب فى قراءة بقية المدونة.

3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.

٣. ابحث عن صورة شخصية أو صورة مناسبة والتى ستوضح للقارئ موضوع منشور المدونة.

4. Plan the sections of your blog. Add a sub-heading for each section/new point.

٤. حدد أقسام مدونتك، وأضف عنوانًا فرعيًا لكل قسم / نقطة جديدة.

5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.

٥. اكتب فقرة المقدمة، كن واضحا فيما يتعلق بالغرض من منشور المدونة هذا، وتحدث إلى القارئ - استخدم ضمير المتكلم / المتكلمين (I /We). أو ضمائر الغائب (he - she - it) قم بتضمين سؤال.

6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.

٦. اكتب المتن الرئيسى للمدونة، واجعل الجمل والفقرات قصيرة، وقم بتضمين صور حيثما كان ذلك مفيدًا، وقم بالبحث لتجد الحقائق لتضمينها.

7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.

٧. اكتب خاتمة بالرجوع إلى العنوان الرئيسي الخاص بك والمقدمة، ولا تقم بتضمين معلومات جديدة فى خاتمتك، وتحدث إلى القارئ مرة أخرى وقم بتضمين نفسك؛ واستخدم الضمير «نحن».

8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times.

٨. اقرأ وصحح منشور المدونة الخاص بك، وتحقق من الإملاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم، وتأكد من أنك لم تكرر الأفكار الرئيسية كثيرًا. استخدم موسوعة مفردات عبر الإنترنت لتجنب تكرار نفس الكلمة مرات عديدة.

9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them ?

٩. اطلب من صديق قراءة منشور المدونة الخاص بك لتتأكد أنه ذو مغزى.

10. Cite all your sources of information.

١٠. اذكر جميع مصادر المعلومات الخاصة بك.

2 Blog Post Writing كتابة منشور مُدوَّنة

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

Language development

In this post, I am going to throw light on the development of languages. First, I will explain what language development means. Then I will give an example of language development.

Like everything else, languages develop. If you ask me what makes languages develop, I will tell you that it is the nature of things. Nothing stands still يبقى جامدًا . As everything in life develops, language develops necessarily in parallel. بالتوازى

Do you see the inventions which come into existence الوجود every day? Of course, we need names not only for them, but for each part of them as well. That will lead to finding new terms مصطلحات for these inventions and their parts. In this way, new words are added to languages.

I will give you a single example. Before 2013, it was impossible to find the word 'selfie' in any English dictionary. What happened was that modern technology has led to inventing this word. The development of smart phones caused the existence of this word. These mobiles, as you know, have cameras. Young people used their mobiles to take photos of themselves, whether alone or with other friends. A language innovator added the syllable 'ie' to the word 'self'. That's how this new word came into existence.

To conclude, languages develop with the development of life. However, we must do our best to protect the fundamentals أساسيات of languages from being vanished.

3 Translation الترجمة

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

① **Translate into Arabic :**

1. It is well-known that communication is the key to personal and career success. That makes it necessary for everybody to develop their own communication skills.

2. Computer skills are necessary for the performance of a lot of businesses nowadays . You also need to know to use networking platforms the best way possible.
3. Egypt has achieved significant progress in various fields of industry, agriculture and modern technology. Now, it is working on developing education system.

② Translate into English :

١. إن اللغة تتطور بنفس سرعة التطور العلمى والتكنولوجي، فالاختراعات الجديدة أوجدت مفردات جديدة، كما أن شبكات التواصل الاجتماعى أدت الى سرعة انتقال المفردات من لغة لأخرى.
٢. منذ عشرين عاماً تقريباً، كان التليفون المحمول يُعتبر ثورة كبيرة فى عالم الاتصالات، ولا زالت هذه الثورة مستمرة وتأتى لنا بالجديد كل يوم فى عالم التواصل الرقمى.
٣. تُتيح الأجيال الجديدة من الهواتف الذكية إجراء مكالمات الفيديو بجودة عالية، وذلك من خلال شبكات الإنترنت السريع التى تنتشر فى كل ربوع العالم.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحده

achievements	إنجازات	living being	كائن حى
allow	تتيح	quality	جودة
details	تفاصيل	rapid	سريع
develop	يتطور	revolution	ثورة
digital	رقمى	significant	ملحوظ / بارز
fields	مجالات		

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للفائقين فقط

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

abbreviation

•**abbreviate (d) = shorten (ed) (v)** يختصر (كلمة أو عبارة)

ex. - Arab Republic of Egypt is abbreviated to ARE.

•**abbreviated (adj)** مُختَصَر

ex. - The minister gave an abbreviated speech.خطبة

- **abbreviation (n)** اختصار
  ex. - WHO is the abbreviation of "World Health Organisation". منظمة الصحة العالمية

لاحظ أن:

- **be the abbreviation of / for = be short for** اختصار لـ
  ex. - IT is the abbreviation of / for 'Information Technology'.
  = IT is short for 'Information Technology'.

communicate - communication

- **communicate (d) (with) (v)** يتواصل (مع)
  ex. - We can communicate with people all over the world through social media.
  - He has a special ability to communicate well in writing, not orally. شفهياً

لاحظ أن:

- **communicate + شئ + to + شخص** ينقل رسالة / يبلغ ... لـ ...
  ex. - Mr Ayman communicated the good news to the staff of the office.
- **communicate (d) (v)** يعبر عن
  ex. - Rokaya communicated her anger by leaving the room.
- **communicate (d) (v)** ينقل (بالإيحاء) - يَعْدِي
  ex. - Our manager's confidence is automatically communicated to us.

مما سبق يتضح الفرق بين:

- **communicate with** يتواصل مع / يتصل بـ
  ex. - Modern technology help us to communicate with other people easily.
- **communicate ... to** ينقل إلي / يوصّل إلي
  ex. - We will be able to communicate messages to other people that we know.
- **communication (n)** التواصل - الاتصال
  ex. - Your communication skills help you succeed at work.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **a channel / a means / form / method / system of communication**
  وسيلة أو قناة اتصال / نظام تواصل
  ex. - The most common channels of communication used by online businesses are email, newsletters and live chat.

• communications (n) •

وسائل التواصل أو الاتصال

كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت و الراديو و التليفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية ، وبهذا المعني فهي جمع دائما:

ex. - Modern communications help us learn and work from home.

• communicable (adj)

ex. - Flu is a communicable disease. مُعدِي (مرض)

message

• message (n)

رسالة

ex. - I sent you a message with the information you need.

لاحظ أن:

- a message from رسالة من

- a message for رسالة لـ

• message (n)

مغزي / درس مستفاد

ex. - The message of the film is that old people need special care.

لاحظ أن:

• get the message

يفهم

- When his expression changed, I knew that he got the message.

• message (d) (v)

يراسل (عبر الرسائل النصية وغيرها علي وسائل التواصل)

- She messages a lot of people from different countries.

• messaging (n)

التراسُل / التواصل بالرسائل الالكترونية

- Smartphones have made messaging easier.

tone

• tone (n)

نبرة الصوت (تدل علي مشاعر المتكلم)

- I miss my grandmother's kind tone.

- She doesn't like you to speak to her in a sharp tone.

• tone (d) / tone up (v)

يشد - يقوّي

- This exercise will tone your arm muscles.

• tone ... down (phr. v)

يُلطِّف – يخفف حِدة

- Don't be cruel. قاسي Try to tone your speech down. يخفف حدة الحديث

• tone (n)

اسلوب / طابع / وَقْع

- The essay is sharp in tone. (بمعنى ان المقال ذو طابع حاد)

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "He looked with interest at the advertisement." This means the advertisement .... to him.
   a. appealed b. interested c. bored d. concerned
2. He left last Friday morning. I haven't heard from him .... since.
   a. never b. ever c. no word d. b & c
3. Social media are responsible for the explosion of .... that threaten formal language.
   a. introduction b. abbreviations c. communication d. selfies
4. Through crying, babies manage to .... their needs to us.
   a. email b. post c. communicate d. connect
5. 'Crime does not pay' is the clear .... of the film.
   a. message b. innovation c. abbreviation d. introduction
6. My father .... examples of my friends who have got the full mark in the exam I have failed.
   a. commented b. reacted c. cited d. connected
7. This disease is .... It can easily pass from one person to another.
   a. controlled b. messaging c. immune d. communicable
8. He has just .... me the news.
   a. messaged b. massaged c. frowned d. connected
9. He is a simple-minded person. I don't think he will .... this complex message.
   a. leave b. get c. give d. a & c
10. You can .... your worry to the children without realizing it.
   a. connect b. communicate c. receive d. check

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (appeal to) يعني (يروق له / يعجبه / يجذب انتباهه) - لا يمكن استخدام (b / c / d) قبل (to + obj.)
2.	d	- يمكن استخدام (since) بمفردها بنفس معني (ever since)
3.	b	كلمة (abbreviations) هي الإختيار المنطقي حسب مضمون الجملة

4.	c	- الفعل (communicate to) هنا يعني (يعبر عن / يوصِّل)
5.	a	- كلمة (message) هنا تعني (مَغْزَي / درس مُستفاد)
6.	c	- الفعل (cite) هنا يعني (يَذْكُر)
7.	d	- الصفة (communicable) تعني (مُعْدِي)
8.	a	- الفعل (messaged) بمعنى (أرسل) هوالإختيار المنطقي حسب سياق الجملة
9.	b	- التعبير (get the message) هنا يعني (يفهم المقصود من / يُدرِك المغزى المقصود من)
10.	b	- الفعل (communicate) هنا يعني (ينقل / يوحي بـ)

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We have discussed everything. Is there anything else we .... concerned about?
   a. could have
   b. should have
   c. should be
   d. ought to have

2. The emergency notice over there reads: 'On hearing the fire alarm, workers .... leave the building.'
   a. should
   b. must
   c. a & b
   d. could

3. Ahmed has been studying hard. He .... do well on the test tomorrow.
   a. could
   b. should
   c. might
   d. has to

4. I wonder why Nada hasn't written to us. We .... have heard from her last week.
   a. can
   b. might
   c. should
   d. must

5. I'm surprised nobody told you how dangerous that road was. You .... have been warned.
   a. must
   b. should
   c. needn't
   d. may

6. **A** : He did badly in the exam.
   B : I feel sure he .... it.
   a. couldn't have passed
   b. isn't able to pass
   c. succeed in passing
   d. can't pass

7. Had you not gone by car, you .... have arrived late.
   a. must
   b. can't
   c. should
   d. could

8. "You ought to have told him that the paint on that seat was wet." His trousers ....
   a. stained b. is staining c. got stained d. a & c
9. "You shouldn't have parked here." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?
   a. You aren't supposed to park here.
   b. You weren't supposed to have parked here.
   c. You weren't meant to have parked here.
   d. b & c
10. She asked that we .... early.
   a. arrives b. should arrive c. had arrived d. arriving

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- كلمة (concerned) بعد الفراغ صفة وليست تصريف ثالث، لذلك الإختيار الصحيح هو (should be)
2.	c	- الفعل الناقص (should) يمكن استخدامه لإعطاء التعليمات الرسمية بشكل مهذب، والفعل الناقص (must) يستخدم بشكل رسمي في التعليمات والقوانين المكتوبة، لذلك كلاهما صحيح
3.	b	- الفعل الناقص (should) هنا يعني (من المُفترَض / المُتَوَقَّع أن)
4.	c	- الصيغة (should have + p.p.) تعني (كان من المُفترَض / المُتَوَقَّع أن) للتعبير عمّا كان يُفترَض أن يحدث في الماضي
5.	b	- الصيغة (should have been + p.p.) تعني (كان من المُفترَض / المُتَوَقَّع أن) للتعبير عمّا كان يُفترَض أن يحدث في الماضي
6.	a	- الصيغة (couldn't have + p.p.) تُستخدَم للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث شيء في الماضي
7.	d	- الجملة حالة شرطية ثالثة والإختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة هو (could)
8.	d	- الفعل (stained) صحيح في المبني للمعلوم والصيغة (got stained) أيضاً صحيحة على أساس أن (stained) صفة بعد الفعل التقريري (got)، كما يُمكن اعتبار الصيغة (got stained) مبنية للمجهول
9.	d	- الصيغتين (b / c) صحيحتين وتؤديان معني يتوافق مع الجملة
10.	b	- الجملة بعد (asked that) يكون فعلها في المصدر (inf.) أو (should + inf.)

• Understand • Apply • Create





Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "I was aware of the dangerous situation you were in." The word 'aware' in this sentence gives an antonymous meaning to ....
   a. conscious b. unconscious c. ignorant
   d. knowledgeable e. malware

2. Which of the following are more of an acronym?
   a. Plz b. Thx c. Gr8
   d. NATO e. AIDZ

3. Mr Kadry lived in Canada for ages, so no one expected that he would .... back.
   a. go b. reach c. arrive
   d. send e. come

4. Does this volume of Shakespeare include his sonnets ? The antonyms of "include" are ....
   a. involve b. exclude c. omit
   d. insist on e. consist of

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. ASAP is a/an .... of "as soon as possible". (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. collaboration b. attention c. contamination d. abbreviation

6. We had a long .... about the possible measures to cut down pollution in our city.
   a. debate b. ball c. concert d. fight

7. Employees usually wear .... when they are invited to meetings at the headquarter's.
   a. informally b. formally c. personal d. personally

8. He replied to my long message with a blue heart .... (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
   a. selfie b. emoji c. message d. blog

9. I travelled by train, but I .... by car. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. had to travel b. could have travelled
   c. might have travelled d. must have travelled

10. Hossam was working with me all day, so you .... have seen him at the park. (أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
    a. could   b. couldn't   c. should   d. shouldn't

11. The teacher warned the children .... and listen before they crossed the road. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
    a. to look   b. not to look   c. don't look   d. never look

12. My mother warned me .... touch the hot pan. (أدفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
    a. don't   b. not   c. not to   d. don't to

13. I don't know where Mai is. She could .... the cooking.
    a. do   b. have done
    c. have been done   d. be doing

14. I didn't know where Mai was. She could .... shopping.
    a. go   b. have gone   c. have been gone   d. be gone

15. "He could have gone there on his own if he had wanted" This is a ....
    a. permission   b. duty
    c. past possibility   d. future possibility

16. He has left his car over there. He .... that. There is a "No waiting" sign.
    a. mustn't do   b. shouldn't have done
    c. shouldn't do   d. should have done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (أسوان ٢٠٢٢)

The digital landscape has put increased pressure on teenagers today, and we feel it. There are so many social media channels: Facebook, Instagram, Snapshot, etc.

A new study has found that teenagers who engage with social media during the night could be damaging their sleep and increasing their risk of anxiety and depression. Teenagers spoke about the pressure they felt to make themselves available 24/7 and the resulting anxiety if they did not respond immediately to texts or posts. Teens are so emotionally invested in social media that a fifth of secondary school pupils will wake up at night and log on just to make sure they don't miss out. Perhaps the worst thing about this is that teenagers need more sleep than adults do, so night-time social media use could be detrimental to their health. A lack of sleep can make teenagers tired, irritable, and depressed.

During the summer holidays, I lost my phone. And for the week that I was phoneless, it felt like a disaster. I love my phone. It gives me quick

access to information and allows me to be constantly attached to my friends, to know exactly what is going on in **<u>their</u>** lives. So, when I didn't have my phone for a week, I felt a slight sense of isolation, or if you're not up to speed with the events, fear of missing out. By the end of the week, I got used to not having a phone and I quite enjoyed the break from social media. But there was still a lasting sense of sadness at the back of my mind that there would be conversations I had missed, messages that had been sent, funny videos shared and night-time chats that I would probably never get to see.

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The writer .... the idea of using social media too much.
   a. encourages
   b. doesn't support
   c. praises
   d. a & c

18. Why do teens wake up at night and log on?
   a. To search for useful information
   b. To send books to friends.
   c. To make sure they don't miss out
   d. To ask about friends' health

19. What does the underlined word '**<u>their</u>**' refer to?
   a. The writer's family
   b. The writer's friends
   c. The writer's neighbours
   d. The writer's children

20. What did the writer miss when he lost the mobile phone?
   a. Conversations
   b. Messages and night-time chats
   c. Funny videos shared
   d. All of these

21. The study warns teenagers against ....
   a. using social media all night
   b. using the digital landscape
   c. using Facebook and Twitter
   d. not using social media

22. **A:** What does '24/7' mean? **B:** It means ....
   a. 7 days a month
   b. 24 days a month
   c. all the time
   d. 7 hours a day

23. Using social media too much can ....
   a. help teenagers find jobs
   b. spoil relations among families
   c. strengthen ties among people
   d. cause mental illness

24. The synonym of the word 'anxiety' is the state of ....
   a. being easily annoyed
   b. being trustworthy
   c. being dead
   d. lack of hope

Part Two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Decent-life initiative aims to raise the living standard of those who suffer from the hardships of life. (القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

يعتقد البعض أن الكتب والصحف الالكترونية ستؤدي إلى اختفاء الكتب والصحف الورقية، فالصحف الالكترونية أقل تكلفة وأسرع انتشارًا ويتم تحديثها طوال الوقت. (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :**

Social Media as a mixed blessing

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

تنويه • للتدريب علي أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ ،بنك الأسئلة.

UNIT 5

Being smart online

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 30 : 35

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** An article about an online video channel; An article about how to use the internet for research
- **Writing :** An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly
- **Listening :** Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people
- **Speaking :** A presentation
- **Language :** seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to
- **Life skills :** Critical Thinking; Resilience



لإتقان الوحدة

- بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
- ملحق المهارات اللغوية.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في بنك الأسئلة.
- Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 52 : 55 | WB pages 30 : [illegible]

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Word	المعنى	Word	المعنى
adapt(ed) (v)	يتكيف - يتأقلم	reliable(adj)	موثوق به
advert = ad = advertisement(n)	إعلان	unreliable(adj)	غير موثوق به
banner advert(n)	لافتة إعلانية	search results	نتائج البحث
sponsored advert(n)	إعلان مُموَّل	subscribe(d) (v)	يسجّل (في موقع) - يشترك
targeted advertising(n)	إعلان مُوَجَّه	take down	يزيل (منشور)
consult(ed) (v)	يستشير	tone(n)	الشعور العام / التوَجُّه
cookies(n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	up-to-date(adj)	يُحدَّث
download(ed) (v-n)	يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت) - يُحمِّل - التنزيل	update(d) (v-n)	يُحدِّث - تحديث
follow(ed) (v)	يتابع - يتبع - يُنفذ	upgrade(d) (v)	يحسّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة
follower(n)	مُتابِع	upload(ed) (v-n)	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
post(ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر على مواقع التواصل	view (n)	عرض - رؤية (منشور / رسالة)

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

تنويه • من المُهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

Word	المعنى	Word	المعنى
access(n)	مَدْخَل - امكانية الوصول	obvious(adj)	واضح
advertisers(n)	المُعلنين	perfect (adj)	كامل/تام
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	print(ed) (v)	يطبع
browser(n)	متصفح	professional(adj)	محترف
button(n)	زِر	provide(d) (v)	يزود به - يوفِّر
character(n)	رمز خاص - شخصية	publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
collect(ed) (v)	يجمع	relevant(adj)	ملائم - مناسب
common(adj)	[illegible]	[illegible](ed) (n-v)	بحث - يجري بحث
confused(adj)	[illegible]	[illegible]	مورد - مَنْبَع
effectively(adv)	بشكل فعّال - بكفاءة	[illegible] (v)	يحفظ - يدّخر

excuse(d) (n-v)	عُذر - يَعْذُر	scan(ned) (v)	يتصفح (يقرأ للبحث عن شيء ما)
experience(d) (n-v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	series(n)	سلسلة - مسلسل
extra (adj-adv)	إضافي	skim(med) (v)	يتصفَّح (يقرأ بسرعة)
fake (adj)	مزيف - مكذوب	smartphone(n)	هاتف ذكي
honest(adj)	أمين	sociology(n)	علم الاجتماع
identity(n)	هوية - شخصية	software(n)	برنامج
influence(d) (n-v)	تأثير - يؤثِّر على	source(n)	مصدر
install(ed) (v)	يُثبِّت - يُركب	speed(n)	سرعة
instant(adj)	فوري	spread - spread(v)	ينشر
Irish(adj - n)	أيرلندي	stamp(ed) (n - v)	طابع - يضع طابع - يوسم
journalist(n)	صحفي	stealing(n)	السرقة
junk food	وجبات سريعة	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض
keyword(n)	كلمة رئيسية (دلالية)	task(n)	مهمة
knowledge(n)	المعرفة	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق بـ - الثقة
mega meal (n)	وجبة ضخمة	URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط (الموقع او الصفحة)
moral(n)	مغزى أخلاقي	version(n)	نسخة - إصدار
name(d) (v - n)	يذكر اسم / يُسَمِّي - اسم	warning(n)	تحذير

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التَعَلُم المُستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
consult (v) يستشير	to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something
cookies(n) ملفات تعريف الارتباط	information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again
download (v) يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت)	- to move files ملفات from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer (SB) - to save something from the internet onto your computer (WB)
follower(n) مُتابِع	someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites
reliable(adj) موثوق به	- can be trusted or depended on - someone or something that can be trusted or depended on.

take down (phr. v) يُزيل (منشور)	- to take something that you have posted online off the internet (SB) - to remove a message or photo you have put on social media (WB)
tone(n) الشعور العام / التوجه	- the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech etc.
update(v) يُحدِّث	- to make something more modern and relevant ملائم by adding new information (SB) - to install يُثبِّت the most recent version of a program(WB)
upgrade(v) يُحسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	- to improve or make more efficient كفء - to make something better (WB)
upload(v) يرفع (على الإنترنت)	- to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet (SB) - to put information on social media (WB)
up-to-date(adj) مُحَدَّث	- including all the latest information

Exercise **On Vocabulary** ● Understand

● **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. It took me about ten minutes to ....the video from the webpage.
(ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. upload b. download c. mix d. symbolize

2. Click here to be a .... of the person or group. (أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. post b. view c. follower d. tone

3. Is it easy to .... videos to YouTube? (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
a. upload b. download c. load d. overload

4. Some adverts are .... because advertisers know what we like.
(القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
a. strange adverts
b. targeted advertising
c. sponsored adverts
d. banner adverts

5. Her laptop has a problem. She needs to .... a technician about it. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)

a. follow   b. upgrade   c. take down   d. consult

6. The company employed management .... to help with their strategy for the future. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)

a. aids   b. helpers   c. consultants   d. consults

7. To be able to achieve your future goals, you should always .... your plans. (ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. demolish   b. up-to-date   c. update   d. violate

8. Which internet service provider do you .... to? (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)

a. use   b. subscribe   c. transcribe   d. provide

9. They've just .... the timetable, so we know these train times are correct. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

a. misunderstood   b. upgraded   c. ruined   d. deceived

10. Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called .... (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

a. cook   b. cooker   c. cookies   d. cooking

11. I trust this channel as it provides me with .... news. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

a. unreliable   b. fake   c. up-to-date   d. upgraded

12. I had 8552 .... and 5210 likes on my last video on Facebook.

a. views   b. books   c. upgrades   d. tones

13. I .... the post as soon as I had seen the negative comments on it.

a. advertised   b. consulted   c. downloaded   d. took

14. I didn't like the selfie you have just .... on your profile.

a. taken down   b. downloaded   c. posted   d. subscribed

15. I don't like the .... of the article. I think it is full of hatred.

a. profile   b. follow   c. upgrade   d. tone

16. Young people should learn how to .... to difficult situations.

a. adapt   b. addict   c. name   d. argue

17. Facebook adverts are .... They are not free.

a. fake   b. sponsored   c. up-to-date   d. reliable

18. Being ...., he is sometimes asked to run the office when I am away.

a. rely   b. reliable   c. unreliable   d. reliability

19. Coming to work late and not achieving your work in time show that you are ....
a. rely b. reliable c. unreliable d. reliability

20. 3000 people .... my account on Twitter.
a. followers b. follow c. update d. updates

21. .... are not a waste of money. They promote goods.
a. Advertise b. Adverts c. Advertisers d. a & c

2 Important vocabulary

22. Nowadays, we can get any information at a touch of a/an .... (حلوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. monitor b. ring c. button d. expert

23. This painting isn't original. It's .... (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. fact b. fake c. facial d. face

24. Unusual weather is becoming more .... nowadays. Many people find it strange. (أبيا ٢٠٢٢)
a. common b. rare c. scarce d. favorite

25. There are two .... of the game, a long one and a short one. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
a. virgins b. diversions c. versions d. visions

26. .... spend millions of pounds to promote يروج لـ their goods.
a. Advertisers b. Applications c. Adverts d. Advice

27. Some people have a fake .... on social media. They are not really who they are.
a. profile b. symbol c. ideas d. version

28. Working in the same field for twenty years has given him a lot of ....
a. experience b. installation c. share d. distraction

29. If you are sure about this piece of information, ... your sources.
a. affect b. adapt c. name d. subscribe

30. This .... of windows is not activated.
a. file b. symbol c. identity d. version

31. If you want to be a member of the Twitter society, first download and .... its application.
a. experience b. install c. share d. distract

32. Have you ever .... bad behaviour on social media.
a. experienced b. installed c. typed d. distracted
33. Scientists are still .... vaccines أمصال for COVID- 19.
a. researching b. chatting c. stamping d. firing
34. The hard time he had in prison is still .... on his memory.
a. researched b. chatted c. stamped d. fired
35. You have no .... for making such a mistake.
a. excuse b. create c. check d. game
36. The .... of a story, a novel or a film is the lesson we learn from it.
a. chat b. character c. platform d. moral

3 Definitions

37. To .... means to make something more modern and relevant by adding new information. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. upload b. download c. degrade d. upgrade
38. To .... is to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet or to put information on social media.
a. upload b. upgrade c. consult d. update
39. To .... is to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something.
a. download b. take down c. consult d. update
40. Information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again is known as ....
a. view b. behaviour c. tone d. cookies
41. To .... is to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer or to save something from the internet onto your computer.
a. download b. take down c. consult d. update
42. A .... is someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites.
a. behaviour b. follower c. cookies d. viewer
43. something or someone that is .... can be trusted or depended on.
a. outdated b. unreliable c. reliable d. up-to-date
44. To .... is to take something that you have posted online off the internet or to remove a message or photo you have put on social media.
a. download b. take down c. consult d. update

45. A .... is the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech etc.

a. preview b. behaviour c. tone d. cookies

46. To .... is to make something more modern and relevant by adding new information or to install the most recent version of a programme.

a. download b. take down c. consult d. update

47. The adjective .... means including all the latest information.

a. outdated b. unreliable c. reliable d. up-to-date

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	sources يتحقق من المصادر	**have**	access to لديه حق الوصول لـ
collect	personal details تفاصيل (بيانات) شخصية		experience in لديه خبرة في
create	a perfect essay يؤلف مقال نموذجي		knowledge of لديه معرفة بـ
do	a history essay يكتب مقال خاص بالتاريخ	**keep**	... safe يُبقي ... بأمان
	research يجري بحثاً	**make**	a presentation يقدم عرضاً
	things يقوم بأشياء	**name**	the sources يذكر المصادر
give	a homework task يكلِّف بمهمة كواجب منزلي	**put**	... on social media ينشر... على مواقع التواصل
	a presentation يقدم عرض تقديمي	**seem**	obvious يبدو واضحاً
	example يعطي مثال	**stay**	safe يبقي بأمان
	information يعطي معلومات	**use**	... effectively يستخدم ... بشكل فعَّال
go	online يدخل على الانترنت	**write**	a website ينشر محتوى على موقع

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
adapt	يتكيف - يتأقلم	modify, adjust
fake	مزيف - مكنوب	false, forged
honest	أمين	trustful, sincere
instant	فوري	urgent, immediate
obvious	واضح	clear, apparent, evident
professional	محترف	expert, experienced
reliable	موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه	dependable, trustworthy, dedicated
upgrade	يُحسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	improve, enhance
upgrade	يُرقّي	promote
up-to-date	مُحَدّث	modern, contemporary, fashionable

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
adapt	يتكيف - يتأقلم	reject	يرفض
download	يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت) - التنزيل	upload	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
fake	مزيف - مكنوب	real, genuine, original	أصلي/حقيقي - صحيح
follow	يتابع	Block, unfollow	يحظر - يلغي متابعة
follow	يُنفذ - يطيع	Break, disobey	يخالف - يعصي
helpful	مفيد	unhelpful	غير مفيد
honest	أمين	dishonest, deceitful	غير أمين - مخادع
instant	فوري	postponed, delayed	مُؤجَّل - متأخر
obvious	واضح	doubtful, ambiguous	مشكوك فيه - غامض
online	علي الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
professional	محترف	incompetent, amateur	هاو - غير كفء
reliable	موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه	unreliable, untrustworthy	مشكوك فيه - لا يُثق به
upgrade	يُحسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	degrade, reduce	يقلل من شأن
upgrade	يُرقّي	downgrade, demote	يُنزّل الدرجة - يخفض المنزلة
up-to-date	مُحَدّث	out-of- date, old -fashioned	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن



4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

adapt	
adapt (v) يتأقلم - يتكيَّف	- To succeed in your life, you need to adapt to different situations.
adaptation (n) التأقلُم	- Success in your life requires يتطلب adaptation to different situations.
adaptable (adj) مَرِن - مُتأقلم	- To succeed in your life, you need to be adaptable to different situations.
advertise	
advertise(d) يُعلِن عن	- Producers advertise their products in different ways.
advert = ad = advertisement(n) إعلان	- Producers depend on adverts to promote يروج لـ their products.
advertisers(n) المُعلنين	- Advertisers pay a lot of money to promote their products.
advertised(adj) مُعْلَن عنه	- I saw this product advertised on TV.
consult	
consult(ed) (v) يستشير	- You need to consult your doctor about your health.
consultation(n) استشارة	- You need consultation with your doctor about your health.
consultant(n) استشاري - اخصائي	- You need to talk to your consultant about your health.
download	
download(ed) (v) يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت)	- I started to download the file.
download (n) الملف المُنَزَّل	- The download will start in five seconds.
downloader (n) برنامج تنزيل ملفات	- I have installed a video downloader on my laptop.
downloadable (adj) قابل للتنزيل	- This video is downloadable.

follower	
follow(ed) (v) يتبع - يتابع	- Thousands of people follow my Facebook page.
follower(n) تابع / مؤيِّد - مُتابِع	- I have thousands of followers on my Facebook page.
following(adj) تالي / تابع	- When I finish this job, I will do the following one.
reliable	
rely(ied) (v) يعتمد	- Don't rely on others to achieve your own work.
reliance(n) التواكُل - الاعتماد على الغير	- Reliance on others to achieve your own work is a bad quality.
reliability(n) الجدارة - المَوثُوقية	- Your previous سابق success supports your reliability.
reliable(adj) موثوق به	- Your previous success makes you reliable.
subscribe	
subscribe(d) (v) يُسجِّل (في موقع) - يشترك	- To subscribe, you have to pay LE 20,000.
subscriber(n) مُشْترِك - عضو	- To be a subscriber, you have to pay LE 20,000.
subscription(n) اشتراك	- Subscription costs LE 20,000.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

access to	إمكانية الوصول إلي	free ... for	... مجانى لـ
all over the world	في كل أرجاء العالم	full of	مملوء بـ
an advert for	إعلان عن	look like	يشبه - يبدو كـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	make it personal	تضفي عليها طابع شخصي
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	on social media	علي وسائل التواصل
careful about	حريص علي	special character	رمز خاص (ليس حرف أو رقم)
eager to	متلهِّف لـ	spelling mistakes	أخطاء هجائية
fact- checking	توثيق الحقائق	this/that is why	لهذا السبب

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt … to	يُوفِّق … مع	sell … to	يبيع … لـ
adapt to	يتكيف مع	take … off	يزيل - ينزع
check … against /with	يتحقق من … من خلال	take down	يزيل منشور
find out	يكتشف / يعرف	upgrade … with	يحدث … بـ
read on	يستمر في القراءة		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

advertisement - commercial - announcement

• **advertisement / advert / ad** إعلان (تجاري)
- Some adverts (= ads / advertisements) lie about the quality of the products.

• **commercial** إعلان تجاري (في التليفزيون / الراديو)
- I change the channel when commercials are shown.

• **announcement** إعلان خبري (نشر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تحذيرات - قرارات)
- The announcement of the final decision has been delayed until tomorrow.

download - upload

• **download (n)** ملف مُنَزَّل من الانترنت ≠ **upload (n)** ملف مرفوع على الانترنت
- There are five downloads in this folder.

• **download (n)** تنزيل الملفات ≠ **upload (n)** رفع الملفات
- The speed of download is always more than the speed of upload.

• **downloading (n)** التنزيل من الانترنت ≠ **uploading (n)** الرفع على الانترنت
- Downloading videos is easier and faster than uploading them.

• **download (v)** يُنزِّل ملف ≠ **upload (v)** يرفع ملف
- Abdulrahman has downloaded all Al Pacino's films.
- Mr Mohammed used to upload educational files for free.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- download … from يُنَزِّل … من
- download ... to / onto يُنَزِّل … إلي
- upload … to يرفع … علي

• **downloadable (adj)** قابل للتنزيل
- The files on this website are downloadable.

software - hardware

• software
برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)
- It is better if you download the latest software.

• hardware
مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره)
- The processor is part of the computer's hardware

update – upgrade

• update
يُحدِّث (يجعل الشي، حديثاً)
- The Windows version on your computer needs to be updated.

• upgrade
يُحسِّن (يضيف مزايا أو قدرات أفضل) / يُرقى التطبيق
- To upgrade this application, you have to pay 300 dollars.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Scientific honesty الأمانة العلمية is what makes me .... my sources.
   a. have b. create c. do
   d. name e. check

2. My teacher asked me to do ....
   a. experience b. a history essay c. research
   d. sources e. a presentation

3. You can .... a presentation.
   a. make b. go c. do
   d. give e. seem

4. I have enough .... farming.
   a. sources b. knowledge of c. message to
   d. presentations e. experience in

5. When you are online, it is important to .... safe.
   a. stay b. do c. make
   d. have e. keep

6. "This application is up-to-date." The adjective 'up-to-date' can be replaced by ....
   a. out-of-date b. modern c. old-fashioned
   d. powerful e. contemporary

7. "This application is up-to-date." The adjective 'up-to-date' is the antonym for ....

a. out-of-date b. modern c. old-fashioned
d. powerful e. contemporary

8. "Mr Ashraf is a reliable teacher." In this sentence, 'reliable' means the opposite of ....

a. dependable b. untrustworthy c. trustworthy
d. unreliable e. real

9. "Mr Ashraf is a reliable teacher." In this sentence, 'reliable' means the same as ....

a. dependable b. untrustworthy c. trustworthy
d. unreliable e. real

10. "He follows the law." The verb 'follows' in this sentence is the antonym of ....

a. obeys b. breaks c. blocks
d. disobeys e. carries out

11. I don't see his posts because he has .... me

a. obeyed b. broken c. blocked
d. followed e. unfollowed

12. We trust him because he is ....

a. honest b. dishonest c. trustworthy
d. untrustworthy e. stupid

13. Nearly all people find it boring when a film is interrupted by repeated .... for goods.

a. ads b. announcements c. commercials
d. app e. apps

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You needn't be so confused. The solution of the problem .... obvious.

a. checks b. goes c. seems d. pays

2. Mr Ashraf .... me a homework task.

a. did b. gamed c. missed d. gave

3. Yes, I .... online after I had done all my jobs.

a. checked b. went c. seemed d. paid

4. After subscription, you will .... access to everything on our website.
a. have b. create c. do d. name

5. Successful businesses are highly .... to economic change.
(هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
a. adapt b. adopt c. adaptable d. adopting

6. Before posting some information online, fact- .... is a must.
a. checks b. checking c. checked d. a & b

7. You can get the information you need at the .... of a button.
a. touch b. touched c. such d. such as

8. Reliable and trustworthy are ....
(مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. acronyms b. synonyms c. antonyms d. opposites

9. He upgraded his Facebook app .... the latest software update.
a. with b. at c. off d. about

10. You have to adapt your spending .... your income.
a. to b. of c. from d. by

11. You can .... on him. Be sure he will do the job efficiently.
a. rely b. reliable c. unreliable d. reliability

12. I have never dcubted your .... I trust you.
a. rely b. reliance c. unreliable d. reliability

13. His .... on others makes him a failure.
a. rely b. reliance c. unreliable d. reliability

14. You need to .... your products to let people know about them.
a. advertise b. adverts c. advertisers d. a & c

15. .... do not waste their money. They promote their goods.
a. Advertise b. Adverts c. Advertisers d. A & C

16. 3000 people have .... to my YouTube channel so far.
a. subscribed b. subscribers c. consultant d. consulted

17. I have had 3000 .... to my YouTube channel so far.
a. subscribed b. subscribers c. consultant d. consulted

18. I need to .... a doctor about my headache.
a. subscribe b. subscribers c. consultant d. consult

19. I need to get advice from a .... about my headache.
a. subscribe b. subscribers c. consultant d. consult

20. I have no time to download these .... right now.
   a. followers   b. follow   c. update   d. updates
21. I have no time to .... these applications right now.
   a. followers   b. follow   c. update   d. updates
22. 5000 people .... my account on Twitter.
   a. followers   b. follow   c. update   d. updates
23. An application is a piece of a computer .... that does a particular job.
   a. monitor   b. hard desk   c. hardware   d. software
25. A RAM is part of a computer ....
   a. monitor   b. app   c. hardware   d. software
26. The .... of the pay rise زيادة الأجور has made the employees very happy.
   a. add   b. announcement
   c. commercial   d. a & c
26. Facebook regularly asks me to .... my personal data.
   a. update   b. outdate   c. upgrade   d. degrade
27. If you want full protection against viruses and malware, ... to premium.
   a. update   b. outdate   c. upgrade   d. degrade

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

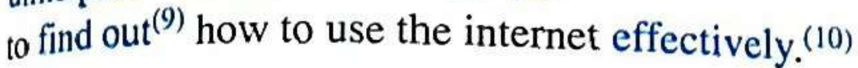
Doing research online

إجراء الأبحاث علي الإنترنت

(SB page 52)

Your teacher has given you a homework task(1). Where do you start your research(2) ?

The internet is very useful(3) with lots of information, but how do you avoid(4) spending(5) hours reading unhelpful(6) websites(7) ? Read on(8) to find out(9) how to use the internet effectively.(10)



1. Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience(11) in or knowledge(12) of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.
2. Think about who has written the website. Is it a company that may be trying to sell(13) you something?
3. Check(14) if the website is up-to-date(15). Is the information still reliable(16) and useful? When was it updated(17) ?
4. Always consult(18) more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different sites(19) is that you can check the information and you may find extra(20) facts.
5. What does the website look like(21) ? If it is badly(22) designed(23) and is full of(24) grammar and spelling(25) mistakes(26), then it is probably not very reliable.
6. Websites that have named(27) their sources(28) are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.
7. Save(29) the URL (Uniform Resource Locator)(30) of any useful pages(31) or images(32) so you can find them easily.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهمة
(2) بحث
(3) مفيد
(4) يتجنب
(5) قضاء
(6) غير مفيد
(7) مواقع
(8) استمر في القراءة
(9) يكتشف
(10) بشكل فعّال
(11) خبرة
(12) المعرفة
(13) يبيع
(14) يتحقق من
(15) مُحْدَث
(16) موثوق به
(17) يُحدِّث
(18) يستشير
(19) مواقع
(20) إضافي
(21) يشبه
(22) بشكل سيء
(23) مُصَمَّم
(24) مملوء بـ
(25) تهجّي
(26) أخطاء
(27) يذكر اسم
(28) مصادر
(29) يحفظ
(30) الرابط
(31) صفحات
(32) صور

Hi! (SB page 53)

Can you help me? I'm trying to do a history essay, but I've spent about 20 hours reading different websites and blogs[1], and now I've got pages and pages of notes[2]. But I'm really confused[3]. I don't know which sites are good and which aren't - and they all say different things! And now I've forgotten how I found a really good site that I looked at earlier.

Help!!!!!!

Thanks,

Nagwa

Check Vocabulary
(1) مدونات
(2) ملاحظات
(3) متحير

Essay Dun

(WB page 30)

Download this app and you will never have to write an essay again! Just type in the title, the question you need to answer, and the word limit and the app will consult the system to create a perfect essay. It is 100 % reliable and works every time.

Excuse-a-Maker

This useful app has been updated to include 2,000 new excuses which can be adapted to any situation. Just upload a photo of yourself and say why you need the excuse and where you are. You will receive a new up-to-date photo with the time and date stamped on it with your excuse!

Are you internet smart ?

(WB page 30)

هل أنت ذكي في التعامل مع الإنترنت ؟

Do you really know how to protect[1] yourself online[2] ? There are several[3] things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong password[4]. Did you know the most common[5] password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a special character[6] e.g. Tl342mS!*. It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.

Check Vocabulary
(1) يحمي
(2) على الإنترنت
(3) عديد
(4) كلمة مرور
(5) شائع
(6) رمز خاص

- When you go online, make sure you have upgraded[7] your browser[8] with the latest software[9] update[10] before you open a webpage[11].
- Be careful what you upload[12]. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind[13] you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips[14] seem obvious[15], but you'll be surprised how many people are careless[16] online. Stealing[17] someone's identity[18] is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

(7) يُحسِّن - يُرقِّي
(8) متصفح
(9) برنامج
(10) تحديث / ترقية البرنامج
(11) صفحة على الإنترنت
(12) يرفع
(13) خلف / وراء
(14) نصائح
(15) واضح
(16) مُهمِل
(17) سرقة
(18) هوية - شخصية

Targeted advertising

(SB page 54)

Our computers and smartphones[1] keep small pieces of information called cookies[2], which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to[3] make it easier for us to find things that interest[4] us, but they also help advertisers[5] to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert[6] for something that seems[7] to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising[8].

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise[9] to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner[10] adverts that always seem to appear[11] on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest[12] places, like the small sponsored[13] adverts that you find in search results[14].

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Check Vocabulary

(1) هواتف ذكية
(2) ملفات تعريف الارتباط
(3) تهدف إلى
(4) يثير اهتمام
(5) المُعلِنين
(6) إعلان
(7) يبدو
(8) الإعلان الموجّه
(9) يُعلِن عن
(10) لافتة
(11) يظهر
(12) الأغرب
(13) مُموَّل
(14) نتائج البحث

Don't believe everything you read !

(WB page 31)

The title[1] of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or grandparents[2]. Although it was true[3] in the past, the speed[4] at which we have access to[5] new information means that this warning[6] is even more important now.

In the past, professional[7] journalists[8] always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two reliable sources[9] to make sure the story was correct. Checking sources[10], and the time needed to print[11] something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.

Today the internet provides[12] instant[13] news and is a place where anyone can share[14] information with the rest of the world at the touch of a button[15]. This means that journalists often need to publish[16] their stories quickly, so fact- checking[17] isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why[18] not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even serious[19] newspapers, which are supposed to be reliable, can make mistakes[20]. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish[21] sociology[22] student, wanted to test[23] the influence[24] of the internet. He posted a fake[25] phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French musician[26] who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world[27].

The moral[28] of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to trust[29] everything you read online without checking it first.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عنوان
(2) اجداد
(3) صحيح
(4) سرعة
(5) لديهم قدرة للوصول لـ
(6) تحذير
(7) محترف
(8) صحفيون
(9) مصادر موثقة
(10) التحقق من المصادر
(11) يطبع
(12) يوفر
(13) فوري
(14) يشارك
(15) بلمسة زر
(16) ينشر
(17) توثيق الحقائق
(18) لهذا السبب
(19) جاد
(20) يرتكب أخطاء
(21) أيرلندي
(22) علم الاجتماع
(23) يختبر
(24) تأثير
(25) مزيفة
(26) موسيقار
(27) في كل أرجاء العالم
(28) مغزى أخلاقي
(29) يثق بـ

Being smart online

Part IV Language

تنويه • تم تقسيم شرح هذه القاعدة، فتم وضع الجزء الخاص بـ(supposed to) ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع قبل التدريبات العامة علي القواعد.

seem to – (be) meant to – be supposed to

1 Seem to

A. Seem – Seemed

- اهم ما تريد معرفته عن الفعل **(seem)** :

١ يُستخدم الفعل **(seem)** بمعني (يبدو)، وهي تعني أن انطباع المتحدث قد يكون صحيحً أو خاطئ :

seem = appear to be true

ex. - He seems ill. = I think he is ill but I am not sure.

٢ تذكر أن الفعل (seem) لا يُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة :

ex. - She was seeming very pleased with her son. (✗)
- She seemed very pleased with her son. (✓)

٣ تذكر أن الفعل **(seem)** لا يُبنَي للمجهول :

ex. - The window is seemed to be broken. (✗)
- The window seems to be broken. (✓)

٤ الفعل **(seem)** هو أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي يتبعها صفة :

seem + adjective صفة

ex. - She seems happy.

٥ الفعل **(seem)** هو أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي لا يتبعها ظرف :

ex. - She seems nicely. (✗)
- She seems nice. (✓)

Mini Test 1



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Marwa .... upset today. I don't know why.
   a. seem b. seemed c. is seeming d. is seemed

2. He seems .... after losing his mobile.
   a. anger b. angrily c. angry d. angrily
3. She seems ....
   a. friendly b. friend c. friends d. friendship

B. It seems / seemed + جملة

❶ لاحظ الصيغ التالية مع الفعل (seem - seemed) – لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف (that) :

It seems / seemed + that / like + جملة يبدو أن ...

ex. - It seemed that she didn't like the food.
- It seems like he's going to sell his old car.

It seems / seemed + as if + جملة يبدو كما لو أن ...

ex. - It seems as if he needs help.

It seems / seemed + as though + جملة يبدو كما لو أن ...

ex. - It seems as though we are wasting our time. He won't agree.

❷ يمكن إضافة (to + subject) إلى الصيغ السابقة كالتالي :

It seems / seemed + to + ضمير مفعول/اسم + that / as if / as though + جملة

ex. - It seemed to me that you didn't like the idea.
- It seems to mum as if Leen doesn't know what to do.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It seems .... the shop will have to close down. They can't find a buyer for it.
   a. that b. if c. no word d. a & c
2. It seems .... if he wants everyone to feel sorry for him, but I don't.
   a. like b. as c. though d. a & b
3. It seemed as .... time was standing still. She wanted that moment to last forever.
   a. through b. though c. if d. b & c
4. It seemed .... she didn't like the food.
   a. like b. as c. to d. if

5. It seems .... she is excited about the offer.

a. as b. if c. that d. b & c

6. It seemed .... everyone that the police were ready to secure the event.

a. like b. to c. as if d. as though

7. It seems to .... as though she needs help.

a. I b. my c. me d. myself

C. Seem to

❶ لاحظ الصيغ التالية مع الفعل **(seem - seemed)** – لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف **(that)**:

نه كأ و و يبدو **seem/seemed to** ن أ و يبد

ex. - He seems to train hard for the final match.

❷ لاحظ تكوين الصيغة المنفية من **(seem to + inf.)**:

..... don't / doesn't / didn't ..... + seem to + inf.

or : **..... seem / seems / seemed + not to + inf.**

ex. - She seems to work hard. (إثبات)
- She doesn't seem to work hard. (نفى)
- She seems not to work hard. (نفى)

❸ فى الصيغة المستمرة، تُستخدَم **(be + inf. + ing)** بعد **(seem to)** لوصف حدث مستمر فى المضارع أو الماضى حسب زمن **(seem)**:

seem / seemed + to + be + (inf. + ing)

ex. - He seems to be waiting for someone. (حدث مستمر في المضارع)
- They seemed to be looking for something in the sand. (حدث كان مستمر فى الماضى)

❹ في الصيغة التامة، تُستخدَم **(have + p.p.)** بعد **(seem to)** لوصف حدث تم مسبقاً في الماضي:

seem / seemed + to + have + p.p. ...

ex. - He was relaxed. He seemed to have solved his problems.

❺ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

يبدو أن هناك ...

There seems / seemed to be ...

ex. - There seems to be a problem with the air conditioner.
- There seemed to be some blood on the floor in the crime scene.

Mini Test 3

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. He seems .... busy.
   a. being   b. to being   c. be   d. to be
2. I don't like that man. He .... friendly at all.
   a. seems   b. doesn't seem   c. never seem   d. seem not
3. Don't talk loudly. The baby seems .... in the next room.
   a. sleeping   b. asleep   c. to be sleeping   d. b & c
4. **A :** Why don't you talk to him now?
   B : Wait. He seems .... somebody important at the moment.
   a. meeting   b. is meeting   c. to be meeting   d. to have met
5. **A :** Can you talk to him now?
   B : Sure. The meeting seems ....
   a. to finish   b. to be finishing   c. finishing   d. to have finished
6. There seemed .... no reason why she should not come with us, so we all travelled together.
   a. that   b. to be   c. as if   d. as though
7. There seemed .... little difference between the two alternatives.
   a. no word   b. to be   c. a & b   d. as though

Advanced Notes ملاحظات للفائقين

لاحظ الفرق فى المعنى بين استخدام **(seem)** و **(seemingly)**:

- He seems polite. (= He acts politely but I am not sure if he is polite or not.)
- He is seemingly polite. (= He acts politely but in fact he is not polite.)

2 mean - mean to

A. mean - meant - meant

- أهم ما تريد معرفته عن الفعل **(mean)** :

❶ يُستخدم الفعل **(mean)** بمعنى "يرمز إلى / يعنى / يدل على":

mean = indicate / symbolize

ex. - When I shake my head, it usually means 'no'.
- The look on her face meant only one thing – sadness.

٢ تُستخدم (mean) بمعنى "يعنى" لتوضيح معنى كلمة أو عبارة :

mean = signify / represent

ex. - A: What does the word 'exhausted' mean? B: It means 'very tired'.

٣ لا يُستخدم الفعل (mean) بمعنى (يعنى / يقصد/ يدل على) فى الأزمنة المستمرة :

ex. - The word 'exhausted' is meaning 'very tired'. (✗)

- The word 'exhausted' means 'very tired'. (✓)

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "That rising sun meant that the weather would be warm." In this sentence, the verb 'meant' can be replaced by ....
   a. planned b. indicated c. supposed d. had to
2. The verb 'to suppose' .... 'to assume'.
   a. means b. is meaning c. was meaning d. is meant
3. "For most people, Paris means fashion and beauty." In this sentence, the verb 'means' can be replaced by ....
   a. plans b. presents c. summarises d. symbolizes

B. mean + (inf. + ing)

١ تُستخدم (mean + inf. - ing) بمعنى (يعنى / يؤدى إلى) للتعبير عن النتيجة التى يؤدى إليها شىء ما :

mean + (inf. + ing) = involve + (inf. + ing)

ex. - Losing this job means looking for another one.

- Wasting much money means not buying a new flat.

٢ تُستخدم (mean + inf. + ing) للتعبير عن الضرورة (necessity) أو الإلزام (obligation) :

mean + (inf. + ing) يتطلب - يستلزم

ex. - Taking the six o'clock train means getting up at five.

- I have to be at the airport by nine. It means getting up early.

C. mean + that + جملة

يمكن أن تأتى (that) وبعدها جملة كاملة بعد (mean) :

ex. - I didn't mean that you are careless.
- She means that I have to follow the rules.

تذكر أنه يمكن حذف (that) :

- I didn't mean you are careless.

D. mean to + inf.

تُستخدم (mean to + inf.) بمعني «ينوي» للتعبير عن النوايا أو الخطط :

mean to + inf. = intend / plan to + inf.

ex. - He didn't mean to hurt you. It was all by mistake.
= He didn't intend to hurt you. It was all by mistake.
- Do you mean to finish this job by the end of the week?
= Do you plan to finish this job by the end of the week?

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

mean + شخص / شئ + to + inf. يريد لـ ... أن / يقصد لـ ... أن

ex. - Parents never mean their children to suffer.
= Parents never plan to make their children suffer.
- I didn't mean the vase to break.
= I didn't intend to break the vase.
- Did you mean John to send those letters?
= Did you want John to send those letters ?

mean + for + شخص + to + inf.

ex. - Parents never mean for their children to suffer.

mean something to + شخص مهم بالنسبة لـ ...

ex. - My family mean a lot to me.
= My family is very important to me.

Mini Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "Accepting this job means living in Alexandria." The verb means in this sentence can be replaced by ....
   a. indicates b. involves c. symbolises d. seems

2. "If you decide to try the exam, it will mean studying hard." This sentence expresses ....
a. intention b. expectation c. obligation d. necessity

3. His happy expression means .... he has passed the exam.
a. that b. no word c. a & b d. to

4. Did you mean .... this number?
a. to dial b. dialing c. that dial d. b & c

5. I meant Yara .... the job. I really recommend her.
a. take b. to take c. taking d. a & c

6. He meant .... Ahmed to be in charge.
a. by b. to c. with d. for

7. My mother means .... to me. She is the most important person in my life.
a. the world b. everything c. a & b d. nothing

E. ... be meant to + inf.

١ تُستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن الضرورة (necessity) أو الإلزام (obligation):

... be meant to + inf. = be supposed to + inf. من المفترض أن

ex. - You are meant to start work at seven.
= You are supposed to start work at seven.
- Come on, Sama. You're meant to help me.

٢ وتُستخدم للتعبير عن المسئولية (responsibility) أو الواجب (duty):

... be meant to + inf. = be supposed to / intended to + inf. من المفترض أن

ex. - You were meant to keep the children out of trouble.

٣ وتُستخدم بمعنى (suitable):

... be meant to = be suitable for مناسب لـ / يصْلُح كـ

ex. - I don't think she's meant to be a teacher.
= I don't think she's suitable for the job of a teacher.

٤ كما تُستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض (purpose) من شيء ما:

be meant to + inf. = be supposed to / intended to + inf. الهدف منه / الغرض منه

ex. - The police are meant to protect people.
- This map is meant to show the places in this large city.
- It was meant to be an apology but it only made her angry.
- The red button is meant to turn the machine on or off.

⑤ يمكن استخدام صيغة المبنى للمجهول (be + p.p) بعد (be meant to) :

be meant to + be + p.p.

ex. - My flat is meant to be decorated next week.

⑥ يمكن استخدام الصيغة المستمرة بعد (be meant to) لتدل علي حدث مستمر حسب الزمن :

be meant to + be + (inf. + ing)

ex. - You are meant to be studying your lessons. (حدث مستمر في المضارع)
- You were meant to be studying your lessons. (حدث مستمر في الماضي)

⑦ يمكن استخدام الصيغة التامة بعد (be meant to) لتدل علي شيء من المفترض أنه تم بالفعل في الماضي :

be meant to + have + p.p.

ex. - Before the guests arrived, everything was meant to have been prepared.

Mini Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Why are you here, Ali? You are .... to be in the garden watering the plants.
   a. had b. meant c. seemed d. b & c
2. This lorry .... to carry the new furniture.
   a. means b. is meant c. is meaning d. mean
3. Students are meant .... hard.
   a. to work b. to working c. work d. to be worked
4. The new villa .... the sea.
   a. means to overlook b. means to be overlooked
   c. is meant to be overlooked d. is meant to overlook
5. I don't think you are meant .... a basketball player.
   a. to b. not to c. for d. that
6. The car engine is meant .... before the drive to Alexandria.
   a. to check b. to be checked
   c. for checking d. to have checked
7. Youssef is meant .... in his room. I don't know why he is here.
   a. for studying b. to be studied
   c. to have studied d. to be studying

General Exercise On Language



تنويه • التدريبات التالية مُرتَّبة بشكل متدرِّج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He .... unfriendly at first, but when you know him well, you will change this opinion. (أحمد موافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. seemed b. is seeming c. seems d. seems that
2. I don't like that man. He .... friendly at all. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. seems b. doesn't seem c. never seem d. not seem
3. Sport .... to be a means of entertainment, not a way for spreading intolerance. التعصب (أجا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. is meant b. supposed c. is seemed d. intended
4. I can't see this photo clearly. What is it ....? (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. meaning to be b. supposed to c. seemed to be d. meant to be
5. Not everything is .... to be. But everything is worth a try. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. appeared b. looked c. seemed d. meant
6. Clubs .... to be places for sports and social activities. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. are meant b. are supposing
   c. are seemed d. seems
7. He pretends to be ill. This means he .... ill. (ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. seem b. is seemed c. is seemingly d. is meant
8. This piece of cloth .... to be a suit, but it was made a jacket. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. seemed b. was meant c. supposed d. was seeming
9. You are meant .... in bed. I don't know why you are still awake. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. for sleeping b. to be sleeping
   c. being slept d. to be slept

تنويه • ذاكر ما تم شرحه فى القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

addict (n)	مُدمِن	sensible(adj)	حكيم - عقلاني
addicted (adj)	مُدمِن	symbol(n)	رمز
behaviour(n)	سلوك - تَصَرُّف	year of birth	سنة الميلاد
profile(n)	الملف الشخصي		

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر اهمية

تنويه • من المُهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

anyway(adv)	علي أي حال	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر - يقول
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير التفكير	platform (n)	منصة
connect(ed) (v)	يدخل على - يتصل - يربط	plus (conj.)	بالإضافة إلي (ذلك)
cons(n)	عيوب	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
criticise(d) (v)	ينتقد	privacy(n)	الخصوصية
cute (adj)	جميل	programmers(n)	مُبرمجين
develop(ed) (v)	يُطوِّر - يتطور	programming(n)	البرمجة
distract(ed) (v)	يُشتِّت - يصرف انتباه	pros(n)	مزايا
employee(n)	مُوظَف	purpose(n)	غَرَض
entertain(ed) (v)	يُسلِّي - يُرَفِّه عن	rank(ed) (n - v)	رُتبة - يضع في منزلة
explain(ed) (v)	يشرح - يُفسر	register(ed) (v)	يُسجِّل
feelings(n)	مشاعر	represent (ed) (v)	يُمثِّل
fire(d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	share(d) (v)	يشارك
forever(adv)	للأبد	similar(adj)	مُشابه - متشابه
forum(n)	مُنتدي	solve(d) (v)	يحل
game(d) (v - n)	يلعب - مباراة / لعبة	superficiality (n)	سطحيَّة - عدم تركيز
guide(n)	مُرشِد - دليل ارشادي	teenager = teen(n)	مُراهِق
highlight(ed) (v)	يُبرز - يُسلط الضوء علي	useful(adj)	مفيد
imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	victim(n)	ضحية
likes(n)	إعجابات (لايكات)	viewpoint(n)	وجهة نظر

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
addict (n) مُدمِن	someone who is very interested in something and spends a lot of time doing it
behaviour(n) سلوك - تَصَرُّف	the things that a person or animal does
profile(n) الملف الشخصي	a short description وَصْف that gives important details تفاصيل about a person, a group of people, or a place
sensible(adj) حكيم - عقلاني	reasonable and shows good judgment حُكْم
symbol (n) رمز	a picture or shape that has a particular meaning or represents a particular organization or idea
view (n) عرض - رؤية	an occasion when a post, an image or a video is watched online

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Experts warn us that many kids have become .... to surfing the internet. (أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. addicted b. attained c. attacked d. applied
2. Don't share your personal data on your ....
   a. profile b. symbol c. identity d. version
3. People judge يحكم على you through your ....
   a. app b. application c. advert d. behaviour
4. The dove الحمامة is known as a/an .... of peace.
   a. profile b. symbol c. identity d. version
5. I think you made a .... decision when you stopped the argument.
   a. unreliable b. sponsored c. sensible d. targeted

6. Which of the following is one of the important personal details?
   a. Year of birth.
   b. Date of the day.
   c. Search results.
   d. Targeted advertising.
7. She is a/an .... to chocolate cookies. She likes them very much. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. expert
   b. follower
   c. source
   d. addict

2 Important vocabulary

8. When we were young, our grandfather's stories .... us a lot. (غيث سلسبيل ٢٠٢٢)
   a. entertained
   b. delayed
   c. inspected
   d. trained
9. Don't let what people say .... you. Concentrate on your goal. (مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. district
   b. distract
   c. deposit
   d. despise
10. This .... discusses environmental issues.
    a. forum
    b. privacy
    c. pros
    d. cons
11. We had a meeting to .... new ideas.
    a. brainstorm
    b. install
    c. rank
    d. represent
12. I think .... is a promising career.
    a. viewpoint
    b. presentation
    c. programming
    d. superficiality
13. Everything we do has its own pros and ....
    a. merits
    b. upsides
    c. advantages
    d. cons
14. It is a waste of time .... online.
    a. excusing
    b. creating
    c. checking
    d. gaming
15. Salah has been .... as the most important player in the team.
    a. ranked
    b. explained
    c. brainstormed
    d. represented
16. I prepared well for my .... at the meeting, so my audience liked it.
    a. viewpoint
    b. presentation
    c. programming
    d. superficiality
17. I .... some of the videos from the school trip on the school site.
    a. experienced
    b. installed
    c. shared
    d. distracted
18. Some people are interested in the number of .... they have on their posts.
    a. knowledge
    b. likes
    c. victims
    d. warnings
19. You should respect the .... of others.
    a. forum
    b. privacy
    c. pros
    d. cons

20. He is one of the ordinary people, so they think he .... them.
 a. solves b. registers c. brainstorms d. represents
21. I respect your .... about my suggestion even if I do not think it is right.
 a. viewpoint b. presentation c. programming d. superficiality
22. Work hard or you will be ....
 a. researched b. chatted c. stamped d. fired
23. He was the .... of a car accident in which he lost his leg.
 a. stamp b. identity c. victim d. effect
24. You can find a lot of professional educational .... on the internet.
 a. buttons b. arguments c. platforms d. morals
25. You can make money online. ...., you can have fun.
 a. Plus b. Because c. Instead of d. a & c
26. The .... of his writing is the main reason for his failure.
 a. viewpoint b. presentation c. programming d. superficiality
27. The media .... the bad need for economic growth to solve most of our problems.
 a. ranked b. highlighted c. brainstormed d. represented
28. Keeping fit is one of the .... of doing a sport.
 a. forums b. privacies c. pros d. cons

3 Definitions

29. .... is the things that a person or animal does.
 a. View b. Behaviour c. Tone d. Cookies
30. A/An .... is someone who is very interested in something and spends a lot of time doing it.
 a. innovator b. programmer c. addict d. downloader
31. A .... is a short description that gives important details about a person, a group of people, or a place.
 a. like b. cookie c. file d. profile
32. .... means reasonable and shows good judgment.
 a. Sensible b. Behavioural c. Reliable d. Up-to-date

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه: ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a blog post on يكتب منشور عن	**look**	terrible يبدو فظيعاً
	… for a job يقوم بـ … كوظيفة	**make**	rules يضع قواعد
game	online يلعب على الإنترنت	**miss**	something important يفتقد شيئاً هاماً
get	back to يعود إلي	**pay**	attention to ينتبه لـ
go	on forums يدخل على المنتديات	**post**	a message يرسل رسالة
have	effects on له تأثيرات على	**represent**	feelings يمثل أو يشير إلي مشاعر
	likes يحصل على إعجابات	**show**	strange behaviour يتصرف بغرابة
keep	… entertained يُسَلّي		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
criticise	ينتقد	blame, disapprove of
entertain	يُسلّي - يُرَفّه عن	please, amuse, satisfy
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss, sack
sensible	حكيم - عقلاني - واقعي	practical, realistic, responsible, reasonable, rational, logical
specific	محدد	particular

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
criticise	ينتقد	praise, approve of	يمتدح - يستحسن
entertain	يُسلّي - يُرَفّه عن	displease, annoy, upset	يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	hire, employ, take on	يوظف - يُشغّل

sensible	حكيم - عقلاني - واقعي	foolish	أحمق
specific	محدد	general	عام
strange	غريب	familiar - usual	مألوف - معتاد
stupid	غبي	intelligent - smart	ذكي
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

addict	
addict(n) مُدمِن	- He is a drug addict.
addiction(n) إدمان	- He suffers from drug addiction.
addicted(adj) مُدمِن	- He is addicted to drugs.
behave	
behave(d) (v) يتصرف	- This boy behaves badly.
behaviour (n) سلوك - تَصَرُّف	- This boy's behaviour is bad.
behavioural (adj) سلوكي	- This boy has behavioural problems.
criticise	
criticise(d) (v) ينتقد	- He criticises films.
critic (n) ناقد	- Critics talked about my latest film positively.
critical (adj) نقدي - حَرِج	- I didn't like her critical comments. - I was in a critical situation.
criticism (n) النقد	- Positive criticism is useful.
employ	
employ(ed) (v) يُوظِّف - يستغل	- This supermarket has employed 20 assistants. - Egypt has employed bright sunlight to generate electricity.
employer(n) صاحب عمل	- As a teacher, the government is my employer.
employee(n) مُوَظَّف	- The employees here like their jobs.
employable(adj) قابل للتوظيف	- If you are employable, this means you have good qualifications and skills.

employment (n) التوظيف – الاستغلال	- The employment of young people is one of the goals of the new plan.
unemployment (n) البطالة	- Unemployment is a big problem.
entertain	
entertain(ed) (v) يُسَلّي / يُرفّه عن	- There are some shows to entertain children.
entertainer(n) فنان ترفيهي	- This singer is a great entertainer.
entertaining(adj) مُسَلٍّ	- This show is entertaining.
entertainment(n) التسلية/الترفيه	- For entertainment, you can go to the cinema.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

addicted to	مُدمِن علي	keep in contact with	يبقي على اتصال بـ
after all,	على أي حال	loads of	الكثير من
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ – بسبب	on your own	بمفردك/وحدك
be distracted with / by	مُشتَّت بـ	on your profile	علي حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)
for ages	لفترة طويلة	set of	مجموعة من
have nothing to do with	لا علاقة له	so far	حتى الآن
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصد	social media app	تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي
in a few years' time	خلال سنوات قليلة	the other day	مؤخراً
in person	شخصياً	young people	الشباب
in short	باختصار		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	divide into	يَقسِم إلي – ينقسم إلى
chat to / with	يدردش مع	go out	يخرج
connect to	يدخل علي	put up	يضع – يرفع
decide to	يقرر أن	share … with	يشارك … مع

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

app - application

• app = application تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)

- An antivirus is an app (=application) that protects a computer from malware برمجيات خبيثة and viruses.

• application طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)

- The secretary received 200 applications. (Not : apps).

platform - pavement

• platform (n) رصيف محطة القطار أو المترو

- The train to Aswan leaves at 9:00 from platform 11.

• platform (n) منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث)

- He felt embarrassed مُحرج when he climbed the steps to the platform.

• platform (n) منصة الكترونية

- Mr Mohammed will launch his educational platform soon.

• pavement (n) رصيف الشارع

- Cars are not allowed to park on the pavement.

represent - act

• represent (v) يُمثِّل (ينوب عن شخص أو مؤسسة ...)

- Rodayna represented our office at the conference.

• act (v) يُمثِّل (يقوم بدور في فيلم/مسرحية ...)

- He wants to act and become a movie star.

• act (v) يتصرف

- I didn't know how to act at that difficult situation.

sensible - sensitive

• sensible عاقل / حكيم / معقول

- Stopping the war was a sensible decision.

• sensitive حسّاس / سريع التأثر

- I was a sensitive child. I got upset very easily.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. I .... a blog post on yesterday's match.
   a. did b. gamed c. wrote
   d. represented e. paid
2. Don't waste your time .... online.
   a. doing b. gaming c. missing
   d. giving e. going
3. My teacher said that I had .... a perfect essay.
   a. paid b. created c. done
   d. looked e. played
4. When you like something, you .... it.
   a. approve of b. disapprove of c. praise
   d. criticise e. agree
5. When something is rational, it is ....
   a. foolish b. sensible c. particular
   d. general e. reasonable
6. To "entertain" is antonymous with ....
   a. displease b. please c. amuse
   d. annoy e. satisfy
7. He lost his job. He was ....
   a. hired b. fired c. sacked
   d. employed e. taken on
8. He gained much weight .... his love of food.
   a. so b. so far c. that's why
   d. as a result of e. because of
9. I download trusted .... from Google Store.
   a. apps b. applications c. ads
   d. adverts e. announcements

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The attention I .... to what the teacher said helped me understand the lesson.
   a. checked b. went c. seemed d. paid
2. Which of the following prefixes makes the opposite of 'suitable'?
   a. Up- b. Un- c. Dis- d. Im-

3. Smart and suitable are ....
a. acronyms b. synonyms c. antonyms d. opposites

4. Foolish is to .... as familiar is to strange.
a. general b. usual c. sensitive d. sensible

5. Amr put .... a nice photo of his on his Instagram yesterday.
a. out b. in c. up d. down

6. I share a lot of interests .... my cousin Malak.
a. in b. with c. for d. on

7. 'For ages' means for ....
a. good b. bad c. a long time d. years

8. Our university accepts .... from Arab students.
a. apps b. applications c. a & b d. neither a nor b

9. Don't be so .... to criticism. Try to benefit from it.
a. sensitive b. sensible c. reliable d. unreliable

10. His reaction was very .... We all appreciated it.
a. sensitive b. sensible c. reliable d. unreliable

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Listening Texts

(SB page 56)

Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me?
I'm doing a blog post on(1) how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include, please?

Khaled : Yes, sure. What have you got so far(2) ?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile(3). That's important on social media.

Khaled : Definitely(4) !

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled : Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with(5) on social media, so I believe you should always put up(6) a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate(7) it when people have symbols(8) or something instead of(9) their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يكتب منشور عن
(2) حتى الآن
(3) الملف الشخصي
(4) بالتأكيد
(5) يدردش مع
(6) يضع
(7) يكره
(8) رموز
(9) بدلاً من

Hamdi : I disagree, symbols tell you more about someone's thinks.

Khaled : Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour(10). So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled : After all, you have to be sensible(11) on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

Check Vocabulary

(10) سلوك
(11) عاقل

(WB page 32)

Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day(1) about social media behaviour(2) in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. Anyway(3), as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt connect to(4) one popular social media app(5) every day?

Leila : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform!(6) But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see on your profile(7) ? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something stupid(8) now, and in a few years' time you apply for(9) a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مؤخراً
(2) سلوك علي مواقع التواصل
(3) علي أي حال
(4) يدخل علي
(5) تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي شهير
(6) مَنصّة
(7) علي حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)
(8) غبي
(9) يتقدم بطلب لـ

Leila : I see your point[10], but in my opinion, social media should be personal and has nothing to do with[11] your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was fired[12] from his job for criticising[13] his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever[14]. So, be careful with those selfies[15] you're taking! Plus[16], Hany told me that he was once the victim[17] of bad behaviour[18] after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is fine[19] now, but it really affected[20] him at the time.

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so cute[21] and my selfies all look terrible[22] anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo, too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

Check Vocabulary

(10) أفهم ما تقصد
(11) لا علاقة له بـ
(12) يفصل من العمل
(13) ينتقد
(14) للأبد
(15) صورة سيلفي
(16) بالإضافة لذلك
(17) ضحية
(18) سُلوك
(19) بخير
(20) يؤثِر علي
(21) جميل
(22) يبدو فظيعاً

Narrator: 1

(SB page 57)

Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it keeps them entertained[1] – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never bored[2].

Narrator: 2

Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. Like[3] most of my friends, I think I'm addicted to[4] the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm missing something important[5]. It means I have a lot of arguments[6] with my parents at mealtimes[7] and when we go out together[8].

Check Vocabulary

(1) تسليهم
(2) شاعر بالملل
(3) مثل
(4) مُدمِن لـ
(5) يفتقد شيئاً هاماً
(6) خلافات - نزاعات
(7) في أوقات الوجبات
(8) نخرج معاً

Narrator: 3

Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. Imagine[9] if you had to go to the library and read loads of[10] books for every homework or project!

Narrator: 4

Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I game online[11] which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator: 5

Girl 2 : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming[12] so I go on forums[13] to chat to[14] other programmers[15] – students and people who do it for a job[16]. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve[17] to do with[18] programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

Check Vocabulary

- (9) تخيل
- (10) الكثير من
- (11) يلعب على الإنترنت
- (12) البرمجة
- (13) يدخل على المنتديات
- (14) يدردش مع
- (15) مُبرمجين
- (16) يقوم بها كوظيفة
- (17) يحل
- (18) لها علاقة بـ

2 Video script section

(SB page 56)

Social media can keep us in contact with[1] friends, entertain[2] us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important to know how to use it safely.

First of all, take care with privacy settings[3]. Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.

Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile ? And never put real details about yourself online, such as your date of birth, school, home address or your telephone number.

Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything. And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group ?

If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them on your own[4].

Check Vocabulary

- (1) على تواصل مع
- (2) يُسلي
- (3) إعدادات الخصوصية
- (4) بمفردك

Part IV Language

3 (be) supposed to من المفترض أن / يُفترض أن

Important Basics ثوابت هامة

1 هذه الصيغة مبنية للمجهول وتبدأ بالمفعول :

ex. - The boys are supposed to go to bed at nine.

- في المثال السابق تلاحظ أن (The boys) مفعول للفعل (suppose) وليست الفاعل

2 لا يمكن حذف حرف (d) من (supposed) في الصيغة (be supposed to) :

ex. - You are supposed to leave now. (Not: suppose)

3 لابد من وجود مفعول وفعل (be) حسب الزمن قبل (supposed to)، ولابد أن يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

Obj. المفعول	+ v. to be Present	or : Past	+ supposed to	+ inf. ... المصدر
I	am	was		take part in the match.
He / She / It	is	was	supposed to	have enough food.
You / We / They	are	were		be at work at 8:30.

Mini Test 1 

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your new job is .... to be more interesting and rewarding.
   a. suppose b. supposing c. supposed d. supposedly
2. We are supposed .... after school to play tennis.
   a. meet b. to meet c. meeting d. to meeting
3. Omar and I .... supposed to start a new project next month.
   a. am b. is c. are d. were
4. Some workers .... to come to carry the new furniture upstairs.
   a. suppose b. supposed c. are supposing d. are supposed

Simple present form الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع من :

Obj. المفعول + am is are + supposed to + inf. ... المصدر

- I	am	supposed to	be there at 10.
- Aya	is	supposed to	arrive soon.
- The students	are	supposed to	study hard for the exam.

وتستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع في الحالات التالية:

1. التعبير عن اعتقاد شائع (common belief) بخصوص شخص / شيء معين :

ex. This hospital is supposed to have the best staff.
= Many people think that this school has the best staff.

2. التعبير عن التوقع (expectation) أو الترتيب (arrangement) في المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. **Manager:** How many clients am I supposed to meet tomorrow?
Secretary: You are supposed to meet four clients, Sir.

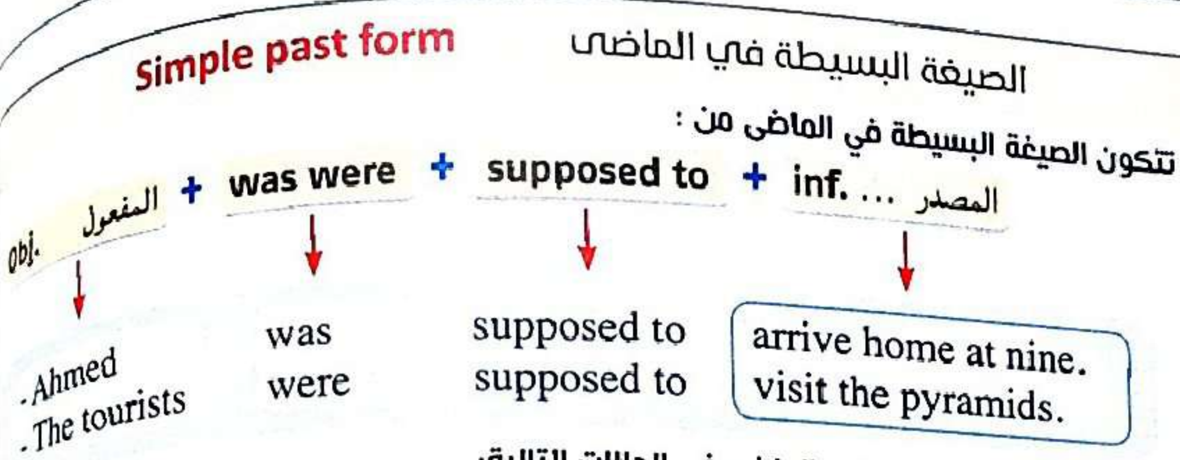
3. التعبير عن المسئولية (responsibility) أو الإلزام (obligation) أو الواجب (duty) في المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. - You are supposed to be quiet in a library.
- Leen is supposed to look after her baby sister when her mother goes out tomorrow.

4. التعبير عن النية (intention) أو الغرض (purpose) من شيء / شخص ما:

ex. - A TV channel logo is supposed to help viewers recognise it.
- A mobile is supposed to be used for making and receiving calls.
= A mobile is meant to be used for making and receiving calls.
= A mobile is intended to be used for making and receiving calls.

Simple past form الصيغة البسيطة في الماضى



وتُستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي في الحالات التالية:

① التعبير عن نية أو غرض لم يتحقق:

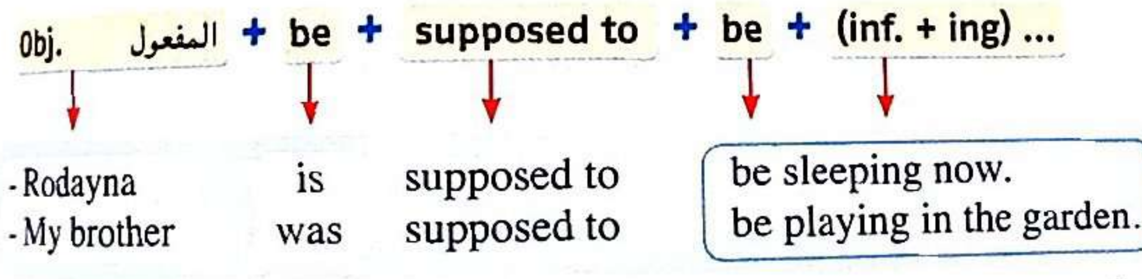
ex. - My new car was supposed to be perfect, but it broke down only two days after I had bought it.
- You were supposed to come first, but we were shocked by your low marks.

② التعبير عن ترتيب أو توقع لم يتحقق في الماضي، وغالباً يتبعها توضيح لذلك:

ex. - The match was supposed to start at nine. However, the heavy rain delayed it.
- Why are you late, Moataz? You were supposed to be here at work at seven.
- I regret missing my plane. I was supposed to fly to London yesterday.

Continuous form (للطلبة الفائقين) الصيغة المستمرة

تتكون الصيغة المستمرة في المضارع والماضي من :



وتُستخدم الصيغة المستمرة في الحالات التالية:

① التعبير عن حدث من المفترض أن يكون مستمراً الآن:

ex. - I don't know why Rokaya isn't in her office. She is supposed to be typing some business letters.

② التعبير عن حدث يُفترَض أن يكون مستمراً في وقت معين في المستقبل:

ex. - Yara is supposed to be flying to London at five o'clock tomorrow.

③ التعبير عن حدث يُفترَض أنه كان مستمراً في وقت معين في الماضي:

ex. - Omar was supposed to be watering the plants in the garden yesterday morning.

Perfect form (للطلبة الفائقين) الصيغة التامة

تتكون الصيغة التامة من :

Obj. المفعول + be + supposed to + have + p.p. ...

Obj.	be	supposed to	have + p.p.
- Sama	was	supposed to	have written the essay.
- The gardeners	were	supposed to	have watered the plants.

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة فقط في الماضي عندما يكون الإفتراض نفسه في الماضي ويخص أحداث سابقة عليه (يشبه استخدام الماضي التام):

لاحظ الفرق في المعني بين الصيغة التامة والصيغة البسيطة والصيغة المستمرة فيما يلي:

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to have taken his football training. (صيغة تامة: كان من المفترض أن يكون قد انتهي من التدريب بالفعل قبل أن أراه)

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to take his football training. (صيغة بسيطة: كان من المفترض أن يبدأ التدريب عندما رأيته)

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to be taking his football training. (صيغة مستمرة: كان من المفترض أن يكون مستمر في التدريب عندما رأيته)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Omar's plane .... supposed to land at nine o'clock tomorrow.
   a. is b. was c. will d. has
2. Omar's plane .... supposed to land at nine o'clock yesterday.
   a. is b. was c. will be d. has
3. Sama is supposed .... a taxi home after she finishes work today.
   a. to take b. to be taken c. to be taking d. to have taken
4. Sama has finished her work and now she is supposed .... a taxi on her way home.
   a. take b. to be taken c. to be taking d. to have taken
5. "Our school is supposed to have the best teaching staff." This sentence expresses a / an ....
   a. arrangement b. common belief c. obligation d. purpose

6. "I am supposed to take the six o'clock train." This sentence expresses a / an ....

a. arrangement
b. common belief
c. obligation
d. purpose

7. "Rodayna is supposed to arrive at school on time." This sentence expresses a / an ....

a. arrangement
b. common belief
c. obligation
d. purpose

8. "An air conditioner is supposed to cool the room." This sentence expresses a / an ....

a. arrangement
b. common belief
c. obligation
d. purpose

9. "You were supposed to return home before midnight." This means he .... arrived home by midnight.

a. could have
b. hadn't
c. needn't have
d. shouldn't have

10. "You were supposed to be in your office at eight, Rokaya." This means Rokaya .... in time.

a. was
b. wasn't
c. isn't
d. is

تنويه • راجع شرح الجزء الأول من القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثانى.

Exercise On Language

تنويه • التدريبات التالية مُرتَّبة بشكل متدرِّج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. He .... unfriendly at first, but when you know him well, you will change this opinion.

a. seems like
b. is seeming
c. seems
d. seems that

2. They have attacked our borders. حدود This .... war!

a. means
b. intends
c. supposes
d. refers

3. Both Aya and you .... supposed to attend yesterday's meeting.

a. am
b. is
c. are
d. were

4. Whenever I hear Fayrouz's songs, it seems .... I haven't grown older since I first started to listen to them.
   a. as b. as if c. to d. a & b
5. When you look at famous people like Messi, they .... to have no problems at all. However, this is not true.
   a. seem b. seems c. are seeming d. seemed
6. You are meant .... in bed. I don't know why you are still awake.
   a. for sleeping b. to be sleeping
   c. being slept d. to be slept
7. You're .... to support your sister; not to shout at her.
   a. suppose b. supposing c. supposed d. supposedly
8. It .... this man helps everybody in need.
   a. seems to be b. seems that c. seems d. b & c
9. The car engine is meant ....
   a. to check b. to be checked c. be checked d. that check
10. All students are supposed .... ready for the exams.
   a. be b. to be c. being d. to being
11. One of the team members .... to attend the press conference. المؤتمر الصحفي
   a. suppose b. is supposed c. are supposing d. are supposed
12. "You are meant .... the car engine.
   a. to check b. to be checked c. be checked d. that check
13. The new furniture .... supposed to be delivered next Monday.
   a. is b. are c. was d. were
14. My English is much better than it was two years ago. For example, listening .... difficult, but now it is quite easy.
   a. seems b. seemed c. seemed like d. seems like
15. Sorry! I didn't .... to interrupt you."
   a. suppose b. mean c. seem d. b & c
16. The new furniture .... supposed to be delivered last Monday, but nothing arrived.
   a. has b. are c. was d. were
17. She seems .... excited about the offer.
   a. like b. as if c. to be d. that
18. He is supposed .... a rest after he studies unit 5.
   a. to take b. to be taken c. taking d. to have taken

19. His happy expression means .... he has passed the exam.

a. that b. no word c. a & b d. to

20. This film seems .... boring.

a. being b. to be c. now word d. b & c

21. He has studied unit 5 and he is supposed .... a rest now.

a. be taken b. taking c. to be taking d. have taken

22. "What does this word mean?" The speaker wants to know what that word ....

a. signifies b. intends c. signify d. intend

23. A rest is supposed .... after he studies unit 5.

a. be taken b. to be taken c. to be taking d. have taken

2 Special cases

24. Amr .... supposed to have called his parents.

a. is b. isn't c. was d. had

25. Ali wasn't at school today. That's strange because he .... well last evening at the party.

a. seemed b. seemed like c. seemed to d. seemed as if

26. What .... ?

a. is this word meaning b. was that word meaning
c. this word means d. does this word mean

27. "When I get home, my mum .... supposed to be preparing lunch.

a. is b. was c. has been d. had been

28. **Mum:** You won't go out with us, Nada.

Nada: What do you mean, mum?

- Nada's reply shows that she is ....

a. not interested b. pleased c. thankful d. angry

29. .... most students in secondary schools want to join the faculty of medicine.

a. He seems b. They seem c. It seems d. It is seemed

30. I don't know why he is unhappy. After coming first, he is supposed to .... his most important goal for the year.

a. achieve b. be achieved c. be achieving d. have achieved

31. Getting up late means .... the train to Aswan.

a. misses b. miss c. missing d. to miss

32. Mr Bahaa and I were university friends twenty years ago. Now we work together and it .... old days.
    a. seems b. seems like c. seems that d. a & b
33. When I called him, he was supposed to .... the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he had already finished it.
    a. be busy doing b. be still doing
    c. have already done d. a & b
34. I meant to return the books on time." The verb 'meant' can be replaced by ....
    a. planned b. intended c. required d. a & b
35. Mum .... me to be responsible for my little sister.
    a. supposing b. was supposed c. seemed d. meant
36. "When I called him, he was supposed to .... the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he hadn't finished it by then.
    a. be busy doing b. be still doing
    c. have already done d. a & b
37. You don't .... mind that you don't get the job.
    a. seem like b. seem to c. seem d. seemed
38. My father meant for you .... the office.
    a. run b. to run c. that runs d. runs
39. Some new clients were supposed to .... by my manager tomorrow
    a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b
40. Omar .... unusually serious today.
    a. seem b. seemed c. is seeming d. is seemed
41. "The red light means stopping." This sentence expresses ....
    a. intention b. expectation c. obligation d. a & c
42. "Supposing .... you lost your money; how would you react?
    a. that b. no word c. to d. a & b
43. The happiness of my family means .... It is my goal in life.
    a. the world b. everything c. a & b d. nothing
44. Ashraf seemed .... He took part in a full match.
    a. not good b. well c. fitly d. unfit
45. "He is lying, I suppose." In this sentence, the verb 'suppose' means ....
    a. guest b. assume c. consume d. belief

46. I must apologise, but really I didn't .... you any harm.
 a. mean b. suppose c. seem d. make
47. There .... to be no reason for alarm.
 a. seems b. seem c. is seeming d. is seemed
48. Amira .... that her mother will support her.
 a. is supposed b. supposes c. supposing that d. a & b
49. In our company, everybody is .... to start work at eight.
 a. supposed b. meant c. seemed d. a & b
50. The new flat .... a view of the Nile.
 a. means to have b. means to be had
 c. is meant to have d. is meant to be had

3 Check your understanding

51. "My mother is supposed to have an operation tomorrow."
 Who do you think supposes in this sentence?
 a. My mother does. b. The doctor does.
 c. We do. d. The operation does.
52. "The police suspect يشك that he has a criminal background تاريخ إجرامى."
 What does this mean?
 a. It seems that he has a criminal background.
 b. He seems to have a criminal background.
 c. a & b
 d. His background is criminal.
53. "El-Moasser is supposed to be the best educational book."
 This is a / an ....
 a. arrangement b. common belief
 c. obligation d. a & c
54. "She means something to me." This means ....
 a. I have nothing special to her b. I hate her
 c. she is important to me d. I don't like her at all
55. "The wedding party is supposed to start at 11 p.m." This sentence expresses a / an ....
 a. arrangement b. common belief
 c. obligation d. purpose

56. "You are supposed to renew your driving licence next month when it expires ." This sentence expresses a / an ....
    a. arrangement
    b. common belief
    c. obligation
    d. purpose
57. "Teachers are meant to make their students enjoy learning." This sentence expresses one of the teacher's ....
    a. duties
    b. responsibilities
    c. faults
    d. a & b
58. "I was supposed to watch the match in the stadium." This means he .... watch the match in the stadium.
    a. had
    b. hadn't
    c. didn't
    d. could have
59. "I think that she is a strict teacher." What does this mean?
    a. It seems that she is a strict teacher.
    b. As a teacher, she seems strictly.
    c. She seems to be a strict teacher.
    d. a & c
60. "You were supposed to be in shape, Saleh." This means Saleh .... overweight.
    a. isn't
    b. was
    c. wasn't
    d. was never
61. "I meant Rodayna to look after the baby." This means ....
    a. I intended to choose Rodayna to look after the baby
    b. I was against leaving the baby with Rodayna
    c. I told Rodayna not to look after the baby
    d. a & c
62. "A smart TV is supposed to connect to the internet." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?
    a. A smart TV is meant to join the internet.
    b. A smart TV is intended to join the internet.
    c. A smart TV is expected to join the internet.
    d. a, b & c
63. "I don't think you are meant for a lawyer." This means you are not .... for this job.
    a. important
    b. obliged
    c. suitable
    d. a & b

64. "You aren't supposed to use your mobile while driving." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?
a. You mustn't use your mobile while driving.
b. You don't have to use your mobile while driving.
c. You are allowed to use your mobile while driving.
d. a & c

65. "I think she is busy." What does this mean?
a. She seems to have been busy.
b. It seems that she is busy.
c. She seems to be busy.
d. b & c

66. "You passed your exams, Ali. So, you were expected to be happy." This means ....
a. Ali looks happy
b. Ali looked happy
c. Ali didn't look happy
d. Ali doesn't look happy

67. "I can't seem to learn how to use this programme. I've tried a lot, but it was all in vain." دون جدوى In this sentence, "can't seem to learn" means ....
a. it appears that I don't want to learn
b. it appears that I learn
c. it appears that I am able to learn
d. it appears that I am not able to learn

68. You aren't supposed to smoke in a public place." This means ....
a. Smoking in a public place is allowed
b. Smoking in a public place isn't allowed
c. Smoking in a public place was allowed
d. Smoking in a public place wasn't allowed

69. The police suspect that two children have gone missing." This means ....
a. it seems that two children have gone missing
b. two children seem to have gone missing
c. a & b
d. it is seeming that the two boys have gone missing

PART THREE | Story Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5 & 6

Part I Vocabulary



تنويه

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة فى الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations



تنويه

أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات فى الجزء المخصص لذلك فى نهاية الكتاب.

apologise (d) (v)	يعتذر	patience (n)	الصبر
disagreement (n)	خلاف - نزاع	room (n)	مكان يتسع لـ - مجال
double (n)	ضعف	set eyes on	ينظر إلى - تقع عينيه على
go mad	يفقد صوابه	shelter (n)	مأوى
joke (d) (n-v)	مزحة (نكتة) - يمزح	spy(ied) (n - v)	جاسوس - يتجسس
lock ... out	يمنع .. من دخول	turn your back on me	تتجاهلني

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Surprisingly, she turned her back on me. This means that she .... me. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. helped b. paid attention to
   c. realized d. ignored
2. While walking in the hills, we had to find .... due to the storm. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. filter b. shoulder c. shelter d. counter
3. .... on your country is considered high treason. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Depending b. Crying c. Spying d. Carrying
4. He has had a .... with his cousin and they no longer talk to each other.
   a. patience b. room c. spy d. disagreement
5. There's no more .... in your room for another chair.
   a. patience b. room c. spy d. disagreement

6. I .... for coming late.
a. apologise b. update c. upgrade d. b & c

7. It is their .... that told them about our plans.
a. patience b. room c. spy d. disagreement

8. .... is usually a positive quality.
a. Patience b. Laughing c. Spying d. Disagreement

9. I have .... the books I have in my bag.
a. number b. double c. same d. least

10. We can't help laughing at his funny ....
a. tears b. anger c. jokes d. pain

11. I was locked .... I can't go in.
a. in b. out c. up d. down

Part II Grammatical Hints

adapt

• **adapt to** يتكيف / يتأقلم مع

بهذا المعني يأتي بعد **(adapt to)** اسم أو **(inf. + ing)** :

ex. - Camels have adapted to life in the desert.

- Sama has adapted to travelling a lot as an air hostess. مضيفة طيران

• **adapt ... to** يُكيِّف / يُهيئ ... لـ

بهذا المعني يأتي بعد **(adapt ... to)** فعل في المصدر **(inf.)** :

ex. - Engineers have adapted petrol engines to use natural gas. الغاز الطبيعي

• **adapt ... for** يُهيئ / يُعِد ... لـ

ex. - They adapted this part of the park for children.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

• **adaptability (n)** قابِليَّةُ التَّكَيُّف (القدرة علي التَكَيُّف مع موقف أو وضع معين)

ex. - His adaptability to different situations makes him successful.

• **adaptation (n)** عملية التَّكَيُّف أو التهيئة - التأقْلُم

ex. - Adaptation to life in a foreign country takes some time.

ولاحظ أيضاً الفرق بين :

- **adaptable (adj)** قابل للتكيف مع / سهل التَكَيُّف مع / مَرِن

ex. - He is adaptable to different situations.

- **adapted (adj)** مُهَيَّأ / مُكَيَّف مع

ex. - This engine is well-adapted to using vegetable oil.

spend

- **spend money on+ n. / (inf.+ ing)**

= spend the money to + inf. ينفق المال علي

ex. - I spent a lot of money on (building) this house.

= I spent a lot of money to build this house.

- **spend time + n. / (inf.+ ing)** يقضي الوقت في

ex. - He spent an hour writing an essay.

- **It's a waste of time / money + (inf.+ ing)** إنها مضيعة للوقت / المال

ex. -It's a waste of time chatting online.

Plus

يُمكن استخدام **(plus)** لربط جملتين بمعني **(بالإضافة إلي ذلك)**

- **Plus + جملة = in addition / besides + جملة**

ex. - She works hard. Plus, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. In addition, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. Besides, she looks after a big family.

be/have to do with

- **to do with + اسم = be related to + اسم** متعلق بـ / على علاقة بـ

ex. - She is confident. It has something to do with her happy childhood.

teach – learn – know – show

- يمكن استخدام **(how to + inf.)** أو **(to + inf.)** بعد الفعلين **learn/teach** :

ex. - I want you to teach me (how) to ride a horse.

- بينما يستخدم **(how to + inf)** بعد الفعلين **(know/show)**

- A young girl showed me how to operate the machine.

Exercise On Language Hints

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Rodayna has adapted .... in the countryside.
   a. to live b. to living c. to life d. b & c
2. I adapted the water pump .... on electricity instead of petrol.
   a. to run b. to running c. running d. b & c
3. Sama spends her pocket money .... chocolate.
   a. to buy b. buying c. on buying d. a & c
4. It is a waste of money .... all this chocolate, Sama.
   a. to buy b. buying c. on buying d. a & c
5. I spent the weekend .... after the plants in the garden.
   a. looking b. to look c. on looking d. look
6. At the weekend, I was busy .... after the plants in the garden.
   a. looking b. to look c. on looking d. look
7. He studies medicine. ...., he is a professional squash player.
   a. In addition b. Plus c. a & b d. In addition to
8. Omar refused to take the money. It is .... with his honesty.
   a. being done b. to be done c. doing d. to do
9. I taught Ahmed how ....
   a. drive b. to drive c. driving d. a & b
10. I showed him .... to park his car.
    a. where b. no word c. if d. a & b

Part III Language Skills

1 Writing Tips – Opinion with reason إرشادات الكتابة : إعطاء الرأى المسبب

Giving opinion with reasons التعبير عن الرأي مع ذكر السبب

form	example
I think / believe…because… أعتقد أن … لأن …	- I think all people should help charity organisation because it needs help.
In my opinion / view…as… من وجهة نظري، … لأن …	- In my opinion, he should take a rest as he looks very tired.
If you ask me, … should + inf. … so that ….. في رأيي، ينبغي على … أن …لكي …	- If you ask me, you should join a charity so that you can help poor people.
- I agree / disagree because … أتفق / لا أتفق لأن …	- I agree because doing a sport keeps you fit.
- I see your point, but … أتفهم وجهة نظرك لكن …	- I see your point, but buying this car will cost a lot of money.

2 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

Model Essay

* **Write an email of about (180) words to your friend Nadi(a) telling him / her about the advantages and disadvantages of smart phones. Your email is nabil(a)@student.com and your friend's email is nadi(a)@student.com**

From : nabil(a)@student.com
To : nadi(a)@student.com
Subject : advantages and disadvantages of smartphones
Dear Nadi(a),

How are you, Nadia? I hope you and your family are your best. It gives me great pleasure to send this email to you. I want to tell you about my opinion of smartphones.

Like everything else, smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On one hand, they have made communication easier than before. You can call anybody anywhere at any time. You can also send text messages. They allow you to send and receive video calls. You can also log on the internet quickly through them. Smart phones have a lot of applications that give you access to huge information and let you follow unlimited people and webpage. So, no surprise to know that you can work and get money through smartphones.

On the other hand, mobile phones have some disadvantages. People have stopped visiting each other because it has become easier to phone them. Some young people use smartphones in bad ways. They can also cause some health problems.

Finally, I think that we have to use smartphones in a way that makes us benefit from them and, at the same time, avoid their downsides. Now, what do you think of smartphones? I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours,

Nabil(a)

3 Translation الترجمة

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

① Translate into Arabic :

1. When you make friends on social networking sites, you only find out what these friends want you to know about them not their reality.
2. Getting into contact with other people is no longer difficult. Using social networking sites, you can communicate with friends and other people wherever they are whenever you want to.
3. Chatting to other people on social networking sites sometimes helps give young people confidence. The bad thing is that online friends may be different from their real personalities.
4. Be careful about putting your personal details online because they might be seen by anyone. Some evil people or websites may use these details to harm you or even to cheat other people.

② Translate into English :

١. يمكن أن تكون وسائل الدردشة على الإنترنت ذات فائدة عظيمة إذا ما تم استخدامها لتبادل المعلومات المفيدة ومساعدة الأخرين على النجاح في حياتهم.

٢. لابد من رقابة الآباء على استخدام أبنائهم لمواقع التواصل الاجتماعي، فهناك بعض المواقع الهدَّامة التي تُدمِّر أفكار الشباب وتدفعهم لتَبَنِّي أفكار متطرفة.

٣. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها كثير من الإيجابيات كما أن لها بعض السلبيات، فعلي كل فرد أن يستفيد من كل ما هو إيجابي وأن يتحاشى كل ما هو سلبي.

٤. لابد من استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة بشكل يفيد الفرد والمجتمع، أما استخدامها فقط كوسائل للترفيه وإضاعة الوقت فيعتبر أمر سلبي يؤدي لقتل الرغبة في العمل والانجاز.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحده

achievement	الانجاز	harm	يضر
adopt	يتَبَنَّي	individual	الفرد
benefit	يستفيد / فائدة	make up	يختلق
cheat	يغش / يخدع	mentally	عقليا
confidence	الثقة	monitor	يُراقب
desire	الرغبة	observation	رقابة
destroy	تُدمِّر	ordinary life	الحياة العادية
destructive	هدَّامة	reality	الواقع
entertainment	الترفيه	represent	يُمثل
exchange	يتبادل	thoughts	أفكار
extreme	متطرف	youth	الشباب

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

◄ للفائقين فقط

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

consult

• **consult(ed)(v)** — يبحث عن معلومة في (بدون حرف جر)
- You can consult GPS if you get lost.

• **consult someone = see / ask someone** — يستشير / يطلب المشورة / يستفتي
- I usually consult my lawyer about legal affairs. الأمور القانونية

• **consult with** — يتشاور مع
- I need to consult with my lawyer.

• **consultant(n)** — مستشار / ناصح / خبير
- You need advertising consultants to help you with the new marketing campaign. حملة تسويقية

• **consultant(n)** — استشاري (طبيب خبير في فرع معين من الطب)
- Do you agree with me that a young doctor is sometimes more helpful than a consultant?

download - upload

• **download (n)** ملف مُنَزَّل من الانترنت ≠ **upload (n)** ملف مرفوع على الانترنت
- There are five downloads in this folder.

• **download (n)** تنزيل الملفات ≠ **upload (n)** رفع الملفات
- The speed of download is always more than the speed of upload.

• **downloading (n)** التنزيل من الانترنت ≠ **uploading (n)** الرفع على الانترنت
- Downloading videos is easier and faster than uploading them.

• **download (v)** يُنزِّل ملف ≠ **upload (ed) (v)** يرفع ملف
- Abdulrahman has downloaded all Al Pacino's films.
- Mr Mohammed used to upload educational files for free.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- download ... from يُنَزِّل ... من
- download ... to / onto يُنَزِّل ... إلي
- upload ... to يرفع ... علي

• **downloadable (adj)** — قابل للتنزيل
- The files on this website are downloadable.

reliable

- **rely (ied) on / upon (v)** يعتمد على
  - Don't make your children rely on you all the time. Let them depend on themselves.
- **reliable (adj)** يُعتمد عليه / أهل للثقة
  - Bassem is a reliable man. You can trust him.
- **reliability (n)** الدقة - الموثوقية - الجدارة
  - I'm not sure about the reliability of this information.
- **reliance (n)** الاعتماد / الاتكال
  - There's increasing reliance on computers.

up & down with computer terminology

تُستخدم كل من (up / down) في الكثير من مصطلحات الحاسب الآلي مثل:

- **up :** upload – upgrade –update – (up-to-date)
- **down :** download – take down

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To make a strong password, use numbers, letters and a special ....
   a. character b. personality c. letter d. post
2. He is not fit. I think that has .... his eating habits.
   a. to do with b. to be done c. done with d. do with
3. I have to check this piece of information .... reliable references to make sure it is reliable.
   a. against b. with c. a & b d. to
4. .... your map if you get lost.
   a. Apply b. Subscribe c. Post d. Consult
5. "I upgraded the antivirus on my laptop." The word 'upgraded' in this sentence is the antonym of ....
   a. downgraded b. degraded c. demoted d. a & c

6. National security is a .... matter that can't be discussed openly in public.

a. sensitive b. sensible c. scientific d. social

7. Luxor was just a city. Then, it was .... to the status of a governorate محافظة in 2009.

a. degraded b. demoted c. updated d. upgraded

8. Just a few seconds, please. I'll get a pen to take .... what you say in case I forget.

a. up b. down c. off d. after

9. The .... of the report is stinging. حاد The writer seems to be completely against the plan.

a. tone b. cookies c. behaviour d. banner

10. Never .... your child's opinion even if it is not reasonable.

a. update b. upgrade c. downgrade d. download

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- كلمة (character) هنا تعني (رمز خاص)
2.	a	- التعبير (to do with) يعني (مرتبط بـ / له علاقة بـ)
3.	c	- التعبير (check ... against / with) يعني (يراجع ... بمقارنته بـ)
4.	d	- الفعل (consult) هنا يعني (يتحقق بالرجوع إلي)
5.	b	- الفعل (degrade) بمعني (يحط من / يُضْعِف) هي المُضاد المنطقي لـ (upgrade) في هذا السياق
6.	a	- الصفة (sensitive) بمعني (خطير / ذو حساسية) هي الإختيار الصحيح حسب سياق الجملة
7.	d	- الفعل (upgraded to) هنا يعني (تطوَّر إلي)
8.	b	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (take down) يعني (يُدوِّن / يُسجِّل)
9.	a	- كلمة (tone) هنا تعني (أسلوب / جو عام)
10.	c	- الفعل (downgrade) بمعني (يُحقِّر- يُقلِّل من شأن) هو الإختيار الصحيح حسب سياق الجملة

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "There seems no reason to tell anyone." This phrase '**There seems no reason**' means ....
   a. it appears there is a good reason
   b. it appears there is no reason
   c. I believe there is no reason
   d. I am sure there is a good reason
2. I didn't mean .... you.
   a. hurting b. to hurt c. not hurting d. me to hurt
3. It .... only yesterday when I first met my wife.
   a. seems b. seems to c. seems like d. a & c
4. "My mother is supposed to have an operation tomorrow." My mother is the .... of this sentence.
   a. subject b. object c. speaker d. a & b
5. Some new clients are supposed to .... tomorrow.
   a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b
6. "I didn't mean to step on your foot." The speaker wants to express lack of ....
   a. responsibility b. intention c. duty d. obligation
7. Suppose .... you see a large dog in a dark street, will you run away?
   a. to b. not to c. what d. no word
8. "Aya seems nice." Is the speaker sure that Aya is nice?
   a. Yes, he is sure that Aya is nice.
   b. Not in the least.
   c. Yes, definitely.
   d. No, it is just an impression he has had.
9. **Ali:** Would you mind lending me 2000 pounds? **Bassem:** I suppose so.
   - The bold reply means that Bassem .... Omar's request.
   a. refuses b. turns down
   c. reluctantly مترددًا agrees to d. strongly agrees to
10. They supposed .... a lot of money.
   a. me to have b. I to have c. to have d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- لا يمكن أن تحل (appears) محل (seems) في هذا السياق، لذلك الإختيار الذي يؤدي المعني هو (c)، أما (a / d) فيعطيان معني مختلف
2.	b	- الصيغة (mean to + inf.) تعني (يقصد أو يتعمَّد أن) وهو الإختيار الوحيد المناسب للسياق
3.	d	- كل من (seems / seems like) صحيحتين في هذا السياق
4.	d	- كلمة (object) تعني (مفعول)، كما يمكن استخدام كلمة (subject) لتعني (موضوع الجملة) خاصة قبل الأفعال التقريرية. (راجع القاموس)
5.	d	- الفعل (meet) صحيح بمعني (يتقابلون) والصيغة المبنية للمجهول (be met) أيضاً صحيحة بمعني (يتم مقابلتهم)
6.	b	- الصيغة (... be meant to) في حالة النفي تعبر عن انعدام النية أو القصد
7.	d	- لا حاجة لوجود أي كلمة في الفراغ، فالجملة صحيحة هكذا، وكلمة (Suppose) هنا مستخدمه كبديل لـ (If)
8.	d	- الصيغة (seem + adj.) تُعبِّر عن رأي شخصي وليس الحقائق الموضوعية
9.	b	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (turn down) يعني (يرفض) وهو ما يبدو واضحاً لأن السائل يقول (would you mind) بمعني (هل تمانع)
10.	a	- في هذا السياق، الفعل (supposed) فعل متعدي ولابد من وجود مفعول

Test on Unit 5



Understand   Apply   Create

Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. When you do not like something, you .... it.
   a. approve of   b. disapprove of   c. praise   d. criticise   e. agree

2. An immediate decision is ....
   a. delayed   b. postponed   c. professional
   d. urgent   e. instant

3. The teacher asked us to .... a perfect essay about housing problem in ten minutes.
   a. tell   b. say   c. write   d. create   e. prove

4. Most people stayed indoor to .... safe during the spread of COVID 19.
   a. keep   b. do   c. rescue   d. make   e. stay

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. I will .... a new important file to this site. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. download   b. adapt   c. update   d. upload

6. When you need any information, ... your teachers. They are of great help. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. consult   b. conserve   c. contribute   d. construct

7. I don't know how you work with that woman. She .... to be helpful.
   a. seems   b. doesn't seem   c. seem not   d. b & c

8. His strict صارم behaviour doesn't mean he doesn't like you." In this sentence, the verb 'mean' can be replaced by ....
   a. intend   b. suppose   c. assume   d. indicate

9. This room is .... to be the master bedroom.
   a. seemed   b. supposed   c. meant   d. b & c

10. He .... to be abroad on business.
    a. supposes   b. is supposing   c. is supposed   d. a & c

11. Where .... we supposed to wait for the others to catch up with us?
    a. do   b. are   c. have   d. had

12. I suppose .... to be a good leader.

a. that b. he c. him d. himself

13. .... seems to be a mistake in these calculations. Can we check them?

a. He b. They c. Their d. There

14. My driving licence is supposed .... next month.

a. to renew b. to be renewed

c. for renewing d. to have renewed

15. She will win the race, ...

a. supposedly b. supposed c. be supposed to d. supposing

16. "A lift is supposed to help us go upstairs." This sentence expresses a / an ....

a. arrangement b. common belief

c. obligation d. purpose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٢)

Advertising has become a very specialized activity in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufacturers of the same kind of product to persuade customers to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this by advertising.

The manufacturer advertises in newspapers and on posters. He sometimes pays for songs to be sung about his product on commercial radio programmes. He employs attractive salesgirls to distribute samples of <u>it</u>. He organizes competitions with prizes for the winners. He often advertises on the screens of local cinemas. Most important of all, he has advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible.

Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements. We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. We mainly buy goods because ....

a. they are advertised b. we need them

c. supply is greater than demand d. we buy a certain make

18. The underlined pronoun '<u>it</u>' refers to ....

a. his advertisement b. his factory

c. his product d. his goods

19. The best title to this text is ....
    a. A specialized activity   b. Advertising
    c. Competition   d. Manufacturers
20. Which word in the passage is the antonym of "losers"?
    a. prizes   b. product   c. customer   d. winners
21. The writer wants to convey to us that not all advertisements are ....
    a. reliable   c. available   b. applicable   d. accessible
22. To give something out means to .... it.
    a. store   b. distribute   c. keep   d. maintain
23. In your opinion, advertisements should cope with ....
    a. culture   b. customs and traditions
    c. religion   d. a, b & c
24. The manufacturers advertising in the newspaper, posters, songs, commercial programs and sometimes film are called ....
    a. bread winners.   b. benefactors   c. sponsors   d. fans

Part Two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

Mindfulness is essential for anyone using the internet as it reduces cyberbullying. Hence, you must keep your password secret as well as your personal details.

([illegible] ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

2. **Translate into English :**

تهدف الشركات إلي زيادة مبيعاتها من خلال الإعلانات الموجهة في وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وعن طريق اللوحات الاعلانية بالشوارع.

(الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)

....

....

3. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :**

Write a blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely

....

....

....

....

....

....

تنويه • للتدريب علي أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ .بنك الأسئلة.

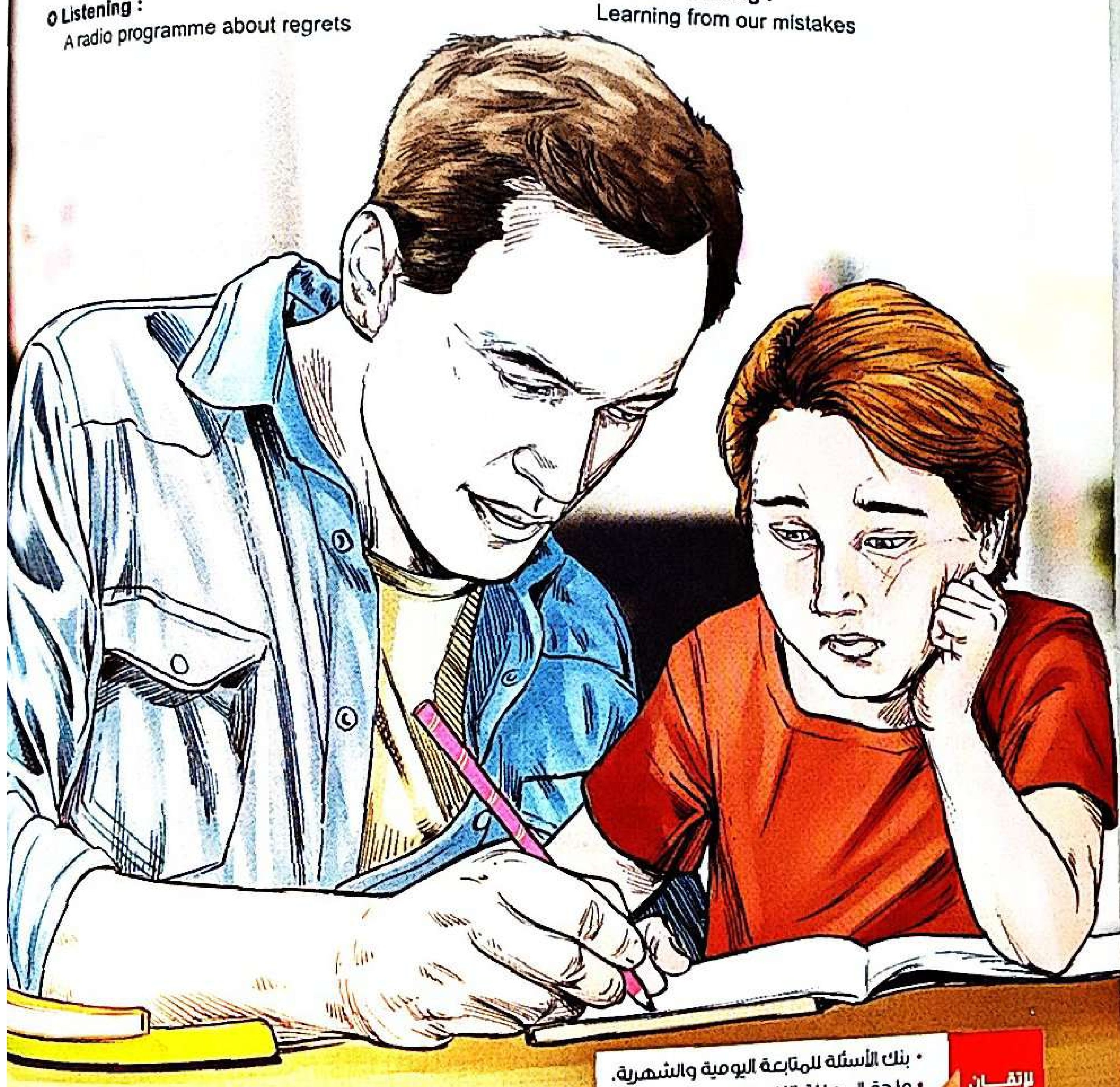
UNIT 6

Learning from our mistakes

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 36 : 41

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** Two extracts from an abridged version of A Christmas Carol by Charles Dickens
- **Writing :** An essay on your regrets
- **Listening :** A radio programme about regrets
- **Speaking :** Role-play about recognising mistakes
- **Language :** Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)
- **Critical Thinking :** Learning from our mistakes



لإتقان الوحدة

- بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
- ملحق المهارات اللغوية.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى بنك الأسئلة.
- Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2



SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 36 : 37

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

beg(ged) (v)	يتوسَّل - يستجدي - يتسول	fire(d)(v)	يُطلق النار - يفصل عن العمل
carol(n)	ترنيمة - أنشودة	mean(adj)	بخيل
Christmas(n)	عيد الميلاد	pile(d) (up) (v)	يُكوِّم / يُكدِّس - يتكدس
fire(d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	pile(n)	كومة - عُرمة
fire(n)	مدفأة - نار	sigh(ed) (v - n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

alone(adv)	وحيدًا	logical(adj)	منطقي
assistant(n)	مُساعِد	main(adj)	رئيسي
attention (n)	انتباه - اهتمام	nephew(n)	ابن الأخ أو الأخت
boss(n)	رئيس العمل	pay - paid - paid (v)	يدفع ثمن
disappointed(adj)	مُحبَط - خائب الأمل	poor(adj)	فقير
donation(n)	التبرُّع	race(n)	سباق
employee(n)	موظف	regret(ted) (v - n)	يندم - الندم
employer(n)	صاحب عمل	sick(adj)	مريض
enormous(adj)	ضخم - هائل	suddenly(adv)	فجأة
faraway(adj)	بعيد	tone(n)	نبرة صوت
foggy(adj)	ضبابي - أغبش	treat(ed) (v)	يعامل
friendly(adj)	ودود	unfriendly(adj)	عدائي - فاتر
generous(adj)	كريم - سَخيّ	upset- upset - upset (adj-v)	منزعج - يزعج
gift (n)	هدية - منحة - موهبة	warm(adj)	دافئ
including(prep)	بما في ذلك	waste(d) (v)	يُضيع/يُهدِر
invite(d) (v)	يدعو - يعزم	water(ed) (v)	يروي/يسقي

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التَعَلُّم المُستهدفة _ هام جدًا.

Memorise		Understand
beg(ged) (v)	يتوسَّل - يستجدي	to ask for يطلب something in a way that shows you need it very much.
carol(n)	ترنيمة - أنشودة	a traditional Christmas song
mean(adj)	بخيل	not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
pile(n)	كومة - عُرمَة	a group of things put on top of each other
sigh (n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة	a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. It's .... not to share a box of chocolates. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. mean b. nasty c. careless d. wise
2. I .... him to give me two more days to pay back his money.
   a. piled b. begged c. forgave d. let
3. When my mother didn't find out that I had broken the vase, I .... in relief.
   a. sighed b. meant c. fired d. piled
4. I don't know what time I will have checked the .... of students' essays in front of me.
   a. gift b. tone c. pile d. reunion
5. The officer ordered his soldiers not to .... their guns without his permission.
   a. ignore b. upset c. treat d. fire
6. She downloaded an album of Christmas ....
   a. feedback b. attention c. carols d. assistants

2 Important vocabulary

7. When his son failed his exam, the father was too ....

(العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢م)

a. disappointed b. happy c. glad d. delighted

8. My uncle was too mean but now he has become so ....

(العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢م)

a. miser b. generous c. miserly d. man

9. Salwa .... not phoning her mother on her birthday. She could have done it.

(إيسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢م)

a. rejects b. regrets c. rejoices d. reflects

10. In squash, you have to beat the person you are playing ....

(إيسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢م)

a. lonely b. private c. alone d. particular

11. His .... words made us all leave the meeting.

a. generous b. kind c. warm d. unfriendly

12. It is .... that a child makes mistakes.

a. main b. logical c. disappointed d. foggy

13. She floods her children with her .... feelings.

a. disappointed b. sick c. warm d. unfriendly

14. His .... as a teacher makes him very successful. He has a natural ability to teach children.

a. reunion b. tone c. gift d. regret

15. Using her things without permission really .... her.

a. ignores b. upsets c. treats d. fires

16. My father took us all to the park, ... my baby sister.

a. including b. inviting c. firing d. extracting

17. It is very dangerous to drive fast on a .... weather.

a. main b. logical c. disappointed d. foggy

18. Charities depend mainly on .... from people.

a. attacks b. memories c. donations d. relationship

19. Eating too much food makes me feel ....

a. generous b. sick c. well d. unfriendly

20. Pay .... to every word your teacher says.

a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship

21. He was a kind gentleman who .... his servants well.
a. ignored b. upset c. treated d. fired

22. Polite people always speak in a low ....
a. reunion b. tone c. gift d. regret

23. I asked my .... to make a report about the new plan.
a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship

3 Definitions

24. A .... is a group of things put on top of each other.
a. touch b. pile c. sigh d. beggary

25. To be .... means not happy to spend money or give anything to other people.
a. mean b. beggar c. logical d. disappointed

26. A .... is a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed.
a. site b. sign c. sigh d. sight

27. To .... is to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
a. ignore b. upset c. regret d. beg

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

change	his mind	يغير رأيه	have	a bad dream	يري حُلماً مزعجاً
do	exercise	يتمرن		dinner	يتناول العشاء
feel	alone	يشعر بالوحدة	keep	... warm	يُبقي ... دافئاً
	healthy	يشعر أنه بصحة جيدة	miss	a train	يفوته القطار
fire	a gun	يطلق النار	need	donations	يحتاج تبرعات
get	burnt	يحترق	pay	attention to	ينتبه - يُلي اهتمام بـ
	lost	يتوه	see	his mistakes	يدرك أخطائه
	angry	يغضب			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
alone	وحيد - غير مرغوب فيه	lonely, isolated, solitary, deserted, abandoned, friendless, desolate
disappointed	مُحبَط - خائب الأمل	frustrated, saddened, depressed, dissatisfied
logical	منطقي	reasonable, rational
mean	بخيل	stingy, cheap
mean	قاسي	unkind, cruel
generous	كريم	hospitable
foggy	ضبابي - أغبش	misty, cloudy
mistake	خطأ	error, fault

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
alone	وحيد - غير مرغوب فيه	loved, wanted	محبوب - مطلوب
disappointed	مُحبَط - خائب الأمل	pleased, satisfied	سعيد - راضي
foggy	ضبابي - أغبش	clear, bright	صافي
friendly	ودود	unfriendly, cruel	عَدائِي - فاتر
logical	منطقي	irrational, illogical	غير منطقي
mean	بخيل	generous, hospitable	كريم - سَخي
mean	قاسي	kind	طيب - عطوف

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

infect	
beg(ged) (v) يتوسَّل - يستجدي	- She begged her mother to let her join the school trip.
beggar (n) مُتسوِّل (شحات)	- I think he is a professional beggar, not a poor man.
beggary (n) الفقر المُدقِّع (الشديد)	- He lives in absolute beggary.
fire	
fire(d) (v) يُطلِق النار - يفصل من العمل	- He fired his gun at the thieves. - He was fired because he was careless.

fire (n) نار - حريق - مدفأة	- The house was on fire. - I sat by the fire and started to read.
fired (adj) مفصول من العمل	- The fired employees have to look for employment.
mean	
mean (v) يعني - يقصد	- The word 'powerful' means 'very strong'. - I didn't mean to hurt you.
meanness (n) البُخل - الشُحّ	- She was shocked by her husband's meanness.
mean (n) بخيل	- She didn't expect her husband to be so mean.
meaningful (adj) ذو معني	- Your words are meaningful.
meaningless (adj) بلا معني	- What she says is meaningless.
pile	
pile(d) (up) (v) يُكوِّم / يُكدِّس - يتكدس - يتدافع	- We piled the boxes up neatly. - The bell rang and the kids started piling into the classroom.
pile (n) كومة - عُرمَة	- I found an old photo in a pile of books on the desk.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a deep breath out	زفير شديد	in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن
be happy about	يسعد بـ	in an unfriendly tone	بنبرة عدائية
be late for	متأخر علي	need help with	يحتاج مساعدة في
each other	بعضهم البعض	on top of	فوق
far away	بعيد	spend money on	ينفق مالاً علي
feel so alone	يشعر بالوحدة الشديدة	stay in touch	يبقي على اتصال
in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

ask … for	يطلب … من	run off	ينطلق
come into (a place)	يدخل	smile at	يبتسم لـ
feel about	يشعر تجاه	speak to/with	يتحدث إلي
invite … to	يدعو … إلي	wake up	يستيقظ - يوقظ
pay … for	يدفع … ثمناً لـ	work for	يعمل لحساب / لدي
pay … to	يدفع … لـ		

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. I had .... last night.
   a. dinner outdoors b. lost c. angry
   d. sad e. a bad dream

2. We all love and respect Hamza as he is .... He is very helpful.
   a. ugly b. friendly c. silly
   d. lonely e. neighbourly

3. "Having no friends makes him feel alone." The adjective 'alone' in this sentence is the antonym for ....
   a. loved b. wanted c. unwanted
   d. lonely e. misty

4. "It is difficult that such a mean person will donate anything." In this sentence, "mean" gives the antonym of ....
   a. stingy b. generous c. rich
   d. wealthy e. hospitable

5. What you say seems logical to me. This means I find it ....
   a. irrational b. incredible c. reasonable
   d. rational e. illogical

6. I was disappointed by her reaction." This means her reaction didn't .... me.
   a. please b. satisfy c. shock
   d. frustrate e. depress

7. "It's dangerous to drive while it is ....
   a. clear b. sunny c. foggy
   d. misty e. bright

8. Being disappointed with something, you cannot be .... with it.
   a. satisfied b. frustrated c. discomforted
   d. pleased e. sad

9. I will speak .... Omar about the matter.
   a. from b. to c. of
   d. off e. with

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You need to .... more attention to your teachers at school.
   a. pay b. miss c. fall d. had
2. The donations .... will be spent on the poor children.
   a. needed b. missed c. done d. fired
3. He usually .... his mistakes when he calms down.
   a. makes b. goes c. sees d. gets
4. He .... his gun at the thieves.
   a. needed b. paid c. made d. fired
5. I got up late, so I .... the school bus.
   a. paid b. missed c. felt d. had
6. He picked up his keys and ran ....
   a. for b. into c. off d. by
7. Take this mobile .... a gift from me to you.
   a. such b. such as c. as d. like
8. He doesn't like to spend money out of ....
   a. meaningful b. meaningless c. mean d. meanness
9. What a .... story. It has a useful moral.
   a. meaningful b. meaningless c. mean d. meanness
10. What you say is .... to me. I don't understand it.
    a. meaningful b. meaningless c. mean d. meanness
11. Yesterday, I .... my elder brother to help me understand a math lesson.
    a. beg b. begged c. beggar d. beggary
12. I don't want money, Sir. I am not a ....
    a. beg b. begged c. beggar d. beggary
13. .... is a serious problem in most poor countries.
    a. Beg b. Begged c. Beggar d. Beggary
14. I am one of the small .... in this large company.
    a. employ b. employees c. employer d. employs

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A Christmas Carol ترنيمة الميلاد (رواية لـ "تشارلز ديكنز") SB page (62)

It was the end of December. It was dark(1) outside and the streets were foggy(2). Scrooge was a very rich businessman(3), but he was mean(4) and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant(5), Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for(6) a big fire(7) to keep them warm(8).

There was only a small fire and it was very far away(9). "It's late. Can I go home(10), Mr Scrooge?" Bob begged(11). "Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous(12) pile(13) of work left to do and sighed(14).

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly(15) the door opened and Scrooge's nephew,(16) Fred, came into(17) the office. He gave his uncle a friendly(18) smile(19).

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor(20). What have you got to be happy about(21)?".

"If you are so rich(22), why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "Perhaps(23) if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too(24)."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an unfriendly(25) tone(26).

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to invite(27) you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ظلام - مُظلم
(2) ضبابي - اغبش
(3) رجل أعمال
(4) بخيل
(5) مُساعِد
(6) يدفع ثمن
(7) مدفأة
(8) تدفئهم
(9) بعيد
(10) يذهب للمنزل
(11) يقول متوسلاً
(12) ضخم
(13) كومة - عُرمَة
(14) يتنهد
(15) فجأة
(16) ابن الأخ
(17) يدخل
(18) ودود
(19) ابتسامة
(20) فقير
(21) يسعد بـ
(22) غني
(23) ربما
(24) أيضاً
(25) عَدائي - فاتر
(26) نبرة صوت
(27) يدعو - يعزم

A Christmas Carol :

After a dream

SB page (64)



The next morning, Scrooge woke up[1] in his bed. He'd had a terrible[2] dream, but now he could see his mistakes[3]. If he hadn't felt so alone[4], he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated[5] other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone.

But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's[6] shop?"

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift from me to[7] his family. Will you do this for me[8] if I pay you?"

"Of course," said the boy and then he ran off[9] before Mr Scrooge changed his mind[10]. Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner[11] with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside[12].

Check Vocabulary

(1) استيقظ
(2) فظيع
(3) يدرك أخطائه
(4) وحيد
(5) يعامل
(6) الجزار
(7) كهدية مني لـ
(8) تفعل ذلك لأجلي
(9) انطلق
(10) يغير رأيه
(11) يتناول العشاء
(12) يدخل

2 Video script section

Charles Dickens

SB page (63)

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels including[1] Great Expectations, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield, and Hard Times. His most popular novel is probably A Christmas Carol, which was published in 1843.

In A Christmas Carol, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The main[2] character[3] is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including his employee[4], Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large family and a sick[5] child.

However[6], by the end of the story Scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely[7] different way. We are told that Scrooge: Became as good a friend, as good an employer[8] and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تضم - بما في ذلك
(2) رئيسي
(3) شخصية
(4) موظف
(5) مريض
(6) مع ذلك
(7) تماما
(8) صاحب عمل

Part IV Language

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If إذا **/ When** عندما **+** مضارع بسيط **, +** مضارع بسيط ...

ex. - When / If I feel tired, I take some time to rest.

= I take some time to rest when / if I feel tired.

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)

Do / Does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط ... ?

ex. - When/ If you feel tired, do you take some time to rest?

= Do you take some time to rest when/if you feel tired?

'Wh_' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + ... مضارع بسيط ?

ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel tired?
= If/When you feel tired, what do you do?

Uses الاستخدامات

① التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

ex. - If / When I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired the next day.

② التعبير عن الحقائق العـامة :

ex. - If / When we boil water, it turns into steam.
ex. - If/When water is boiled, it turns into steam.
If boiled, Water turns into steam.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I take a rest .... I feel stressed.
   a. unless b. if c. when d. b & c
2. Ice melts if the weather temperature ....
   a. rises b. is risen c. rose d. had risen
3. If you don't get enough sleep, ... tired the following day?
   a. you feel b. do you feel
   c. are you feeling d. you are feeling
4. What .... if chocolate is left in the sun?
   a. had happened b. would happen
   c. happens d. is happened

② First conditional الحالة الأولى

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If / Unless + مضارع بسيط + ... will / can / may + inf. ....

ex. - If he works hard, he'll pass the next exam.
= He'll pass the next exam if he works hard.

Yes / No Q.
السؤال بـ (هل)

Will / Can / May + subj. + inf. + if + مضارع بسيط ... ?

ex. - Will he pass the next exam if he works hard?
= If he works hard, will he pass the next exam?

' Wh_' Q.
السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + will / can / may + subj. + inf. + if + مضارع بسيط ... ?

ex. - What will happen if he works hard?
= If he works hard, what will happen?

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1. إذا كانت الحقيقة تخص موقف معين أو محددة بوقت معين نستخدم الحالة الأولي وليس الحالة الصفرية:

ex. - If it rains heavily, streets become wet. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If it rains heavily tonight, streets will become wet. (موقف محدد - حالة أولي)
- If we water plants regularly, they grow well. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If we water these plants regularly, they will grow well. (موقف محدد - حالة أولي)

2. لا نستخدم المستقبل بعد (if) مباشرة لكن نستخدم المضارع البسيط:

ex. - If I (will follow - follow) a diet, I will get fit.
- What will you buy if you (have – will have) a million dollars?

3. تعبر الحالة الشرطية الأولي عن مواقف قابلة للحدوث في المستقبل:

ex. - If I have enough money, I will buy a car. (I believe I'll have enough money).

4. يمكن أن تحل (can - may - might - must - should) محل (will) فى جملة جواب الشرط فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى - لاحظ المثال التالى :

ex. - If I feel hungry at work, I will have a snack. (متأكد sure)
- If I feel hungry at work, I can have a snack. (قدرة / إمكانية ability / possibility)
- If I feel hungry at work, I may have a snack. (من المحتمل probably)
- If I feel hungry at work, I might have a snack. (من الممكن possibly)
- If I feel hungry at work, I must have a snack. (ضرورة necessity)
- If you can't do the job, you should apologise.
(نصيحة advice) أو اقتراح (suggestion)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If my glasses ...., it will be difficult for me to drive.
   a. breaks b. break c. are broken d. b & c
2. My mother .... sad if I pass the exam.
   a. is b. will be c. won't be d. doesn't be
3. .... it easy if he knows that I have dropped his mobile?
   a. Will he take b. Does he take
   c. What will he take d. What does he take
4. What will happen if our car .... out of petrol?
   a. run b. runs c. is run d. will run
5. What .... if a glass falls on a hard floor?
   a. happens b. happen c. will happen d. is happened
6. What .... if this glass falls on the hard floor of the room?
   a. happens b. happen c. will happen d. is happened

More Notes on first conditional

① استخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (if) إذا كانت جملة جواب الشرط تتكون من أحدي الصيغ التالية:

1. **Inf. / Don't + inf. / Never + inf. ....** (جملة آمر أو نهى)

ex. - Don't eat too much fat if you (want – wanted – had wanted) to lose weight
- If one of your friends (has – had – had had) a problem, help him/her.

2. **Let's + inf. ....**

ex. - Let's take a rest and have a drink if you (are – were – had been) tired.

3. **.... had better ('d better) + inf. ....**

ex. - You'd better work hard if you (hope – hoped – had hoped) to succeed.

4. **.....would rather ('d rather) + inf. ....**

ex. - I'd rather stay at home if the weather (is – was – had been) windy.

❷ استخدم (will + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط إذا كان فعل الشرط أحد الصيغ التالية :

1. If + subj. + (would like / would love /would prefer.....)

ex. - If you would like to attend the party, I (will go – would go – would have gone) with you.

2. If + subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing ..... (مضارع مستمر)

ex. - She (won't go – wouldn't go – wouldn't have gone) out if she is revising for her exams.

3. If + subj. + have / has + p.p. (مضارع تام)

ex. - If he has left home, you (won't be – wouldn't be – wouldn't have been) able to meet him.

❸ لاحظ الفرق بين (if / in case) :

تعني (if) أن الحدث سيقع إذا توفر شرط معين، فإذا لم يتوفر الشرط لن يحدث شيئا :

ex. - I'll stay at home if it rains. (But I won't stay at home if it doesn't rain)

تُستخدم (in case) بمعني (في حالة) لتدل على أننا سنقوم بشيء ما تحسباً لحدوث شيء معين:

ex. - I'll stay at home in case it rains. (I'll stay at home because it may rain)

Mini Test 3

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't go out if you .... exhausted.
   a. will feel b. feel c. felt d. are felt

2. If you need help at any time, ... me.
   a. has called b. would call c. will call d. call

3. Let's go for a walk if you .... bored.
   a. were b. have c. are d. b & c

4. If you .... a headache, you'd better take a rest.
   a. have b. will have c. had d. had had

5. I'd rather take a taxi if the weather .... hot.
   a. is b. was c. had been d. will be

6. I .... a ticket if you would prefer to travel by plane.
   a. books b. booked c. would book d. will book

7. I .... your call if I am having a meeting at work.
a. will answer b. won't answer c. answer d. am answering

8. If he has got up early, he .... the train.
a. catch b. catches c. will catch d. won't catch

9. I will buy some tablets .... I feel a headache in the meeting room. There is no pharmacy near there.
a. if b. in case c. unless d. a & b

10. I will buy a bottle of water from the neighbouring shop .... I feel thirsty. I needn't get it now.
a. if b. in case c. unless d. a & b

3 Second conditional الحالة الثانية

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If / Unless + ماضي بسيط (تصريف ثان) + would / could / might + inf.

ex. - If he trained hard, he'd win the match.
= He'd win the match if he trained hard.

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)

Would / Could / Might + subj. + inf. + if + ماضي بسيط ?

ex. - Would he win the match if he trained hard?
= If he trained hard, would he win the match?

'Wh_' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + would / could / might + subj. + inf. + if + ماضي بسيط ?

ex. - What would he do if he trained hard?
= If he trained hard, what would he do?

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1. تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:

ex. - If he were taller, he'd be good at basketball.
- I don't feel ill now. If I felt ill, I would stay at home.

2. إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were ... .) :

ex. - If I were you, I would see a doctor. You look very ill.

③ لاحظ إمكانية استخدام (were) مع المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الثانية:

ex. - Nada is ill today. If she were / was healthy, she would help you.

④ الأفعال (cut – put – hit – shut – read....) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he – she – it) :

ex. - If he shut the door to the farm, the animals (won't – wouldn't) go out.

⑤ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.) :

ex. - If Abdu had a camera, I (will borrow– would borrow– would have borrowed) it from him.

⑥ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.) :

ex. - If we had to work at the weekend, we (will get– would get– would have got) a reward.

⑦ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have+ noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط :

ex. - If Sama (win – won – had won) the competition, she would have a prize.

⑧ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have to+ inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط :

ex. - If Omar (spends – spent – had spent) all his money, he would have to borrow.

⑨ من الممكن استخدام التصريف الثالث للفعل كصفة

ex. - If the company had motivated employees موظفين متحمسين, it would make more profits

- If I had written work, I would do it before going to bed.

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you went out in that rainy weather, you .... get wet.
   a. will b. won't c. would d. wouldn't

2. She'd lose weight if she .... a diet.
   a. follow b. followed c. would follow d. will follow

3. What .... if the car hit this rock?
   a. happen b. happens c. will happen d. would happen

4. What .... if the car hits this rock?
   a. happen b. happens c. will happen d. would happen

5. If she were fit, she would take part in the race. This means she .... fit.
a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't

6. If I .... a bird, I'd live in a nest.
a. were b. will be c. am d. would be

7. I .... you if I had enough time.
a. would have called b. called
c. will call d. would call

8. If I had to see a doctor, that .... surely be Dr Alaa.
a. would b. will c. may d. must

General Exercise On Language ○ Apply

تنويه • التدريبات التالية مُرتَّبة بشكل متدرِّج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... smoking is bad for me, I'll try to stop it. (العامرية – طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. If b. In case of c. Unless d. Without

2. If I need advice for my life, I usually .... to my mother.
(بسيون – ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. talk b. would talk c. had talked d. will talk

3. If people don't eat or drink, they .... (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
a. die b. will die c. would die d. would be dead

4. If water .... it boils. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
a. heat b. heats c. is heated d. b & c

5. If ice cream is heated, it .... into water. (أحمد موافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. will turn b. can turn c. turns d. would turn

6. If I .... younger, I'd work in the New Delta Project.
(أحمد موافي المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. were b. am c. have been d. had been

(دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
7. If you don't water plants, they ....
a. die b. would die c. died d. don't die

8. Unless he studied, he .... succeed. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)

a. will b. will not c. would d. would not

9. We can catch our train .... getting up early. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)

a. if b. in case c. unless d. in case of

10. Would you visit me if you .... enough time? (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)

a. have b. had c. had had d. have had

11. He won't do anything .... you agree. (إبشواي - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. if b. in case of c. but for d. unless

12. You can't join a good faculty .... getting high marks. (أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. unless b. if c. without d. in case

13. I would have lunch with you if I .... enough time. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. had b. had had c. have had d. have

14. Bacteria are invisible .... viewed on a microscope. (إدفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. if b. when c. except if d. as long as

15. If Hassan read the instructions well, he .... do well. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. would b. will c. would have d. could have

16. .... he a servant, he would clean my house every morning. (أبنا ٢٠٢٢)

a. Were b. Had c. Should d. Will

17. The farmer waters his field if .... (إدفو / الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. requires b. is required c. it require d. required

18. Which one of the following sentences is correct? (إدفو / الرديسية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. If I were in your choice, I will accept the second offer.

b. If I was in your shoes, I would accept the second offer.

c. If I had your a choice, I would accept the second offer.

d. In case of having choice is possible , I would accept the second offer.

19. If I had broken bones, I .... abroad to be treated. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. will travel b. 'd travelled

c. would be travelled d. 'd travel

20. If we knew you were coming, we .... you a meal. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

a. would prepare b. will prepare

c. would have prepared d. prepare



SB pages 66 : 67 WB pages 38 : 39

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bring ... back (phr. v)	يُذكِّر - يُعيد ذكري	get on with (phr. v)	يُحسِن التعامل مع
fall out (phr. v)	يتشاجر - يتساقط	hang out with (phr. v)	يُعاشِر- يألف - يُرافق
get into (phr. v)	يندمج - يألف - يتورط في	keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ
		lose touch	تنقطع علاقته بـ

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

تنويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

apparently(adv)	من الواضح - ظاهرياً	necklace(n)	قلادة - عُقد
caption(n)	تَعقيب/ تَعلِيق	opposite (adv - prep.)	في مواجهة
close(adj)	مُقَرَّب	organise(d) (v)	يُنظِّم
conversation(n)	محادثة	own(ed) (v)	يمتلك
feedback(n)	التغذية الاسترجاعية	pocket(n)	جَيب
friendship(n)	صداقة	polite(adj)	مؤدَّب
guess(ed) (v)	يُخمِّن	pretty(adj)	جميل
ignore(d) (v)	يتجاهل	prompt(n)	عامل مُحفِّز - باعث
improve(d) (v)	يُحسِّن	relationship(n)	علاقة
leader(n)	قائد	reunion(n)	جمع الشَمل
mall(n)	مركز تجاري (مول)	sadly(adv)	من المُحزِن
memory(n)	ذكري - ذاكرة		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلُم المُستهدفة ـ هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
bring back (phr. v) يُذكِّر - يُعيد ذكري	- to make you remember
fall out (phr. v) يتشاجر	- to stop being friendly - to have a quarrel مشاجرة
get into (phr. v) يندمج - يألف - يستسيغ	- to start enjoying - to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
get on with (phr. v) يُحسِن التعامل مع	to be friendly with
hang out with (phr. v) يُعاشِر- يألف - يُرافق	to spend time with
keep in touch with يبقي على اتصال بـ	to continue to communicate with
lose touch تنقطع علاقته بـ	to stop communicating

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. We are no longer friends. I have .... with him.
(اسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. fallen out b. kept in c. got into d. hung out

2. I didn't see him all day yesterday. He .... with his friends all day.
(القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. fell out b. hung out c. got into d. kept in

3. In time, the new students gained confidence and .... on with other classmates.
(ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
a. went b. got c. came d. received

4. Whenever I go past my primary school, it .... lovely memories.
(المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
a. hangs out b. falls out c. brings back d. takes down

5. I hope I will always .... with my close classmates.
a. fall out b. lose touch c. keep in touch d. a & c

6. I hope I will never .... with my close classmates.
a. fall out b. lose touch c. keep in touch d. a & b

7. My father warned me not to .... trouble.
a. fall out with b. get into c. hang out with d. get off

2 Important vocabulary

8. This YouTuber usually .... my comments. He never reads them.
a. ignores b. upsets c. treats d. fires

9. Winning the gold medal is a happy .... I will never forget.
a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship

10. ...., everything went well. That's clear to everyone.
a. Apparently b. Alone c. Sadly d. Completely

11. My mother cares very much about family ....
a. reunion b. tone c. distraction d. regret

12. Housing problem is the .... interest of the government this year.
a. main b. lonely c. disappointed d. foggy

13. We are not friends. We have an employer-employee ....
a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship

14. Our .... is more important to me than business. I can't do without يستغني عن you.
a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship

15. ...., she refused our help. We knew she needed it badly.
a. Apparently b. Alone c. Sadly d. Completely

16. His strong character and decisiveness الحزم make him a good ....
a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship

17. We have received very positive .... from our customers about our new product.
a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship

3 Definitions

18. ...., means to make someone remember something.
a. Lose touch b. Keep in touch with
c. Bring back d. Get into

19. To .... is to stop being friendly or to have a quarrel.
   a. hang out with   b. get on with   c. get into   d. fall out

20. To .... is to start enjoying or to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it.
   a. lose touch   b. keep in touch with
   c. bring back   d. get into

21. To .... is to be friendly with.
   a. hang out with   b. get on with   c. get into   d. fall out

22. To .... is to spend time with someone.
   a. hang out with   b. get on with   c. get into   d. fall out

23. To .... is to continue to communicate with someone.
   a. lose touch   b. keep in touch with
   c. bring back   d. get into

24. To .... is to stop communicating.
   a. lose touch   b. keep in touch with
   c. bring back   d. get into

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

feel	ignored	يشعر بالتجاهُل	**have**	a bad relationship with يكون علي علاقة سيئة بـ
	uncomfortable	يشعر بعدم الارتياح		a conversation يتحاور - يتحادث
	sorry	يشعر بالأسف/ بالحزن	**keep**	attention on يُركز انتباهه علي
get	worse	يزداد سوء	**share**	sad moments with يحزن لأجل/مع
give	... a smile	يبتسم لـ ...	**take**	interest in يهتم بـ
go	past	يمر بـ/ يجتاز		a taxi يستقل تاكسي
have	a cold	يعاني من نزلة برد		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
apparently	ظاهرياً	seemingly
apparently	من الواضح	clearly, obviously
close	قريب جدا - مُقرَّب	near, nearby, intimate
ignore	يتجاهل	disregard, pay no attention to
relationship	علاقة	relation, connection, tie

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
close	قريب جداً - مُقرَّب	distant, far, faraway	بعيد
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين
ignore	يتجاهل	pay attention to	يهتم بـ

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

according to	حسب / طبقاً لـ	go on a picnic	يذهب في نُزهة
as a gift from me to	كهدية مني لـ	in contact with	علي اتصال بـ
as usual	كالمعتاد	in the middle of	في منتصف
as well	أيضاً	keep in touch with	يبقي علي تواصل مع
bad for	ضار بـ	lose touch with	تنقطع العلاقة مع
be friendly with	ودود مع	upload … to a website	يرفع … علي موقع
get in touch with	يتواصل مع		
go back in time	يتذكر ما مضي - يعود بالزمن	well-written	مكتوب جيدا

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

argue with	يتجادل مع	get into	يألف - يبدأ في الاستمتاع بـ
care about	يهتم لأمر	learn from	يتعلم من
communicate with	يتواصل مع	move away	يبتعد
continue to	يستمر في	pick up	يتناول - يلتقط
forget to	ينسي أن	thank … for	يشكر … علي

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

get on with ≠ fall out with

- **get on with + شخص (phr. v)** يُحسِن التعامل مع - يكون علي علاقة جيدة بـ
  - I have two close friends whom I get on with.
- **get on with + شئ (phr. v)** يستمر في القيام بـ
  - Stop talking and get on with your task, Salma.
- **get on + (phr. v)** يتأقلم
  - After two weeks, Sama started to get on at her new school.
- **fall out with + شخص = to have a quarrel with (phr. v)** يتشاجر مع
  - Don't fall out with people or you will have no friends.
- **fall out (phr. v)** يتساقط - يسقط
  - A lot of girls suffer from their hair falling out.

hang out with ≠ spend no time with

- **hang out + (with) شخص** يقضي وقت طويل (مع شخص / في مكان)
  - Can you tell me who you have been hanging out with?
  - I don't know where Karim hangs out.

لاحظ أن الفعل (hang) بهذا المعنى تصريفه الثانى والثالث (hung) أما إذا كان الفعل (hang) بمعنى (يعدم) يكون فعل منتظم ويُصرَّف بإضافة (ed).

- **spend no time + (with) شخص** لا يقضي وقت مع
  - My father is so busy that he nearly spends no time with us at home.

keep in touch (with) ≠ lose touch (with)

- **keep in (close) touch + (with) شخص** يبقي علي تواصل مع
- **keep in (close) contact + (with) شخص** يبقي علي تواصل مع
  - Video calls help me keep in touch with my brother in Saudi Arabia.
  - My mother keeps in close contact with us all.
- **lose touch + (with) شخص** يفقد التواصل مع
  - He travelled abroad long years ago and I lost touch with him.

get into ≠ stop being interested in

• **get into (phr. v)** يبدأ في الاستمتاع بـ - يألف - ينخرط في
- A student who is not sociable finds it difficult to get into new friendships.

• **get into / in + مكان (phr. v)** يدخل   **- get in** يدخل (بـ / بدون مكان)
- The door is locked, so I can't get into / in our flat.
- The door is locked, so I can't get in. (Not: get into)

• **stop being interested in** يفقد الاهتمام بـ
- Rami stopped being interested in football.

bring back

• **bring ... back (phr. v)** يُذكِّر - يُعيد ذكري
- Seeing any of my old friends brings back a lot of childhood memories.
= Seeing any of my old friends brings a lot of childhood memories back.

• **bring ... back (phr. v)** يُعيد - يستعيد - يعيد استخدام أو استعمال
- My father has decided to bring back our old house.
- The city council has decided to bring back (reintroduce) the old electric trams.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• ❶ **MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:**

1. He takes ....
   a. attention   b. worse   c. a taxi home
   d. past   e. interest in sport
2. I felt ....
   a. sorry   b. interest in   c. a taxi
   d. ignored   e. seemingly
3. "He is apparently kind." This means I am .... he is really kind.
   a. sure   b. certain   c. not sure
   d. against   e. uncertain

4. "He didn't pay attention to me." This means he .... me.

a. ignored b. welcomed c. hanged out
d. got into e. disregarded

5. "I have a close friend." This means this friend is ....

a. distant b. not distant c. intimate
d. far e. faraway

6. After leaving school, try hard to .... in contact with your schoolmates.

a. make b. keep c. pay
d. take e. be

7. I saw Nagwa in the party. I saw Hana ....

a. too b. as well c. either
d. each other e. so far

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. No one likes to .... ignored.

a. pay b. miss c. feel d. had

2. 'Apparently' is to 'seemingly' as .... is to isolated.

a. loved b. alone c. wanted d. a & c

3. I forgot .... the door. This means I didn't close it.

a. to close b. closing c. close d. closes

4. It is a waste of time arguing .... such a fool.

a. for b. into c. off d. with

5. Mrs Amira thanked us .... our hard work.

a. for b. into c. off d. with

6. According .... experts, gold prices will rise again.

a. of b. to c. from d. into

7. A sociable person .... others even if he or she doesn't like them.

a. gets on b. gets on with c. falls out d. falls out with

8. Some employees helped me .... at my new work.

a. gets on b. get into c. falls out d. falls out with

9. One of my son's teeth has just ....

a. got on b. got on with c. fallen out d. fallen out with

10. I have .... one of my classmates and we no longer talk to each other.

a. got on b. got on with c. fallen out d. fallen out with

11. When you are away, I hope we will ....

a. keep in touch with b. keep in touch

c. lose touch with d. lose touch

12. When you are away, I hope I won't .... you.

a. keep in touch with b. keep in touch

c. lose touch with d. lose touch

13. He always .... Omar. They spend most of their time together.

a. loses touch with b. falls out

c. hangs out with d. spends no time with

14. The plane .... touch with the control room, so it was hard to locate where the airport was.

a. stayed b. kept c. lost d. missed

15. The red light is on. This means I can't get ....

a. to b. into c. in d. b& c

16. Looking at a photo of my grandmother .... memories of the children tales حكايات she used to tell us.

a. gets into b. gets up c. brings back d. hangs out

17. What surprises me is that Amir, the quiet and shy خجول young man, has recently .... politics.

a. spent no time with b. stopped being interested in

c. got into d. fallen out with

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Text

How are your friendships?

WB page (39)



Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, in the middle of[1] a conversation, when you're talking, they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored[2] and upset. And the problem may be getting worse[3] because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now own[4] a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation[5] makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite[6] and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage[7] even good friendships[8].

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up[9] your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on[10] the person you are talking to.

And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and honest[11] friend, keep your phone in your pocket[12] and your eyes on your friendship.

Check Vocabulary

(1) في منتصف
(2) يشعر بالتجاهُل
(3) يزداد سوء
(4) يمتلك
(5) يتحاور
(6) مؤدب
(7) يُدمِّر - يُفسِد
(8) صداقات
(9) يتناول - يلتقط
(10) تظل منتبهاً إلى
(11) أمين
(12) جَيب

2 Listening Texts



Presenter:

(SB page 66)

In today's show, we're going back in time(1) and looking at some of our regrets(2). Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will bring back(3) memories(4) for many of us. This is what he says …

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school! I also used to phone(5) my grandparents and my cousins. But then I got into(6) using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all got on with(7) each other. Sometimes I'd hang out with(8) them online for hours chatting.

I guess(9) I lost touch with(10) my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started falling out with(11) each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have ignored(12) my family. I wish I'd kept in touch with(13) my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly(14), this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to take an interest in(15) the people who really care about us.

Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

Check Vocabulary

(1) نتذكر ما مضي
(2) الندم
(3) يُعيد
(4) ذكريات
(5) يتصل
(6) يألف
(7) يُحسِن التعامل مع
(8) يقضي وقتاً طويلاً مع
(9) يُخمِّن
(10) ينقطع الإتصال مع
(11) يتشاجر مع
(12) يتجاهل
(13) يبقى على تواصل مع
(14) من المُحزن
(15) يُظهر اهتماماً بـ

Prep School Memories

WB page (38)

Hoda : Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.

Lamia : Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola(1) in our class.

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite(2) you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both(3) wanted to be the leaders(4).

Lamia : Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with(5) her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look. Here she is in the photo.

Lamia : Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ... and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia : Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh, no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was wearing(6) when I lost my favourite necklace(7). I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia : But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to(8) you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true! I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

Lamia : And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away(9) to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch(10), we would have been able to organise(11) a school reunion(12). I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Lamia : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Hoda : Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لا أتذكر أحداً يُسمى علا
(2) في مواجهة
(3) كل من
(4) قائد
(5) يتجادل مع
(6) يرتدي
(7) قلادة - عُقد
(8) يتحدث إلي
(9) يبتعد
(10) يبقي علي اتصال
(11) يُنظِّم
(12) جمع الشَمل

Judy: SB page (67)

Huda was my best friend. We'd always[1] hang out together at school. We made each other laugh[2] a lot and we were very close[3].

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well[4]. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall[5]. We had a great time as usual[6], but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently[7], it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اعتاد ان
(2) يضحك
(3) مُقرب
(4) أيضاً
(5) مركز تجاري (مول)
(6) كالمعتاد
(7) من الواضح - ظاهرياً

Part IV Language

تنويه • راجع شرح الجزء الأول من القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثانى.

1 Third conditional — الحالة الثالثة

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If + had + p.p.... + would / could / might + have + p.p.

ex. - If he had won the competition, he'd have got the prize.
= He'd have got the prize if he had won the competition.

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ(هل)

Would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ? ماضى تام ...

ex. - Would he have got the prize if he had won the competition?

'Wh_' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ? ماضى تام ...

ex. - What would he have got if he had won the competition?
= If he had won the competition, what would he have got?

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة فى حالة تخيل عكس ما حدث فى الماضى :

ex. - I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I would have stayed at home.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○ ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... a nice time if I had been to Alexandria.
   a. will have b. would have c. would have had d. have
2. If that milk .... boiled, there would have been no bacteria in it.
   a. had b. had been c. would be d. would have
3. If I .... enough time to go home, I would have lunch outdoors.
   a. had b. didn't have c. had had d. hadn't had
4. "If Amr had come first, he would have got a car as a present." This means Amr .... the car.
   a. got b. had got c. won't get d. didn't get

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

1 If = as long as طالما = providing (that) بشرط أن = provided (that) جملة + بشرط أن

ex. - If Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.
- As long as Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.

2 If + جملة = with / by / in case of + noun / (inf. + ing)

ex. - If he works hard, he will achieve his goals in life.
= In case of working hard, he will achieve his goals in life.

3 Unless + جملة = Without / But for لولا / بدون + (inf. +ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he earns enough money, he will have to sell his car.
= Without earning enough money, he will have to sell his car.

4 Unless + جملة ماضي بسيط = If it weren't for + (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he had enough time, he wouldn't help me.
= If it weren't for having enough time, he wouldn't help me.

5 Unless + جملة ماضي تام = If it hadn't been for + (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he had arrived early at the station, he would have missed the train.
= If it hadn't been for arriving early at the station, he would have missed the train.

❻ If + ماضي بسيط / جملة مضارع = Should + subj. + inf. ....

- If he has a lot of money, he will help poor children.
= Should he have a lot of money, he will help poor children.

❼ If + ماضي بسيط جملة = Were + subj. + (to +inf.)............ / Were + subj.+ ....

- If you phoned me, I would come. = Were you to phone me, I would come.
- If I were taller, I would join a basketball team.
= Were I taller, I would join a basketball team.

❽ If + subj. + had + اسم = Had + subj. + اسم ....

- If I had a car, I would drive you home.
= Had I a car, I would drive you home.

❾ If + subj. + had + p. p. = Had + subj. + p. p. ....

- If he had finished the report, he would have left the office.
= Had he finished the report, he would have left the office.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... she works hard, she can achieve her goal.
   a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without
2. .... hard work, she can achieve her goal.
   a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without
3. .... she works hard, she won't achieve her goal.
   a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without
4. .... working hard, she won't achieve her goal.
   a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without
5. If it .... for his strong character, he wouldn't have been a good leader.
   a. isn't b. hadn't been c. weren't d. were
6. If it .... for his strong character, he wouldn't be a good leader.
   a. isn't b. hadn't been c. weren't d. were
7. .... she go shopping, I'll ask her to get me a new toothbrush.
   a. Should b. If c. Unless d. Provided

8. Had she a bike, she ………… for a ride every day.
   a. goes
   b. went
   c. would have gone
   d. would go

9. Had she had a bike, she ………… for a ride every day.
   a. goes
   b. went
   c. would have gone
   d. would go

10. ………… you to do exercise more often, you would get fitter.
   a. Had
   b. Were
   c. If
   d. Unless

Expressing Regret التعبير عن الندم

١ **Subj. + Should / Shouldn't + have + p.p.**

You should have studied hard.

كان من المفترض أن تذاكر بجد. (لكن ذلك لم يحدث).

- Karim shouldn't have wasted his time.

كان من المفترض ألّا يُضيّع كريم وقته. (لكنه فعل).

٢ **If + جملة ماضى تام + ... would have + p.p.**

If he had trained hard, he would have won the match.

لو أنه تدرب كان سيفوز. (لكنه لم يتدرب وبالتالى لم يفوز)

٣ **... wish + (that) + جملة ماضى تام**

I wish (that) he had driven at a low speed.

أتمنى لو أنه قاد بسرعة منخفضة. (لكنه لم يفعل)

I wish (that) he hadn't driven at a high speed.

أتمنى لو أنه لم يقود بسرعة عالية. (لكنه فعل)

عند التعبير عن شىء **غير متحقق فى المضارع** نستخدم جملة ماضى بسيط بعد **(wish)** :

ex. - I wish I lived in Alexandria. It is very hot here in Aswan.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He's sorry he hurt your feelings. He really .... to you like that.
   a. should talk
   b. shouldn't talk
   c. should have talked
   d. shouldn't have talked
2. I work as a sales assistant. I wish I .... the chance to study medicine at university when I was a student.
   a. have
   b. had
   c. had had
   d. could have
3. I wasted my time last year. If I .... it, I would have got the full mark.
   a. had wasted
   b. hadn't wasted
   c. wasted
   d. didn't waste
4. I ate too much and now I feel ill. I wish that I .... that much.
   a. had eaten
   b. hadn't eaten
   c. ate
   d. didn't eat
5. My brother didn't pass his exam and now my parents are angry. He .... his best at school.
   a. should have done
   b. should have been done
   c. must have done
   d. did
6. My father stopped studying English and now he needs it for work. He wishes that he .... studying it.
   a. didn't stop
   b. hadn't stopped
   c. had continued
   d. b & c
7. My friends didn't go on the picnic and they didn't have fun. If my friends ....
   a. had gone, they would have fun
   b. had gone, they would have had fun
   c. went, they would have fun
   d. had gone, they would have had no fun
8. I went out in the rain yesterday and now I have a cold. I .... out.
   a. should go
   b. shouldn't go
   c. shouldn't have gone
   d. should have gone

Exercise On Language


Apply

تنويه • التدريبات التالية مُرتَّبة بشكل متدرّج تصاعديًا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. If her father .... alive, he would be pleased with her work.
 a. is b. was been c. were d. had been
2. He won't catch the train if he .... soon.
 a. didn't pack b. will not pack
 c. hadn't packed d. doesn't pack
3. If eggs ...., they solidify.
 a. heat b. are heated c. heated d. heats
4. If water freezes, it .... into ice.
 a. change b. will change c. would change d. changes
5. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I .... to the library.
 a. go b. will go c. have gone d. would go
6. If I .... younger, I'd work in the New Delta Project.
 a. were b. am c. have been d. had been
7. If Hisham .... with us, he would have a good time.
 a. would come b. had come c. would have come d. came
8. Would you have lent him the money if you .... how badly he needed it?
 a. had known b. knew c. would know d. have known
9. If the book were cheap, I .... buy it.
 a. will b. would c. can d. may
10. If you had gone to the Cairo Exhibition معرض, you .... it.
 a. would enjoy b. would have enjoyed
 c. will have enjoyed d. will enjoy
11. If I were rich, I .... a yacht.
 a. can buy b. would buy c. had bought d. will buy
12. If we had started earlier, we .... the deadline.
 a. had met b. would have met
 c. have been met d. would meet
13. If ice is heated, it .... into water.
 a. will turn b. can turn c. turns d. would turn

14. If metals ...., they expand.
a. heat b. will heat c. heated d. are heated

15. If water boils, it ....
a. will evaporate b. can evaporate
c. would evaporate d. evaporates

16. If you don't stop listening to that loud music, your headache .... worse.
a. got b. will get c. would get d. gets

17. If the train .... down, I wouldn't have been late.
a. didn't break b. doesn't break
c. hadn't broken d. won't break

18. If I .... read the newspapers, I wouldn't know what is happening in the world.
a. didn't b. hadn't c. don't d. haven't

19. .... very happy if you achieved your goals?
a. You would be b. Would you have been
c. You will be d. Would you be

20. The sea will be polluted .... we stop dumping oil and rubbish into it.
a. as long as b. if c. so that d. unless

21. What .... if he had left the meeting?
a. will happen b. would happen
c. has happened d. would have happened

22. If he had remembered to set the alarm clock, Hany .... woken up late.
a. would have b. wouldn't have c. have been d. would be

23. If he hadn't bought a car, he .... that accident.
a. didn't have b. wouldn't have had
c. would have d. wouldn't have

24. .... he understand the story if he read the summary?
a. Will b. Did c. Would d. Can

25. She couldn't have gone out during the storm if she .... careful.
a. was b. had been c. were d. is

26. If he hadn't driven so fast, he .... that accident.
a. wouldn't have b. wouldn't have had
c. didn't have d. hadn't had

27. Would Ahmed be angry if I .... his bicycle without asking?
a. take b. will take c. took d. have taken

28. He won't do any work .... you pay him first.
a. without b. unless c. so d. in order to

29. Pilots won't be able to fly a plane unless they ....
a. will train
b. had trained
c. are trained
d. were trained

30. You won't be able to achieve your goal .... you work hard.
a. if b. as long as c. provided d. unless

31. If I .... only one job to do, I would have enough free time for hobbies.
a. have b. had had c. didn't have d. had

32. Unless he had followed my advice, he .... all his money.
a. would have lost
b. would have a loss
c. wouldn't lose
d. wouldn't have lost

33. If he had studied well, he .... the best mark.
a. would get
b. will get
c. would be got
d. would have got

34. If Wael lost his job, he .... look for work in the city.
a. will b. would c. will not d. would not

2 Special cases

35. .... today, he would get there by Thursday.
a. Would he leave
b. Were he to leave
c. If he leaves
d. Was he leaving

36. I would have attended the meeting if I ....time.
a. had had
b. would have had
c. have had
d. had

37. It is good to visit beautiful places .... you don't damage them.
a. so that b. in order that c. provided that d. unless

38. Take these tools with you .... your car breaks down.
a. without b. if c. in case of d. in case

39. .... doing this job irritates you, you needn't get angry. Just tell me.
a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless

40. .... my help, he will pay back all his debts.
a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless

41. If you .... a famous footballer, what would you do?
a. are b. had been c. were d. will be

42. .... he had enough money, he would have bought a shirt.
a. If b. Had c. Unless d. Provided

43. .... his bravery, she wouldn't have been saved.
a. Provided b. On condition that
c. In case d. But for

44. .... he come, tell him I'm out.
a. If b. Should c. Were d. Unless

45. If we plant trees, then we .... cleaner air.
a. have b. will have c. had d. would have

46. If you .... me, he should look for another job.
a. question b. talk c. ask d. wonder

47. .... written work, he wouldn't have time to go out.
a. Had he had b. Have he c. Were he to d. Had he

48. .... him today, she would know what has happened.
a. If she meets b. Had she met
c. Were she to meet d. Will she meet

49. Plants can grow without soil .... they get food from water.
a. as much as b. as far as c. as long as d. as many as

50. The Red Sea resorts will be popular .... they remain unpolluted.
a. if not b. provided c. so as d. unless

3 Check your understanding

51. "Abdulrahman can achieve great success because he is intelligent."
This means ....
a. if he is intelligent, he achieves great success
b. if he weren't intelligent, he wouldn't achieve great success
c. if he were intelligent, he would not achieve great success
d. if he had been intelligent, he would have achieved great success

52. "If he were tall, he would play basketball." What does this mean?
a. He is tall but he can't play basketball.
b. He is tall, so he can play basketball.
c. He wouldn't play basketball because he wasn't tall.
d. He won't play basketball because he isn't tall.

53. "Without your help, I might be in trouble." The speaker means that ....

a. if I help him, he will be in trouble
b. unless I helped him, he would be in trouble
c. unless I help him, he will be in trouble
d. if I helped him, he would be in trouble

54. "We didn't make a big loss because of your last decision." This means ....

a. if it hadn't been for your last decision, we would have made a big loss
b. if it weren't for your last decision, we would make a big loss
c. but for your last decision, we would not have made a big loss
d. but for your last decision, we would make a big loss

55. "If you work hard, you will be successful." I want to say that ....

a. you work hard, so you will be successful
b. you won't be successful as you don't work hard
c. should you work hard, you will be successful
d. you won't be successful even if you work hard

56. "If I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means ....

a. I'll take some medicine if only I feel sick
b. I take some medicine when I feel sick
c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick

57. "In case I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means ....

a. I'll take some medicine only if I feel sick
b. I'll take some medicine when I feel sick
c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick

58. "Had I enough money, I would help you." This means ....

a. I had enough money, so I helped you
b. I don't have enough money, so I can't help you
c. I didn't have enough money, so I couldn't help you
d. I won't help you although I have enough money

PART THREE | Story ... Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5&6

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه
• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة فى الوحدة قواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

تنويه
أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نَص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات فى الجزء المخصص لذلك فى نهاية الكتاب.

forgive - forgave - forgiven(v)	يغفر لـ - يسامح	philosopher(n)	فيلسوف
hard-hearted(adj)	قاسى القلب	rise - rose - risen(v)	يعلو شأنه
hut(n)	كوخ	straw(n)	القش
lightning(n)	البرق	torch(n)	كشّاف
mice(n)	فئران	try walking in ... shoes	يحاول أن يضع نفسه مكان ...

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a ....? (أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
   a. sword b. post c. torch d. frown
2. In a storm, you often see .... (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
   a. lightning b. a torch c. lighting d. lightening
3. A / An .... is a person who studies the meaning of life.
   a. king b. assistant c. fool d. philosopher
4. Our car broke down on the desert road, so we spent the night in a small .... by the side of the road.
   a. a torch b. lightening c. hut d. straw

5. A person who is ………… -hearted doesn't care how others feel.

a. hard b. kind c. soft d. b & c

6. Animals usually sleep on ………… .

a. a torch b. lightening c. a hut d. straw

7. When the sun …………, its rays feed the plants.

a. falls out with b. rises c. forgets d. forgives

8. Cats are the first enemies of ………… .

a. wolves b. lions c. mice d. cows

9. What does it mean to "walk in someone's shoes"?

a. To take someone's shoes without asking them.

b. To be the same as one of your parents.

c. To experience life the way someone else does.

d. a & c

Part II Grammatical Hints

used to - would

1 للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة نستخدم:

... used to + inf. ... . = ... would + inf. ... .

ex. - When I had enough time, I used to go to work on foot. (✓)

- When I had enough time, I would go to work on foot. (✓)

2 تُستخدم هذه الصيغ للتعبير عن عادات الماضي في مدي زمني كبير وليس خلال مدة قصيرة.
فالعادة لا تُسمَّى هكذا إلا اذا تكررت لفترة طويلة نسبياً:

ex. - He used to do exercise every day last month. (✗)

- He used to do exercise every day when he was young. (✓)

- He did exercise every day last month. (✓)

٣ تُستخدم **(used to)** فقط وليس **(would)** عند التعبير عن عادات الماضي مع الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

be, like, love, hate, want, need, prefer, own, sound, agree, disagree, know, understand, feel, remember, forget, seem, suppose, contain, ... etc.

ex. - When I was young, I would love to watch cartoons. (✗)
- When I was young, I used to love watching cartoons. (✓)

٤ تُستخدم **(used to)** فقط وليس **(would)** عند التعبير عن العادات السلوكية البارزة والهامة في الماضي:

ex. - When he was a young man, he would smoke. (✗)
- When he was a young man, he used to smoke. (✓)

a / an / the + people's names

١ يمكن استخدام **(the)** قبل اسم العائلة في صيغة الجمع للإشارة إلي العائلة بالكامل:

ex. - Abdulrahman invited Ayman to his wedding. (الدعوة لأيمن فقط)
- Abdulrahman invited the Aymans to his wedding. (الدعوة لأسرة أيمن كلها)

٢ يمكن استخدام **(the)** قبل اسم شخص لتمييز شخص عن أخرين يحملون نفس الإسم:

ex. - Don't give the invitation to this Linda. The Linda I mean is the woman in the white blouse over there.

٣ يمكن استخدام **(a / an)** قبل اسم شخص غير معروف بالنسبة للمتحدث:

ex. - There's a Khalid waiting for you outside.

(لا يعرف المتحدث أي شيء عن خالد هذا)

ex. - There wasn't an Ola in our class last year.

(لا يتذكر المتحدث أنه كان هناك طالبة تُسمَّي عُلا)

In addition to - Besides - As well as - Also - as well - too

١ تُستخدم روابط العطف التالية بمعني **(بالإضافة إلي ذلك)** ويأتي بعدها جملة:

In addition, / Besides (that) / + جملة ....

ex. - She is a secretary. In addition, she runs a bookshop.
- She cooked lunch. Besides (that), she did the housework.

❷ تأتي روابط العطف التالية بمعني (بالإضافة إلي) ويأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير أو (inf.+ing) :

In addition to / Besides / As well as + noun / pronoun ضمير / (inf. + ing)

ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- As well as going to the market we went to the zoo.
- Besides me, two more friends will visit you.
- Besides cooking lunch, she cleaned the house.

❸ لاحظ استخدام (also / as well / too) بمعني (أيضا) في الجمل المثبتة :

ex. - She visited her aunt. She also visited her grandma.
= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma, too.
= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma as well.

❹ لاحظ استخدام (either) بمعني (أيضا) في الجمل المنفية :

ex. - I didn't do my homework. I didn't take a rest either.

but - However - although - though - even if - despite - in spite of

❶ تُستخدَم الروابط التالية لربط جملتين متناقضتين وتأتي في الوسط فقط :

but لكن / however مع ذلك + جملة ....

ex. - He has a lot of money but he is not happy.
- He has a lot of money, however he is not happy.

❷ يمكن أن تربط (but) صفتين أو ظرفين متناقضين :

ex. - He works quickly but accurately. - He is small but strong.
- She is intelligent but lazy.

❸ الروابط التالية يأتى بعدها جملة وتأتى فى البداية أو الوسط :

although / though برغم أن / even though / even if + جملة ....

ex. - Although / Though she works hard, she has some free time to enjoy herself.
- She has some free time to enjoy herself although / though she works hard.

❹ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير أو (inf. + ing) وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

Despite / In spite of برغم من + noun / pronoun ضمير / (inf. + ing)

ex. - Despite having a lot of money, he is not happy.
= He is not happy despite having a lot of money.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... Hossam had an injury in his left leg, he finished the match.
   a. So b. When c. However d. Although
2. .... his poor behaviour, Amir is a really sweet boy.
   a. While b. Despite c. Although d. But
3. .... having plenty of room, the flat is quiet.
   a. But b. Despite c. In addition d. In addition to
4. There's no balcony, ... there's a view.
   a. as b. however c. in spite of d. though
5. I have told you before. .... Omar you want to meet isn't here.
   a. A b. An c. The d. Some
6. Yes, I remember that there was .... Omnia among the applicants.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. .... have travelled to Alexandria.
   a. The Ahmeds b. Ahmeds c. Ahmed d. An Ahmed
8. Sama .... lunch every day before she got married.
   a. prepare b. had prepared c. used to prepare d. prepares
9. Sama .... lunch every day last week.
   a. prepared b. had prepared c. used to prepare d. prepares
10. I .... prefer green, now I prefer pink.
    a. didn't b. would c. used to d. b & c

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

Write an essay of about 180 words under the title:

'If' in my life

Perhaps it seems strange to write under such a title. However it is an easy topic to write about. In this essay, I'm going to use this title in a three-tense sense: a past tense, a present sense and a future one. I'll summarise my life and dreams under this title.

Physically, بدنياً I was overweight in primary school. If I hadn't been born with a natural love of food, I wouldn't have been overweight. I would have had a carved body. No silly schoolmates would have made fun of my appearance.

One day, my PE teacher had a personal talk with me. He told me that I had the ability to get rid of the extra weight. All I needed was strong will إرادة to control my love of food and to follow a strict صارم fitness programme. If it hadn't been for his advice, I would have put on more weight. I wouldn't have got in shape. Now, I am fit and I have the carved body I used to dream of.

I am a secondary school student. I am in secondary two. If I weren't a student, I would have enough time to do my hobbies. I would be able to play football as much as I can. However, that wouldn't be good at all. If I weren't a student, this means I would have no educational dreams and no promising future.

Next year, I will be in secondary three. I will do my best to get the highest marks possible. If I get 99.5 %, I will join the faculty of medicine. Perhaps I will be a successful surgeon. I will travel abroad to improve my skills as a surgeon. I will follow on the footsteps of Professor Magdy Yacoub.

2 Translation الترجمة

تنويه • للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

① Translate into Arabic :

1. We are the products of our past, but we don't have to be prisoners of it. Never let past mistakes dominate your life. Always find yourself a new start and with it there will be a new hope.

2. It has always been said that failure is instructive. The person who is really intelligent learns quite as much from his failures as from his successes.
3. What we perceive as an error or failure is actually a gift. And eventually, we find that the lessons learned from that discouraging experience prove to be of great worth.

② Translate into English :

١. إنه لمن الطبيعي بل والمفيد أحيانًا أن يقع الإنسان في بعض الأخطاء، فتلك الأخطاء هي أفضل مُعلّم للإنسان، والدروس التي نأخذها من أخطائنا لا تُنسي على الإطلاق.

٢. لا تقف كثيرًا عند أخطائك، فما حدث لا يمكن تغييره لأن عقارب الساعة لا تعود إلي الوراء، فقط اقلب الصفحة وابدأ من جديد.

٣. الحياة هي أكبر مدرسة نتعلم فيها بشكل عملي، فكل موقف نمر به يترك فينا أثر لا يُمحي لأنه أصبح جزء من خبراتنا الحياتية التي تفيدنا بشكل أو بآخر.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحده

at all	علي الإطلاق	gift	منحة
criticism	النقد	initiatives	مبادرات
current state	الوضع الحالي	instructive	تعليمي
discouraging	مُحبِط	perceive	يدرك
error	خطأ	risk	مخاطرة
eventually	في النهاية	worth	قيمة
failure	الفشل		

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للفائقين فقط

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

mean

• **mean – meant – meant = represent (v)** يعني - يُعطي معنى
- What does this word mean?

• **mean – meant - meant = intend (v)** يقصد - يتعمَّد - ينوي
- He didn't mean to hurt you.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **mean to + inf.** يقصد - يتعمَّد
- I am sure she didn't mean to break the vase.

• **mean + شخص / شئ + to + inf.** يقصد أن + شخص / شي ...
- I haven't meant the vase to break. لم أقصد أن تنكسر الزهرية.
- I didn't mean Sara to hear what I told you. لم أقصد أن تستمع سارة لما قلته لك.

• **mean for + شخص + to + inf.** يقصد أن ...
- Did you really mean for Salah to get hurt? هل كنت حقًا تقصد أن يُصاب صلاح؟

• **mean no + harm / offence / disrespect** لا يقصد اضرر / الإساءة / الإهانة ...
- My friend is sure I have meant no harm. It all happened by mistake.

• **mean – meant – meant = require (v)** يتطلب - يستلزم
- You want to keep fit. This means doing regular exercise.

• **mean (to) (adj)** قاسي علي **≠ kind** طيب / عطوف
- Stop shouting at her. That's a mean thing to do.

• **mean (with) (adj)** بخيل مع **= stingy / cheap**
- We don't ask him for help because he is mean with both his money and effort. جهد

• **meaningful (adj)** ذو معني أو مغزي - هام **≠ meaningless** لا معني له / غير مفهوم
- The numbers and symbols on this paper are meaningful only to scientists.

للمزيد عن الفعل (mean) يمكن الرجوع لشرح الوحدة الخامسة

fire

• fire (n) مدفأة / موقد

- We all sat around the fire.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- by the fire بجوار المدفأة -in front of the fire أمام المدفأة

• fire (n) نار - حريق

- The mall caught fire and it was completely destroyed.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• be on fire = burning مُشتعل

- The house was on fire. = The house was burning.

• ... catch a fire تشتعل فيه النيران

- The house caught fire.

• a fire breaks out تشتعل النيران

- The fire broke out at midnight.

• a fire goes out تنطفئ النيران

- There was no more wood and the fire went out.

• start a fire يبدأ الحريق

- The fire started with a cigarette end.

• set fire to ... يُشعل النيران في = set ... on fire

- The criminal set fire to the house and ran away.
- The criminal set the house on fire and ran away.

• make a fire يُشعل نار

- The weather was cold, so we made a fire to keep us warm.

• put out a fire = extinguish a fire يطفئ النار

- The heavy rain put out the fire in the wood.

• fire (n) إطلاق نار (كلمة لا تُعد)

- The soldiers opened fire on the enemy troops. قوات العدو

• fire (at / on / into) (v) يطلق النار (علي)

- The soldiers fired at the enemy troops. قوات العدو

• fire (from) = sack / dismiss (v) يفصل من العمل

- He was fired from the office because he was not honest.

beg

• **beg(ged) (to / for) (v)** يتوسّل - يستجدي
- The boy begged to go out with his friends.
- I begged my manager to give me another chance.
- I felt sorry when the old man begged for help.

• **beg(ged) (v)** يتسوّل (يشحت)
- It breaks my heart to see a little child begging money from people in the streets.
- The old woman was begging for the price of medicine.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- I beg your pardon. أسألك المعذرة (أرجو أن تسامحني)
- I beg of you.= please من فضلك
- beg to differ اسمح لي أن أختلف معك

• **beggar (n)** مُتسوّل (شحات)
- Some beggars pretend to be disabled.مُعاق

• **beggar(ed) (v)** يُفقِر
- His big family have beggared him.

• **beggary (n)** الفقر المدقّع - العَوَز
- In most African countries, a lot of people suffer from beggary.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To me, your help .... too much.
   a. supposes b. piles c. means d. a & c
2. Supporting a football team is something fun. I don't think it is worth .... over.
   a. falling out b. falling out with c. getting on d. getting on with
3. She had just started to .... teaching when she married and moved to Cairo.
   a. hang out b. get into c. get on with d. b & c
4. The old temple has been .... to life through careful restoration الترميم.
   a. got into b. brought back c. hanged out d. fallen out
5. **A:** I think it is a great plan.
   B: I .... to differ. Practically, it is useless.
   a. beg b. big c. pile d. sigh

6. After brushing her hair, she usually .... it on top of her head.

a. hangs out b. fires c. ignores d. piles

7. Spending money carelessly will soon .... you.

a. beg b. beggar c. beggary d. a & b

8. What puzzles me a lot is how young people .... those tight trousers.

a. get into b. hang out c. fall out with d. get on

9. To make the rules .... to children, put them – the rules – in context.

a. mean b. meaning c. meaningful d. meaningless

10. He travelled abroad to earn more money. He didn't mean .... to suffer.

a. you b. for you c. to you d. a & b

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- الفعل (means) بمعني (يعني) هو الإختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة
2.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (falling out) بمعني (الشجار / الخصام) هو الإختيار الصحيح وليس (falling out with) لعدم وجود الطرف الثاني للنزاع بعد الفراغ
3.	d	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (get into) بمعني (يبدأ في الاستمتاع بـ) وكذلك (get on with) بمعني (يتأقلم علي) يصلحان في هذا السياق
4.	b	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (brought back) يعني (تم إحياؤه / أُعيد)
5.	a	- التعبير (I beg to differ) يعني (اسمح لي أن أختلف معك)
6.	d	- الفعل (piles) بمعني (يجمع / يعقد) هو الإختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة
7.	b	- الفعل (beggar) بمعني (يُفقِر) هو الإختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة
8.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (get into) بمعني (يرتدون) هو الإختيار الصحيح
9.	c	- الصفة (meaningful) بمعني (مفهوم / ذو مغزى) هي الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح في هذا السياق
10.	d	- كل من (you / for you) بعد (mean) صحيحين بمعني (يتعمد أن يجعلك)

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If Edison hadn't discovered electricity, we .... in darkness now.
   a. will live b. would live
   c. would have lived d. may have lived
2. I would help you if ....
   a. was necessary b. necessary
   c. it is necessary d. it had been necessary
3. He could have drowned .... a passing ship rescued him.
   a. so b. if c. but d. unless
4. .... to stay up late for long, he would have tomorrow off.
   a. Had he had b. He has c. Were he to d. Had he
5. **A:** What if Fatma .... come next Saturday?
   B: It would be a disaster.
   a. had not b. did not c. do not d. will not
6. What .... if you had something stolen?
   a. would you do b. would you have done
   c. will you do d. have you done
7. Would you mind if my brother .... in with me ?
   a. go b. goes c. went d. had gone
8. If we had found her in time, she .... among us currently.
   a. would be b. wouldn't be
   c. would have been d. must have
9. If Rodayna .... a doctor, she wouldn't have helped me yesterday.
   a. were b. weren't c. had been d. hadn't been
10. Leen would have bought it if she could, but she .... enough money.
    a. had had b. hadn't had c. doesn't have d. didn't have
11. .... being accurate is necessary, I will overlook the so many mistakes you make.
    a. Unless b. If c. Without d. In case of

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الجملة حالة شرطية مختلطة (mixed if) بين الحالة الثالثة في جملة فعل الشرط، والحالة الثانية في جملة جواب الشرط نظراً لوجود كلمة (now)
2.	b	- يمكن استخدام الصفة مباشرة بعد (if) ولا يمكن استخدام الإختيارات الأخرى لأنها لا تتوافق مع الزمن وغير صحيحة لغوياً
3.	c	لا يمكن استخدام أدوات الشرط في هذه الجملة لعدم توافق الأزمنة بين جملة الشرط وجملة جواب الشرط
4.	d	الجملة حالة ثانية ويتضح ذلك من عدم وجود تصريف ثالث بعد (would have)
5.	b	يتضح من الرد (would be) أن السياق في الحالة الثانية
6.	a	يتضح من (had something stolen) أن السياق في الحالة الثانية لأن كلمة (stolen) صفة وليست تصريف ثالث أو أن الجملة في صيغة (causative)
7.	b	يتضح من (Would you mind ...) أن السياق في الحالة الأولى
8.	a	- الجملة حالة شرطية مختلطة (mixed if) بين الحالة الثالثة في جملة فعل الشرط، والحالة الثانية في جملة جواب الشرط نظراً لوجود كلمة (currently) بمعني حالياً
9.	b	- الجملة حالة شرطية مختلطة (mixed if) بين الحالة الثالثة في جملة جواب الشرط، والحالة الثانية في جملة فعل الشرط لأن من المنطقي أن رودينا لو كانت طبيبة فهذا ينطبق على الأمس (وقت المساعدة) واليوم، والمعني يتطلب النفي
10.	d	الجملة حالة ثالثة تدل على الماضي لذلك استخدمنا (didn't have)
11.	a	- لا يمكن استخدام (if / in case of) لأنهما لا يتفقان مع المعني - لا يمكن استخدام (without) لأن (being accurate) فاعل يتبعه الفعل (is)

Test on Unit 6



● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. She has a close .... with all her classmates.
   a. competition b. conflict c. relationship
   d. relation e. problem

2. "It is difficult that such a mean person will donate anything." In this sentence, mean gives the antonym of ....
   a. stingy b. generous c. cheap
   d. wealthy e. hospitable

3. Mariam used to be alone. The antonyms of "alone" are ....
   a. unwanted b. wanted c. loved
   d. lonely e. isloated

4. This man is known to be so mean, so he cannot be ....
   a. generous b. stringy c. nasty
   d. selfish e. honorable

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. "He has .... touch with some old friends." He has continued to communicate with them.
   a. kept b. stayed in c. lost d. a & b

6. He has .... touch with some old friends." He no longer communicates with them.
   a. kept b. stayed in c. lost d. a & b

7. "I started getting into novels when I was 20." The phrasal verb 'get into' in this sentence means ....
   a. spending time with b. to stop being friendly
   c. making me remember d. starting to enjoy

8. He .... with Ali. This means they had a quarrel.
   a. fell out b. got on c. had a meal d. a & c

9. He could have drowned .... a passing ship had rescued him.
   a. if b. unless c. so d. without

10. If Magdi had enough money, he .... a new mobile phone.
    a. will buy b. would buy c. bought d. would have bought

11. If I .... so much work, I would have time to go to the club.
    a. had b. had had
    c. didn't have d. hadn't had

12. If my father set off late, he .... after sunset.
a. arrives
b. will arrive
c. would arrive
d. would have arrived

13. Manal .... all her exams if she works hard.
a. passes
b. will pass
c. won't pass
d. would pass

14. What .... if you had lost your phone yesterday?
a. will you do
b. would you do
c. would you be done
d. would you have done

15. I .... like hot food; now I can't stand it.
a. didn't
b. would
c. used to
d. b & c

16. There's a view .... there's no balcony.
a. as
b. however
c. in spite of
d. although

Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (السنبلاوين ٢٢٠٢)

As long as we live, we continue to learn. And the education we receive helps us to keep on learning. We are taught reading, writing, and arithmetic so that **we can gain further knowledge** and learn how to find out things for ourselves. What is learned can vary widely. It may be manners, beliefs, attitudes, or it could be words and figures. It might be the techniques of running a machine, or a skill in playing a musical instrument.

Those who teach can also vary. Teaching may be done by teachers in school, but it may also be done by parents, older brothers and sisters or friends. Everyone has their own sources of education such as newspapers, television, books, films and museums.

Modern industry and agriculture **depend on** hundreds of skills. These skills cannot be taught without schools. Every factory worker or farmer must at least know how to read and write and how to do simple arithmetic. People like engineers, doctors and teachers need a high degree of training.

The cost of teaching and training is very high. Education in our time is becoming more and more expensive. In some countries in the world, parents have to pay a lot of money to send their children to good schools. The price of books, especially at the university level is very high. Many parents cannot send their children to schools because of the expenses.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. According to the passage, ... aims to continue learning.
a. as long as we are discouraged
b. sources of education
c. the education we receive
d. the cost of education

18. Every factory worker or farmer shouldn't be ....
a. illiterate b. qualified c. skilful d. educated

19. "We can gain further knowledge" in this sentence, the word **FURTHER** most likely means ....
a. extra b. to a greater distance
c. not nearer d. closer

20. As mentioned in the passage, many parents cannot send their children to school ....
a. due to low cost b. despite high expenses
c. due to high cost d. despite low expenses

21. According to the passage, education is ....
a. an end b. a means c. meaningless d. useless

22. "**Depend on**" means ....
a. rely on b. get on c. work on d. hand on

23. The price of university books is very ....
a. expensive b. cheap c. simple d. inexpensive

24. Teachers and .... need a high degree of training.
a. farmers b. factory workers
c. mechanics d. engineers

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

We are in an urgent need of a revolution against bad behaviour, Really, we should refuse any strange conduct and try to modify it. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

....

2. Translate into English :

يخشى كثير من الناس البدايات في كل شيء يفعلونه، فالبدايات دائماً تكون صعبة وتحتاج إلى المغامرة والثقة بالنفس؟ (أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

....

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

A mistake/mistakes you have learnt from

....
....
....
....
....

Revision 2

Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 42 : 45

تنويه
تقييمات تراكمية فى بنك الأسئلة

تنويه • اختبار تراكمى على كل ثلاث وحدات فى الكراسة التفاعلية.

Part I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

accounts (n)	حسابات	include (d) (v)	يتضمَّن
achievement (n)	إنجاز	innovator (n)	مُبتكِر
action (n)	الحدث	joke (d) (v - n)	يمزح - مزحة (نكتة)
address (n)	عنوان	let - let (v)	يسمح - يُمكِن
admire (d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	little (adj - adv)	صغير - قليل - قليلاً
advise (d) (v)	ينصح	messaging (n)	التراسل - المراسلة
agree (d) (v)	يوافق	misunderstand (v)	يسئ فهم
agreement (n)	اتفاق - موافقة	Olympic (adj)	أوليمبي
ambassador (n)	سفير	photos (n)	صور فوتوغرافية
athletes (n)	الرياضيون	phrase (n)	عبارة
audio (adj)	مسموع - سمعي	positive (adj)	إيجابي
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف - يسلك	post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر
behaviour (n)	سلوك	private (adj)	خاص - شخصي
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	profile (n)	الملف الشخصي - الحالة
boring (adj)	ممل	react (ed) (v)	يستجيب
career (n)	الحياة المهنية	remain (ed) (v)	يبقي
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
centre (n)	بؤرة - مركز	response (n)	استجابة - رد
clear (adj)	صافي - واضح	role (n)	دور
comment (n)	تعليق	role model (n)	قُدوة
digital (adj)	رقمي	ruin (ed) (v)	يُدمِّر
disappointed (adj)	مُحبَط	scientists (n)	العلماء
discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف	screen (n)	شاشة
ebooks (n)	الكتب الإلكترونية	search (ed) (v - n)	يبحث - بحث
encourage (d) (v)	يُشجع	security (n)	أمن
expert (n)	خبير	share (d) (v)	يشارك
expressions (n)	تعبيرات - ملامح	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكى

fact file (n)	ملف الحقائق	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
feelings (n)	مشاعر	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
footprint (n)	البصمة - المسار - أثر قدم	speech (n)	خطبة
		speed up (phr.v)	يُسرِّع
forgive – forgave - forgiven (v)	يسامح	storytellers (n)	القصاصين
		suppose (d) (v)	يَفترض
forum (n)	مُنتَدَى	tap (ped) (v)	ينقر - يلمس
further (adj - adv)	أبعد - أكثر	through (prep)	من خلال
goodwill (n)	النية الحسنة	tone (n)	الأسلوب - نبرة الصوت
guess (ed) (v)	يُخمِّن - يظن	upload (ed) (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت
human (adj - n)	بشري - انسان	warn (ed) (v)	يُحذر
hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي	wet (adj)	مبلل

Part II Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

create	a fact file	يُنشئ ملف حقائق	**make**	comments	يُعلِّق
do	an internet search	يبحث علي الإنترنت	**make**	a good choice	يُحسِن الإختيار
give	a speech	يلقي خطبة	**make**	a joke	يمزح
go	further	يتعمق أكثر	**sound**	angry	يبدو غاضباً
hurt	feelings	يجرح مشاعر	**take**	a picture / photo	يلتقط صورة
lose	a friend	يخسر صديق	**tell**	stories	يحكي قصص
play	the role of	يُمثِّل دور ...			

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an acting role	دور في التمثيل	laugh at	يضحك علي / يسخر من
an example of	مثال لـ	leave .... behind	يَخلف أثراً
as well as	بالإضافة إلي	look like	يُشبه
at the centre of the action	في بؤرة الأحداث	play the lead role	يلعب الدور الرئيسي (البطولة)
careful about	حريص علي	search history	سجل البحث

careful with	حريص علي / مع
chat stories	قصص الدردشة
each other	بعضهم البعض
early life	مقتبل العمر
feel like	يبدو وكأنه
forget about	ينسي أمر
Goodwill ambassador	سفير النوايا الحسنة
search for	يبحث عن
spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
the way we do things	طريقة قيامنا بالأشياء
the World Economic Forum	المنتدى الاقتصادي العالمي
too busy chatting with	مشغول بالدردشة مع
write down	يُدوِّن / يُسجِّل
young people	الشباب

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Texts

New ways to enjoy stories *(SB page 72)*



New technology often changes the way we do things(1). In the past, people could only tell stories(2) by talking to each other,(3) but this changed when stories could be written down(4) and read. Modern technology means we can read e-books(5) and listen to audio(6) books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories.

Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your smartphone.(7) They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you tap(8) the bottom of your screen(9) to show the next message.

Reading a chat story feels like(10) you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also include(11) photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character looks like(12) and the expressions(13) on their face. And some chat stories let(14) you make choices(15) about what happens next.

Check Vocabulary

(1) طريقة قيامنا بالأشياء
(2) يحكي قصص
(3) بعضهم البعض
(4) يُدوِّن / يُسجِّل
(5) الكتب الإلكترونية
(6) مسموع – سمعي
(7) هاتف ذكي
(8) ينقر – يلمس
(9) شاشة
(10) يبدو وكأنه
(11) يتضمَّن
(12) يُشبه
(13) تعبيرات – ملامح
(14) يسمح - يُمكِّن
(15) يختار

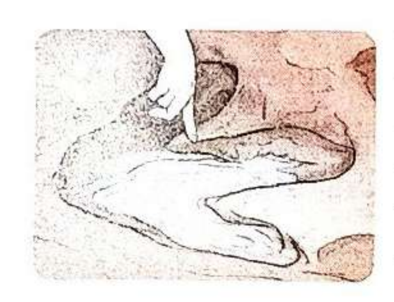
But some storytellers[16] want us to go further.[17] They invite us to imagine[18] how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. Through[19] our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be at the centre of the action.[20] However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become boring[21] when we forget to include human feelings.[22]

القصاصين (16)
يتعمق أكثر (17)
يتخيل (18)
من خلال (19)
في بؤرة الأحداث (20)
ممل (21)
مشاعر (22)

Digital footprints

(SB page 74)

Scientists[1] have discovered[2] human[3] footprints[4] in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as Olympic[5] athletes.[6] Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time.



The phrase[7] 'digital footprint'[8] describes all the information that we leave behind[9] when we use the internet. It includes things like our social media[10] profiles,[11] posts[12] and the photos[13] we upload[14], as well as[15] the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've shared[16].

Our search history[17] is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can remain[18] online for years, and the comments[19] that we make on videos can be seen by anyone.

Taha El-Sayed is an expert[20] in internet security[21]. He advises[22] people to do an internet search[23] for their own names to see what other people can find.

Check Vocabulary

العلماء (1)
يكتشف (2)
بشري (3)
آثار أقدام (4)
أوليمبي (5)
الرياضيون (6)
عبارة (7)
البصمة الرقمية - المسار الرقمي (8)
يَخلِف أثراً (9)
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي (10)
الملف اشخصي (11)
منشورات (12)
صور فوتوغرافية (13)
يرفع على الإنترنت (14)
بالإضافة إلي (15)
يشارك (16)
سجل البحث (17)
يبقي (18)
تعليقات (19)
خبير (20)
أمن (21)
ينصح (22)
بحث علي الإنترنت (23)

Then we're supposed[24] to remove[25] anything that we don't like, and we're encouraged[26] to close any social media accounts[27] that we don't use anymore.

He says that we have to be careful with[28] our behaviour[29] and try to be positive[30] online. When asked about advice for young people,[31] he said, "Think about how other people could react[32] to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information private[33] in social media."

He also warned[34] young people not to share addresses,[35] phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said, "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join a group online."

(24) يُفترَض
(25) يزيل
(26) يُشجع
(27) حسابات
(28) حريص علي
(29) سلوك
(30) إيجابي
(31) الشباب
(32) يتفاعل - يستجيب
(33) خاص - شخصي
(34) يُحذِّر
(35) عناوين

2 Listening Text



Losing a friend

(SB page 73)

Yasser : So, Hany posted a funny picture that he had taken last summer and we were all laughing at[1] it. Gamal was in it. He had fallen into a swimming pool with his clothes on. He looked very surprised, so I was making a few jokes[2] about it with Fady.

But when Gamal saw the jokes, he was angry. He said he'd only fallen into the pool to stop Hany's little[3] cousin, Amir, falling in. He had asked Hany to take a picture but it was wet[4] and he fell over. Gamal stopped him falling in, but then he fell instead.

Gamal wasn't hurt but he wasn't happy, so he asked Hany not to show anyone the picture. Hany had agreed,[5] but then he posted a lot of pictures from last summer and I guess[6] he'd forgotten about that one. So, now I think Gamal isn't my friend anymore.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يضحك علي
(2) يمزح
(3) صغير
(4) مبلل
(5) يوافق
(6) يُخمِّن - يظن

SECTION 3

Answers key

إجابات كتاب الشرح

Unit 1

Lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. c	2. b	3. c	4. a
5. a	6. c	7. d	8. c
9. a	10. a	11. d	12. b
13. a	14. c	15. b	16. d
17. a	18. b	19. a	20. b
21. a	22. a	23. b	24. c
25. d	26. c	27. d	28. b
29. b	30. d	31. c	32. a
33. d	34. c	35. b	36. d
37. b	38. c	39. a	40. b
41. c	42. d	43. a	44. c
45. b	46. b	47. a	48. a

General Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. a - e	2. b - d	3. a - c
4. a - c	5. a - e	6. d - e

MCQ : Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. c	3. a	4. a
5. d	6. b	7. c	8. c
9. b	10. c	11. a	12. b
13. b	14. d	15. d	16. d
17. b	18. a	19. c	20. d
21. a	22. b		

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)

1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d
5. c	6. d	7. c	

Mini Test (2)

1. b	2. a	3. d	4. c
5. a	6. b	7. d	

Mini Test (3)

1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a
5. c	6. d	7. b	8. d

Mini Test (4)

1. d	2. c	3. c	4. d
5. a	6. b	7. c	8. a
9. d			

Exercise on (Structures)

1. b	2. d	3. b	4. b
5. b	6. b	7. b	8. a
9. c	10. b	11. a	12. c
13. b	14. a	15. b	16. b
17. b	18. b	19. a	20. d
21. c	22. c	23. b	24. c
25. c	26. c		

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. b	2. c	3. a	4. b
5. a	6. b	7. b	8. d
9. a	10. b	11. b	12. c
13. a	14. d	15. c	16. b
17. a	18. c	19. b	20. d
21. a	22. a	23. d	24. b
25. c	26. b		

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. b - d	2. a - e	3. c - d
4. a - c	5. a - c	

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. b	3. b	4. c
5. c	6. a	7. c	8. b
9. a	10. c	11. d	12. b
13. c	14. d	15. b	16. b
17. a	18. d	19. c	20. b
21. a	22. c		

Exercise on (Structures)

1. b	2. c	3. c	4. a
5. b	6. b	7. b	8. b
9. c	10. b	11. b	12. a
13. a	14. d	15. d	16. c
17. b	18. d	19. d	20. b
21. b	22. d	23. c	24. a
25. d	26. b	27. b	28. b
29. d	30. d	31. b	32. b
33. a	34. b	35. a	36. b
37. b	38. c	39. a	40. b
41. d	42. c	43. a	44. b
45. d	46. b	47. a	48. b

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. d	2. c	3. c	4. b
5. d	6. a	7. d	8. c
9. b	10. d		

Exercises on (Language Hints)

1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b
5. a	6. d	7. b	8. d
9. a	10. c		

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم، وفي المستقبل غير البعيد سنتعامل مع جميع الأمراض لعلاجها وليس فقط للتحكم فيها.

٢. التغيُّر المناخي له آثار كارثية على مستقبل الحياة على الأرض، فإذا كانت آثار تغير المناخ تجعل بيئتنا معادية، فقد يتناقص عدد سكان بعض البلدان.

٣. وفقا للتقديرات، يعاني حوالي ٤٠٠ مليون مريض من مرض السكري في جميع أنحاء العالم. لسوء الحظ، لم تنجح جهود العلماء في إيجاد علاج لمرض السكري.

Translate into English:

1. Experts predict that the world population will increase to ten billion by the year 2100. This increase will necessarily require an increase in food production and the provision of more housing and services.
2. Certainly, the research teams are working to find effective treatments for diseases such as diabetes and arthritis, but this may take a long time to achieve and it will benefit future generations.
3. Some agricultural lands may turn into desert, which is known as desertification. This will result from drought and expected climate change.

Test on (Unit 1)

Part one

1. b - e	2. c - e	3. b - c	4. b - e
5. b	6. c	7. b	8. a
9. a	10. a	11. c	12. c
13. b	14. d	15. b	16. d
17. b	18. c	19. d	20. a
21. b	22. b	23. d	24. d
25. c	26. c		

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

يتكون جهاز المناعة من خلايا وأعضاء ، تحمينا من العدوى والأمراض، فهو الجيش هو الذي يتحمل مهمة الدفاع في جسم الإنسان.

2. Translate into English:

The traditional education is no longer suitable for the new generations and to keep pace with the continuous development in all areas of life, so the Ministry of Education started the modern system, especially in the secondary stage.

3. Writing :

Students' own answers

Unit 2

Lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. c	2. c	3. d	4. b
5. d	6. b	7. b	8. a
9. c	10. b	11. d	12. d
13. a	14. b	15. a	16. d
17. c	18. c	19. c	20. c
21. a	22. c	23. d	24. c
25. b	26. d	27. b	28. a
29. b	30. b	31. c	32. d
33. b	34. a	35. a	36. c
37. a	38. c	39. a	

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. a - e	2. b - d	3. a - c
4. c - e	5. d - e	

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. d	3. b	4. c
5. c	6. b	7. d	8. c
9. c	10. b	11. c	12. b
13. a	14. c	15. b	16. a
17. b	18. a	19. a	20. d
21. c	22. a	23. d	24. b
25. d	26. a	27. c	

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)

1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d

Mini Test (2)

1. c	2. d	3. b	4. d
5. a			

Mini Test (3)

1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. c
6. a	7. d	8. b	9. c	

Mini Test (4)

1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b

Mini Test (5)

1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d

Exercise on (Structures)

1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b
5. c	6. a	7. c	8. a
9. c	10. a	11. d	12. d
13. d	14. c	15. c	16. c
17. c	18. a	19. a	20. c
21. d	22. a	23. d	24. a
25. c	26. d		

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. b	2. b	3. d	4. a
5. c	6. b	7. c	8. d

9. a	10. d	11. d	12. c
13. b	14. c	15. d	16. a
17. b	18. d	19. b	20. c
21. a	22. c	23. d	24. b
25. a	26. a	27. d	28. d
29. d	30. b		

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. b - d	2. a - b	3. a - b
4. d - e	5. b - c	6. b - e

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. a	3. b	4. c
5. b	6. a	7. a	8. a
9. d	10. b	11. d	12. b
13. b	14. c	15. b	16. a
17. c			

Exercises on (Structures)

1. a	2. a	3. b	4. d
5. d	6. b	7. c	8. c
9. a	10. d	11. d	12. c
13. c	14. d	15. c	16. c
17. c	18. a	19. c	20. c
21. d	22. a	23. d	24. c
25. b	26. c	27. a	28. c
29. c	30. a	31. d	32. b
33. d	34. b	35. b	36. a
37. c	38. b	39. d	40. d
41. b	42. c	43. a	44. d
45. b	46. b	47. b	48. c
49. a	50. d		

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b

Exercises on (Language Hints)

1. d	2. b	3. a	4. b
5. c	6. a	7. c	8. a
9. d	10. b	11. c	

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. برغم أن الغابات مورداً رئيسياً للأكسجين، إلا أنه يتم تدميرها بمعدل لا يُصدَّق مما يُعتبر تهديداً للحياة على الأرض، فهي (الغابات) ليست فقط مصانع لإنتاج الأكسجين، لكنها تمتص حوالي ١٥٠ مليار طن من ثاني أكسيد الكربون كل عام.

٢. أنهت الحكومة المصرية من اعداد خطط إنشاء عاصمة إدارية جديدة لأنها الحل الوحيد لشوارع القاهرة المزدحمة، والعاصمة الجديدة ستكون موطناً لجميع الهيئات الحكومية، كما يجب أن نتحرك نحو اللامركزية.

٣. لقد أضافت العديد من الفرق الرياضية الشهيرة مؤخراً عضوًا جديدًا إلى منظوماتهم - أخصائي تغذية. وأصبح الرياضيون يدركون أن الطعام يؤثر على أدائهم، لهذا السبب يتناولون وجبات غذائية متوازنة تشمل الكربوهيدرات والبروتينات والدهون.

Translate into English:

1. All living beings contain genes that control everything related to them, such as the speed of growth, the general shape, and even the diseases that they can be infected with. These genes are very similar to the digital code of the living being.
2. The population in Egypt is constantly increasing, and this requires the reclamation of more desert lands. The greater the population is, the more there is a necessity to produce more food that meets their needs.
3. Many people are opposed to conducting any scientific experiments that aim at

interfering with the formation of human nature. This has been made clear in the great opposition to cloning of some living beings or even some humans using genetic engineering.

4. Invading (Reclaiming) the desert and turning it into a green land is our only hope for a better future for future generations. This is considered a safe alternative in order to increase food production for the population without the need to use genetic engineering that people fear its harms.

Test on (Unit 2)

Part one

1. a - b	2. a - e	3. c - d	4. b - e
5. d	6. c	7. b	8. a
9. b	10. b	11. d	12. b
13. b	14. a	15. b	16. b
17. b	18. c	19. a	20. d
21. a	22. b	23. c	24. b
25. c	26. d		

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic:**

يعد نقص الغذاء من أهم المشاكل التي يتوقع أن نواجهها في السنوات القادمة، لهذا السبب يتعيَّن علينا إيجاد حلول عاجلة قبل فوات الأوان.

2. **Translate into English:**

It is possible to maintain your health and fitness by eating the right foods in the right quantities. We should not forget the important role that sports play in maintaining health.

3. Writing : Student's own answer.

Unit 3

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. c	2. d	3. d	4. c
5. b	6. b	7. d	8. a
9. d	10. d	11. b	12. d
13. a	14. c	15. c	16. a
17. b	18. c	19. c	20. c
21. c	22. a	23. d	24. a
25. d	26. c	27. b	28. d
29. b	30. d	31. b	32. c
33. b	34. a	35. a	36. d
37. c	38. a	39. d	

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. b - e	2. b - c	3. a - d
4. c - e	5. a - d	6. b - e
7. b - d	8. c - d	9. b - e
10. a - d		

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. a	3. c	4. a
5. d	6. b	7. a	8. a
9. d	10. c	11. b	12. a
13. b	14. d	15. c	16. c
17. a	18. b	19. d	20. b
21. a	22. a	23. a	24. b
25. c			

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)

1. c	2. d	3. c	4. b
5. a	6. b	7. a	8. d

Mini Test (2)

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b
6. c 7. a

Mini Test (3)

1. c 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. b

Mini Test (4)

1. d 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. d

Exercises on (Structures)

1. a	2. d	3. d	4. d
5. d	6. a	7. c	8. b
9. a	10. a	11. c	12. a
13. c	14. a	15. a	16. b
17. c	18. c	19. b	20. b
21. d	22. d		

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. a	2. b	3. d	4. b
5. c	6. a	7. b	8. b
9. d	10. c	11. c	12. c
13. d	14. b	15. a	16. d
17. c	18. b	19. c	20. a
21. d	22. c	23. b	24. b
25. a	26. d	27. d	28. b
29. c	30. c	31. c	32. b
33. c	34. d		

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. b - d 2. b - c 3. b - c
4. d - c 5. a - b 6. c - d
7. c - d 8. a - c

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. b	3. b	4. d
5. b	6. c	7. c	8. c
9. a	10. b	11. a	12. c
13. d	14. c	15. d	

Exercises on (Structures)

1. d	2. a	3. a	4. d
5. c	6. b	7. a	8. b
9. a	10. a	11. b	12. b
13. b	14. c	15. b	16. c
17. b	18. a	19. b	20. c
21. a	22. a	23. b	24. d
25. b	26. c	27. a	28. c
29. a	30. d	31. a	32. d
33. a	34. d	35. b	36. a
37. c	38. c	39. b	40. d
41. a	42. c	43. d	44. b
45. c	46. d	47. a	48. b

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. a	2. a	3. d	4. a
5. b	6. d	7. c	8. a
9. d	10. c		

Exercises on (Language Hints)

1. d	2. c	3. d	4. a
5. b	6. d	7. d	8. c
9. b	10. a		

Translate into Arabic:

١. إن نهر النيل ، والذي يمنحنا الحياة ، يتم التعامل معه بقدر كبير من القسوة. ففي بعض الأحيان يتم تلويث النهر بشكل متعمد وأحيانًا من قبيل الإهمال.

٢. ليس الماء هو الشيء الوحيد الذي يمنحنا إياه نهر النيل، ففي السابق كانت مياه النيل تستخدم لتخصيب التربة على ضفافه.

٣. إن الأمانة واحدة من أهم سمات التاجر، لذا يجب تغريم أولئك الذين يبيعون الطعام الذي يتجاوز تاريخ انتهاء صلاحيته.

٤. من الأفضل دائمًا شراء الطعام من متجر موثوق به حيث يمكنك أن تضمن أن طعامك لذيذ وصحي في نفس الوقت.

٥. يوجد الآن منظمات لسلامة الأغذية تهدف إلى التأكد من أن جميع الأطعمة التي تشتريها صالحة لتناولها.

٦. قد تحتوي ملصقات الطعام على قائمة بمكوناته لكي تعرف ما إذا كانت طبيعية أو اصطناعية.

Translate into English:

1. Health is a crown on the heads of healthy people, which is seen only by patients. So, you must be careful to have healthy food and clean water in order to remain healthy.
2. Meat should be well cooked so as not to cause any damage. Bacteria and germs in meat need a high temperature to get rid of them.
3. Experts say there are three bases for good health: proper food, regular exercise and adequate sleep every day.
4. The lack of exploitation of the population increase is one of the biggest problems facing us as Egyptians. The more population there is in Egypt, the less share of national income and services everyone gets.
5. We must rationalize the use of water so that we do not face thirst in the future. The whole world is in danger of scarcity of fresh water sources.

Test on (Unit 3)

Part one

1. a - c	2. a - e	3. c - e	4. a - d
5. b	6. c	7. d	8. a
9. a	10. b	11. a	12. b
13. a	14. c	15. b	16. d
17. c	18. a	19. c	20. b
21. d	22. b	23. a	24. c
25. c	26. b		

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic:

يعد نقص الغذاء من أخطر المشكلات التي تهدد العالم وتسبب المجاعة في كثير من البلدان، ويجب على جميع الناس العمل بجد لإيجاد حلول لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

2. Translate into English:

Underground water in the Western Desert could be used to convert it into cultivated land, which in turn would provide job opportunities for citizens and help reduce imports and increase exports.

3 Writing : Student's own answer.

Unit 4

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. d	2. c	3. c	4. d
5. d	6. a	7. c	8. a
9. b	10. a	11. c	12. b
13. d	14. d	15. b	16. a
17. d	18. a	19. d	20. b
21. c	22. a	23. c	24. d
25. c	26. a	27. b	28. c
29. d	30. a	31. b	32. c
33. a	34. b	35. c	36. c
37. b	38. a	39. c	40. b
41. b	42. d		

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. c - e	2. a - b	3. a - d
4. b - e	5. a - c	6. b - c
7. d - e	8. d - e	9. a - b
10. a - b		

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. a
5. c	6. d	7. a	8. c
9. a	10. d	11. b	12. c
13. a	14. a	15. b	16. b
17. b	18. c	19. c	

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)

1. a	2. b	3. d	4. d
5. c	6. c		

Mini Test (2)

1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. b
6. b	7. a			

Mini Test (3)

1. c	2. b	3. b	4. d	5. c
6. a	7. c	8. d	9. c	
10. a				

Mini Test (4)

1. c	2. d	3. d	4. b	5. c

Mini Test (5)

1. b	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. c
6. d	7. c			

Exercises on (Structures)

1. b	2. c	3. c	4. c
5. b	6. a	7. d	8. b
9. b	10. b	11. b	12. c
13. c	14. b	15. a	16. a
17. b	18. b	19. d	20. c
21. d	22. c	23. c	24. a
25. b			

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. d	2. a	3. b	4. a
5. c	6. c	7. c	8. b
9. b	10. a	11. d	12. c
13. b	14. b	15. a	16. a
17. d	18. b	19. c	20. d
21. a	22. b	23. c	24. a
25. a	26. a	27. a	28. c
29. d	30. a	31. d	32. b
33. b	34. b	35. b	36. a
37. a	38. c	39. c	40. d
41. a	42. d		

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. b - d	2. a - b	3. b - c
4. c - e	5. b - d	6. b - d
7. b - c	8. a - d	9. c - e
10. b - e	11. a - c	

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. d	3. b	4. c
5. a	6. c	7. b	8. a
9. c	10. a	11. c	

Exercises on (Structures)

1. b	2. a	3. c	4. a
5. c	6. b	7. d	8. d
9. b	10. c	11. b	12. d
13. d	14. b	15. a	16. c
17. c	18. c	19. d	20. d
21. b	22. a	23. d	24. d
25. c	26. c	27. b	28. b
29. a	30. b	31. c	32. d
33. c	34. a	35. c	36. d
37. c	38. b	39. d	40. b
41. d	42. b	43. b	44. c
45. d	46. a	47. c	48. a
49. b	50. c	51. d	52. c

53. d	54. b	55. c	56. d
57. c	58. d	59. d	60. a
61. a			

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. b	2. d	3. b	4. a
5. a	6. c	7. d	8. b
9. b	10. c	11. d	

Exercises on (Language Hints)

1. a	2. b	3. d	4. d
5. b	6. a	7. b	8. d
9. d	10. c	11. a	12. b

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. من المعروف أن التواصل هو مفتاح النجاح الشخصي والمهني، وهذا يجعل من الضروري للجميع تطوير مهارات التواصل الخاصة بهم.

٢. إن مهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورية لأداء الكثير من الأعمال في الوقت الحالي، وإنك تحتاج أيضًا إلى معرفة كيفية استخدام مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي بأفضل طريقة ممكنة.

٣. لقد حققت مصر تقدما كبيرا في مختلف مجالات الصناعة والتعليم والتكنولوجيا الحديثة، والآن هي على طريق التطوير التعليمي.

Translate into English:

1. Language evolves at the same speed as scientific and technological development. New inventions have created new vocabulary, and social networks have led to the rapid transmission of vocabulary from one language to another:
2. Nearly twenty years ago, the mobile phone was considered a major revolution in the world of communication. This revolution is still going on and it brings us new things every day in the world of digital communication.
3. New generations of smartphones allow high-quality video calls through the fast internet networks that have spread all over the world.

Test on (Unit 4)

Part one

1. b - c	2. d - e	3. a - e	4. b - c
5. d	6. c	7. d	8. a
9. b	10. b	11. b	12. b
13. a	14. c	15. d	16. b
17. c	18. b	19. b	20. c
21. b	22. d	23. a	24. c
25. d	26. a		

Part two

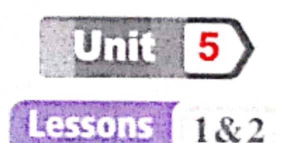
1. **Translate into Arabic:**

تهدف مبادرة «حياة كريمة» إلى رفع المستوى المعيشي لمن يعانون من مصاعب الحياة.

2. **Translate into English:**

Some people believe that electronic books and newspapers will lead to the disappearance of paper books and newspapers, as electronic newspapers are less expensive and spread faster and are updated all the time.

3. Writing : Student's own answer.



Unit 5

Lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. b	2. c	3. a	4. b
5. d	6. c	7. c	8. b
9. b	10. c	11. c	12. a
13. d	14. c	15. d	16. a
17. b	18. b	19. c	20. b

21. b 22. c 23. b 24. a
25. c 26. a 27. a 28. a
29. c 30. d 31. b 32. a
33. a 34. c 35. a 36. d
37. d 38. a 39. c 40. d
41. a 42. d 43. c 44. b
45. c 46. d 47. d 48. a

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. d - e 2. b - c 3. a - d
4. b - e 5. a - e 6. b - e
7. a - c 8. b - d 9. a - c
10. b - d 11. c - e 12. a - c
13. a - c

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a
5. c 6. b 7. a 8. b
9. a 10. a 11. a 12. d
13. b 14. a 15. c 16. a
17. b 18. d 19. c 20. d
21. c 22. b 23. d 24. c
25. b 26. a 27. c

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)
1. b 2. c 3. a

Mini Test (2)
1. d 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. c
6. b 7. c

Mini Test (3)
1. d 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. d
6. b 7. c

Mini Test (4)
1. b 2. a 3. d

Mini Test (5)
1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. b
6. d 7. c

Mini Test (6)
1. b 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. c
6. b 7. d

Exercises on (Structures)

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d
5. d 6. a 7. c 8. b
9. b

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. a 2. a 3. d 4. b
5. c 6. a 7. d 8. a
9. b 10. a 11. a 12. c
13. d 14. d 15. a 16. b
17. c 18. b 19. b 20. d
21. a 22. d 23. c 24. c
25. a 26. d 27. b 28. c
29. b 30. c 31. d 32. a

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. a - c 2. b - e 3. b - c
4. a - c 5. b - e 6. b - c
7. b - c 8. d - e 9. a - b

MCQ : Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d :

1. d 2. b 3. b 4. d
5. c 6. b 7. c 8. c
9. a 10. b

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)
1. c 2. b 3. c 4. d

Mini Test (2)
1. a 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. b
6. a 7. c 8. d 9. b 10. b

Exercises on (Structures)

1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b
5. a	6. b	7. c	8. d
9. b	10. b	11. b	12. a
13. a	14. b	15. b	16. c
17. c	18. a	19. c	20. d
21. c	22. a	23. b	24. c
25. a	26. d	27. a	28. d
29. c	30. d	31. c	32. d
33. d	34. d	35. d	36. c
37. b	38. b	39. b	40. b
41. c	42. d	43. c	44. b
45. b	46. a	47. a	48. d
49. d	50. c	51. c	52. c
53. b	54. c	55. a	56. c
57. d	58. c	59. d	60. b
61. a	62. d	63. c	64. a
65. d	66. c	67. d	68. b
69. c			

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. d	2. c	3. c	4. d
5. b	6. a	7. c	8. a
9. b	10. c	11. c	

Exercises on (Language Hints)

1. d	2. a	3. d	4. b
5. a	6. a	7. c	8. d
9. b	10. d		

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. عند تكوين صداقات على مواقع الشبكات الاجتماعية، يمكنك فقط معرفة ما يريد هؤلاء الأصدقاء أن تعرفه عنهم، واقعهم قد يكون مختلفاً تماماً عن الشخصية التي يظهرون بها على الإنترنت.

٢. لم يعد التواصل مع الآخرين أمرًا صعبًا، باستخدام مواقع الشبكات الاجتماعية يمكنك التواصل مع الأصدقاء والأشخاص الآخرين أينما كانوا وقتما تشاء.

٣. الدردشة مع أشخاص آخرين على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي تساعد أحيانًا على إعطاء الشباب الثقة. الأمر السيئ هو أن الأصدقاء عبر الإنترنت يمكنهم تقمُّص شخصيات تجعلهم يبدون أفضل مما هم عليه في الواقع.

٤. كن حذراً بخصوص وضع بياناتك الشخصية على الإنترنت لأنه قد يراها أي شخص، وقد يستخدم بعض الأشخاص الأشرار أو مواقع الويب هذه التفاصيل لإلحاق الأذى بك أو حتى خداع الآخرين.

Translate into English:

1. Internet chatting can be of great benefit if it is used to exchange useful information and help others succeed in their lives or even share their feelings with others.
2. Parents must monitor their children's use of social media. There are some destructive sites that destroy young people's ideas and motivate them to adopt extremist ideas that represents a danger to society as a whole.
3. Social media has many advantages and has some disadvantages, so everyone should benefit from all that is positive and avoid all negative things that are mentally or healthily harmful.
4. Modern technology must be used in a way that benefits the individual and the society, but using it only as a means of entertainment and wasting time is considered a negative matter that leads to killing the desire to work and achieve.

Test on (Unit 5)

Part one

1. b - d	2. d - e	3. c - d	4. a - e
5. a	6. d	7. d	8. a
9. d	10. d	11. d	12. c
13. b	14. c	15. d	16. b
17. a	18. b	19. b	20. c
21. b	22. d	23. a	24. b
25. d	26. c		

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic:

إن اليقظة ضرورية لأي شخص يستخدم الإنترنت لأنها تقلل من التنمر الإلكتروني، لذلك يجب أن تحافظ على سرية كلمة مرورك وكذلك بياناتك الشخصية.

2. Translate into English:

Companies aim to increase their sales through targeted advertisements on social media and through billboards in the streets.

3. Writing : Student's own answer.



Unit 6

Lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. a	2. b	3. a	4. c
5. d	6. c	7. a	8. b
9. b	10. c	11. d	12. b
13. c	14. c	15. b	16. a
17. d	18. c	19. b	20. a
21. c	22. b	23. b	24. b
25. a	26. c	27. d	

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. a - e	2. b - e	3. a - b
4. b - e	5. c - d	6. a - b
7. c - d	8. a - d	9. b - e

MCQ : Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. a	3. c	4. d
5. b	6. c	7. c	8. d
9. a	10. b	11. b	12. c
13. d	14. b		

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)

1. d	2. a	3. b	4. c

Mini Test (2)

1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. a
6. c				

Mini Test (3)

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. a	5. a
6. d	7. b	8. c	9. b	10. d

Mini Test (4)

1. c	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. b
6. a	7. d	8. a		

Exercises on (Structures)

1. a	2. a	3. a	4. d
5. c	6. a	7. a	8. d
9. d	10. b	11. d	12. c
13. a	14. c	15. a	16. a
17. d	18. b	19. d	20. c

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. a	2. b	3. b	4. c
5. c	6. d	7. b	8. a
9. b	10. a	11. a	12. a
13. d	14. d	15. c	16. a
17. c	18. c	19. d	20. d
21. b	22. a	23. b	24. a

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

MRQ : Choose the Two correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. c - e	2. a - d	3. c - e
4. a - e	5. b - c	6. b - e
7. a - b		

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d
5. a	6. b	7. b	8. b
9. c	10. d	11. b	12. c
13. c	14. c	15. c	16. c
17. c			

Language (Mini Tests)

Mini Test (1)

1. c 2. b 3. b 4. d

Mini Test (2)

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b
6. c 7. a 8. d 9. c 10. b

Mini Test (3)

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. b
5. a 6. d 7. b 8. c

Exercise on (Language)

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. d
5. b 6. a 7. d 8. a
9. b 10. b 11. b 12. b
13. c 14. d 15. d 16. b
17. c 18. a 19. d 20. d
21. d 22. b 23. b 24. c
25. b 26. b 27. c 28. b
29. c 30. d 31. d 32. a
33. d 34. b 35. b 36. a
37. c 38. d 39. b 40. c
41. c 42. b 43. d 44. b
45. b 46. c 47. d 48. c
49. c 50. b 51. b 52. d
53. c 54. a 55. c 56. a
57. c 58. b

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. c
5. a 6. d 7. b 8. c
9. c

(Grammatical Hints)

1. d 2. b 3. d 4. b
5. c 6. b 7. a 8. c
9. a 10. c

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. نحن نتاج ماضينا، لكن لا يجب أن نكون أسرى له. فلا تدع أخطاء الماضي تسيطر على حياتك اعثر وابحث لنفسك دائمًا عن بداية جديدة ومعها سيكون هناك أمل جديد.

٢. لقد قيل دائمًا أن الفشل مفيد، والشخص الذكي حقًا يتعلم من إخفاقاته بقدر ما يتعلم من نجاحاته.

٣. ما نعتبره خطأ أو فشلًا هو في الواقع هدية. ففي النهاية نجد أن الدروس المستفادة من تلك التجربة المحبطة تثبت أنها ذات قيمة كبيرة.

Translate into English:

1. It is natural, and sometimes useful, for a person to make some mistakes, for those mistakes are the best teacher of man. The lessons that we learn from our mistakes are never forgotten.
2. Do not stop too much at your mistakes. What happened cannot be changed because the clock hands do not turn back. Just turn the page and start over.
3. Life is the largest school in which we learn in a practical way. Every situation we pass through leaves an indelible mark on us because it has become part of our life experiences that benefit us in one way or another.

Test on (Unit 6)

Part one

1. c - d 2. a - c 3. b - c 4. a - e
5. d 6. c 7. d 8. c
9. a 10. a 11. b 12. b
13. c 14. c 15. b 16. c
17. c 18. d 19. c 20. a
21. a 22. c 23. b 24. a
25. a 26. d

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic:**

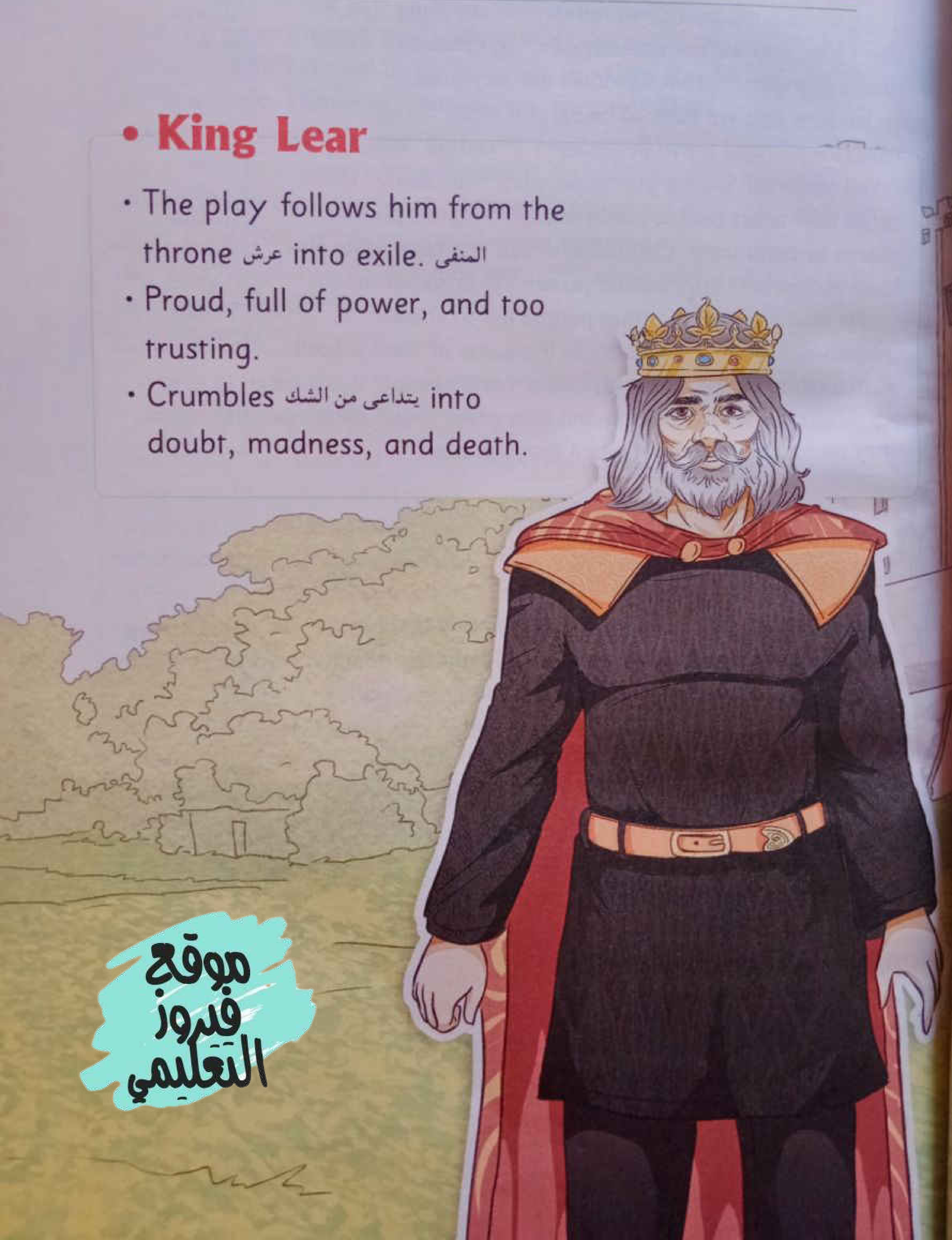
نحن في حاجة ماسة لثورة ضد السلوك السيئ، فيجب علينا حقاً أن نرفض أي سلوك غريب ونحاول تعديله.

2. **Translate into English:**

Many people fear beginnings in everything they do. Beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.

3. Writing : Student's own answer.

King Lear



• King Lear

- The play follows him from the throne عرش into exile. المنفى
- Proud, full of power, and too trusting.
- Crumbles يتداعى من الشك into doubt, madness, and death.

Characters in the play

شخصيات المسرحية

• Edmund

- Schemes against يتآمر ضد his brother Edgar and betrays يخون his father.
- Killed by his virtuous brother, Edgar.



• Edgar

- Loyal but naive. ساذج
- Banished تم نفيه by his father because of his brother's scheme. مؤامرة
- Disguises himself as Poor Tom.
- Loyally cares for his father.
- Gets revenge on يثأر من Edmund.



• Earl of Gloucester

- Older nobleman; loyal to King Lear.
- Father of Edgar and Edmund.
- Deceived and betrayed by Edmund.



• Cordelia



- King Lear's good daughter
- Marries the King of France.
- Loyal to her father until the end.

• Goneril



- A true villain شريرة
- Erodes her father's loyalty and position.
- Married to the Duke of Albany.
- Has an affair with Edmund.
- Poisons تضع السم her sister and stabs تطعن نفسها herself.

• Regan

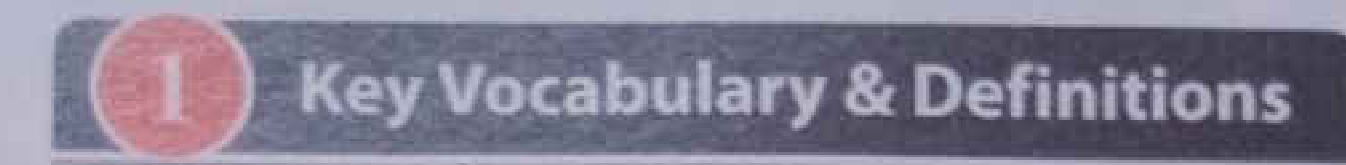


- A true villain like her sister.
- Kills a servant who tries to save Gloucester.
- Poisoned by her sister.

ACT I Scene I

الفصل الأول - المشهد الأول





1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

Duke	الدوق (لقب إنجليزى)	choice	اختيار
kingdom	مملكة	riches	ثروة
duty	واجب	third	ثلث / الثالث
title	لقب / عنوان	beauty	جمال
foolish	أحمق / سخيف / مغفل	sword	سيف
forests	غابات	divide into	يقسم على
describe	يصف	cruel	قاسى
power	سلطة / قوة	your majesty	جلالتك
honestly	بأمانة	shout	يصيح
stranger	شخص غريب	speech	حديث

Words and their definitions

- **character** : A person that an actor plays. شخصية (فى فيلم أو مسرحية ... إلخ)
- **play (noun)** : A piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre. مسرحية
- **scene** : A small part of a play which happens in one place. مشهد (فى مسرحية)
- **act (noun)** : A larger part of a play. فصل (فى مسرحية)
- **sword** : A weapon with a long, sharp metal blade. سيف
- **beauty** : Something that looks nice and attractive. جمال
- **title** : An official name of a job. لقب
- **riches** : A lot of money or things. ثروة - أموال طائلة
- **kingdom** : A country that has a king or a queen. مملكة
- **foolish** : Not sensible or clever. أحمق / غبى
- **divide (into)** : To separate something into two or more parts. يُقسم
- **duty** : Something you do because it is right or part of your job. واجب

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

pleased to meet someone	مسرور لمقابلة شخصاً ما	keep the title of	يحافظ على لقب
ask someone to marry you	يطلب الزواج من ...	divide something into two	يقسم شئ لجزئين

make someone happy	يجعل (شخصًا) سعيدًا	give an answer to a question	يعطى إجابة لسؤال
give your country away	تضيع بلدك / دولتك	put my feelings in words	أعبر عن مشاعرى بالكلمات
do a terrible thing	تقوم بفعل شنيع	say goodbye to	يودع



2 Text & Analysis

Act I Scene i

[In King Lear's palace.]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER : Ah, the Duke of Kent! Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT : I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER : I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND : I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND : Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR : Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia, I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom, I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most ? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL : Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty and riches.

CORDELIA : *[To herself.]* I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR : *[Pointing to the map.]* Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say ?

REGAN : Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA : *[To herself.]* What can I say ? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR : Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children, *[To Cordelia.]* Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters ?

CORDELIA : I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR : Nothing ? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA : I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

KING LEAR : But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA : You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you, too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too ? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

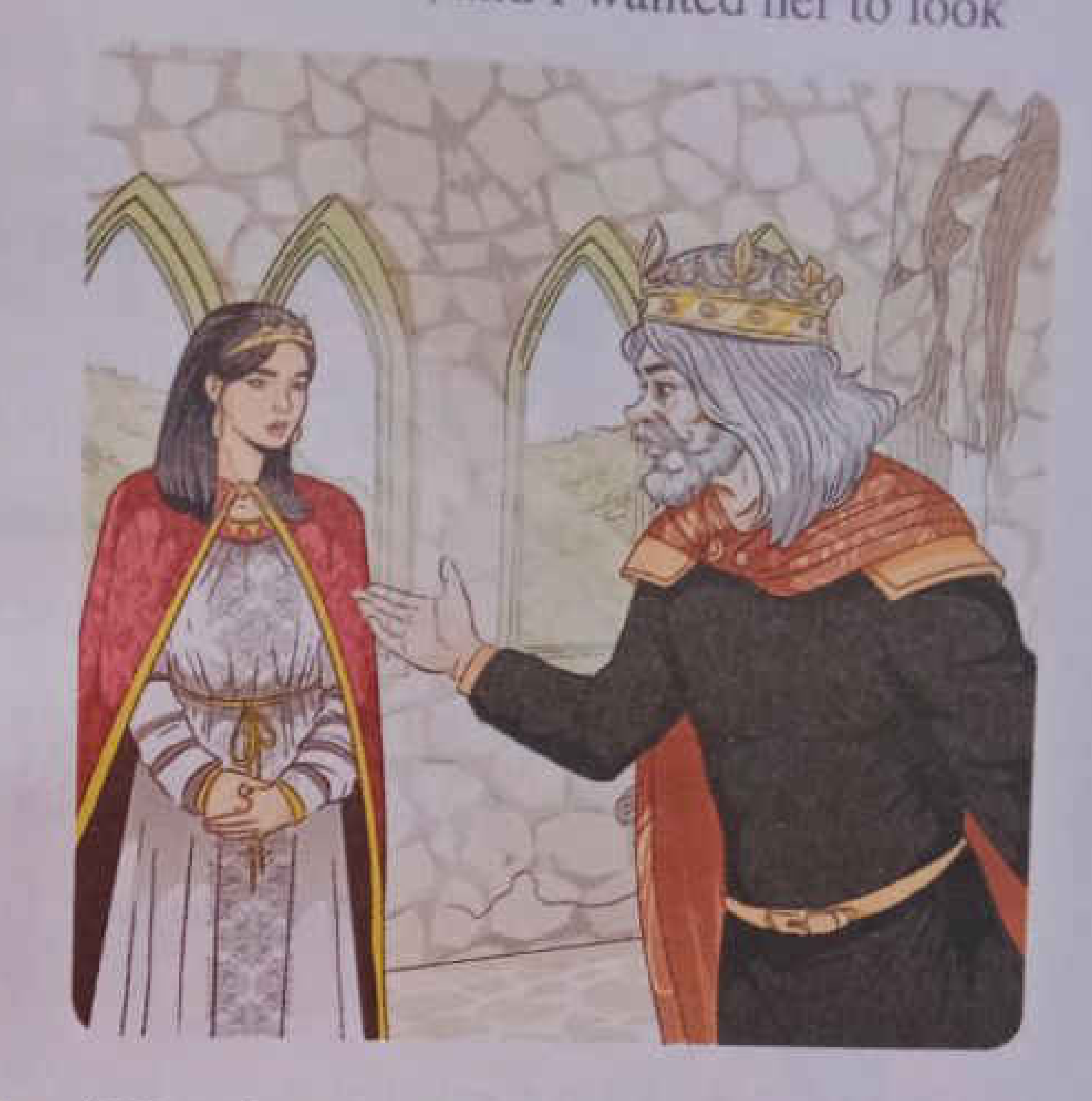
KING LEAR : Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

CORDELIA : Father, I am young but I am honest.

KING LEAR : Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.

KENT : But your majesty ...

KING LEAR : Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say : Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king.



All I want is to keep the title of King, but they will have everything else.

KENT : Your majesty, what do you mean ? I must speak honestly when my King is being foolish. Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away like this.

KING LEAR : Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT : I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR : Then you must go away too ! Leave!

KENT : Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.

KING LEAR : Oh, you are a cruel man!

*[He puts his hand on his **sword**]*

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL : Your majesty, please stop!

KENT : I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.

KING LEAR : Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!

KENT : Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.

[To Cordelia] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.

[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

GLOUCESTER : Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

KING LEAR : Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia ?

(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY : Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

KING LEAR : I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.

BURGUNDY : I don't understand.

KING LEAR : You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.

BURGUNDY : I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR : Then leave her, sir.

CORDELIA : Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

KING LEAR : *[To the King of France.]* So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(KING OF) FRANCE : But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA : *[To King Lear.]* Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR : I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

FRANCE : My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.
[To the King.] Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR : She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again.
[To Cordelia.] Leave now, without my love.
Come with me, Burgundy. *[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]*



Exercises

on Vocabulary from

Act I Scene I

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. Every citizen should know his rights and ....
   a. duties b. exercises c. mistakes d. practices
2. Cutting down .... is a reason for the global warming phenomenon.
   a. factories b. forests c. investments d. resorts
3. Egypt is full of .... , but we don't make the best use of them.
   a. injuries b. accidents c. earthquakes d. riches
4. Parents do their best to .... their children happy.
   a. do b. save c. support d. make
5. Can you .... me an answer to this question, please ?
   a. have b. get c. give d. spell
6. The old man gave each of his three children a/an .... of his money.
   a. third b. half c. eighth d. inch

Definitions

7. A/An .... means a person that an actor plays.
   a. audience b. character c. author d. writer
8. A piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre means a/an ....
   a. event b. novel c. occasion d. play
9. A/An .... means a small part of a play which happens in one place.
   a. scene b. chapter c. act d. actor
10. A weapon with long, sharp metal blade and a handle is called a/an ....
    a. dagger b. arrow c. sword d. armour
11. .... means something that looks nice and attractive.
    a. Beauty b. Happiness c. Democracy d. Violence
12. An official name of a job means a/an ....
    a. inspector b. title c. director d. address
13. A/An .... means a larger part of a play.
    a. scene b. action c. tale d. act

ACT I

Scene I, continued & scene II

الفصل الاول - باقى المشهد الاول والمشهد الثانى





1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

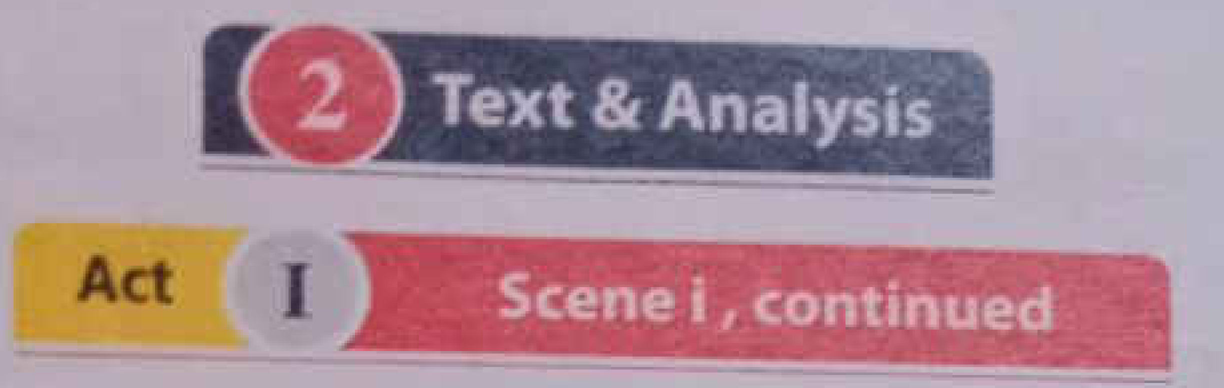
deserve	يستحق	forgive	يسامح
planning	تخطيط	immediately	فورًا / فى الحال
old age	الشيخوخة	respect	يحترم/احترام
decision	قرار	loyalty	ولاء / إخلاص
palace	قصر	income	دخل / إيراد
anger	غضب	serious	خطير/ جاد
succeed	ينجح	truth	حقيقة
inheritance	إرث	discuss	يناقش
lie	يكذب	adult	بالغ
deceive	يخدع	exit	يخرج
trust	يثق/ثقة	enter	يدخل
beat	يهزم		

Words and their definitions

- **adult** : A fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions. بالغ سن الرشد
- **deceive** : To make someone believes something that is not true. يخدع
- **deserve** : It is right for someone to have something because of the way they have behaved or because what they are. يستحق
- **inheritance** : The money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died. إرث / ميراث
- **income** : Money received, especially on a regular basis, for work or through investments. دخل / إيراد
- **loyalty** : A strong feeling of support or allegiance. وفاء / ولاء
- **trust** : To believe in the reliability, truth, or ability of someone. يثق بـ

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

my heart is broken	تحطم قلبى	keep our money from us	يمنع عنا المال
become a little mad	يصاب بالجنون قليلًا		
send ... away	يبعد / يطرد	in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة
take good care of	يعتنى جيدًا بـ	test his loyalty	يختبر ولائه



2 Text & Analysis

Act I Scene i, continued

[In King Lear's Palace.]

FRANCE : Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

CORDELIA : Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL : Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN : Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.

CORDELIA : I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember : everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE : Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL : Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN : I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL : Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.

REGAN : He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL : Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

REGAN : He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

GONERIL : Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.

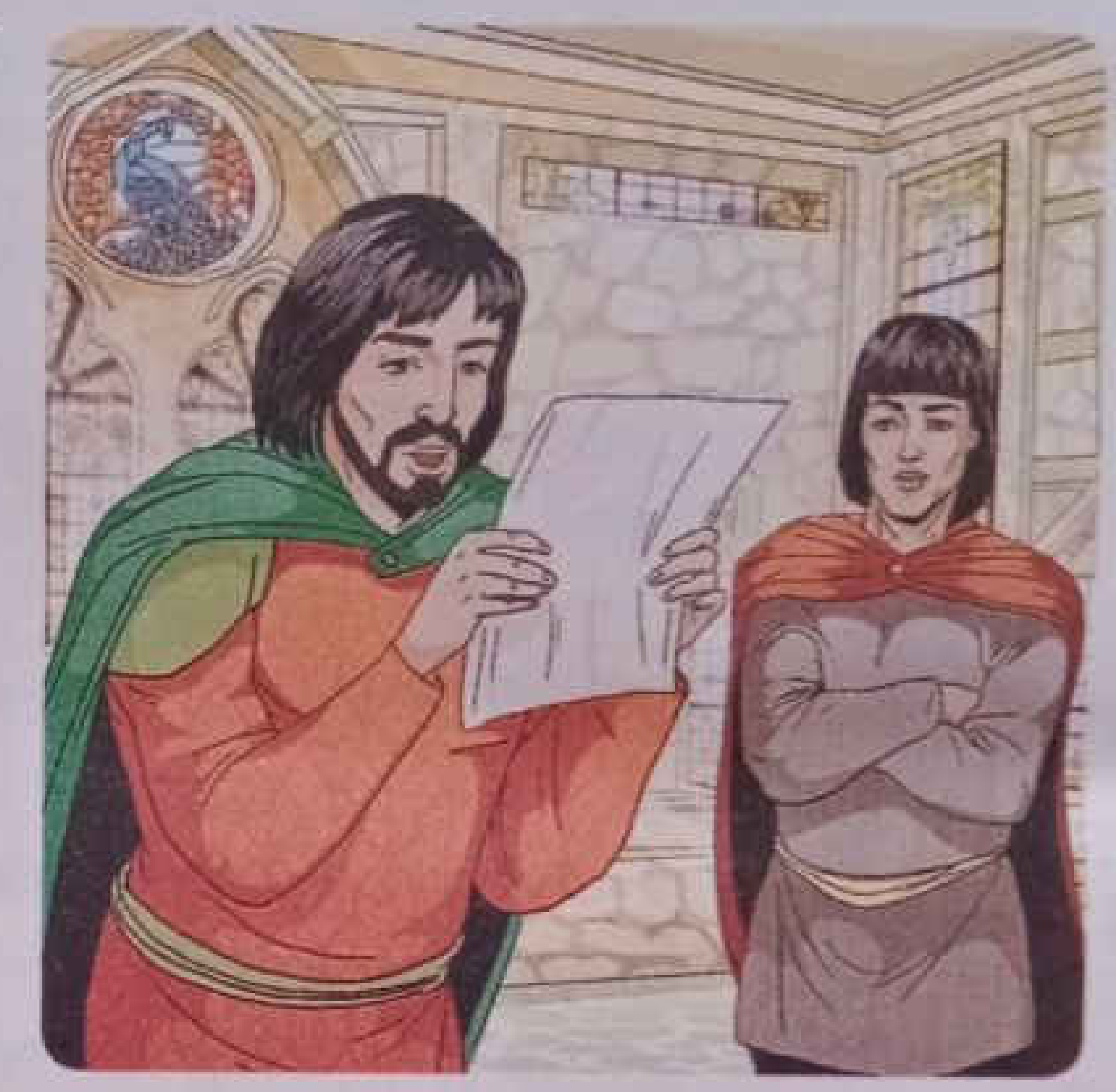
REGAN : You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL : We must do something, and quickly.

Act I Scene ii

[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]

EDMUND : My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son ? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land.



Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds, then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER : Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND : Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER : Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it ?

EDMUND : Nothing, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Then, why did you hide it in your pocket ? Let me see it.

EDMUND : Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER : Let me see that!

EDMUND : OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family,

GLOUCESTER : *[Reads the letter.]*

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his income, and be loved by your brother Edgar."

Did my son Edgar write this letter ? When did you receive this ? Who brought it ?

EDMUND : It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER : Are you sure the writing is your brother's ?

EDMUND : Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

GLOUCESTER : Has he ever talked to you about this before ?



EDMUND : No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER : Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he ?

EDMUND : I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER : Do you really think so ?

EDMUND : Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER : My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

EDMUND : I'll go and find him immediately.

GLOUCESTER : Find him, Edmund, and be careful.

(to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.

[Gloucester exits. Edgar enters.]

EDMUND : Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you ? When did you last see our father ?

EDGAR : I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND : And did you talk to him?

EDGAR : Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND : Did you say anything unkind to him ? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR : Really? Then somebody has lied about me.

EDMUND : That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR : My sword ? But why ?

EDMUND : That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits]

EDMUND : My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.



[Edmund exits.]

Exercises

on Vocabulary from Act I Scene I & Scene II

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. My heart is ………… because of violence crimes against children.
   a. broken b. spoken c. taken d. shaken
2. We all took a good care ………… my grandfather when he suffered from coronavirus disease.
   a. with b. in c. on d. of
3. After breaking his father's valuable mobile, he ………… to be punished by staying at home at the weekend.
   a. discussed b. deserved c. described d. reserved
4. He was ………… away from the playground because of his bad behaviour.
   a. done b. spent c. sent d. lent
5. Most people suffer from their weak ………… , especially in the increasing living costs.
   a. duties b. incomes c. tasks d. rights
6. It's important to ………… , but the most important is to get high marks to join a good university.
   a. succeed b. fail c. fall d. test
7. Do you think Mahmoud Metwaly's injury is ………… ? He was taken to hospital after the match.
   a. funny b. true c. serious d. broken

Definitions

8. A/An ………… means a fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions.
   a. teenager b. baby c. adolescent d. adult
9. To make someone believe something that is not true means to ………… him / her.
   a. employ b. include c. deceive d. create
10. ………… means the money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died.
    a. Inheritance b. Expectation c. Tolerance d. Intention
11. A strong feeling of support or allegiance means ………… .
    a. responsibility b. loyalty c. creativity d. popularity

ACT I Scene III & scene IV

الفصل الأول - المشهد الثالث والرابع



1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

disguise	يتنكر	hold his head	يمسك برأسه (من الألم)
servant	خادم	give away	يتخلص من / يستغنى عن
behave	يتصرف	encourage	يشجع
behaviour	سلوك	wise	حكيم / عاقل
rude	وقح	surprised	مندهش
Fool	مهرج / مُضحك	attendant	نادل / خادم (فى مكان عام)
	الملك (فى القصر)	mad	مجنون
prepare	يجهز / يعد	cart	عربة تجرها الخيول
guilty	مذنب	attack	يهاجم / هجوم
get angry about	يغضب بشأن		

Words and their definitions

- **guilty** : Feeling ashamed because you have done something you know that is wrong or you haven't done something you should have done. مذنب
- **servant** : A person who works in another person's house, and cooks, cleans, etc. for them. خادم
- **disguise** : To change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you. يتنكر
- **attendant** : A person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place. نادل / خادم
- **behave** : To do things in a particular way. يتصرف / يسلك
- **behaviour** : The way that someone behaves, especially towards other people. سلوك / تصرف
- **attack** : To use violence to try to hurt or kill someone. يهاجم
- **wise** : To be able to make sensible decisions and give good advice because of the experience and knowledge that you have. حكيم

ACT I

1 Some phrases : بعض العبارات اللغوية

the cart is pulling a horse	الأمور ليست فى وضعها الصحيح	have a taste of her own medicine	تجنى ثمار ما زرعت
disguise yourself	تنكر (فى الشكل)	attack (someone)	يهاجم (شخص)
behave badly	يتصرف بشكل سئ	encourage (someone) to do (something)	يشجع شخص ما على (شيء ما)
get angry about	يغضب بشأن	work hard for	يعمل بجد من أجل
be guilty of (something)	يذنب بشأن ...	make a problem	يتسبب فى مشكلة
		solve a problem	يحل مشكلة

2 Text & Analysis

Act I Scene iii

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald.]

GONERIL : Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant ?

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD : He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL : Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

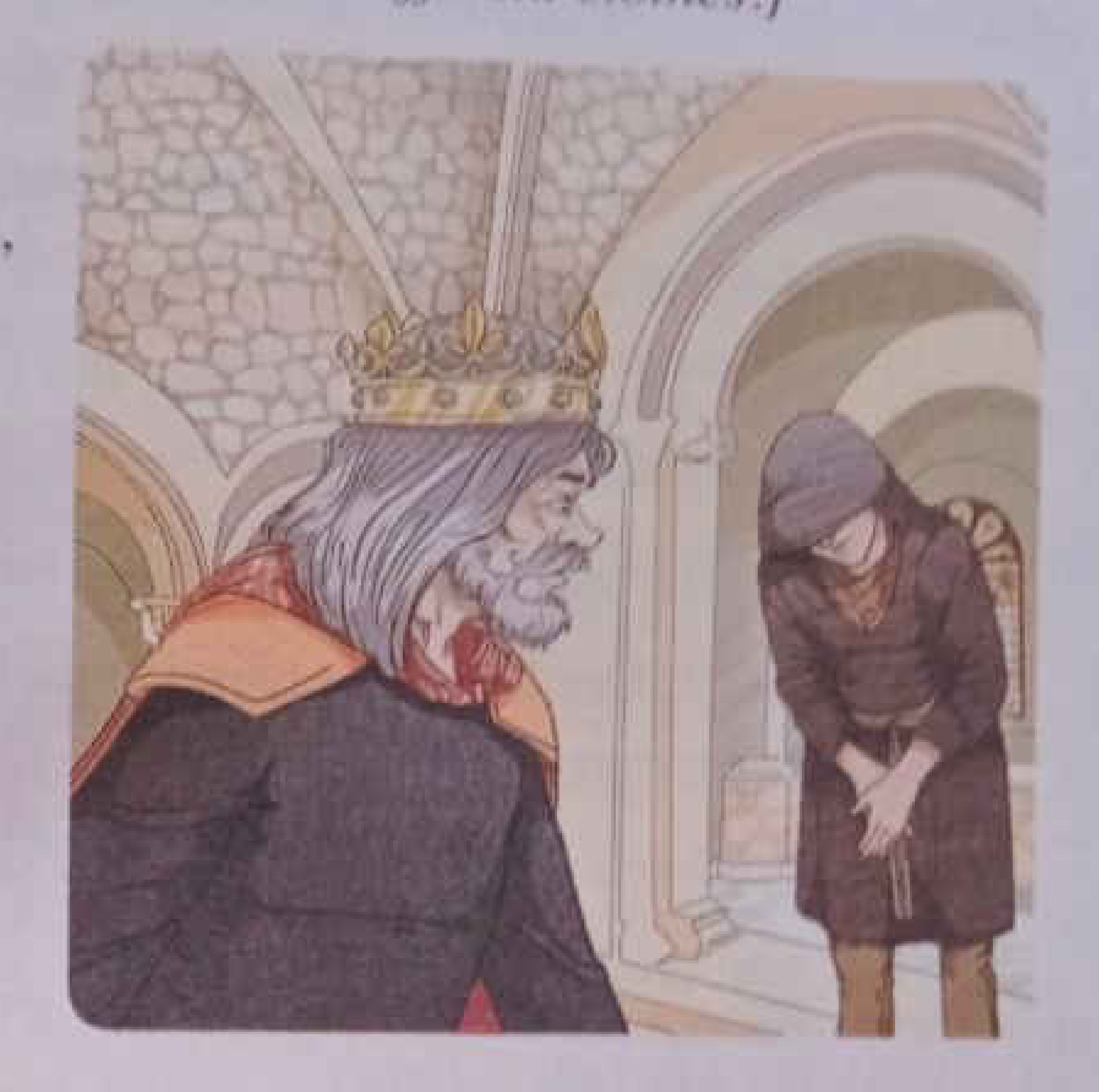
GONERIL : I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

Act I Scene iv

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT : I've disguised myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.



[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR : Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you ?

KENT : I am a poor but honest man.



KING LEAR : What do you want ?

KENT : I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR : Do you know me ?

KENT : No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR : What can you do ?

KENT : I can give good and honest advice.

KING LEAR : Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter ?

OSWALD : I'm sorry, sir ....

[He exits.]

KING LEAR : What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER : He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR : Why didn't he come back when I called him ?

SOLDIER : Your majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is; but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.

KING LEAR : I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.

SOLDIER : He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

KING LEAR : Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.

[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]

Oh, you come here! Who am I ?

OSWALD : My lady's father.

KING LEAR : My lady's father ? How rude !

[King Lear hits him.]

OSWALD : Don't hit me, my lord.

KENT : *[Hitting him.]* Don't be rude to the King or I'll hit you, too!

KING LEAR : Thank you. You are a good man.

[Goneril enters.]

KING LEAR : What's the matter, Goneril ? Why are you holding your head ?



FOOL : You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.

GONERIL : Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.

FOOL : Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.

KING LEAR : Does anyone here know who I am ? Tell me !

GONERIL : You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR : *[angry]* What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.

[Albany enters and he is very surprised.]

[To the soldiers.] Prepare my horses.

ALBANY : Please, sir, wait.

KING LEAR : *[To himself.]* Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish ?

ALBANY : Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.

KING LEAR : That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.

[King Lear exits.]

ALBANY : What has happened, Goneril ?

GONERIL : Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[King Lear enters again]

KING LEAR : Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY : What is the matter, sir ?

KING LEAR : I'll tell you. *[To Goneril.]* I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

[King Lear exits with Kent, and Attendants.]

GONERIL : Did you hear that, my husband ?

ALBANY : You know how much I love you, Goneril, but ....

GONERIL : Do not say more.

[To the Fool.] You, go.

[The Fool exits.]

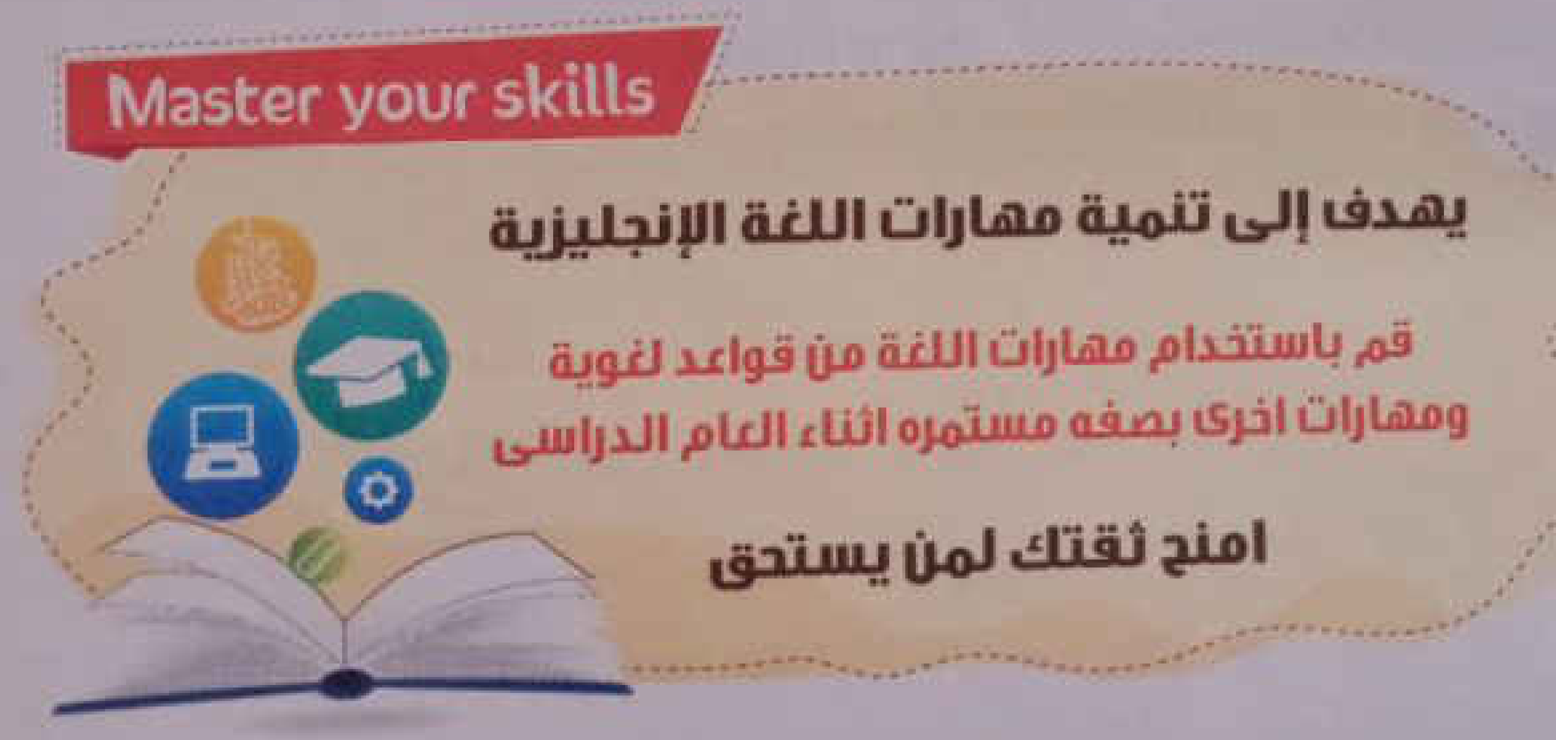
GONERIL : Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age ? They might attack us.

ALBANY : I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL : It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY : Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.]





Exercises

on Vocabulary from

Act I Scene III & Scene IV

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. The policeman .... himself not to be recognized by the criminals.
   a. disbelieved b. disappeared c. disturbed d. disguised
2. She had a bad headache and .... her head with pain.
   a. held b. told c. folded d. called
3. After painting their flat they .... away all their old things.
   a. got b. gave c. brought d. escaped
4. When his son got low marks, he was .... because he expected more than that.
   a. delighted b. fascinated c. surprised d. exhausted
5. When I have a problem, I ask my uncle for advice. He is a/an .... man.
   a. wise b. innocent c. amazing d. excited
6. Being .... , no one likes him.
   a. polite b. clever c. cheerful d. rude
7. Parents should .... their children to do sports regularly.
   a. prevent b. encourage c. discourage d. disappoint

Definitions

8. .... means feeling ashamed because you have done something you know that is wrong or you haven't done something you should have done.
   a. Loyal b. Guilty c. Honest d. Democratic
9. A person who works in another person's house, and cooks cleans, etc. for them is called a/an ....
   a. gardener b. housekeeper c. servant d. expert
10. To .... means to change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you.
    a. interrupt b. disturb c. confuse d. disguise
11. The way that someone behaves, especially towards other people means ....
    a. behaviour b. survivor c. violence d. attack
12. To .... means to use violence to try to hurt or kill someone.
    a. suspect b. resort c. attack d. protect

REVIEW on Act I

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. It's impolite to .... while talking with your parents.
   a. shut b. shout c. shoot d. shuttle
2. What a goal! That was a real beauty. The word "beauty" is a/an ....
   a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
3. I know the singer's name but I don't know the .... of the song.
   a. address b. spelling c. rhyme d. title
4. You can count on him because he always tells the ....
   a. lies b. habit c. fact d. truth
5. All my neighbours .... Mr Nader because he is a good man.
   a. suspect b. neglect c. respect d. affect
6. We should meet to .... the elections program for the party.
   a. discuss b. deserve c. disappoint d. disappear
7. He was filled with .... at the bad way he had been treated.
   a. happiness b. anger c. confidence d. fun
8. She was guilty .... stealing the gold necklace.
   a. in b. at c. with d. of
9. After burning her neighbour's house, a fire started in her house to have a taste of her own ....
   a. medicine b. drugs c. cigarette d. lighter
10. The rude child shouted at his mother badly. Is the cart .... a horse ?
    a. eating b. pulling c. pushing d. feeding

Definitions

11. Something you do because it is right or part of your job means a/an ....
    a. right b. attitude c. duty d. intention
12. To separate something into two or more parts means to ....
    a. divide b. share c. multiply d. perform

13. .... means not sensible or clever.

a. Selfish b. Foolish c. Tolerant d. Confident

14. A country that has a king or a queen means a/an ....

a. area b. state c. kingdom d. environment

15. .... mean a lot of money and valuable things.

a. Measures b. Powers c. Stages d. Riches

16. To .... means that it is right for someone to have something because of the way they have behaved or because what they are.

a. deserve b. preserve c. serve d. reserve

17. Money received, especially on a regular basis, for work or through investments means a/an............ .

a. treasure b. pleasure c. income d. inheritance

18. To .... means to believe in the reliability, truth, or ability of someone.

a. hurt b. trust c. treat d. defeat

19. A/An .... means a person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place.

a. expert b. attendant c. character d. designer

20. To be able to make sensible decisions and give good advice because of the experience and knowledge that you have means to be ....

a. sensitive b. brave c. generous d. wise

21. To .... means to do things in a particular way.

a. behave b. evaluate c. estimate d. donate



ACT II Scene I & scene II

الفصل الثانى - المشهد الاول والثانى

1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

castle	قلعة	reward	يكافئ / مكافأة
guard	يحرس / حارس	profit	يربح
follow	يتبع	persuade	يقنع
pretend	يتظاهر	beggar	متسول
blood	دماء	faithful	مخلص
inherit	يرث	knight	فارس
ports	موانى	disbelief	جحود - عدم تصديق

Words and their definitions

- **reward** : Money for someone who finds or helps someone important. مكافأة
- **beggar** : Someone who asks other people for food or money. متسول
- **guard** : Someone who protects a place or a person. حارس
- **profit** : To make benefit from something. يربح
- **pretend** : To act in a way that is not true. يتظاهر - تظاهر
- **plot against** : To make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person. يتآمر ضد
- **disbelief** : The feeling that something cannot really be happening. عدم تصديق - جحود
- **faithful** : To be loyal, continue to support someone. وفى / مخلص
- **persuade** : To get someone to do something or agree with you. يقنع
- **port** : A place where ships enter and leave a town or country. ميناء

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الظهر	get here	يصل هنا
change his mind	يغير رأيه	call out	يصرخ / ينادى
plot against	يتآمر على	(be) in a fight	يتعارك / يتشاجر
run away	يهرب	in the stocks	فى الفلق (آلة لتقييد اللصوص)





Act II Scene i

[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters.]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first,we must pretend to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now, run from here, brother.

[Calls out.] Help me!

[To his brother again.] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself.] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight. *[He cuts his arm.]*

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND : Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER : What happened? Where's Edgar ?

EDMUND : He ran that way. When I refused his plan ...

GLOUCESTER : You there, follow him!

[Some servants exit.]

What plan, Edmund ?

EDMUND : His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.

GLOUCESTER : He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a reward for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.



EDMUND : Father, I tried to persuade Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it. "Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was all your idea. They know that you will profit most if father dies, not me."

GLOUCESTER : This is terrible! It is a stab in the back. I'll stop people from leaving England's ports; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.

[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL : Gloucester, how are you, my friend ? Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN : If it is true, it is terrible news !

GLOUCESTER : Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN : Did your son really try to kill you ? Your son Edgar ?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN : I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND : That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN : Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWALL : Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND : It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL : Is anyone following Edgar ?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL : The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND : I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER : I thank you, Cornwall

[They exit.]

Act II Scene ii

[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR : I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So, I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.



[He changes his clothes.]

I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT : Good morning, my Lord.

KING LEAR : *[Looks in disbelief at Kent in the stocks.]* What has happened ? Who did this to you ?

KENT : It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR : But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible! Where's my daughter ?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT : Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now ?

FOOL : He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR : Why don't they want to speak to me ? You say they are sick? They are tired ? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER : I'm sorry, your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.

KING LEAR : What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now !

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR : Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart! *[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter.]*

REGAN : Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR : My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN : I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR : I'm very angry with her!

REGAN : Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Exercises

on Vocabulary from Act II Scene I & Scene II

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

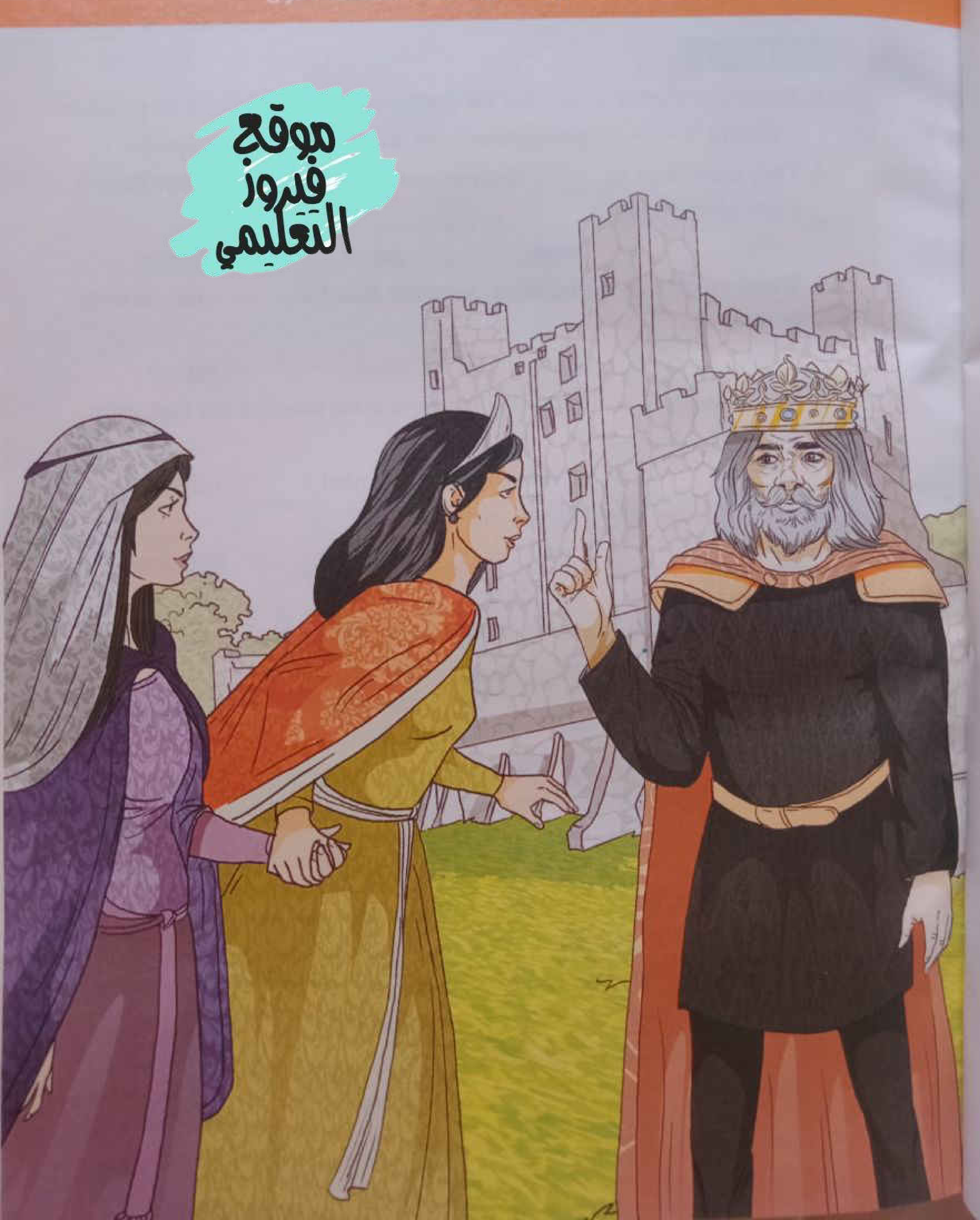
1. There was a great .... for the person who can treat the sick princess.
   a. reward b. punishment c. award d. degree
2. They asked him to .... their house while they were away. They trusted him so much.
   a. rob b. break c. guard d. destroy
3. When we entered the building, we were asked to .... the security instructions.
   a. avoid b. deny c. blow d. follow
4. My manager .... us to stay for more three hours at the factory to finish the task.
   a. warned b. persuaded c. awarded d. refused
5. She didn't love him although she .... to.
   a. followed b. forced c. pretended d. neglected

Definitions

6. A/An .... means money for someone who finds or helps someone important.
   a. award b. gift c. reward d. assistance
7. Someone who asks other people for food or money means a/an ....
   a. architect b. beggar c. lawyer d. expert
8. To make benefit from something means to ....
   a. use b. select c. deduce d. profit
9. .... means the feeling that something cannot really be happening.
   a. Disbelief b. Shame c. Disappearance d. Shy
10. To act in a way that is not true means to ....
    a. intend b. attend c. pretend d. extend
11. A/An .... means someone who protects a place or a person.
    a. guide b. guard c. assistant d. explorer

ACT II Scene III & ACT III Scene I

الفصل الثانى - المشهد الثالث و الفصل الثالث - المشهد الأول





1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

blow / blew / blown	تهب الرياح	shelter	ملجأ - يأوى
go mad	يصاب بالجنون	double	يضاعف - ضعف
spy (n/v)	يتجسس / جاسوس	patient	صبور
joke	نكتة	patience	صبر
disagreement	خلاف	storm	عاصفة
ring (n)	خاتم / حلقة	bear / bore / borne	يتحمل
cave	كهف	lock	يغلق

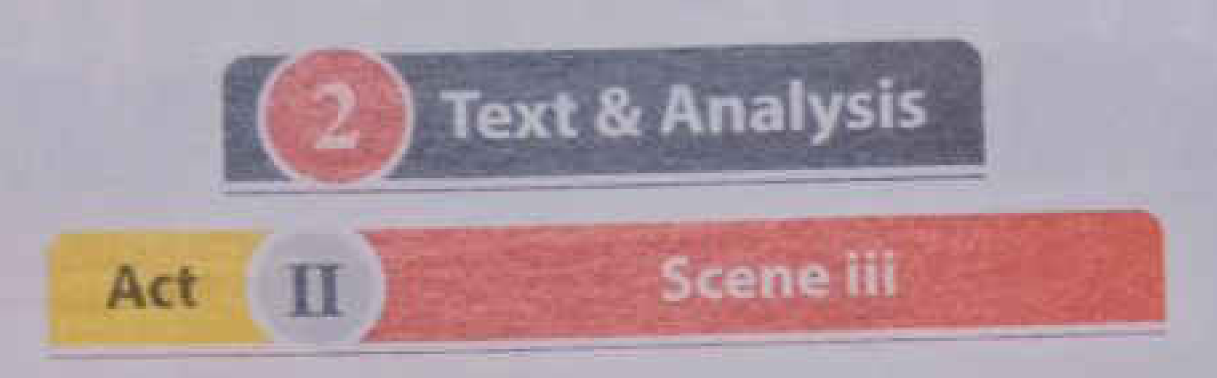
Words and their definitions

- **joke** : Something that you tell other people to make them laugh. نكتة
- **shelter** : A place that will protect you from bad weather. ملجأ - يأوى
- **cave** : A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground. كهف
- **spy (n)** : A person who tries to get secret information about a country, organization, or person, especially somebody who is employed by a government or the police. يتجسس / جاسوس
- **disagreement** : A situation where people disagree about something and often argue. خلاف
- **storm** : Very bad weather with strong winds and rain, and often thunder and lightning. عاصفة

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

turn your back on me	يدير ظهره لى	It's a wet night	إنها ليلة ممطرة
lock me out of	يمنعنى من الدخول	set eyes on	يراقب/يثبت عينيه على
I'd rather + inf.	أنا أفضل ...	apologise to someone	يعتذر لشخص ما
keep you warm	يجعلك دافئًا		
there isn't room for	لا يوجد مساحة / فراغ لـ ...	apologise for ...	يعتذر عن (شىء)





[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR : Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN : Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR : Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She has been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN : You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR : No, Regan, I'll never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me. And you'd not lock me out of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN : Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL : Listen! Who's coming ?

REGAN : It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald].

KING LEAR : Who put my servant in the stocks ? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this. *[To Goneril.]* You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand ?

GONERIL : Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father ? What have I done wrong ?

KING LEAR : Oh, how unhappy you've made me. You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise to me ? And why is my servant in the stocks ?

CORNWALL : I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.

KING LEAR : You? Was it you ?

REGAN : Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

KING LEAR : Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave ? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.
[To himself.] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. *[Points at Oswald.]*

GONERIL : It's your choice, father.

KING LEAR : Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't set eyes on you again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. I'll be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN : That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you ?

GONERIL : My servants could help you.

REGAN : Yes, why not, father ? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.

KING LEAR : But Regan, I gave you everything ...

REGAN : And you gave it to me at the right time !

KING LEAR : I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan ?

REGAN : Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR : *[To Goneril.]* Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL : Listen, father. You do not need twenty five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN : Why do you even need one soldier ?

KING LEAR : Why do I need them ? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm, you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad!



[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL : We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN : This house is small; there isn't room for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL : Where is the Duke of Gloucester ?

CORNWALL : He followed Lear.

[Gloucester enters.]

Here he is.

GLOUCESTER : The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL : Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL : Yes, don't try to stop him.

GLOUCESTER : But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.

REGAN : That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.

CORNWALL : Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.

[They exit.]



Act III Scene i

[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT : Who's there, in this terrible weather ? Where's the King ?



SOLDIER : He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.

KENT : But who's with him ?

SOLDIER : Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes.

KENT : Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King.

[They exit.]

Exercises
on Vocabulary from
Act II Scene III & Act III Scene I

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. While they were fishing, the wind .... hard.
   a. exploded b. blew c. flew d. excluded
2. You should apologise .... your elder brother now.
   a. about b. of c. to d. at
3. They .... their eyes on the criminal to know his partners.
   a. sit b. met c. set d. bit
4. While climbing the mountain, they stayed for a night in a/an .... to protect themselves from heavy rains.
   a. inn b. office c. stream d. cave
5. He made us laugh all time by his nice ....
   a. jokes b. arguments c. riddles d. tales
6. His wife's death affected him badly and he .... mad.
   a. made b. came c. went d. took
7. He went to prison because he .... for another country for years.
   a. spoiled b. spied c. tried d. tied

Definitions

8. A/An .... is a person who tries to get secret information about a country, organization, or person, especially somebody who is employed by a government or the police.
   a. soldier b. actor c. spy d. archaeologist
9. Something that you tell other people to make them laugh is a/an ....
   a. lock b. joke c. aim d. ambition
10. A/An .... means very bad weather with strong winds and rain, and often thunder and lightning.
    a. cloud b. earthquake c. storm d. eruption
11. A place that will protect you from bad weather means ....
    a. prison b. cell c. jail d. shelter

ACT III

Scene II, Scene III and Scene IV

الفصل الثالث - المشهد الثاني والثالث والرابع







Vocabulary

stomach	معدة	hungry stomachs	بطون جائعة
hard-hearted	قاسي القلب	blanket	بطانية
forgive	يسامح / يعفو عن	mice	فئران
straw	قش	keep away from	يبتعد عن / يبعد عن
footprints	آثار الأقدام	hut	كوخ (عشة)
philosopher	فيلسوف / حكيم	lightning	البرق
apart from	باستثناء	rise	يرتفع / تشرق الشمس
army	جيش	torch	كشاف
homeless	مشرد / بلا مأوى	keep warm	يدفء

Words and their definitions

- **sigh (n)** : A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed. يتنهد
- **pile** : A group of things put on top of each other. كومة - ركام
- **philosopher** : A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life. فيلسوف
- **beg** : To ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much. يتوسل
- **lightning** : Bright light that comes from the sky in a storm. البرق
- **torch** : A light you can carry to help you to see. كشاف ضوئي
- **hut** : A small building usually with one room. كوخ
- **straw** : Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals. قش
- **forgive** : To stop feeling angry with someone who does something wrong, annoy or upset you; to stop feeling angry with yourself. يسامح

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

get rewarded for	يتم مكافأته على ...	come out of ...	يخرج من ...
win the trust	يفوز بثقة ...	accept the man's offer	يقبل عرض شخص

walk in someone's shoes	يسير على خطى / نهج شخص	



Act III Scene ii

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR : Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL : Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR : I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters ?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR : Who's there ?

FOOL : Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT : Oh no, why are you here ? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted daughters.

KING LEAR : When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad! *[To the Fool.]* How are you, my boy ? I'm cold. Where's the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent].

Act III Scene iii



[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER : Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND : That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER : Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight ...
[To himself.] No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him.
[To Edmund.] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man rises as the old man falls!

[He exits.]

Act III Scene iv

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT : Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR : Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it any more!

KENT : Please, go inside.

KING LEAR : *[To the Fool.]* You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL : Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT : Who's in there ?

FOOL : A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT : Who are you ? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.]

EDGAR : Keep away from me!

KING LEAR : Are you mad like me ? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR : Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR : Have his daughters done this to him ?

[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL : No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR : Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you ?

EDGAR : I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR : It would be better if you were dead than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL : Look, here comes a walking fire.

[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]

KING LEAR : Who's this ?

GLOUCESTER : What's your name ?

EDGAR : My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

GLOUCESTER : Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man ? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers ?

EDGAR : Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT : My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR : First, let me talk to this philosopher. What are you researching ?

EDGAR : I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT : *[To Gloucester.]* Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holds his torch it in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER : I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen – the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.

EDGAR : Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT : This way, your majesty.

KING LEAR : *[Pointing to Edgar.]* I am going with him!

KENT : My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER : OK, Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR : Let's go then, my good philosopher.

[They exit.]



Exercises

on Vocabulary from Act III Scene II, Scene III & Scene IV

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. When he fell over, his .... was broken and he was in a complete darkness.
   a. candle b. light c. torch d. lighter
2. We had lunch in a restaurant downtown yesterday, but it wasn't good and my .... hurt me badly.
   a. hand b. stomach c. knee d. elbow
3. They sleep on a mattress filled with ....
   a. straw b. crops c. flour d. strawberry
4. Your father is very angry. .... away from him now.
   a. Take b. Forget c. Dig d. Keep
5. Don't be .... with your sister. She loves you.
   a. kind-hearted b. hard-handed c. hard-working d. hard-hearted

Definitions

6. A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed means a/an ....
   a. sigh b. end c. sign d. idea
7. A/An .... means light you can carry to help you to see.
   a. lightning b. torch c. edition d. flash
8. A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life means a/an ....
   a. archaeologist b. therapist c. educationalist d. philosopher
9. To .... means to stop feeling angry with someone who does something wrong, annoy, or upset you; to stop feeling angry with yourself.
   a. remember b. remain c. forgive d. revenge
10. A small building usually with one room means a/an ....
    a. hut b. establishment c. charity d. area
11. Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals means ....
    a. sand b. straw c. grains d. bills

REVIEW on Act II & Act III

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. Although they .... the price, he refused to sell the old car.
   a. reduced b. doubled c. decreased d. limited
2. Did you know that camels can .... being thirsty for 15 days ?
   a. tear b. protect c. defend d. bear
3. It is not accepted to .... your back on someone while talking with him.
   a. turn b. replace c. change d. run
4. Finally, they managed to .... here. It was a long tiring journey.
   a. give b. get c. take d. make
5. Do you agree to help us or you will .... your mind ?
   a. change b. replace c. correct d. charge
6. She called .... for help when the thieves grabbed her bag.
   a. in b. on c. out d. with

Definitions

7. To .... means to make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person.
   a. plot for b. protect from c. escape from d. plot against
8. To be loyal, continue to support someone means to be ....
   a. hateful b. respectful c. helpful d. faithful
9. To .... means to get someone to do something or agree with you.
   a. persuade b. delete c. determine d. spy
10. A place where ships enter and leave a town or country means a/an ....
    a. station b. establishment c. port d. organization
11. .... means bright light that comes in the sky in a storm.
    a. Thunder b. Hurricane c. Volcano d. Lightning
12. A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground means a/an ....
    a. cave b. oasis c. gulf d. island

New Hello
& King Lear

By A Group Of Supervisors

Skills Builder

الصف الثانى الثانوى
الفصل الدراسى الأول





2nd Sec.
2021
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS



PART 1 Grammar القواعد اللغوية

PART 2 Skills المهارات



تنويه

- استخدام **ملحق المهارات** بصفة مستمرة أثناء العام الدراسي للتمكن من **تنمية مهاراتك اللغوية**
- يساعدك الملحق في **المهارات المطلوب تحصيلها من العام الماضي التي لم تتعرض إليها** نظرا لأزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد (كوفيد ١٩).

PART 1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

Contents :



القواعد اللغوية من المرحلة الابتدائية
حتى الصف الثانى الثانوى

PART 1

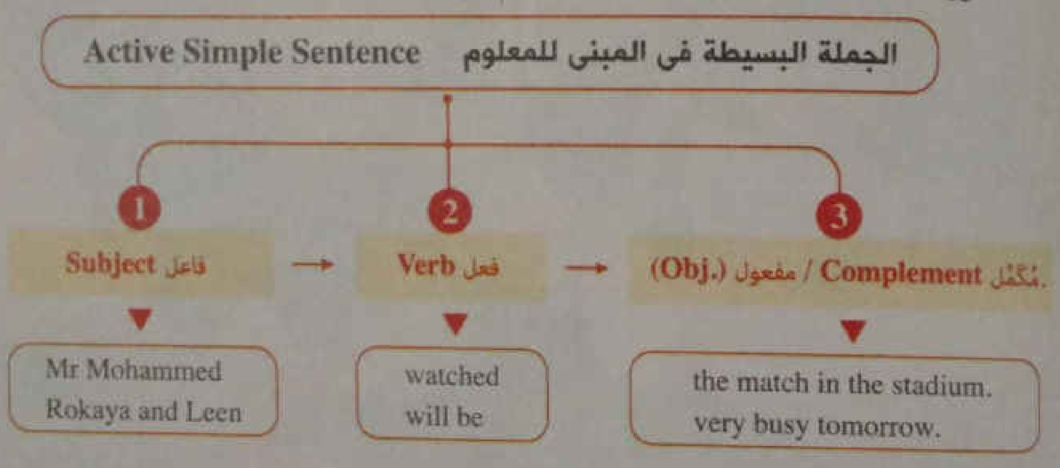
I The Structure of the Simple Sentence بناء الجملة البسيطة

• في هذا الجزء ستراجع كيف تكتب الجملة، وهذا الموضوع مهم جداً لكي :

١. تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون (مهارة الاستماع).
٢. تُعبِّر عن أفكارك وانطباعاتك وما تريده (مهارة التحدُّث).
٣. تقرأ وتفهم وتحلل وتستنتج (مهارة القراءة والتفكير النقدي).
٤. تُنمّي القدرة على التعبير الإبداعي (مهارة الكتابة: مقال - بريد الكتروني - قصة...إلخ).
٥. تُتقن نقل الأفكار (المعنى المراد) من لغة لأخري (فن الترجمة).

أولاً : الجملة المبنية للمعلوم.

- تتكون الجملة الخبرية البسيطة المبنية للمعلوم من :



- المكونات الرئيسية الثلاثة للجملة البسيطة :

1 Subject الفاعل

① الفاعل هو الذي يقوم بالفعل :

e.g. : - Ali ate a sandwich. - My horse won the race.

② يمكن أن يكون الفاعل هو موضوع الجملة (يقابله المبتدأ في اللغة العربية) :

e.g. : - Mariam is tall. - Sports make us fit.

③ قد يكون الفاعل اسم انسان / حيوان / مكان / شيء معنوي غير ملموس ... إلخ :

e.g. :- Rodayna studies medicine at university. (اسم انسان)
- The cat caught a rat. (اسم حيوان)
- Our house is in Aswan. (اسم مكان)
- Cooperation makes people happy. (اسم معنوي)

(٤) قد يكون الفاعل اسم مفرد أو جمع [انظر الجزء الخاص بالأسماء (Nouns) صفحة (١٣)] :

e.g. : - My sister is at home. - My sisters are at home.

(٥) تحل ضمائر الفاعل التالية محل فاعل الجملة [راجع الجزء الخاص بالضمائر (Pronouns) صفحة (٢٤)]:

I - you - he - she - it - we - they

e.g. :- Omar is clever. = He is clever.
- Nada is beautiful. = She is beautiful.
- Esraa and Doaa are sisters. = They are sisters.
- The lion and the tiger are strong. = They are strong.

(٦) تُستخدم صفات الإشارة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- this هذا / هذه (للمفرد القريب) - these هؤلاء (للجمع القريب)
- that ذلك / تلك (للمفرد البعيد) - those أولئك (للجمع البعيد)

e.g. :- This is my friend. - These are my friends.
- That was a good present. - Those were good presents.

- وتُستخدم صفات الإشارة أيضاً قبل فاعل الجملة :

e.g. :- This boy got high marks. - These boys got high marks.
- That dog chased a cat. - Those dogs chased a cat.

(٧) قد تُستخدم الضمائر غير المحددة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- someone	- somebody	- something	- somewhere
- anyone	- anybody	- anything	- anywhere
- everyone	- everybody	- everything	- everywhere
- no one	- nobody	- nothing	- nowhere

e.g. :- Someone took my tablet. - No one is at home.
- Everyone wants you to succeed. - Anything can change your opinion.

(٨) يمكن استخدام (One) بمعنى (المرء / الفرد) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. :- One must help other people.

(٩) تُستخدم (it) أحياناً كفاعل وظيفي أو مُبْهَم في بعض الجمل :

e.g. :- It has been hot today. (It = The weather)
- It is nine o'clock. (It = The time)
- It was kind of you to help me. (It = The action itself)

١٠ تُستخدم (There) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هناك / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ...) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - There is a fish restaurant on the corner.
- There goes Omar on his bike.

١١ تُستخدم (Here) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هنا / إلى هنا / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ...) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - Here's my camera.
- Here comes Ranya with her husband.

١٢ وقد يكون الفاعل عبارة اسمية :

e.g. : - The manager of the school wants all students to be clever.
- Some men and women attended the meeting.
- Everyone in our company works hard.

١٣ يمكن استخدام صفة أو أكثر قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - A tall man welcomed us.
- A small car stopped in front of my shop.
- A clever young man wants to marry my sister.

١٤ يمكن استخدام الأرقام والأعداد الترتيبية كصفات قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Five students got the full marks in the exam.
- The first computer was very big.

١٥ يمكن استخدام صفات الملكية التالية قبل الفاعل :

my - your - his - her - its - our - their

e.g. : - Our grandfather built the family house in 1970.

١٦ يمكن عطف فاعل على فاعل آخر باستخدام الروابط التالية :

and / or / not / either ... or ... إما ... أو / neither ... nor لا ... ولا
/ as well as = along with = in addition to بالإضافة إلى ... etc.

e.g. : - Ahmed and Abdu are friends.
- My cousins, as well as my uncle, are having lunch with us tomorrow.

١٧ يمكن استخدام ضمائر الملكية التالية كفاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

mine - yours - his - hers - ours - theirs

e.g. : - That isn't your bike. Yours is blue. (Yours = Your bike)
- This house is small. Mine is bigger. (Mine = My house)

(١٨) يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية كضمائر فاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

some / any / a lot / many / much / several / each / every /
all / both / one / two / three ... etc.

e.g. : - Not all people liked the film. Some said it was boring.
(Some = Some people)

- I didn't talk to Ayman or Ashraf. Both were very busy.
(Both = Both Ayman and Ashraf).

- You can give students an electronic exam. Each has a tablet.
(Each = Each student)

(١٩) يمكن استخدام تعبيرات الكمية والتجزئة التالية قبل الفاعل :

some / any / no / part / a lot of / lots of / plenty of كثير من
/ many / much / (a) little / (a) few / several عديد / ... etc.

e.g. : - A lot of people visited my uncle in hospital.

(٢٠) يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل الرئيسي :

.... + say / think / believe / expect / hope / ... + that + جملة رئيسية
It + be + said / thought / believed / expected / hoped ... + that + جملة رئيسية

e.g. : - People say that Omar has a lot of money.
- It is said that Omar has a lot of money.

(٢١) يمكن استخدام بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وبعض التعبيرات الأخرى في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Every day, I go to the gym.
- On my way to school, I stopped to buy a sandwich.
- Unfortunately, I lost my mobile.

(٢٢) وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To + inf.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمعلوم) :

e.g. : - To succeed is the dream of all students.

(٢٣) وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To be + p.p.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمجهول) :

e.g. : - To be thanked makes some people happy.

(٢٤) وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (Being + p.p. / adj.) كفاعل للجمل :

e.g. : - Being clever is the dream of everyone. (معلوم)
- Being hurt, he called for a doctor. (مجهول)

2 Verb الفعل

١ يأتى الفعل غالبًا بعد الفاعل :

e.g. : - Magdi ate a sandwich. - We will go shopping.

٢ يحدد الفعل زمن الجملة :

Sentence	الجملة	Tense الزمن
He plays football. He doesn't play football.	إثبات نفى	مضارع بسيط
He is playing football. He isn't playing football.	إثبات نفى	مضارع مستمر
He has played football. He hasn't played football.	إثبات نفى	مضارع تام
He has been playing football. He hasn't been playing football.	إثبات نفى	مضارع تام مستمر
He played football. He didn't play football.	إثبات نفى	ماضي بسيط
He was playing football. He wasn't playing football.	إثبات نفى	ماضي مستمر
He had played football. He hadn't played football.	إثبات نفى	ماضي تام
He had been playing football. He hadn't been playing football.	إثبات نفى	ماضى تام مستمر
He will play football. He won't play football.	إثبات نفى	مستقبل بسيط
He will be playing football. He won't be playing football.	إثبات نفى	مستقبل مستمر
He will have played football. He won't have played football.	إثبات نفى	مستقبل تام
He will have been playing football. He won't have been playing football.	إثبات نفى	مستقبل تام مستمر

- [للمزيد يُرجى مراجعة الجزء الخاص بالأفعال صفحة (٣٠) وكذلك الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة صفحة (٧١)].

③ هناك أفعال لازمة (intransitive) بمعنى أنها لا تأخذ مفعول به مثل :

be – go – sleep – smile – cry – look = sound = seem = appear يبدو ... etc.

e.g. : - She smiled when she saw her son.

- He looks happy.

④ هناك أفعال مُتَعَدِّية (transitive) بمعني أنها تأخذ مفعول به أو أكثر مثل :

eat – play – visit – choose – take – give – like – see ...etc.

e.g. : - We saw a lion under a tree.

- She gave me some food.

⑤ الأفعال الناقصة (Modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

will – would – can – could – may – might – shall – should – must – needn't

e.g. : - Noha can drive a car. - I will buy this T-shirt.

- You needn't go out now. - You mustn't smoke here.

⑥ الأفعال شبه الناقصة (Semi-modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

have to – has to – had to – used to – need to – be going to – be able to – be supposed to من المفترض أن – be to من المفترض أن ...etc.

e.g. : - Amir has to arrive at school at seven.

- I used to live in the countryside.

⑦ قد تحتوي الجملة علي أكثر من فعل مساعد :

e.g. : - I have been sleeping for eight hours now.

- I will have finished my university course by next month.

⑧ هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) وهناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً له (ing) أو اسم :

e.g. : - She wants to work in a tourist company.

- He suggested having lunch outdoors.

⑨ الفاعل المفرد يأخذ فعل مفرد والفاعل الجمع يأخذ فعل جمع :

e.g. : - She is clever. - They are clever.

- Omar works hard. - Omar and Karim work hard.

١٠ هناك أفعال تُسمَّى أفعال المطاوعة (ergative verbs) وهي الأفعال التي يمكن أن يُستخدم مفعولها كفاعل لها بنفس المعنى، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

bake	يخبز - يجف بفعل الحرارة	melt	يُذيب - يذوب
boil	يغلي	move	يُحَرِّك - يتحرك
break	يَكْسِر - ينكسر	open	يفتح - ينفتح
burst	يُفَجِّر - ينفجر	run	يُدير - يجري
cook	يطبخ - ينضج (يستوى)	sail	يقود السفينة - تُبْحِر
drive	يقود - ينطلق - يوَصِّل	shake	يَرُجّ - يهتز / يرتعش
fly	يُطيِّر - يطير/ يسافر جوًا	tear	يُمزِّق - يتمزَّق
form	يُكَوِّن - يتكون	transform	يُحوِّل - يتحول
grow	يزرع - ينمو	turn	يلف - يدور من تلقاء نفسه
heal	يُعالج الجرح - يلتئم	walk	يمشي - يأخذ ... للتَمَشِّي

e.g. : - The hot weather melted the ice. (أذاب)

The ice melted in the hot weather. (ذاب)

- Farmers grow a lot of plants. (يزرع)

A lot of trees grow in the forest. (تنمو)

- I walked with my wife by the Nile. (يَسير)

I walked my wife by the Nile. (أخذ للتمشية)

١١ لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل نستخدم ظروف الكيفية، ويأتي الظرف بعد الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : - I walk carefully in this busy street.

- I walk in this busy street carefully.

١٢ تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) والأفعال المساعدة :

always دائماً – usually عادة – often غالباً – sometimes أحياناً
occasionally بين الحين والآخر – rarely = scarcely = seldom نادراً – never أبداً ... etc.

e.g. : - She always gets up early.

- He is always careful.

3 Complement المُكمِّل (تكملة الجملة)

١ المقصود بالمُكمِّل هو باقي الجملة الذي يأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل :

e.g. : - I bought some fruit yesterday.

٢ يُمكن أن يكون المُكمِّل صفة (أو صفة بعدها اسم) تصف الفاعل وتأتي بعد أفعال الربط مثل :

be [am, is, are, was, were, has / have been, being, might have been, etc.]
become = get = grow = turn يصبح – seem = appear = sound = look يبدو –
remain يبقى / يظل – feel يشعر / يكون ذو ملمس – smell يكون ذو رائحة – taste يكون ذو مذاق

e.g. : - She is tired.
- Amr looks happy.
- My mother grew old.
- Sama got angry.

٣ يُمكن أن يكون المُكمِّل اسم يُعرِّف الفاعل أو يصفه :

e.g. : - Alaa is a doctor.
- Alaa is a clever doctor.

٤ يُمكن أن يكون المُكمِّل مفعول (اسم / صفة يتبعها اسم / عبارة اسمية ... إلخ) :

e.g. : - I bought a car.
- I bought a new car.
- I bought a large new car.

٥ يُمكن أن يكون المُكمِّل أحد ضمائر المفعول التالية :

me – him – her – it – you – us – them – one

e.g. : - An old friend called me.
- My friends have arrived. I'll welcome them.

٦ يُمكن أن يكون المُكمِّل جار ومجرور (حرف جر + اسم) :

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed lives in Aswan.
- Abdulrahman plans to get married next year.
- Bassem works as a police officer.

٧ يُمكن أن يكون المُكمِّل ظرف زمان أو مكان :

e.g. : - I have always lived here.
- She arrived yesterday.

٨ يُمكن أن يكون المُكمِّل ظرف كيفية (يدل على طريقة وقوع الفعل) :

e.g. : - This old man walks slowly.
- She didn't sleep well.
- Karim studies hard.

٩) ليس بالضرورة أن يكون هناك مُكمّل مع الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول به):

e.g. : - The baby has slept. - Mr Ashraf didn't arrive.

ثانيًا : الجملة المبنية للمجهول.

Passive Simple Sentence الجملة البسيطة فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول

1 Obj. مفعول	→ 2 be	→ 3 p.p.	→ 4 complement مُكمّل
The match	was	played	in Cairo Stadium.
Some money	has been	spent	on clothes.

Sentence	الجملة	Tense الزمن
He sells vegetables. Vegetables are sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	مضارع بسيط
He is selling vegetables. Vegetables are being sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	مضارع مستمر
He has sold vegetables. Vegetables have been sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	مضارع تام
He sold vegetables. Vegetables were sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	ماضي بسيط
He was selling vegetables. Vegetables were being sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	ماضى مستمر
He had sold vegetables. Vegetables had been sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	ماضى تام
He will sell vegetables. Vegetables will be sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	مستقبل بسيط
He will have sold vegetables. Vegetables will have been sold (by him).	معلوم مجهول	مستقبل تام

2 Parts of Speech اقسام الكلام

Parts of Speech أقسام الكلام

1. Noun الاسم
2. Pronoun الضمير
3. Verb الفعل
4. Adjective الصفة
5. Adverb الظرف
6. Articles(a/an/the)

- وفيما يلى شرح شامل لكل هذه الأجزاء :

1 Nouns الاسماء

People : man – woman – girl – boy – uncle – Sama – Omar…etc.
Animals : animal – insect – bird – lion – cat – snake … etc.
Things : plant – tree – rock – sea – love – beauty… etc.

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الاسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

A Countable Nouns الاسماء المعدودة

١ الأسماء التى تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهى تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl → girls
- a bus → buses
- an egg → eggs
- a library → libraries

٢ هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular	مفرد	Plural	جمع
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة اعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات

ox	ثور	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امرأة	women	نساء

٢ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
One	- One student got the full marks.
Every / Each	- Every player in the team trains hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

٣ قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

these هؤلاء / those أولئك / some بعض / any أي / many كثير / a few قليل / a lot of كثير من / lots of كثير من / several عديد / two / three ....

e.g. : - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

B Uncountable Nouns الاسماء غير المعدودة

١ الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

1. Liquids السوائل

water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.

2. Gases الغازات

oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.

3. Meals الوجبات

breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. School subjects المواد الدراسية

history - mathematics - physics الفيزياء - biology الأحياء ... etc.

5. Languages اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

6. Different activities الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

7. Sports الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

8. Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime حامض الليمون - stone - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

9. Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain

10. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة

honesty أمانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية
- confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم
- evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر ..... etc.

11. Other nouns أسماء أخرى

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish
- equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work
- clothing الملبس - electricity - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب -
luggage أمتعة - machinery - news - information - advice - money
- music - bread - cloth.... etc.

❷ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that..... etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

❸ لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

❹ يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تُعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

C Quantifiers تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

❶ a lot of / lots of كثير من + plural n. اسم جمع / uncountable n. اسم لا يُعد

- يفضل استخدام (a lot of / lots of) في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد :

e.g. : - I have a lot / lots of books.
- She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

❷ many عديد / كثير من + plural noun اسم جمع

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد فى صيغة الجمع وتفضل فى النفي والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Have you got many books ?
- No, I haven't got many books.

❸ much كثير من + uncountable noun اسم لا يُعد

- تأتى قبل اسم لايعد وتفضل فى النفى والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Did you drink much coffee ?
- No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4 a few / few قليل + plural n. اسم جمع

a few = some / a small number عدد قليل ولكنه يكفى
few = not many / almost none عدد قليل وغير كاف

- تأتى قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل :

e.g. : - I have a few pens. I can lend you one.
- There are few glasses in the kitchen. I need to buy some for the party.

5 a little / little قليل + uncountable لا يُعد

a little = some / a small amount كمية قليلة ولكنها تكفى
little = not much / almost nothing كمية قليلة وغير كافية

- تأتى قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة :

e.g. : - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6 some بعض

- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Affirmative الإثبات
e.g. : - I will have some cheese and some eggs for breakfast.

2. Offering تقديم عروض
e.g. : - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?

3. Request الطلب
e.g. : - Can you give me some paper and some pens?

7 any أى

- تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد فى الحالات التالية :

1. Negative النفى
e.g. : - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.

2. Interrogative الاستفهام
e.g. : - Are there any tomatoes or any cheese in the fridge?

3. Hardly .... any
e.g. : - There is hardly any milk left.

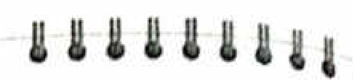
4. Any .... at all
e.g. : - I don't have any money at all.

- لاحظ ما يلى :

فعل منفى + any = فعل مثبت + no

e.g. : - He hasn't got any friends.
= He has got no friends.

- There isn't any milk.
= There is no milk.



Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1. عندما تربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فان الفعل بعدهما يكون جمعا في كل الاحوال:

e.g. : - Meat and chicken are sources of protein.
- You and I have to leave early.

2. الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول مفرد أو لا يُعد هي (is / was / has / (inf. + s / es / ies):

e.g. : - This man is kind.
- The car was repaired.
- Milk makes us healthy.

3. الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول جمع هي (are / were / have / infinitive):

e.g. : - These men are kind.
- The cars were repaired.

4. يُمكن أن تُستخدم (many - much) في الجملة المُثبتة في الحالات التالية :

أ. تستخدم (many - much) فى الجمل المثبتة إذا جاء قبلهما ما يلي :

so / very / as / too + much

e.g. : - I have so much work to do.
- She has put too much salt in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many

e.g. : - I saw too many people in the street.
- He has so many friends on Facebook.

ب. اذا كانت many / much فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة :

e.g. : - Many students find maths difficult.
= Many find maths difficult.

5. بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل فى المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى المقصود :

sheep غنم - خروف / deer غزلان - غزال / fish سمك - سمكة / aircraft طائرة - طائرات / spacecraft مركبة فضاء - مركبات فضاء ،

e.g. : - A deer is running away from a tiger.
- Some deer are standing in the shade ظل of a tree.

٦ عند استخدام **the** قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع و تأخذ دائما فعل جمع :

the poor الفقرا ، / the rich الأغنيا ، / the disabled المعاقين / the deaf المصابين بالصمم ...

e.g. : - The poor are in need of our help. = Poor people are in need of our help.

٧ هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل :

cattle	ماشية	pliers	زردية
clothes	ملابس	police	الشرطة
glasses	نظارة	scissors	مقص
jeans	بنطلون جينز	shorts	بنطلون قصير
people	الناس	trousers	بنطلون

- Your clothes are dirty. - The pliers have many uses.

٨ الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضهما البعض دائما تأخذ فعل جمع :

e.g. : - My glasses were broken yesterday.
- Your trousers are very fashionable.

- ويمكن استخدام **(pair of)** قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة **(pair)** :

e.g. : - A pair of sunglasses was on the table.
- Five pairs of socks were bought for me.

٩ بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل :

Uncountable (لا تُعد)		Countable (تُعد)	
business	عمل	a business - businesses	شركة / مشروع
chicken	لحم الدجاج	a chicken - chickens	دجاجة
coffee	قهوة	a coffee - coffees	فنجان قهوة
cold	البرد عموما	a cold - colds	نزلة برد
experience	خبرة	an experience - experiences	تجربة حياتية
glass	الزجاج	a glass - glasses	كوب زجاجي
hair	الشعر	a hair - hairs	شعرة
iron	الحديد	an iron - irons	مكواة
light	الضوء	a light - lights	مصباح كهربي
orange	اللون البرتقالي	an orange - oranges	برتقالة
paper	ورق الكتابة	a paper - papers	جريدة / وثيقة
time	الوقت	a time - times	مرة واحدة / مرات

e.g. : - I don't like orange.
- Iron conducts heat and electricity.
- Two very good irons are displayed in this shop.

⑩ يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالآتي :

أ. استخدام (bit - piece) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه في المفرد وفى الجمع (bits - pieces) :

e.g. : - She gave me a piece (a bit) of advice.
- She gave me three pieces (bits) of advice.

ب. استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة مثل :

A tube of toothpaste	أنبوبة معجون اسنان	A slice of meat	شريحة لحم
A box of matches	علبة كبريت	A loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
A sheet of paper	فرخ ورق	A grain of sand	حبة رمل
A drop of water	قطرة ماء	A bottle of milk	زجاجة حليب
A glass of lemonade	كوب ليموناده	A bar of soap / chocolate	قطعة صابون / شوكولاتة
A jar of jam	برطمان مربي		
A lump of sugar	مكعب سكر		

ج. وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة :

e.g. : - four sheets of paper
- six jars of jam
- two slices of meat
- five cups of coffee
- five pairs of shoes
- two loaves of bread
- six bars of chocolate

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Hassan earns .... money. He is in need of your help.
a. little b. a little c. a few d. much
2. How .... meat do you need, Madam ?
a. a lot b. many c. much d. little
3. I must buy some bread. I hardly have .... left in the kitchen.
a. much b. any c. many d. some
4. He doesn't like city life as there's always too .... noise.
a. many b. much c. little d. a little

5. Two hundred pounds .... enough for today's spending.
   a. are b. have c. is d. were
6. Will you buy a .... of toothpaste, honey?
   a. piece b. glass c. tube d. plate
7. .... people live in the country today than in the past.
   a. Little b. Least c. Few d. Fewer
8. Five hundred metres .... a long distance to walk.
   a. haven't b. hasn't c. isn't d. aren't
9. Can you tell us how .... holiday a year did you use to have?
   a. many b. much c. often d. tall
10. .... is usually on the menu of that restaurant.
   a. The chickens b. Chickens c. Chicken d. Chicks
11. I can hear too many .... in the living room. Do you have guests?
   a. noise b. sound c. voice d. voices
12. Try to reduce the .... of cups of tea you drink a day.
   a. amount b. quantity c. number d. quality
13. I've had many jobs to do and so I have got .... time.
   a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
14. There .... three pairs of scissors in the drawer.
   a. is b. are c. was d. has
15. There is .... juice for everyone to drink, so we need some more.
   a. too much b. too many c. little d. enough
16. There aren't .... hotels in this town. Only two.
   a. some b. any c. many d. much
17. The money of the books .... on the table.
   a. are b. were c. has d. is
18. How .... do you have?
   a. much money b. few money c. many money d. little money
19. There aren't .... seats for everybody. Some people will have to sit on the floor or stand!
   a. all b. much c. any d. enough
20. How .... people are coming to the party?
   a. some b. many c. much d. any

21. He bought .... blue shorts.

a. a b. an c. some d. any

22. There .... plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.

a. is b. are c. was d. were

23. The police .... interviewing some people.

a. is b. was c. are d. have

24. He failed to carry out his duties as a manager as he didn't have ....

a. many experience b. many experiences

c. enough experiences d. much experience

25. He gave the police a lot of .... about the criminal.

a. few information b. an information

c. informations d. information

26. .... congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.

a. A b. Any c. Few d. Many

27. I don't have .... time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.

a. some b. much c. any d. many

28. My trousers .... some holes in them.

a. has b. have c. is d. are

29. Can you help me with ....?

a. a luggage b. many baggage c. a baggage d. my luggage

30. Could I have only .... oranges to eat?

a. some b. any c. many d. an

31. There wasn't .... traffic on the road. Only a few private cars.

a. many b. much c. little d. a few

32. My .... are in my bag.

a. a glass b. pair of glasses c. glass d. glasses

33. There .... a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing

a. is b. was c. have d. are

34. How .... coffees do you want to drink ?

a. much b. many c. little d. few

35. Those sheep .... fat.

a. is b. are c. was d. had

36. I gave Rodayna .... advice about doing better at English.
   a. an b. some c. any d. a few
37. .... there a lot of hotels in Aswan?
   a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had
38. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take .... photographs.
   a. a b. some c. any d. many
39. Her clothes .... to be ironed.
   a. has needed b. needs c. need d. is needing
40. There .... only a little accommodation available in this hotel.
   a. are b. were c. do d. is
41. There .... a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.
   a. is b. are c. has d. were
42. We met .... interesting people at the party.
   a. some b. any c. much d. a little
43. Ashraf has a lot of good .... He is a genius.
   a. an idea b. idea c. ideas d. some ideas
44. I need .... information.
   a. an b. few c. some d. many
45. My trousers .... too long.
   a. are b. is c. have d. has
46. I didn't buy a pen, I bought .... hat for my mother.
   a. some b. few c. an d. a
47. How .... work do you do every day?
   a. many b. much c. often d. old
48. My reading glasses .... missing.
   a. had b. was c. is d. are
49. This poor woman has ....
   a. child b. a few children c. little children d. much children
50. I haven't got .... luggage.
   a. many b. some c. any d. a
51. We hardly heard .... news of him since he left the company.
   a. any b. some c. many d. much

52. She gave me .... binoculars.
   a. much   b. some   c. any   d. a
53. He bought a lot of .... for his new flat.
   a. few furniture   b. new furniture   c. a new furniture   d. many furniture
54. Walid likes .... in his soup.
   a. a salt   b. many salt   c. a few salt   d. a lot of salt
55. She didn't eat much for lunch, only .... apple.
   a. an   b. some   c. many   d. a lot of
56. A lot of .... require that you have to be patient.
   a. a job   b. work   c. jobs   d. job
57. Mathematics .... not very easy to understand.
   a. are   b. were   c. is   d. has
58. Knowledge of foreign languages .... necessary.
   a. is   b. are   c. have   d. were
59. We saw some .... running in the garden.
   a. mouse's   b. mouse   c. mice   d. mice's
60. I drink .... tea.
   a. none   b. a lot of   c. many   d. a few

2 Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	its	------	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself yourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
One	one	one's	one's	oneself

1 Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

- تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل لتحل محل فاعل الجملة لتجنب تكراره :

e.g. : - I bought a car last month.
- Ashraf (He) wrote a new article.
- Aya (She) studies hard.
- A lion (It) eats meat.
- You came to school late.
- Rokaya and I (We) like tennis.
- Ayman and Mohammed (They) love mum.
- Cats (They) eat fish.
- One can achieve a goal by working hard.

2 Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول

- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول لتحل محل مفعول الجملة وتأتى بعد الفعل وحروف الجر أيضًا :

e.g. : - Menna helped me with my homework.
- We visited Ahmed (him) last Friday.
- My father bought a bike for Leen (her).
- Rahma chased the rat (it).
- We won't help you.
- They invited Rodayna and me (us).
- She doesn't like goats (them).
- He greeted Ahmed and Omar (them).

3 Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية

- صفات الملكية يأتى بعدها الاسم المملوك :

e.g. : - My sister is a teacher.
- I think it is his coat.
- Hanan decorated her flat.
- An animal cleans its skin.
- Never waste your time.
- We sold our old car.
- They renewed their visa.
- Birds cooperate to look after their young.

4 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

- ضمائر الملكية تستخدم بدون اسم بعدها :

e.g. : - The blue bike is mine.
- He used my pen and saved his.
- My bag is small, but hers is big.
- That house isn't yours; it's ours.
- They asked us to leave our seats, but they kept theirs.

- لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية بعد الصيغة التالية :

1. a / an + اسم مفرد + of + ضمير ملكية

e.g. : - He is a cousin of hers. = He is her cousin.

2. اسم جمع + of + ضمير ملكية

e.g. : - They are friends of ours. = They are our friends.

ملاحظات على استخدام الضمائر

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية و عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع لكن يفضل استخدام ضمير مفرد يعود على المذكر وضمير مفرد يعود على المؤنث مربوطين بكلمة (or) :

(Someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)

e.g. : - Someone was knocking on the door. They made my sister afraid.
= Someone was knocking on the door. He or she made my sister afraid.
- Somebody took my pen. I didn't see them.
= Somebody took my pen. I didn't see him or her.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية :

(Something / anything / everything / nothing)

e.g. : - Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud noise.

- الضمير (It) يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد (فاعل / مفعول) وفى حالة الجمع نستخدم (They) للفاعل و(them) للمفعول :

e.g. : - The cat (It) eats fish. - Lions (They) eat meat.
- Amal fed the cat (it). - I don't like rats (them).

- لاحظ استخدام (It) للتعبير عن الزمن والمسافة و الطقس :

e.g. : - It is half past nine. - It is a long way to school.
- It is quite cold today.

- لاحظ أن (its) للملكية و يأتى بعدها اسم أو صفة ثم اسم :

e.g. : - The fox moved its long tail. - The dog ate its food.

- أما (It's) تكون اختصار (It is / It has) :

- It's (It is) a new car. - It's (It has) rained for two days.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

It + (be) + object pronoun ضمير مفعول

e.g : A : Who opened the door ? B : It's me.

It is + subject / object pronoun ضمير مفعول / ضمير فاعل + relative pronoun ضمير وصل

e.g. : - It's I (me) who opened the door.

- يستخدم الضمير (one) بمعنى «المرء» وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام (you) بدلاً منها :

e.g. : - One (You) should eat healthy food.

- وفي حالة الملكية نستخدم (one's) ويمكن استخدام (your) بدلاً منها :

e.g. : - It is easy to lose one's (your) money in a bus in Cairo.

5 Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول :

e.g. : - Ali hurt himself.
- I bought myself a cold drink.
- She saw herself in the mirror.
- We'll pay for ourselves.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد عندما يأتي بعد الفاعل / المفعول :

e.g. : - I myself polished the shoes. = I polished the shoes myself.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة» :

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

e.g. : - I went shopping on my own. (alone).
- He lives on his own. (alone / by himself).
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

- يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر after / for / on :

e.g. : - The girls looked after themselves. - Always depend on yourself.

- هناك فرق بين (of his own / on his own) :

on his own = alone / without help

e.g. : - I live on my own. = I live alone.

- I cleaned the kitchen on my own. = I cleaned the kitchen without help.

of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تدل على الملكية

e.g. : - I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حرف الجر (with) عندما يكون بمعنى «مع» ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - us) :

e.g. : - I went with herself. (✗)

- I went with her. (✓)

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول :

e.g. : - She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.

- The car was coming fast towards me.

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة (تصف أشياء يؤديها الإنسان بنفسه) مثل :

approach	يقترب من	rest	يستريح	stand up	يقف
remember	يتذكر	lie down	ينام	meet	يقابل
shave	يحلق	wonder	يتساءل	sit down	يجلس
wake up	يستيقظ	relax	يسترخي		
complain	يشكو	worry	يقلق		

e.g. : - He shaved in ten minutes.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself. = Have a good time.
- Take care of yourself. = Be careful.
- Help yourself (to). = Take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite /Behave well.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- He isn't feeling himself today. = He's feeling ill today.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We think that those stories are ....
   a. ours b. us c. we d. our
2. The film .... wasn't very good, but I liked the music.
   a. itself b. himself c. herself d. it
3. These books belong to ....
   a. their b. they c. them d. theirs
4. The dog barked on seeing .... in a mirror.
   a. its b. it's c. itself d. it
5. **A:** Ali, did you and Sami repair the broken window?
   B: Yes, we did. But I cut .... on a piece of glass.
   a. mine b. myself c. ourselves d. me
6. Make .... a cup of tea.
   a. you b. your c. themselves d. yourself
7. **A:** Is this your sister's bedroom?
   B: No, it's my bedroom. .... is downstairs.
   a. Herself b. She c. Hers d. Her
8. **A:** Who repaired your bicycle for you ?
   B: Nobody. I repaired it ....
   a. my b. mine c. me d. myself
9. We got out of the water and dried ....
   a. us b. we c. ourselves d. themselves
10. The girl is feeling faint. Take .... to hospital.
    a. herself b. her c. hers d. yourself
11. The door of this room sometimes opens ....
    a. themselves b. by itself c. oneself d. himself
12. Are you going to do this exercise ....?
    a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. himself
13. My wife and I have just bought a new flat. .... is near to where we live now.
    a. Its b. We c. Itself d. It

14. Our house is not as modern as ....

a. their b. her c. hers d. your

15. Children sometimes hurt .... when they are playing.

a. them b. themselves c. ourselves d. himself

16. Your garden is bigger than ....

a. we b. us c. ours d. our

17. Did you both hurt .... ?

a. yourself b. yourselves c. themselves d. herself

18. We wanted to buy the table, but .... surface was damaged.

a. itself b. it's c. it d. its

19. Take an umbrella with .... in case it rains.

a. yourself b. you c. yours d. your

20. These books aren't .... They are ours.

a. theirs b. they c. them d. there's

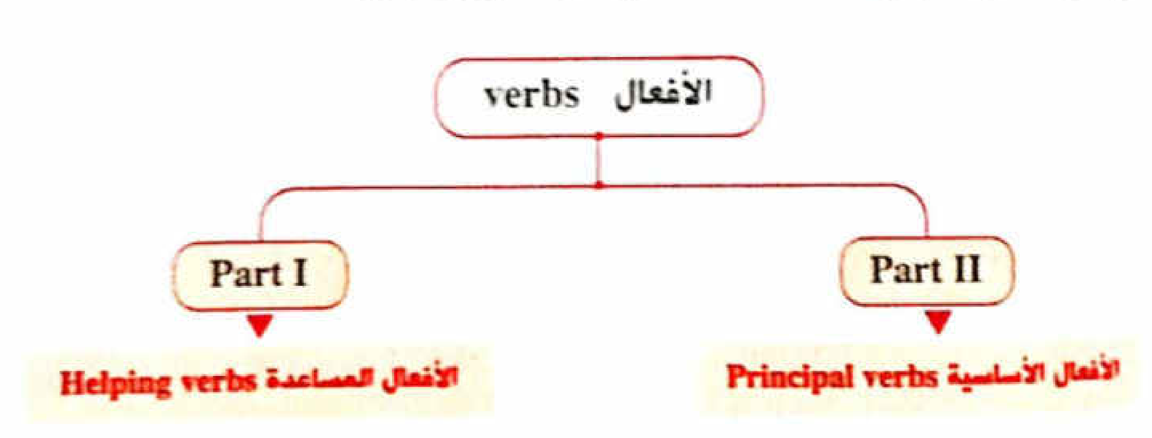
21. I .... and dressed in ten minutes.

a. showered myself b. showered with myself

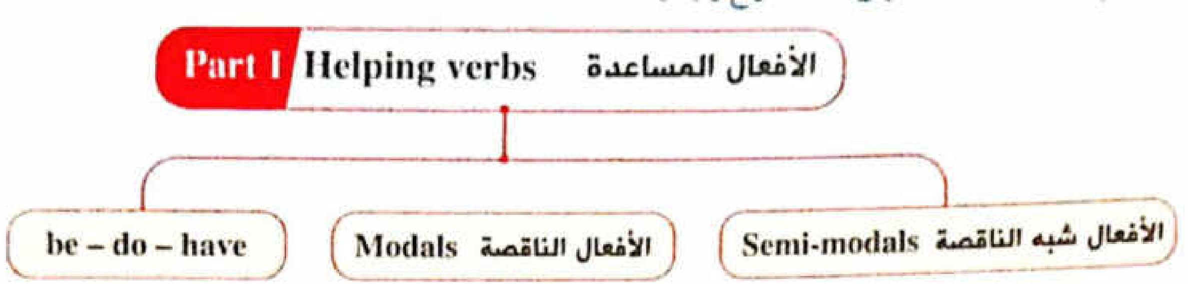
c. showered by myself d. showered to myself

3 Verbs الأفعال

في الجزء التالي، يتم شرح الأفعال (verbs) من خلال تقطيعين رئيسيين هما :



- تنقسم الأفعال المساعدة إلى ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية :



Verb to "be"

(١) لاحظ تصريف فعل (to be) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

Inf. المصدر	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
be	am - is - are	was - were	been

(٢) لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to be) مع الفاعل :

Pronoun الضمير	Present المضارع	Past الماضي
I	am / 'm / am not	was / was not / wasn't
He / She / It	is = 's / / is not / isn't	was / was not / wasn't
You / We / They	are = 're / aren't / are not	were / were not / weren't

(٣) يُستخدم فعل (to be) كفعل أساسي بمعني (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. : - I am tired.
- She is not / isn't clever.
- They are / They're at school.

(٤) تُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي بمعني (يكون) بعد (to) :

e.g. : - She wants to be a doctor.

(٥) يُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي أو مساعد بعد الأفعال الناقصة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Omar will be 17 tomorrow. (فعل أساسي)
- Your eyes must be examined. (فعل مساعد)

٦ يُستخدم كلًا من (am – is - are) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين المضارع المستمر والمبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Rodayna is having lunch now. (مضارع مستمر)
- The boys are taken to school by their mother. (مضارع بسيط مبني للمجهول)

٧ يُستخدم كلًا من (was - were) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين الماضي المستمر والمبني للمجهول في الماضي البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Sama was watching TV. (ماضي مستمر)
- A new school was built in our street last year. (ماضي بسيط مبني للمجهول)

٨ تُستخدم (being) بعد (am – is – are - was - were) كفعل مساعد ثان لتكوين المضارع المستمر والماضي المستمر المبني للمجهول : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - The house is being cleaned. (مضارع مستمر مبني للمجهول)
- TV was being watched by Sama. (ماضي مستمر مبني للمجهول)

٩ تُستخدم (been) في تكوين الأزمنة التامة والمبني للمجهول :

e.g. : - Omar has been ill recently. (مضارع تام المعلوم)
- The player had been sent out before scoring any goals. (ماضي تام مبني للمجهول)

١٠ تُستخدم الصيغة (being + adj.) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالروابط)

e.g. : - Because he was tired, he went to bed early.
= Being tired, he went to bed early.

١١ تُستخدم الصيغة (be to + inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية أو إعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات :

e.g. : - The manager is to meet some important businessmen today.
- You are to write an essay about tourism.

Verb to "do"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to do) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

Inf. المصدر	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
do	do - does	did	done

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to do) مع الفاعل :

Pronoun الضمير	Present المضارع	Past الماضي
I / You / We / They	do ≠ do not = don't	did ≠ did not = didn't
He / She / It	does ≠ does not = doesn't	did ≠ did not = didn't

٣ يُستخدم فعل (to do) كفعل أساسي بمعني (يفعل / يقوم بـ) :

e.g. : - She does / did her homework.
- I do / did the shopping once a week.

٤ يُستخدم كلًا من (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال في المضارع البسيط :

e.g. : - He does not (doesn't) like fish.
- Does he like fish ?
- What does he like ?
- They do not (don't) go out late at night.
- Do they go out late at night ?
- When do they go out ?

٥ تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي والسؤال في الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We did not (didn't) see what happened.
- Did you see what happened ?
- What did you see ?

٦ تُستخدم (do – does – did + inf.) بشكل بلاغي في الجمل المثبتة للتوكيد :

e.g. : - I do know who took the money.
- You did hear what I said.

Verb to "have"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to have) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

Inf. المصدر	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
have	have - has	had	had

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to have) مع الفاعل :

Pronoun الضمير	Present المضارع	Past الماضي
I / You / We / They	have = 've ≠ have not = haven't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't
He / She / It	has = 's ≠ has not = hasn't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't

٣) يُستخدم فعل (to have) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يعاني من ...إلخ) :

e.g. : - I have / had a headache.

- She has / had a lot of money.

٤) لاحظ أن نفي (have / has) كأفعال أساسية في المضارع البسيط هو (don't / doesn't + have) :

e.g. : - He doesn't have meals outdoors. (Not : he hasn't)

- I don't have tea or coffee at night. (Not : I haven't)

٥) لاحظ أن نفي (had) كفعل أساسي في الماضي البسيط هو (didn't + have) :

e.g. : - Aya didn't have a nice time. (Not: he hadn't)

٦) يُستخدم كل من (have - has) كأفعال مساعدة في المضارع التام :

e.g. : - He has bought a car. = He's bought a car.

- They have won the match. = They've won the match.

٧) يُستخدم (had) كفعل مساعد فى الماضي التام :

e.g. : - He had taken a rest before going out.

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

١) الأفعال الناقصة هي أفعال لا تؤدي معنى بمفردها وتحتاج إلى فعل في المصدر (inf.) بعدها :

e.g. : - I can English well. (×) - I can speak English well. (✓)

- You should your lessons hard. (×) - You should study your lessons hard. (✓)

٢) هناك أفعال ناقصة رئيسية هي :

can - could - will - would - may - might - shall - should - must

e.g. : - I will go home. - She might be late. - Shall we leave now ?

للمزيد حول استخدام الافعال الناقصة يمكن الرجوع إلى الأجزاء المخصصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام والقدرة :

Semi-modals الافعال والتعبيرات شبه الناقصة

١) هناك أفعال وتعبيرات شبه ناقصة (Semi-modals) مثل :

- ought to - used to - be going to + inf.

e.g. : - You ought to (should) be more careful.

- I used to go to the fields when I was young.
- Sama is going to join university.

• have to (has to / had to / will have to) يجب / من الضروري / من اللازم

e.g. : - I had / have / will have to follow the rules.

- Omar has / had/ will have to renew his passport.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have to / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

e.g. : - He hasn't to get up early. (×)

- He doesn't have to get up early. (✓)

- She hadn't to go to work yesterday. (×)

- She didn't have to go to work yesterday. (✓)

• have got to / has got to يجب / من الضروري / من اللازم

e.g. : - I have got to leave now.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has + got to) هو (haven't / hasn't + got to) :

- I don't have got to leave now. (×)

- I haven't got to leave now. (✓)

- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has + got to) هي (had to) :

e.g. : - She had got to look after her baby sister. (×)

- She had to look after her baby sister. (✓)

• need / needs / needed to - needn't + inf.

• dare (to) يجرؤ / يستطيع - daren't + inf.

e.g. : - You need to see a doctor.

- No one dares (to) argue يجادل with this manager.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (daren't / needn't) :

e.g. : - I needn't to buy a new tablet. (×)

- I needn't buy a new tablet. (✓)

- I don't need to buy a new tablet. (✓)

• had ('d) better + inf. / would ('d) rather + inf.

e.g. : - You'd better find another job. - I'd rather go to the park.

- لاحظ أن نفي ('d better - 'd rather) هو ('d better not - 'd rather not) :

- I wouldn't rather have lunch outdoors. (×)

- I would rather not have lunch outdoors. (✓)

Part II Principal verbs الأفعال الأساسية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

1 Verb forms اشكال الافعال

Inf. المصدر	First Form التصريف الأول	Second Form التصريف الثاني	p.p. التصريف الثالث	Present Participle اسم الفعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being
do	do - does	did	done	doing
have	have - has	had	had	having
visit	visit - visits	visited	visited	visiting
go	go - goes	went	gone	going
try	try - tries	tried	tried	trying

- وفيما يلى شرح تفصيلى لكل هذه الأشكال الخاصة بالفعل :

Infinitive مصدر الفعل

١ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الناقصة مثل :

can - could - will - would - shall - should - may - might - must - dare - had better - would rather ... + inf.

e.g. : - I can drive a car.
- Omar will arrive soon.
- You had better take a rest.

٢ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة المنفية (don't / doesn't / didn't) :

e.g. : - She doesn't like fish.
- He didn't go out.
- I don't know who broke the glass window.

لاحظ أنه يستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة (do / does / did) فى الجمل المثبتة للتأكيد

- Hani does smoke.
- They do know what I mean.
- I did break the vase.

٣ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد حرف الجر (to) لأغراض مختلفة :

e.g. : - I want to buy a car. (verb + to + inf.)

- She studies hard to get high marks. (لكي)
- To work hard is a good thing. (استخدام الصيغة المصدرية كفاعل)

٤ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في الصيغة التالية :

let / make / see / hear / watch / notice + اسم / ضمير مفعول + inf. …

e.g. : - My father let us go to the park.

- I saw Ahmed cross the street.

٥ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في بداية الجملة لتكوين الأمر المثبت :

e.g. : - Open your books, please.

- Study your lessons before going out.

٦ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد أداة الاستفهام (Why) لتقديم اقتراحات :

Why + inf. …? لِمَ   - Why not + inf. … ? لِمَ لا

e.g. : - Why walk when we can go by bus?

- Why not buy a cold drink?

First form التصريف الأول

١ ويستخدم التصريف الأول للفعل لتكوين زمن المضارع البسيط، و يضاف له (s – es – ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد (He – She – It) :

e.g. : - Ahmed plays tennis in the club every Saturday.

- Ahmed and Karim play tennis.
- A lion eats meat.
- Lions eat meat.

٢ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (be) هي (am / is / are) :

e.g. : - I am busy.   - He /she / It is old.

- You / We / They are hungry

٣ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (have) هي (have / has) :

e.g. : - He / She / It has family.

- I / You / We / They have some friends.

PART 1

Second form التصريف الثاني

ⓘ ويستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل لتكوين زمن الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - She went to the library with her friends.

- They watched the match in the stadium.

Third form (p.p.) التصريف الثالث (اسم المفعول)

ⓘ ويستخدم التصريف الثالث للفعل في الحالات التالية :

١ بعد (have / has / had) لتكوين المضارع التام والماضي التام :

e.g. : - He has gone shopping.

- Mum had prepared lunch before we arrived home.

٢ بعد الأفعال المساعدة لتكوين المبني للمجهول :

e.g. : - The window was broken by him.

- The film is shown on this channel every month.
- Our flat will be decorated soon.
- The old man has been helped by his daughter.

٣ يُستخدم كصفة :

e.g. : - Polluted air causes a lot of diseases.

- I have some written work to do.

٤ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمجهول. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيدا :

e.g. : - The trees which were grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.

= The trees grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.

- The criminal who was arrested last night is very dangerous.

= The criminal arrested last night is very dangerous.

"-ing" Form (present participle) اسم الفعل

ⓘ تُستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

١ تُستخدم كفعل بعد (be /am / is / are / was / were / been) لتكوين الأزمنة المستمرة :

e.g. : - He may be sleeping at home. - He is watching TV.

- They were having lunch. - She has been revising her lessons.

٢ تُستخدم بعد أفعال المكان والحركة مثل (go / lie / come / be busy ….) :

e.g. : - We went fishing last Friday.
- I lay looking at the stars in the dark sky.

٣ تُستخدم بعد أفعال الإدراك التالية للدلالة على متابعة جزء من الحدث :

see / hear / watch / notice + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) …

e.g. : - I heard someone crying.
- He saw his friends playing in the park.
- I watched the rabbits eating some carrots.

٤ تُستخدم في الصيغ التالية :

spend / waste + time / money + (inf. + ing) …

e.g. : - Don't waste your money (on) buying clothes!
- I've spent three hours shopping.

find / catch + ضمير / اسم + (inf. + ing) …

e.g. : - His father caught him playing in the street.
- They found their teachers sitting in the garden.

٥ تُستخدم كصفة :

e.g. : - It was an interesting story.
- I sat on the beach to watch the setting sun.

٦ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمعلوم. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

e.g. : - The dog which is sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.
= The dog sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.
- The boy who is wearing a white shirt is my son.
= The boy wearing a white shirt is my son.

٧ تُستخدم في عبارة اسم الفعل (present participle clause) كبديل للعبارات السببية والزمنية
- لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

e.g. : - After he had put on his coat, he left the house.
= Putting on his coat, he left the house.
- While I was watching the match at home, I fell asleep.
= Watching the match at home, I fell asleep.
- Because he felt very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.
= Feeling very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.

كيفية تكوين اسم الفعل :

١ مع معظم الأفعال، يُضاف المقطع (ing) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :

e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting

٢ اذا انتهي المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فانه يحذف قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - write → writing - make → making

- ويشذ عن ذلك أفعال مثل :

e.g. : - dye يصبغ → dyeing - singe يلسع → singeing

٣ يتضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة (ing) إذا انتهي المصدر بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

e.g. : - run → running - swim → swimming

- stop → stopping

٤ يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المتكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل اضافة (ing) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشددًا في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - regret → regretting

- begin → beginning

٥ إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying

٦ إذا انتهي الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - panic يَفْزَع → panicking - picnic يتنزه → picnicking

2 Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الافعال

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

- Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة
- Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

1 Conjugation of Regular Verbs تصريف الافعال المنتظمة

١) بصفة عامة يتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :

e.g. : - visit ⟶ visited - watch ⟶ watched - land ⟶ landed

٢) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :

e.g. : - like ⟶ liked - change ⟶ changed - bake ⟶ baked

٣) يتضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل إضافة (ed) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

e.g. : - stop ⟶ stopped - ban ⟶ banned

- يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل اضافة (ed) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشددًا في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - deter يمنع / يعوق ⟶ deterred - regret ⟶ regretted

٤) إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن فإنه يتحول الي (i) قبل اضافة (ed) :

e.g. : - study ⟶ studied - dry ⟶ dried - try ⟶ tried

٥) إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ed) :

e.g. : - panic يَفْزَع ⟶ panicked - picnic يتنزه ⟶ picnicked

2 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الافعال غير المنتظمة

تنويه: الطالب غير مُلْزَم بحفظ كل الأفعال غير المنتظمة، لكن هذا التصنيف يُعتبَر مَرْجع لكل دارس.
يواجه مُعظم الطلاب مشكلة في حفظ تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة (الشاذة)، ولتسهيل حفظ هذه الأفعال، سنقوم بتقسيم هذه الأفعال إلى مجموعات حسب طريقة تصريفها :

١) أفعال لا تتغير عند تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bet (s) يراهن	bet	bet
broadcast (s) يذيع / يبث	broadcast	broadcast
burst (s) ينفجر	burst	burst
cost (s) يُكلّف	cost	cost
cut (s) يقطع	cut	cut

hit (s) يضرب	hit	hit
hurt (s) يؤلم / يؤذي	hurt	hurt
let (s) يدع / يسمح	let	let
put (s) يضع	put	put
quit (s) يترك / يُقلع	quit	quit
read (s) يقرأ	read	read
set (s) يُعد / يضبط	set	set
shut (s) يُغلق	shut	shut

أفعال يتغير فيها حرف واحد : فقط يتحول حرف (d) إلى (t) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bend (s) يَلْوي / ينحني	bent	bent
build (s) يبني	built	built
lend (s) يُقْرِض	lent	lent
send (s) يُرْسِل	sent	sent
spend (s) يقضي وقت / يُنْفِق	spent	spent

أفعال يتغير فيها (ay) إلى (aid) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
lay (s) يُعِد / تبيض	laid	laid
pay (s) يدفع (مالا)	paid	paid
say (s) يقول	said	said

أفعال يُضاف حرف (t) لنهايتها (يُستثنى الفعل hear) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
deal (s) يُوزِّع / يتعامل	dealt	dealt
dream (s) يحلم	dreamt	dreamt
hear (s) يسمع	heard	heard

lean (s) يَميل / يَنْحني	leant	leant
leap (s) يَقْفز	leapt	leapt
mean (s) يعني / يقصد	meant	meant

⑤ أفعال يتحول فيها (ell) إلى (old) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
sell (s) يبيع	sold	sold
tell (s) يُخبر	told	told

⑥ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغير (i) إلى (ou) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bind (s) يَرْبُط	bound	bound
find (s) يجد	found	found
grind (s) يَطحَن / يَشْحَذ / يسِنّ	ground	ground
wind (s) يَلُفّ / يَتعَرَّج	wound	wound

⑦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ee) أو (ea) إلى (e) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
bleed (s) يَنْزِف	bled	bled
feed (s) يُطْعِم	fed	fed
flee (s) يَفِرّ / يُخْلي	fled	fled
lead (s) يَقود / يؤدي إلى / يَعيش (بِطَريقة مُعَيَّنة)	led	led
speed (s) يُسْرِع	sped	sped

PART 1

أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (u) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
begin (s) يبدأ	began	begun
drink (s) يشرب	drank	drunk
shrink (s) ينكمش	shrank	shrunk
sing (s) يغني	sang	sung
sink (s) يَغْرَق (للأشياء) / يغوص	sank	sunk
spring (s) يَقْفِز / يبرز	sprang	sprung
swim (s) يسبح	swam	swum

أفعال ينتهي تصريفها بـ (ought / aught) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bring (s) يجلب / يُحْضِر	brought	brought
buy (s) يشتري	bought	bought
fight (s) يقاتل / يواجه	fought	fought
seek (s) يسعى	sought	sought
think (s) يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
catch (s) يمسك / يقبض على / يصطاد	caught	caught
teach (es) يُعَلِّم / يَشْرَح	taught	taught

أفعال بها (ee) يتم فيها حذف حرف (e) مع إضافة حرف (t) لنهاية الفعل ما لم يكن موجودا (يُستثنى الفعل feed) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
creep (s) يَتَسَلَّل / يزحف	crept	crept
feed (s) يُطعم	fed	fed
feel (s) يشعر	felt	felt
keep (s) يحتفظ بـ / يظل / يربى	kept	kept

kneel (s)	يركع على ركبتيه	knelt	knelt
meet (s)	يقابل	met	met
sleep (s)	ينام	slept	slept
sweep (s)	يَكْنُس / يَنْدَفِع / يَجُرّ	swept	swept
weep (s)	يَبْكي	wept	wept

١١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير الحرف المتحرك إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، ثم يُضاف إليه (en) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s)	يَستَيقظ / يوقظ	awoke / awaked	awoken / awaked
break (s)	يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
choose (s)	يختار	chose	chosen
freeze (s)	يتجمد / يُجَمِّد	froze	frozen
speak (s)	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
steal (s)	يسرق	stole	stolen
wake (s)	يَسْتَيْقِظ	woke / waked	woken / waked
weave (s)	يَنْسُج	wove	woven

١٢ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير المتحرك (i) إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني، وينتهي التصريف الثالث بـ (en) :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
arise (s)	يَنْشأ	arose	arisen
drive (s)	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
rise (s)	يرتفع / يزداد / تُشرق	rose	risen
ride (s)	يركب	rode	ridden
write (s)	يكتب	wrote	written

١٣ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ear) إلى (ore) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (orn) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
bear (s)	تلد / يتحمل / يطيق	bore	borne / born
swear (s)	يَسُبّ / يَعِد / يؤكد	swore	sworn
tear (s)	يُمَزّق	tore	torn
wear (s)	يرتدي	wore	worn

١٤ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ow) إلى (ew) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (own) لتكوين التصريف الثالث (يُستثنى الفعل draw) :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
blow (s)	يَهُبّ/ يَنْفُخ / يَطير مَع الرِّيح	blew	blown
draw (s)	يَرْسُم / يَجُرّ / يَسْحَب	drew	drawn
grow (s)	ينمو / يزرع	grew	grown
know (s)	يعرف	knew	known
throw (s)	يرمي / يُلْقي	threw	thrown
fly (ies)	يطير / يُطَيِّر	flew	flown

١٥ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) أو (u) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني و الثالث، و يتم حذف حرف (e) من نهاية الفعل إن وُجِد :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
dig (s)	يحفر	dug	dug
spin (s)	يَدور حَوْل نَفْسِه / يَغْزِل	spun / span	spun
stick (s)	يُلْصِق / يَغْرُز / يَعْلَق	stuck	stuck
sting (s)	يَلْدُغ	stung	stung
strike (s)	يُضْرِب/ يَخْطُر عَلى بال / يَدُق	struck	struck

swing (s) يَتأرجح	swung	swung

١٦ أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريف الأول مع التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
become (s) يُصبح	became	become
come (s) يأتي	came	come
run (s) يجري / يدير	ran	run

١٧ أفعال يتشابه تصريفيها الثاني و الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
babysit (s) يَرْعى الطِفْل	babysat	babysat
hold (s) يُمْسك / يُثَبِّت	held	held
leave (s) يغادر / يترك	left	left
lose (s) يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
sit (s) يجلس	sat	sat
slide (s) يَنْزَلِق	slid	slid
stand (s) يقف	stood	stood
understand (s) يفهم	understood	understood
win (s) يفوز	won	won
shoot (s) يُطْلِق النَّار عَلى/ يرمي / يقذف	shot	shot

١٨ أفعال متنوعة في طريقة تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
be (am / is / are) يَكُون / يوجد	was / were	been
do (es) يفعل	did	done
have / has يملك	had	had
go يذهب	went	gone

أفعال متقاربة في نمط التصريف :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
beat (s) يهزم / يضرب	beat	beaten
bite (s) يعض / يقضم	bit	bitten
hide (s) يختبئ	hid	hidden
eat (s) يأكل	ate	eaten
fall (s) يسقط / يقع	fell	fallen
forbid (s) يمْنع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
forget (s) ينسي	forgot	forgotten
get (s) يحصل علي	got	got / gotten
forgive (s) يسامح	forgave	forgiven
give (s) يعطي	gave	given
see (s) يري	saw	seen
shake (s) يهز / يرج / يصافح	shook	shaken
take (s) يأخذ	took	taken

أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين دون اختلاف في المعنى :

inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
awake (s) يَستَيقظ	awoke / awaked	awoke / awaked
bear (s) تلد / يتحمل	bore	borne / born
burn (s) يحرق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
dream (s) يحلم	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
dwell (s) يقطن / يسكُن	dwelt / dwelled	dwelt / dwelled
forbid (s) يَمْنَع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
kneel (s) يَجْثو علي	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
lean (s) ينحني	leant / leaned	leant / leaned
learn (s) يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
light (s) يُشْعِل / يُنير	lighted / lit	lighted / lit

mow (s) يجز العشب	mowed	mowed / mown
sew (s) يخيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show (s) يعرض	showed	showed / shown
smell (s) يشم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
sow (s) يبذر	sowed	sowed / sown
speed (s) يُسْرِع	speeded / sped	speeded / sped
spell (s) يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spill (s) يسكب	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
spoil (s) يُتلف	spoilt / spoiled	spoilt / spoiled
swell (s) يتورّم	swelled	swelled / swollen
wake (s) يستيقظ	woke / waked	woke / waked

٢١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين أو أكثر مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bid يعرض	bid	bid
bid (s) يأمر / يودع	bade	bidden
dive (s) يقفز إلى الماء برأسه أولاً	dove	dived
dive (s) يغوص بمعدات	dived	dived
fit (s) يناسب في الحجم	fit	fit
fit (s) يُعدّل مقاس / يُركّب	fitted	fitted
hang (s) يُعلّق	hung	hung
hang (s) يعدم / يشنق	hanged / hung	hanged / hung
lay (s) يُعد / تبيض	laid	laid
lie (s) يكذب	lied	lied
lie (s) يرقد / يستلقي	lay	lain
shine (s) يَلْمَع / يَسْطع	shone	shone
shine (s) يُسلّط الضوء على	shone / shined	shone / shined
shine (s) يُلمّع / يَصْقُل	shined	shined

PART 1

4 Adjectives الصفات

الصفة

Adjective : هي كلمة تصف اسم وتأتى غالبًا قبله :

e.g. : - Rodayna bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.
- I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.

يمكن أن تأتى الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدونه بعد فعل verb to be وأفعال أخرى مثل :
(look / seem / appear / taste / feel / sound / smell)

e.g. : - Leen **felt** cold. - Ahmed **looks** happy.
- Mum's food **smells** delicious. - Ali is **clever**.

الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقا و لكن تستخدم بعد verb to be وأفعال مثل seem / look / feel (أفعال الحواس):

على قيد الحياة alive / غائب absent / مشتعل alight / alone / asleep / awake / afraid

e.g. : - Roaa feels **afraid** when she is left alone.
- We were **happy** that he was **alive**.

1 Similarity التشابه

هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن التشابه او تساوي طرفين في صفة ما ومن تلك الطرق ما يلي:

الطرف الثاني + **as** + الصفة + **as** + **be** + الطرف الاول

الطرف الثاني + **as** + الاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **has / have** + الطرف الاول

الاسم من الصفة + **the same** + **have** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول

الاسم من الصفة + **of the same** + **be** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول

الصفة + **be** + الطرف الثانى ,الطرف الأول + **Like**

e.g. : - Aya is **as beautiful as** Mariam.
= Aya has the **same beauty as** Mona.
= Aya and Mariam have **the same** beauty.
= Aya and Mariam are of **the same** beauty.
= Like Aya, Mariam **is** beautiful.

- لاحظ عند النفى نستخدم (not as/so + صفة + as) :

e.g. : - Nabil is taller than Samy.

= Samy isn't as (so) tall as Nabil.

- لاحظ الاسم الذى يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية :

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
expensive/ cheap	price	deep	depth
big / small	size	wide	width
old / young	age	long	length
far / near	distance	high / tall	height
strong	strength	heavy / light	weight

e.g. : - This house is as high as yours.

= This house has the same height as yours.

- The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.

= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

2 Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما :

e.g. : - Malak is **taller than** Rodayna.

- A car is fast, but a train is **faster**.
- Films are **more exciting than** novels.
- Chicken is **less expensive than** meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة والطويلة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين فى صفة مشتركة بينهم :

* تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة :

١ يضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower

٢ اذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن(لا ينطق) نضيف في المقارنة (r) فقط :

e.g. : - wide → wider - nice → nicer

- large → larger - simple → simpler

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (ier) :

e.g. : - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy →

يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا جاء قبله حرف متحرك واحد بشرط أن تكون الكلمة مقطع واحد :

e.g. : - hot → hotter - fat → fatter - thin → thinner

صيغة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة :

more / less + adj. الصفة + than

e.g. : - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than
- more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

ملاحظات عامة علي صفات المقارنة

يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفات القصيرة :

e.g. : - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. = Ali is less strong than Ahmed

يمكن استخدام (even / much /a lot / far...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة لمعنى الصفة :

e.g. : - Travelling by train is **much** slower than travelling by plane

يمكن استخدام (slightly /a bit / a little...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإضعاف معنى الصفة :

e.g. : - I had to drive **a bit** faster.

يمكن استخدام صفتى مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر فى شىء :

e.g. : - It's become **more and more** difficult to find a flat.

لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد than (يكون "ضمير فاعل" إذا كان بعده فعل و "ضمير مفعول" فى حالة عدم وجود فعل) :

e.g. : - He is taller **than** I am.
= He is taller **than** me.
-We earn more money **than** they do.
= We earn more money **than** them.

يمكن استخدام المقارنة للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة (كلما .... كلما ......) :

The + صفة مقارنة + جملة السبب + the + صفة مقارنة + جملة النتيجة

e.g. : - **The harder** you study, **the higher** marks you get.

3 Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

- تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتقارن بين اكثر من طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم (تمييز فرد عن مجموعة) :

e.g. : - Omar is the **cleverest** student in class.
- The plane is the **fastest** means of transport.
- Football is the **most** exciting sport.
- Fish is the least **expensive** protein source.

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات قصيرة المقطع :

١ توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (est) لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - old → the old**est** - strong → the strong**est**
- tall → the tall**est**

٢ اذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) (لا ينطق) و قبلها حرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (st) فقط لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - nice → the nice**st** - wide → the wide**st**
- simple → the simple**st**

٣ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم تتحول (y) الي (iest) في نهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - lazy → the laz**iest** - heavy → the heav**iest**
- noisy → the nois**iest**

٤ إذا انتهت الصفة قصيرة المقطع بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير مع إضافة (the) قبل الصفة و (est) فى نهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - big → the big**gest** - thin → the thin**nest**
- hot → the hot**test**

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات طويلة المقطع :

the most / the least + adj. طويلة المقطع

e.g. : - dangerous → **the most** / **the least** dangerous
- interesting → **the most** / **the least** interesting

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

- يمكن استخدام (most) بدون (the) وفى هذه الحالة تساوى فى المعنى (very) :

most + adj. (without the) = very

e.g. : - The information I've just heard is most important. = very important

- لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل مع الاعداد الترتيبية (first / second / third/ fourth...etc) :

e.g. : - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية او ('s) الملكية قبل الصفة :

e.g. : - The femto-second is Zewail's **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- The femto-second is his **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- استخدام (No) بدلًا من أسلوب التفضيل :

باقي الجملة + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل
طرف المقارنة + than + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

No + فاعل "verb to be" + as + adj. صفة as + باقى الجملة طرف المقارنة

e.g. : - Omar was the **most** courageous man in the city.

= No man in the city is **more** courageous than Omar.

No man in the city is **as** courageous **as** Omar.

- The Nile is **the longest river**. = No river is **longer than** the Nile.

- Water is the **most** important liquid.

= No liquid is **more** important than water.

- المقارنة والتفضيل باستخدام ever – never :

+ فاعل ثانى + التمييز + صيغة تفضيل +"verb to be" + الفاعل الاول
"have / has"ever + p.p. ...
الفاعل الثاني + "have - has" never + p.p. ... + a /an
فاعل اول + like + تمييز + صفة بدون اضافات

- نلاحظ أن الصفة فى جملة (ever) فى صيغة التفضيل أما الصفة فى جملة (never) صفة من الدرجة الأولى (بدون إضافات) :

e.g. : - Ali is the cleverest boy I have ever seen.
= I have never seen a clever man like Ali.
- I have never watched a funny film like that.
= This is the funniest film I have ever seen.
- Zewail is the most important person I have ever met.
= I have never met an important person like Zewail.

- نلاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which تستخدم عند السؤال للمفاضلة بين شيئين فى صفة معينة (نستخدم صفة من الدرجة الثانية) :

e.g. : - Which is faster; the train or the plane ?
- Which is more exciting; the pyramid or the tower ?

- لاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which يمكن أن تستخدم للمفاضلة بين أكثر من شيئين (صفة من الدرجة الثالثة).
- Which is the most expensive car ? – The red car.

Irregular adjectives

صفات غير منتظمة

Adj. / adv.	comparative	superlative
bad / badly / ill / wrong	worse than	the worst
far	farther (further) than	the farthest (furthest)
fore	former than	the first
good / well / right	better than	the best
late	latter than / later than	the last / the latest
little	less than	the least
many / much	more than	the most
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest
real	more real	the most real

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A chair is .... comfortable than a sofa.
   a. less   b. the least   c. little   d. least
2. This is .... company in the world.
   a. big   b. bigger   c. biggest   d. the biggest
3. English is .... than any other language.
   a. easy   b. easier   c. more easy   d. the easiest

PART 1

4. You look much .... than yesterday.

a. happy b. happier c. happiest d. the happiest

5. Football is .... popular game in Egypt.

a. more b. most c. less d. the most

6. This is .... picture I've ever seen.

a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest

7. This computer is not .... expensive as the one that I bought yesterday.

a. more b. less c. as d. most

8. The .... tree in the world is in Sweden.

a. old b. older c. eldest d. oldest

9. This is the .... test I've ever taken.

a. hard b. harder c. less hard d. hardest

10. He is not .... reliable as his friend.

a. so b. more c. less d. most

11. The food is not nearly so .... as it was in the past.

a. good b. better c. worse d. the best

12. Alaa is a .... doctor than Omar.

a. good b. better c. best d. the best

13. Water is the .... expensive of all liquids.

a. much b. least c. less d. more

14. An elephant is .... as a tiger.

a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. not as fast

15. Nobody in our company is .... Peter.

a. efficient b. as efficient as

c. most efficient than d. as efficient

16. It was .... of her to waste all her money.

a. more foolish than b. less foolish

c. foolish d. least foolish

17. Laptops are becoming .... popular nowadays.

a. less and more b. more and less

c. much and more d. more and more

18. Climbing is the .... dangerous sport in the world.

a. more b. most c. less d. as

19. Mr Ali has .... friends than me.

a. many b. most c. the least d. more

20. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even ....
   a. pretty   b. prettiest   c. prettier   d. most pretty
21. Today is .... hotter than yesterday.
   a. least   b. little   c. less   d. most
22. My flat is .... than yours.
   a. more big   b. less big   c. bigger   d. the biggest
23. I don't read as .... books as you do.
   a. much   b. more   c. most   d. many

5 Adverb الظرف

- هناك خمسة أنواع من الظروف هي :

Types of adverbs أنواع الظروف

- **Frequency** التكرار — - I often get up early.
- **Degree** الدرجة — - She was very happy yesterday.
- **Manner** الكيفية — - He ran quickly.
- **Place** المكان — - She travelled abroad.
- **Time** الزمان — - He went to the park yesterday.

- وفيما يلي شرح مُبَسّط لأنواع الظروف المختلفة :

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

① تدل ظروف التكرار كما يتضح من اسمها على تكرار الحدث :

e.g. - I go to Alexandria every summer. - She goes to the cinema once a month.

② ظروف التكرار التالية مُشتقّة من كلمات زمنية، وتدل على تكرار الحدث كل فترة معينة :

daily – weekly – monthly – yearly / annually = every (day – week – month – year) = once a (day – week – month – year)

e.g. : - We pay the taxes الضرائب yearly.
= We pay the taxes every year.
= We pay the taxes once a year.

٣ ظروف التكرار التالية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

every + (عدد) + (day – night - week - month – summer – year ...)

e.g. : - I visit my aunt every month.= Every month, I visit my aunt.
- She calls her mother every three days.
= Every three days, she calls her mother.

٤ ظروف التكرار التالية تدل على تكرار الحدث عدد محدد من المرات كل فترة زمنية، وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : - once مرة واحدة / twice مرتين / three times ... + a / an / every + كلمة زمنية
- I go to the club twice a week.
= Twice a week, I go to the club.

٥ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (to be) والأفعال المساعدة :

always دائما - constantly بشكل ثابت - usually / normally عادة - regularly بانتظام
- often غالبا frequently غالبا - sometimes أحيانا - occasionally بين حين و آخر
- little قلّما - rarely / seldom نادراً - hardly ever بالكاد - never مطلقا

e.g. : - I sometimes go to the club.
- Tom is often late for work.

- كما يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معني الظرف :

e.g. : - Sometimes I play football.
= I play football sometimes.

٦ الظروف التالية تدل على النفى، وعند استخدامها في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل :

Scarcely / Rarely / Seldom / Hardly / Little / Never + فعل مساعد + subj. فاعل

e.g. : - We never waste our time.
= Never do we waste our time.
- My mum rarely goes out.
= Rarely does my mum go out.

Adverbs of degree ظروف الدرجة

١ أهم ظروف الدرجة في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

a bit	قليلاً	nearly	تقريباً
absolutely	بشكل مُطْلَق	pretty	بالفعل / حقاً
almost	تقريباً	quite	إلى حد ما
completely	تماماً	rather	إلى حد ما
enough	كاف / بما يكفي	really	بالفعل / حقاً
entirely	كُليًا	scarcely	نادراً / قلّما
extremely	للغاية	too	جداً / أكثر من اللازم
hardly	بالكاد	utterly	كُليًا
just	فحسب / تواً	very	جداً
little	قليلاً / قلّما		

٢ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة في الحالات التالية :

- قبل الصفات :

e.g. : - Mr Omar is very tall.
- I'm a bit tired.

- قبل الظروف :

e.g. : - He speaks quite loudly.
- She walks very slowly.

- قبل الأفعال :

e.g. : - Aya has nearly prepared lunch.
- She just smiled and went away.

٣ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية :

little / a bit - rather / quite - very - really - extremely

e.g. : - The water is very hot. - I'm extremely tired.

٤ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely - utterly / entirely - completely

e.g. : - This engine is absolutely excellent.
- The temple is utterly ancient.

يمكن أن تُستخدم (really / pretty) مع كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة :

e.g. : - He is really angry / furious.

تُعطي (enough) معنى إيجابي وتُستخدم قبل الاسم أو بعد الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - He has enough money. (enough + noun)

- He is old enough to depend on himself. (adj. + enough)

- She works hard enough to pass the exam. (adv. + enough)

تُعطي (too ... to) معنى سلبي وتُستخدم قبل الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - The tea is too sweet to drink. (too + adj.)

Adverbs of manner ظروف الكيفية

١) ظرف الكيفية يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجيب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

e.g. : - A : How does Omar walk? B : He walks quickly.

- A : How do they work? B : They work hard.

٢) يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

e.g. : - Sama walks slowly. - Ali shouted at me angrily.

٣) تأتي الظروف التالية قبل الفعل وليس بعده :

usually – probably – possibly – definitely – surely – certainly

e.g. : - It is probable he will buy a car. = He will probably buy a car.

- He prays as usual. = He usually prays.

٤) يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة :

١. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

e.g. : - slow ⟶ slowly - quick ⟶ quickly

٢. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وان كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l) :

e.g. : - careful ⟶ carefully - beautiful ⟶ beautifully

٣. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

e.g. : - possible ⟶ possibly - probable ⟶ probably

٤. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily) :

e.g. : - easy ⟶ easily - happy ⟶ happily

٥. الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام : (in a .... way / manner) :

e.g. : - friendly ودود – in a friendly way
- cowardly جبان – in a cowardly way
- Bassem is a good swimmer = Bassem swims well.

٦. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل :

e.g. : - good ⟶ well - fast ⟶ fast - hard ⟶ hard
- late ⟶ late - early ⟶ early
- He smiled in a fatherly manner (way).

⑤ هناك بعض الظروف لها شكلين ومعنيين مختلفين :

deep	بعمق / عميقاً	deeply	بشدة
free	مجاناً	freely	بحرية
hard	بجد / بصعوبة	hardly	بالكاد / تقريباً لا
high	عالياً	highly	بدرجة كبيرة
late	متأخراً	lately	مؤخراً / حديثاً
most	الأكثر	mostly	أساساً / في الغالب
near	بقرب	nearly	تقريباً
pretty	إلى حد ما	prettily	بشكل جميل

e.g. : - The ship sank deep in the ocean.
- I was deeply affected by your advice.

⑥ يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :

more أكثر / less أقل + adv. الظرف + than

e.g. : - Rodayna draws more beautifully than Ahmed.
- Mr Ayman drives less fast than Mr Ashraf.

Adverbs of place ظروف المكان

① أهم ظروف المكان في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

above	فوق / أعلى	eastwards	شرقاً
abroad	خارج البلاد	everywhere	في كل مكان

across	عَبْر	far	بعيداً
ahead	للأمام	here	هنا
around	حول	homeward	باتجاه البيت
away	بعيداً	in	بالداخل
back	للخلف	indoors	بالداخل
backwards	للخلف	inside	بالداخل
below	أسفل	nearby	قريب / مجاور
between	بين	outside	بالخارج
beyond	وراء / بعد	overseas	خارج البلاد
down	أسفل	there	هناك
downwards	لأسفل	west	في / باتجاه الغرب

٢ تُستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان حدوث الفعل :

e.g. : - We are meeting here next October.

٣ توضع ظروف المكان عادة بعد المفعول أو بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - I will wait for them outside.

- I will wait outside for them.

٤ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الاتجاه :

e.g. : - He went north to enjoy the good weather in Alexandria.

٥ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى المسافة :

e.g. : - There's a gym nearby.

٦ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى مكان شيء بالنسبة لأشياء أخري :

e.g. : - The horse is under the tree.

٧ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الحركة :

e.g. : - The boat moved backwards.

Adverbs of time ظروف الزمان

١ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

yesterday – tomorrow – today – now – last week – later فيما بعد ... etc.

e.g. : - I'll call you later. - I'm busy studying now.

- يُمكن استخدام هذه الظروف في بداية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف :

e.g. : - Later, I'll call you. - Now, I'm busy studying.

٢ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : for + مدة / since + توقيت / all + مدة

- I have been waiting here for ten minutes.
- She has had this mobile since 2017.

٣ تُستخدم (yet) بمعني (حتي الأن) في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (not) لتدل علي شيء لم يحدث بعد وإن كان يُنتَظَر حدوثه :

e.g. : - Have they arrived yet ? - We haven't decided yet.

- A: Have you finished ? - B: Not yet.

٤ تُستخدم (still) بمعني (لا يزال)، وتوضع قبل الفعل الأصلي وبعد الفعل المساعد :

e.g. : - He is still waiting for his friends.

- Do you still live in Aswan?

- عندما يكون (be) فعلاً أساسياً فإن (still) تُستخدم بعده :

٥ عندما يكون هناك أكثر من ظرف زمان يكون الترتيب كالتالي :

how long المدة + how often التكرار + when التوقيت

e.g. : - I worked for five hours.

- I have worked for five hours every day.
- I worked for five hours every day last year.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He has no money. He is .... poor.

a. very b. fairly c. quite d. extremely

2. You shouldn't climb the stairs ....
   a. careful b. care c. carelessly d. careless
3. My sister is a good student, she studies her lessons ....
   a. well b. good c. goodly d. willingly
4. My father ran very .... and caught a thief.
   a. fastly b. fast c. fastness d. fasten
5. I sometimes get up .... and miss the school bus.
   a. late b. lately c. later d. lateness
6. The team played the match very ...., so they lost it.
   a. bad b. badly c. badness d. good
7. This girl behaves ....
   a. friendly b. friend
   c. in a friendly way d. friendliness
8. He couldn't buy the suit because it was .... expensive.
   a. rather b. quite c. never d. hardly
9. I had .... an ordinary childhood.
   a. quite b. quiet c. quit d. quickly
10. We like our English teacher. He is .... a good person.
   a. quite b. never c. lately d. hardly
11. It is raining ....
   a. heavy b. heavily c. heaviness d. heavenly
12. Dalia does her work .... She is efficient.
   a. good b. well c. proper d. prepare
13. Samy was .... exhausted when he finished the race.
   a. utterly b. very c. quite d. rather
14. Bassam doesn't leave his office before he finishes his work. He is quite a .... worker.
   a. harder b. hardly c. hardest d. hard
15. Noha was .... after she had cleaned the house all day. She slept for 12 hours after that.
   a. absolutely exhausted b. absolutely tired
   c. very exhausted d. not tired
16. Today, car engines burn petrol more .... than in the past.
   a. efficient b. efficiently c. efficiency d. inefficient
17. She's a bad writer. She writes English ....
   a. badly b. worse c. worst d. bad

18. She works ....
    a. hardly b. more hardly c. hard d. hardness
19. Don't behave .... to be popular with people.
    a. rudely b. rude c. rudeness d. rudest
20. She answered the questions ....
    a. accurate b. more accurate
    c. accuracy d. accurately

6 Definite and Indefinite articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة

A Indifinite articles : A & An أدوات النكرة

- تستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن عند النطق :

e.g. : a girl a farmer a wolf

- تستخدم (a) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التى تبدأ بحرف متحرك (u . o . i . e . a) ولكن يُنطق كصوت ساكن.

e.g. : a university a uniform a unit
a union a European country a one a useful book

- تستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (u . o . i . e . a)

e.g. : an umbrella an egg an honest man
an ink pot an ox an apple

- تأتى (an) قبل الأسماء التى تبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق :

e.g. : He is an honest man.

Usage : الاستخدام

- قبل اسم مفرد يُعد يُذكر لأول مرة :

e.g. : - I saw a plane flying in the sky.
- I have a villa with a swimming pool.

- قبل الصفة إذا سبقت الاسم المفرد المعدود :

e.g. : - This is a beautiful vase.
- He gave an incredible concert حفلة موسيقية yesterday.

- تستخدم بمعنى «واحد من بين العديد من ...» :

e.g. : We have got a car.

- تستخدم عند تصنيف الناس حسب جنسياتهم أو وظائفهم :

e.g. : - She is a Turkish girl.
- She is an accountant.

- مع عبارات عددية معينة وللتجزئة :

e.g. : - **a** couple زوج من
- **a** dozen دستة
- **a** million مليون
- **a** hundred مائة
- **a** kilo of sugar
- half **a** dozen نصف دستة
- **a** score عشرون
- **a** lot of / **a** great deal of كثير من
- **a** thousand ألف
- **a** bag of rice

- مع تعبيرات السرعة والثمن والنسبة :

e.g. : - twice **a** week
- two pounds **a** kilo
- twenty kilometres **an** hour
- four times **a** day

- لاحظ أن (a / an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تُعد والأسماء المعنوية :

e.g. : - **Sharks** are dangerous animals.
- My shoes are made of **leather**.
- He was pale with **fear**.

B The definite article : The أداة المعرفة

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى أصبح مُعرفًا عند ذكره للمرة الثانية :

e.g. : We have got **a** villa with **a** garden. **The** garden is beautiful.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى يوجد منه واحد فقط (أى ليس له مثيل فى الكون) :

e.g. : **the** Earth , **the** North Pole, **the** sky, **the** Nile ... etc.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد للدلالة على النوع أو الفصيلة وقبل الاختراعات :

e.g. : - **The** camel is the ship of the desert.
- **The** computer is useful.

- لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح أو امتلاك جهاز معين فلا تأخذ (the) :

e.g. : - My grandfather had a radio which looked like a wooden box.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء سلاسل الجبال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحارى ومجموعات الجزر والمناطق الجغرافية والاتجاهات وبعض الدول :

e.g. : **the** Red Sea, **the** Indian Ocean, **the** Thames, **the** Alps, **the** Middle East, **the** Mediterranean Sea, **the** USA, **the** Sudan, **the** United Kingdom, **the** European Union, **the** Pacific Ocean, **the** Bahamas Islands, **the** South of Egypt, **the** Siwa Oasis ... etc.

- أما أسماء الجزر المفردة فلا تأخذ (the). Sicily / Bermuda / Crete .... etc
والقمم الجبلية المنفردة عادة لا تأخذ (the) (Mount Everest / Kilimanjaro) :

- قبل صفات التفضيل القصوى، وقبل صفات المقارنة بمعنى «كلما».

e.g. : - The elephant is **the** bigg**est** animal.
- Diamond is **the most** expensive metal.
- **The harder** you work, **the more** money you get.

- تستخدم قبل الصفات عند استخدامها كاسم بمعنى الجمع :

e.g. : - He is collecting money for **the blind**.
- **The poor** are usually generous to each other.
- **The disabled** are in need of our help.

- "the poor" تعنى طبقة الفقراء عامة.

- مع الآلات الموسيقية فى سياق العزف والاستماع أو التعليم أو الممارسة وتأتى بعد أفعال مثل:

play / practise / learn / study / listen to

e.g. : **the** piano, **the** violin, **the** drum, **the** guitar

- مع التعبيرات الزمنية و الاتجاهات:

e.g. : in **the** morning, in **the** afternoon, in **the** evening, in **the** north, in **the** east

- قبل الكتب المقدسة وأسماء الصحف:

e.g. : **the** Quran , **the** Bible, **the** Times

- قبل أسماء الأماكن عند استخدامها لغرض غير غرضها الأساسى:

(school, hospital, university, bed, prison, church, market, mosque)

e.g. : - I go to **school** to learn.
- I go to **the school** to meet the principal المدير.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات الآتية :

the government, **the** fire brigade, **the** police, **the** army, **the** cinema, **the** office, **the** theatre, **the** radio, **the** internet, **the** Cathedral

- تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التى تدل على الجنسية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة :

e.g. : - The British / The English / The Irish / The Welsh / The Spanish / The Dutch / The Swiss.

- كما تستخدم (the) بنفس الطريقة قبل الصفات التى تدل على الجنسية المنتهية بـ (ese) :

e.g. : - The Japanese / the Chinese / the Sudanese ..... etc.

- أما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب أن تجمع بعد (the) لتؤدى نفس المعنى :

e.g. : - The Egyptians / The Russians / the Arabs / the Scots / the Turks

- تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن التى بها (of) :

e.g. : - The Great wall of China / the Bank of England

PART 1

- تستخدم (the) غالبًا قبل الاسم الذى تتبعه عبارة بها ضمير وصل :

e.g. : - The man who lost his son was very sad.

- قبل العدد الذى يدل على فترة عشر سنوات وقبل الأعداد الترتيبية :

e.g. : - The fifties / the nineties / the first / second / third / the last .... etc.)

- لاحظ أن "the" لا تستخدم مع :

- الاسم الجمع بمعنى عام .

e.g. : - Sharks are wild animals. - **Women** form half of society.

- الأسماء المجردة المعنوية والأسماء غير المعدودة بوجه عام :

e.g. : **death, birth, wisdom, sorrow, freedom, democracy, happiness**

- أسماء المواد وأسماء الوجبات والألعاب الرياضية والمواد الدراسية :

e.g. : **dinner, breakfast, wood, metal, milk, wool, iron, plastic, meat, basketball, volleyball, tennis, English, Arabic, history, maths**

- لكن لاحظ أن (the) تأتى مع الوجبات إذا كانت وجبه مُعدة لمناسبة خاصة (احتفال مثلًا) :

- أسماء فصول السنة والأعياد :

e.g. : summer, winter, spring, autumn, Easter Christmas

- قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم :

e.g. : President Obama, Professor Magdi, King Abdullah

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء القارات وأسماء الدول :

e.g. : Asia, Africa, Europe , Spain , France ....

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة على كلمات مثل Republic / Union / Kingdom / States / Federation فهى تأخذ (the) :

e.g. : - The Arab Republic of Egypt / The United Kingdom.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن المركبة إذا كان الاسم الأول يدل على شخص أو مكان.

e.g. : - Victoria Station / Buckingham Palace / London Zoo

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It's............ most expensive car I have ever seen.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
2. I had a cup of tea and some cake, but .... tea was hot.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
3. I asked .... Prof. Samy about his childhood.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article

4. .... science is a difficult subject.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
5. We always go on .... holiday in August.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
6. My friend is a sportsman, he plays .... football.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. I'm hungry, I want to have .... dinner.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
8. We all went to .... dinner organized by the committee.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
9. Ahmed's father went to .... school to meet the headmaster.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
10. My sister works in .... hospital.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
11. She has to wear .... uniform when she's at work.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
12. My uncle is .... honest man.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
13. He drives .... underground train.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. For this job you need .... experience with computer.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. Did you come by .... air ?
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
16. I couldn't hear because of .... noise of the train.
a. a b. an c. the d no article
17. The Earth moves round .... sun.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
18. Excuse me, where is .... bus station, please?
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
19. We had dinner in .... very nice restaurant.
a. a b. an c. the d no article
20. There were no............ chairs , so we had to sit on the floor.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
21. .... policeman usually wears a uniform.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
22. .... intelligence is important for success.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
23. It was a happy party, but we could only stay for half .... hour.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
24. Vegetarians don't eat .... meat.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
25. You will find the information you need at the top of .... page 15.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article



3 Tenses الأزمنة

Part 1 Present Tenses الجزء الأول : أزمنة المضارع

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation : التكوين

• يتكون المضارع البسيط فى الجملة المثبتة من :

Subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...

- يتكون من التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافة مع (I / We / You / They) أو فاعل جمع وإضافة (s) للفعل إذا كان الفاعل (He / She / It) أو فاعل مفرد :

e.g. : - We study English at school.
- A rabbit eats grass.
- Walaa cooks lunch at one every day.

قواعد إضافة (s)

- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب he / she / it إذا كان المصدر منتهيا بـ : (ch - sh - ss - o - x) :

e.g. : - Malak brushes her teeth twice a day.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب he / she / it إذا كان المصدر منتهيا بـ y مسبوقا بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف y :

e.g. : - A baby cries when he is hungry.

• يتكون المضارع البسيط فى الجمل المنفية من :

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر + ...

e.g. : - We don't study Spanish at school.
- Rodayna doesn't play tennis.

- ونستخدم (never) أيضًا للنفي :

e.g. : - He doesn't help the poor. = He never helps the poor.
- They don't come early. = They never come early.

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه هل :

Do / Does + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ..... ?

e.g. : * Do you get up at six o'clock every morning?
-Yes, I do. - No, I don't.
* Does Aya watch action films?
- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + do / does + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ..... ?

e.g. : - What do you eat for dessert?
- How often does Reham go to the club?

- المضارع البسيط فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + p.p. ....

e.g. : - Farmers grow plants. (Active)
Plants are grown by farmers. (Passive)
- Some people don't eat meat at all. (Active)
Meat isn't eaten at all by some people. (Passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1. **to express facts :** - التعبير عن حقائق علمية ثابتة لا تتغير :

e.g. : - The moon goes round the Earth.

2. **to express habits :** - التعبير عن عادات :

e.g. : - He always comes late.

Subject فاعل + usually + verb فعل ....
It + is + someone's habit to + inf. المصدر ....
Subject فاعل + (be) + in the habit of + (inf. + ing) ....
Subject فاعل + (be) + used to + (inf. + ing) / n. ....

e.g. : - Ali usually eats fruit for dessert الحلو بعد الأكل.
- It is Ali's (his) habit to eat fruit for dessert.
- Ali is in the habit of eating fruit for dessert.
- Ali is used to eating fruit for dessert.

- لاحظ استخدام **no longer / any longer / any more** بمعني (لم يعد) لنفي العادة عن الحاضر و إثبات حدوثها فى الماضى :

Subject فاعل + no longer + present simple + ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed no longer smokes. = He used to smoke.

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. + ... + any longer / any more

e.g. : - Ali doesn't smoke any more. = He used to smoke.

Notes : ملاحظات عامة

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار الآتية وتأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد **verb to be** وأحيانا تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

- always	- sometimes	- usually	- often	- occasionally
- rarely	- scarcely	- seldom	- regularly	- frequently
- generally	- monthly	- weekly	- never .... etc.	

e.g. : - He always comes late. = He is always late.

- لاحظ الكلمات السابقة بوجه عام تنفى بـ **never /rarely/ scarcely / seldom** :

e.g. : - I always get up early. - I never get up early.
- She usually watches TV at night.
- She rarely watches TV at night.

- ويستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

every (day - night - Monday - week - month - year ... etc.)
at night / in the morning / at noon / in the evening ... etc.

e.g. : - We watch TV every night. = Every night, he watches TV.

استخدامات اخرى للمضارع البسيط

❶ يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والادراك والعاطفة والتفكير بدلا من المضارع المستمر:

like, dislike, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand, want, need, hate, see, remember, forget, prefer, believe, mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own, belong,... ... etc.

e.g. : - I prefer his way of thinking.
- He enjoys reading romantic novels.

❷ يستخدم مع الحالة الأولى من (if) و يدل علي المستقبل :

e.g. : - If you play well, you will win.

❸ يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية التالية و يدل علي المستقبل :

(when / as soon as / after / before / till / until / the moment)

e.g. : - After he arrives, we will eat.
- They will not go until he gives them money.

❹ يعبر عن الحقائق التى تدوم لفترة :

e.g. : - I work in a bank.

❺ يستخدم مع جداول المواعيد بدلًا من المستقبل البسيط :

e.g. : - The train arrives at 10:15 pm.
- We have English at ten every Sunday.

❻ يستخدم المضارع البسيط في حالة طلب أو إعطاء التعليمات و الاتجاهات :

e.g. : - How do I get to the station?
- You go straight on, and then you turn left.

2 The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation : التكوين

- تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من:

- فى الجمل المثبتة: Subject فاعل + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ....

ex.: - Ali is reading a story. - I am running fast.
- Aya and Heba are cooking lunch.

- في الجمل المنفية :

Subject فاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + inf. + ing.

e.g. : - Ali is not (isn't) reading a story.
- I am not running fast.
- Aya and Heba are not (aren't) cooking lunch.

- كيفية أضافة (ing) للفعل :

- **inf.** المصدر **+ ing:**

e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting

(١) اذا انتهي المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فانه يحذف قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - write → writing - make → making

- ويشذ عن ذلك الفعلين **dye / singe** :

e.g. : - dye يصبغ → dyeing - singe يلسع → singeing

(٢) اذا انتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد او اكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الاخير مشددًا في النطق فانه يضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة **(ing)** :

e.g. : - run → running - begin → beginning
- stop → stopping - regret → regretting
- swim → swimming

(٣) إذا انتهي الفعل بالحرفين **(ie)** فانهما يتحولان الي **(y)** قبل اضافة **(ing)** :

e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying

(٤) إذا انتهي الفعل بحرف **(c)** يضاف بعده حرف **(k)** قبل اضافة **(ing)** :

e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه هل :

Am / Is / Are + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) .... ?

e.g. : - Is Ali reading a story ? - Yes, he is . / No, he isn't.
- Are you running fast? - Yes, I am.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + am / is/ are + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing).... ?

e.g. : - What is Ali doing ?

- Who is running fast ?

- المضارع المستمر فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object مفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. ....

e.g. : - Ali is reading a story. (active)

- A story is being read by Ali. (passive)
- She is watering the plants. (active)
- The plants are being watered by her. (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

❶ To express actions that are happening now - التعبير عن احداث تقع اثناء التحدث :

e.g. : - I am revising for my test. - They are watching Tom and Jerry.

❷ To express actions that are taking place around the present

- التعبير عن احداث تقع حول الوقت الحاضر و ليس بالضرورة الآن :

e.g. : - We are taking exams these days.

- I'm reading a story for Naguib Mahfouz.

❸ To express future arrangements

- يعبر عن حدث في المستقبل كامل الترتيبات (الموعد معروف والأطراف المشتركة فى الحدث تعلم ذلك) :

e.g. : - Our aunt is leaving hospital tomorrow morning.

- They are travelling on Monday.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع كلمات زمنية مثل :

Key words :

now - at the moment - at present - still ما زال - Look ! - Listen ! - Watch out! انتبه .... etc.

- لاحظ: لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع افعال الحواس و التفكير و العاطفة و التملك بل يأتى معهم زمن المضارع البسيط مثل :

astonish	يدهش	hate	يكره	need	يحتاج		
see	يرى	believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع		
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو	belong	يخص		
know	يعرف	own	يمتلك	smell	يشم		
concern	يهتم بـ/يتعلق بـ	lack	ينقص	possess	يمتلك		
suppose	يفترض	consist	يتكون	like	يحب		
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ	contain	يحتوى على		
love	يحب	realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق		
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم	recognise	يتعرف على		
understand	يفهم	deserve	يستحق	mean	يعنى		
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد	have	يملك		

• لا يستخدم الفعل **(have)** بمعنى "يملك" في المضارع المستمر ولكن يضاف له **(ing)** إذا استخدم بمعنى غير المعنى الأساسى (يملك) :

e.g. : - I have a shower. أمتلك دش

- I'm having a shower. انني آخذ دشا

- I'm having my breakfast now. يتناول أو يأكل

3 The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Formation : التكوين

- فى الجملة المثبتة : Subject الفاعل + have / has + P.P. .... .

- تستخدم **(has)** مع المفرد الغائب **(he / she / it)** وتستخدم (have) مع باقى الضمائر:

e.g. : - I have tidied my bedroom.

- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

- فى الجملة المنفية : Subject الفاعل + hasn't / haven't + p.p.+ ..... .

e.g. : - They haven't watched the match yet.

- Rodayna hasn't done her homework yet.

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه «هل» :

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + P.P. .... ?

e.g. : - Have you tidied your room?
- Yes, I have (tidied my room).
- Has Rodayna done her homework?
- No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

- السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + P.P. .... ?

e.g. : - Where have you played the match?
- How long have you stayed here?

- فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول : - Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p. .....

e.g. : - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)
- My room has been tidied (by me). (passive)
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour. (active)
- Tennis has been played for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1. يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود :

e.g. : - Rodayna has cleaned the kitchen. The kitchen is clean now.
- He has broken his leg. He can't walk easily.

2. حدث انتهي في وقت غير محدد في الماضي:

e.g. : - She has polished her shoes.
- Ahmed has fed the sheep.

- لكن عند تحديد وقت الحدوث نستخدم الماضي البسيط:

e.g. : - Rodayna cleaned the kitchen yesterday.
- Ahmed fed the sheep in the afternoon.

3. يدل المضارع التام علي حدث متكرر (أي أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدوث مرة أخري) :

e.g. : - Ahmed has scored a hundred goals. (He can score more.)

- لكن اذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعني ذلك أن الحدث توقف :

e.g. : - He wrote 46 novels. (He stopped writing.)

4. يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرات سابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها :

e.g. : - Have you ever met anyone famous?
- She's never met anyone famous yet, but she hopes to one day.

5 نستخدم (has /have been to) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد ، أما (has /have gone to) ذهب لمكان ومازال هناك (لم يعد) :

e.g. : - Rodayna has gone to school. (She is still at school now.)
- Ahmed has been to the cinema. (He isn't there now.)

- ويستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية :

Key words :

1 just توًا / حالا / من فترة وجيزة

- تستخدم (just) غالبًا فى الإثبات والسؤال للتعبير عن حدث انتهى منذ فترة وجيزة :

e.g. : - She has just turned on the computer.

- إذا استخدمنا just بدلا من a moment ago / a short time ago نحول الماضى البسيط إلى مضارع تام مثبت.

e.g. : - The train left a moment ago. = The train has just left.

2 already بالفعل

- نستخدم already فى الأسئلة و الجمل المثبتة لتقول أن حدث انتهى أسرع مما كنا نتوقع.

e.g. : - Mr Osama has already had dinner.
- Have you eaten all that food already ?

- عند إستخدام before now مكان already يحول زمن الجملة للماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - He has already finished. = He finished before now.

3 yet حتي الآن

- تستخدم yet فى نهاية الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية :

e.g. : - Has he arrived yet ? - They haven't eaten yet.

- تستخدم yet في نفي جملة بها (just / already) :

e.g. : - He has just arrived. - He hasn't arrived yet.

- في حالة استخدام yet بدلا من still نستخدم مضارع تام منفى بدلا من المضارع المستمر:

e.g. : - He is still writing the report.
= He hasn't finished writing the report yet.

4 so far / up till now / till now حتي الآن

- نستخدم so far / up till now / till now فى الأسئلة و الجمل المثبتة :

e.g. : - I've written two letters so far / up till now.
= **So far / Up till now**, I've written two letters.

5 ever من قبل / سبق **never** أبدًا / مطلقًا

- تستخدم ever غالبا في السؤال بينما تستخدم never للنفي المطلق :

e.g. : - Have you ever met the manager in person?
- I have never seen such a strange person.

- نستخدم ever فى الجمل التى تبدأ بـ No :

e.g. : - Nothing like this has ever happened to us.
- No student has ever answered this question.

- يمكن استخدام ever فى الجمل التى تتضمن صيغة تفضيل :

صفة تفضيل + subject + have / has + ever + P.P. .... .

e.g. : - This is the strangest match I have ever watched.
- The most exciting novel he has ever read was "Oliver Twist".

- لاحظ أنه عند استخدام never بدلا من ever نستخدم (n) + (adj) (a/an) such :

e.g. : - This is the strangest match I have ever seen.
- I have never watched such a strange match.

- فى حالة إستخدام ever فى جمله بها never / before نبدأ بـ This is the first time :

e.g. : - I have never seen a lion before.
= This is the first time I have ever seen a lion.

6 lately/recently حديثا / مؤخرا

- تستخدم كل من lately / recently بنفس الطريقة في السؤال :

e.g. : - Has Ahmed scored goals lately/recently?

- يُفضل إستخدام recently في الجملة المثبتة و lately في الجملة المنفية :

e.g. : - Rodayna has moved to a new house recently.
- He hasn't phoned me lately.

7 since منذ

- يأتى بعد since زمن يحدد بداية الحدث (بداية أو نقطة زمنية محددة) :

since +

توقيت ساعة	- I haven't returned home since **07:30 am**.
اسم يوم	- She has stayed with her aunt since **Saturday**.
تاريخ يوم	- We haven't met since **26th September**.
فترات اليوم	- Mum has been in bed since **the morning**.
اسم الشهر	- Rodayna hasn't met her grandma since **April**.
اسم فصل	- Those birds have built their nests here since **Spring**.
تاريخ السنة	- Mr Samy has stayed in Edfu since **2002**.
جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط	- Rodayna hasn't slept since **you left the house**.
ذلك الحين	- I arrived home yesterday evening. I haven't gone out since **then**.
yesterday	- I haven't played with Ahmed since **yesterday**.
last	- We haven't played football since **last week**.

- كما يأتي بعد since أيضا اسم يدل على وقت معلوم مثل :

- **(lunch / lunchtime / childhood / wedding / arrival / departure / birth / death / this age / ....)**

e.g. : - She has lived here since her wedding.

- He has known the same friends since his childhood.

8 for لمدة

- يأتي بعد for المدة التي استغرقها الحدث :

for +	a moment	- I have waited for **a few moments.**
	a while لحظة	- She has thought for **a while.**
	عدد ثواني	- I have closed my eyes for **ten seconds.**
	عدد دقائق	- Mum has waited for **15 minutes.**
	عدد ساعات	- Rodayna hasn't slept for **24 hours.**
	عدد ايام	- Those birds have stayed in their nests here for **a few days.**
	عدد أسابيع	- Mr Mohammed has stayed in Sharm El-Sheikh for **two weeks.**
	عدد شهور	- Rodayna has lived here for **two months.**
	عدد فصول	- This play has been on show for **two seasons.**
	عدد سنين	- I've had my own computer for **three years now.**
	عدد عقود	- She has stayed abroad for more **than two decades.**
	عدد قرون	- The United States has been the world's greatest power **for a century.**
	ages	- I haven't met him for **ages.**
	a long / long short time /	- I haven't played with Ahmed for **a long time / long.**
	the last	- We haven't played football for the **last two weeks.**

- و لاحظ استخدام for في هذه الجملة.

e.g. : - I've written stories and poems for as long as I can remember.

- عند استخدام since / for بدلا من the last time / last / when / ago نحول الماضى البسيط إلى مضارع تام منفى :

e.g. : - I last ate fish when I was in Alex.

= I haven't eaten fish since I was in Alex.

- إذا كانت الجملة مضارع تام منفى و بدأنا بـ It's نستخدم التركيب التالى (الذى يعطى معنى النفى) :

It's + مدة زمنية + since + فاعل + last + ماضى بسيط مثبت

e.g. - I haven't seen him for ages. = It's ages since I last saw him.

- عند استخدام ago بدلا من since / for نستخدم التركيب التالى لإعطاء نفس المعنى :

began / started + to + inf.

e.g. : - It has rained for two hours. = It began to rain two hours ago.

4 The Present Perfect Continuous Tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Formation : التكوين

Subject الفاعل + have / has + been + inf. + ing

- وغالبا ما تكون في الجملة كلمات تدل علي الاستمرار:

since... /for... / for... now / all + تعبير زمني مفرد

e.g. : - He has been working there ever **since** he graduated.

- It has been raining **for** three days **now**.
- I have been playing football **for** about ten years.

- لاحظ صيغة النفى:

Subject الفاعل + hasn't / haven't + been + inf. + ing ...

e.g. : - They haven't been sleeping all night.

- Rodayna hasn't been learning English for this long time.

- لاحظ صيغتي السؤال:

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + been + inf. + ing ... ?

e.g. : - Have you been playing tennis for an hour?

Yes, we have (been playing tennis for an hour).

- Has Rodayna been learning English for this long time?

No, she hasn't (been learning English for this long time).

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject الفاعل + been + (inf. + ing)... ?

e.g. : - How long have you been playing tennis?
- What has Rodayna been learning for this long time?

Usage : الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن :
- حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرا حتي الوقت الحاضر :

e.g. : - He's been training really hard since the last Olympic Games.
- I have been learning English since I was eight years old.
- He has been working for them for about two years.

- حدث تم بانتظام حيث بدأ في الماضي وأستمر حتي الآن :

e.g. : - For the last few months, I've been playing squash regularly.

- حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي وله اثر علي الحاضر (تفسير لموقف في الحاضر) :

A : You look tired. What have you been doing?
B : I have been serving customers all day.

- يستخدم هذا الزمن مع الأفعال التى تستغرق وقتًا طويلًا وتدل على الاستمرارية :

study, teach, learn, read, write, play, run, paint, sit,
stand, lie, sleep, cook, wait, rain, ...

e.g. : - It has been raining since I woke up.

- يُستخدم المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية:
- عند بناء جملة المضارع التام المستمر للمجهول تتحول إلى المضارع التام :

Object المفعول + have / has + been + p.p. ..... .

e.g. : - I have been studying English since I was in primary one. (active)
- English has been studied (by me) since I was in primary one. (passive)

- هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموما ومنها المضارع التام المستمر وهي :

1 **أفعال المشاعر والحواس والإدراك والملكية والرغبة بالإضافة إلى (be) كفعل اساسي:**

astonish	يدهش	hate	يكره
need	يحتاج	see	يرى
believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو

belong	يخص	know	يعرف
own	يمتلك	smell	يشم
concern	يهم/يتعلق بـ	lack	ينقص
possess	يمتلك	suppose	يفترض
consist	يتكون	like	يحب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ
contain	يحتوى على	love	يحب
realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم
recognize	يتعرف على	understand	يفهم
deserve	يستحق	mean	يعنى
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد

e.g. : - I have been knowing Mr Ayman for a few months now. (✗)
- I have known Mr Ayman for a few months now. (✓)
- Ashraf has been being in Aswan for only one night. (✗)
- Ashraf has been in Aswan for only one night. (✓)

٢ مع الأفعال اللحظية التي لا يستغرق حدوثها وقتا (يمكن وصفه بالاستمرار) مثل :

receive – arrive – break down – crash ...

e.g. : - A car has been crashing into a tree. (✗)
- A car has crashed into a tree. (✓)

٣ عند ذكر مرات حدوث الفعل ، ومن الكلمات الدالة علي ذلك :

two / three ..... / many / a few / few / several / a lot of / lots of / all / plenty of ...+ مفعول جمع

e.g. : - I've been watching all the judo at the Olympics this year. (✗)
- I've watched all the judo at the Olympics this year. (✓)
- I have been scoring lots of goals. (✗)
- I have scored lots of goals. (✓)
- I have been playing for four different teams. (✗)
- I have played for four different teams. (✓)

PART 1

Test Yourself

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What time .... we usually go to school? The term has already started
   a. did b. do c. does d. will
2. He .... for an international company for three years, but he no longer works.
   a. works b. worked c. has worked d. will work
3. The play .... at 9 o'clock tomorrow.
   a. starts b. started c. will start d. is starting
4. Don't go out until you .... your homework.
   a. finish b. had finished c. will finish d. finishes
5. Nurses .... after patients in hospitals.
   a. look b. looks c. are looking d. looked
6. It is a long time since he .... his village.
   a. has visited b. visited c. had visited d. visiting
7. Have you completed your work .... ? Very good, you are very fast.
   a. already b. yet c. just d. ago
8. I .... to be a doctor since I was ten.
   a. wanted b. was wanting c. have wanted d. want
9. When I was eight, I .... a programme about a famous Egyptian doctor on television.
   a. saw b. have seen c. was seeing d. was seen
10. At the moment, she .... to be a primary school teacher.
    a. trains b. was training c. is training d. has trained
11. Since I started the job two years ago, I .... important people from all over the world.
    a. have met b. had met c. met d. meeting
12. I'll phone you as soon as I .... my work .
    a. finish b. will finish c. had finished d. finished

13. In ancient times, they often .... waterwheels to irrigate the fields.

a. used b. use c. are using d. were using

14. Phone me when you .... the message.

a. read b. reads c. was reading d. had read

15. I first .... my best friend when we were both about 3 years old.

a. meet b. have met c. met d. meeting

16. I .... hard since the morning.

a. work b. have to work

c. have been working d. will work

17. .... you finished your work yet ?

a. Do b. Did c. Have d. Had

18. I .... on this English exercise for the last hour !

a. have been working b. had worked

c. worked d. were you working

19. They have been doing the homework .... 6 o'clock.

a. for b. ago c. from d. since

20. She has been cleaning the house .... two hours now.

a. for b. ago c. from d. since

21. We .... here for 6 years now and we don't intend to move.

a. lived b. have been living

c. were living d. has lived

22. The boys .... games for 3 hours now.

a. have played b. have been playing

c. are playing d. play

23. He has been learning French .... the age of six.

a. for b. since c. while d. when

24. Ahmed has been learning English .... he was 7 years old.

a. for b. ago c. when d. since

25. Ali has been travelling .... the last five days.

a. for b. ago c. when d. since

26. I have been doing my homework .... three hours.

a. for b. ago c. when d. since

27. She .... hard all day.

a. has been studying b. has been studied

c. had to be studied d. will be studied

28. They .... Spanish for the last few months.

a. have to learn b. had learnt

c. have been learning d. are learning

Part II Past Tenses الجزء الثانى : ازمنة الماضى

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Formation : التكوين

- فى الجملة المثبتة : Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل ....

e.g. : - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday.
- They watched a film last night.

- فى الجملة المنفية : Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. ..... .

e.g. : - They didn't watch the match yesterday.
- Omar didn't do his homework.

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه «هل» : Did + subject الفاعل + inf. .... ?

e.g. : - Did you tidy your room?
- Yes, I did. - Yes, I tidied my room.
- Did the student do his homework?
- No, he didn't (do his homework).

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word اداة استفهام + did / didn't + subject + inf. .... ?

e.g. : - Where did you watch the match?
- Why didn't you stay at a hotel?

Usage : الاستخدام

❶ يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

e.g. : - I studied French when I was in secondary school.

❷ يعبر عن عادة في الماضي :

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed used to play tennis when he was young.

- I used to write very quickly.

❸ وصف أحداث في سرد قصة :

e.g. : - Ali found a bag. He took it to the police station.

❹ في الحاله الثانية من جملة الشرط (If) :

e.g. : - If he helped us, we would win.

❺ يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي يعبر عن (افتراض شئ) و ليس الواقع :

❶ I wish + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - I wish mum wasn't ill.

- I wish the Egyptian team played well.

❷ It's time + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - It's time he paid the bill.

- It is time father arrived.

❸ I'd rather + subject فاعل + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - I would rather she helped him.

- I'd rather Ali didn't come.

❻ يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية :

Key words :

yesterday – ago – last – once – in the past – once upon a time – How long ago – the previous .... in the ancient time / in the old days

e.g. : - Last week, I went to Alexandria.

- Two months ago, we flew to London.

- يلاحظ استخدام (always, usually, often, sometimes) للتعبير عن مدى تكرار الحدث فى الماضى :

e.g. : - When I was in Alex, I always swam in the sea.

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Formation : التكوين

- فى الجملة المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) ....

e.g. : - Ahmed was reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were cooking lunch.

- فى الجملة المنفية :

Subject فاعل + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + (inf. + ing)

e.g. : - Ahmed was not (wasn't) reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were not (weren't) cooking lunch.

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه «هل» :

Was / Were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) .... ?

e.g. : - Was Ahmed reading a story?
Yes, he was (reading a story).
- Were you running fast?
No, I was not.
= No, I was not running fast.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + was / were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing).... ?

e.g. : - What was Ahmed doing (reading)?
- Who was running fast?

- فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + was / were + being + p.p. ....

e.g. : - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Usage : الاستخدام

❶ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت معين في الماضي :

e.g. : - At half past six this morning, I was having breakfast.

❷ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر :

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.

❸ يأتي في سياق قصة أو موقف في الماضي :

e.g. : - I was studying Chemistry when I met Jane.

- He was doing research when they arrested him.

❹ يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالبا مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / When / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا ثم قطعه حدث آخر :

(While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont. ماضى مستمر , Past Simple ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.

- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

- لاحظ أن when يمكن أن يأتي بعدها الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We were doing the homework when it started to rain.

- يمكن استخدام On بدلا من when و يأتي بعدها inf. + ing :

- When he arrived, he found the door locked.

= On arriving, he found the door locked.

❺ يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / when / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت :

(While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont. ماضى مستمر , Past Cont. ماضى مستمر

e.g. : - While I was studying, my father was reading.

- While I was finishing one story, I was thinking of the next one.

- اذا لم ياتي بعد While فاعل يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While playing, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام during بدلا من while ويأتي بعدها اسم أو عبارة اسمية فقط و ليس (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = He got hurt during the game.

3 The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضى التام

Formation : التكوين

had ('d) + p.p.

e.g. : - I had collected money for the disabled. • الاثبات (Affirmative)

- Soha had not studied for her exams. • النفى (Negative)
- Had you finished your homework ? • السؤال بـ «هل» (Yes/No questions)
- What had happened before the theft?

• السؤال بكلمات استفهام (Wh - questions)

- The letter had been written before you phoned. • المبنى للمجهول (Passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

١ حدث تم وانتهى قبل وقت محدد أو معين فى الماضى :

e.g. : - By 1970, the government had built a new road from Benha to Tanta.

٢ حدث تم وانتهى قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى :

- (بمعنى إذا كان هناك أكثر من حدث تم فى الماضى، نضع الحدث الأقدم فى الماضى التام ثم يتبعه جميع الأفعال فى زمن الماضى البسيط) :

e.g. : - After I had had my breakfast, I prepared my bag and then went to school.

- الأفعال حسب حدوثها فى الماضى ولاحظ الأزمنه فى المثال السابق :

have breakfast ⟶ prepare the bag ⟶ go to school

(1) (2) (3)

- كلمات ربط مع زمن الماضى التام :

After + فاعل + ماضى تام , فاعل + ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - After I had done my homework, I watched TV.

- لاحظ إذا لم يتبع after فاعل ، تستخدم بعدها inf. + ing مباشرة :

- After doing my homework, I watched TV.

After + فاعل + (had + p.p) = Having + p.p. .....

e.g. : - After I had watched the film, I fell asleep.

- Having watched the film, I fell asleep.

As soon as فاعل + ماضى تام , ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - As soon as Sami had come into sight, we all cheered.

Before فاعل + ماضى بسيط , فاعل + ماضى تام

e.g. : - Before he married, he had built himself a nice house.

Before + inf. + ing , فاعل + ماضى تام

e.g. : - Before doing hard exercises, Sally had warmed up.

By the time فاعل + ماضى بسيط , فاعل + ماضى تام

e.g. : - By the time she died, she had written down all her possessions to her son.

By + مدة زمنية فى الماضى , ماضى تام

e.g. : - By 1963, Egypt had built the High Dam.

When + فاعل + ماضى بسيط , ماضى تام

e.g. : - When Shukri arrived, his mom had cooked him a nice cake.

ماضى تام + till / until + ماضى بسيط منفى

e.g. فاعل + had + hardly / scarcely / no sooner + p.p. ...... + when / than + فاعل + ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - Soha had hardly met me when she started to cry.
- Bassem had no sooner finished secondary school than he joined the police academy.

لاحظ : يقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل اذا بدأنا بأدوات الربط التالية :

Hardly / Scarcely / No sooner + had + فاعل + p.p. + when / than + فاعل + ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - Hardly had it rained when all people in the street began to run back home.
- No sooner had he seen the dog than he felt scared.



لاحظ : أن «السبب» يسبق «النتيجة» عند ترتيب الاحداث، لذا يوضع السبب في الماضي التام :

e.g. : - He shouted because he had seen a snake.
- Since he had studied hard, he got high marks.

It was only when / It wasn't until } + ماضي تام + that + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - It was only when I had finished my homework that you called me.
- It wasn't until I had finished my homework that you called me.

4 The Past Perfect Continuous Tense زمن الماضي التام المستمر

Formation : التكوين

- في الإثبات :

Subject الفاعل + had + been + (inf. + ing) ....

e.g. : - He had been cleaning the room when I arrived home.

- في النفي :

Subject + hadn't + been + (inf. + ing) ....

e.g. : - He hadn't been cleaning the room when you arrived home.

- في السؤال بـ «هل» :

Had + Subject الفاعل + been + (inf. + ing) .... ?

e.g. : - Had he been cleaning the room for two hours when you arrived home?
- Yes, he had. - No, he hadn't.

- في السؤال بأداة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + had + subject + been + inf. + ing + ... ?

e.g. : - What had Ali been doing when his father came home ?

- يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة فى الماضى قبل وقوع حدث آخر ويستخدم عادة مع :

since / for / all + تعبير زمنى مفرد / from .. to ... / after / before
by the time / when ....

e.g. : - When Ahmed arrived at school, his hair was wet. It had been raining all day.

- Rody went into the kitchen and found lots of fresh bread on the table. Her mother had been baking for 3 hours.
- My brother Mahmoud had been looking for work for over a year before he got a job.
- The little children's clothes were dirty because they had been playing in the park all day.

- هناك أفعال لا تستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة عموما ومنها الماضى التام المستمر وهى أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة :

astonish	يدهش	lack	ينقص	recognise	يتعرف على
believe	يصدق	like	يحب	remember	يتذكر
belong	يخص	love	يحب	see	يرى
concern	يهم/يتعلق	matter	يهم	seem	يبدو
consist	يتكون	mean	يعنى	smell	يشم
contain	يحتوى	need	يحتاج	suppose	يفترض
depend	يعتمد	owe	يدين	surprise	يفاجئ
deserve	يستحق	own	يمتلك	taste	يتذوق
hate	يكره	possess	يمتلك	understand	يفهم
hear	يسمع	prefer	يفضل	want	يريد
know	يعرف	realise	يدرك		

e.g. : - I had been knowing him for a long time before he died. (✗)

- I had known him for a long time before he died. (✓)

- كما لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة في حدوثها وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم الماضي التام (لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات) :

break down / stop / close / open / end .... etc.

e.g. : - She was late for the meeting because her car had broken down. (not had been breaking).

- إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل أو ما يدل على العدد لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر بل نستخدم الماضي التام، ومن الكلمات الدالة على مرات حدوث الفعل :

one / two / three ... / many / a few / several / a lot of / lots of / plenty of ...

e.g. : - When I ***met*** Ahmed, he ***had finished*** typing ***three*** reports.
- By the time she ***finished*** writing her report, she ***had drunk*** six cups of tea.

- لاحظ أن :

ماضي بسيط / ماضي مستمر / ماضي تام مستمر / ماضي تام + because / since / as + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - I ***didn't meet*** my sister because / since / as she ***had travelled*** to Paris
- He ***didn't hear*** the mobile ringing because / since / as he ***was*** asleep
- I ***was*** very tired because / since / as I ***had been working*** all day.
- She ***couldn't help*** her mother because / since / as she ***was doing*** her homework.

ماضي بسيط / ماضي مستمر / ماضي تام مستمر / ماضي تام + so / that's why / consequently / as a result / thus + ماضي بسيط

e.g. : - My sister ***had travelled*** to Paris, so I ***didn't meet*** her.
- I ***had been working*** all day; as a result I ***was*** very tired.
- She ***was doing*** homework; consequently she ***couldn't help*** her mother.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A wood fire was burning on the hearth and a cat .... in front of it.
   a. slept   b. had slept   c. was sleeping   d. sleeping
2. He .... tennis for three hours yesterday.
   a. played   b. was playing   c. had played   d. has played
3. At this time yesterday, Tom .... his car.
   a. washed   b. was washing   c. had washed   d. washing
4. Between one and two, I .... the shopping.
   a. did   b. was doing   c. had done   d. doing
5. When I was at university, I .... short stories for students magazine.
   a. write   b. writes   c. wrote   d. was writing
6. Yesterday, my sister gave me a book she .... reading the day before.
   a. finished   b. has finished   c. had finished   d. finishes
7. I .... a car accident while coming to school.
   a. was seeing   b. saw   c. see   d. have seen
8. I .... the newspaper everyday. Now I don't have the time.
   a. used to read   b. was reading   c. had read   d. have read
9. As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson ....
   a. had begun   b. begin   c. begins   d. has begun
10. As the thief .... into the bus, the police caught him.
    a. got   b. was getting   c. getting   d. has got
11. I .... a bath when the phone rang.
    a. had   b. was having   c. having   d. have had
12. When I got to the car, I realized that I .... my keys.
    a. am losing   b. would lose   c. had lost   d. was losing
13. I .... the film before I read the book.
    a. saw   b. have already seen
    c. had already seen   d. has already seen
14. He .... the tree when he suddenly fell down.
    a. climbed   b. climbs   c. was climbing   d. will climb
15. On .... the film, Ali came.
    a. watch   b. watches   c. watched   d. watching

16. They saw the fighting people while .... home.
   a. were driving   b. drove   c. driving   d. drive
17. As he was carrying the vase, he .... it on the floor.
   a. drops   b. dropped   c. had dropped   d. was dropping
18. By the time he was 12, my brother .... three languages. He spoke Arabic, English and French.
   a. learnt   b. has learnt   c. was learning   d. had learnt
19. When I went to my friend's flat, she .... for school.
   a. already left   b. has already left
   c. had already left   d. was leaving
20. Last year, I spent a month in France. I .... of going there since I was a child.
   a. have dreamed   b. had dreamed   c. dreamt   d. was dreaming
21. While he .... his homework, his friend came.
   a. was doing   b. was done   c. did   d. is doing
22. She was carrying her bag when a thief .... it.
   a. grabs   b. was grabbing   c. grabbed   d. had grabbed
23. As we were sitting in the garden, a storm .... out.
   a. had broken   b. broke   c. breaking   d. has broken
24. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils .... a lot of noise.
   a. are making   b. was making   c. were making   d. made
25. My father retired last week. He .... for the same company all his life.
   a. worked   b. has worked   c. had worked   d. was working
26. Karim fell asleep during the football match because he .... to bed late the night before.
   a. had gone   b. went   c. gone   d. has gone
27. He fell down and broke his leg while .... football.
   a. was playing   b. playing   c. played   d. plays
28. Just after .... her flat, Malak visited her cousin.
   a. clean   b. cleaning   c. had cleaned   d. has cleaned
29. Hossam watered the tree just after he .... it.
   a. plant   b. planted   c. planting   d. had planted

30. My friend .... for only three weeks, so he failed his driving test.

a. drove
b. has driven
c. had driven
d. had been driving

31. It was only .... Esraa had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.

a. before b. after c. until d. when

32. Amr ate a sandwich during the game because he .... enough time to eat before it started.

a. hadn't had b. doesn't have c. hasn't had d. didn't have

33. Jane recognized her old friend though she .... her for a long time.

a. didn't see b. hadn't seen c. hasn't seen d. wouldn't see

34. She found lots of fresh bread on the table as her mother .... all morning.

a. had been baking
b. was baking
c. baking
d. had baked

35. Yara was over the moon .... she had passed her final exams.

a. while b. till c. after d. then

36. When we got up that morning, there was sand all over the streets. There .... a sand storm.

a. was b. were c. had been d. has been

37. Sara couldn't buy a new mobile .... the shop had shut.

a. as b. till c. no sooner d. hardly

38. When he died in 2005, his daughter .... after his finances for a few years.

a. looked
b. had been looking
c. looks
d. was looking

39. Sobhi .... to the doctor's yesterday as he had been feeling unwell for three days.

a. go b. went c. have gone d. had gone

40. I borrowed money from Ali .... I had left my money at home.

a. having b. because c. till d. before

41. Before he............ novels, he had written a few plays.

a. wrote b. write c. had written d. writes

42. When Ahmed arrived home, his hair was wet because it ....

a. rained
b. raining
c. has rained
d. had been raining

43. When we got to the show, all the seats ....

a. were reserving
b. had been reserved
c. have been reserved
d. are reserved

44. When they arrived, they were exhausted because they .... for nearly 15 hours.

a. have flown
b. flew
c. had been flying
d. had flown

45. I couldn't believe it. I .... chosen to play the football match.

a. was
b. have been
c. had been
d. 'm

46. When we got to the party, my friends .... for more than an hour.

a. danced
b. were dancing
c. have been dancing
d. had been dancing

47. Her eyes were red, so he knew that she ....

a. was crying
b. has cried
c. had cried
d. had been crying

48. My home town looked different because several new shops ....

a. were built
b. has built
c. have been built
d. had been built

49. When my mother called me for dinner, I .... for two hours.

a. had been reading
b. have read
c. had read
d. was reading

50. The concert .... yesterday before I began to go there.

a. had been cancelled
b. was cancelled
c. has been cancelled
d. is cancelled

51. When Alaa went to university, he .... English for ten years.

a. studied
b. has been studying
c. had studied
d. had been studying

52. I was tired yesterday morning because I .... until late the night before.

a. read
b. have been reading
c. had read
d. had been reading

Part III Future Tenses الجزء الثالث : ازمنة المستقبل

1 The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Formation : التكوين

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط فى الإثبات من:

Subject الفاعل + will / shall + inf. ...

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط :

e.g. : - I will / shall help you do your homework.
- Rodayna will be four next March.

- عند النفى : Subject الفاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf. ...

e.g. : - We won't be ready before he comes back.
- Ahmed won't attend the party.

- السؤال بـ «هل» : Will / Shall + subject الفاعل + inf. ... ?

e.g. : - Will you wait for the bus ?
- Yes, I will wait for the bus.
- No, I won't wait for the bus.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + will / shall + subject فاعل + inf. ... ?

e.g. : - When will you go to bed ?
- What will they do next ?

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبنى للمجهول من :

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ...

e.g. : - A camera will be bought by Rodayna tomorrow.

- يستخدم المستقبل مع كلمات مثل :

Next (year / month / week / Friday ...) / in the future / soon / tomorrow / this time (next week / tomorrow ...) in (a year, a month, a week ...) / later on / sooner or later

PART 1

استخدامات (will) :

Uses of will :

1) التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية :

e.g. : - Next year, my son Ahmed will be in primary one.
- Rodayna will be four on her next birthday.

2) التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلًا فى حالة عدم وجود دليل (رأى شخصى) :
(لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلًا)

e.g. : - Do you think Ahmed will pass his exams ?
- Yes, he'll pass. He's a good student.

هنا نحن لا نتحدث عن نوايا أحمد أو خططه، بل رأينا الشخص وتنبؤاتنا الشخصية :

e.g. : - My daughter and her husband both have blue eyes, so their baby will have blue eyes too.

3) وتستخدم مع بعض التعبيرات الآتية فى حالة عدم وجود دليل :

I expect / I'm sure / I think / I'm afraid / Maybe / Perhaps / I promise / I predict / probably / I hope / I wonder ...

e.g. : - We'll probably be in the space station for a week.
- I expect they'll arrive back in the morning.
- I'm sure she'll do well in her exams.
- I don't think he'll get a summer job.
- I wonder what will happen in the country next.

4) اتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شىء ويدل على ذلك :

just decided / decided just now / made a quick decision ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed has just decided that he will buy a car.

وقد يكون القرار السريع مفهومًا من السياق (رد فعل) مثل :

e.g. : - The doorbell is ringing. I'll open it.
- It's cold in here. I'll close the window.

5) الترتيب لعمل شىء ما وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق :

e.g. : - So that's settled. I'll buy dinner, you'll buy the theatre tickets, and Ahmed will pay the taxi fares.

٦ عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما :

e.g. : - I'll wash the dishes.

- I'll help you with your homework.

٧ عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء :

e.g. : - Will you give me that book, please ?

- I hope you will look after the baby.

٨ عمل الوعود والتهديدات :

e.g. : - I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam.

- I won't repeat that to anyone.

- You won't get your prize if you come late.

2 Be + going to + inf.

- في الجمل المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. ...

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed is going to play tennis.

- I'm going to study medicine.

- في النفي:

Subject الفاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + inf.

e.g. : - Mr Walid isn't going to play squash.

- السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. ... ?

e.g. : - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting ?

- Yes, she is going to attend the meeting.

- No, she isn't going to attend the meeting.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. .... ?

e.g. : - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday ?

- في صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + p.p. ....

e.g. : - Tennis is going to be played (by Mr Ali).

استخدامات (going to) :

Uses of going to :

1) تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن النوايا والقرارات المتخذة والخطط الشخصية ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

intend / intention / plan / have .... in mind / decided

e.g. : - Mr Ali intends to build a new house.
- He is going to look for a good place.
- Ahmed : What are your plans for the next weekend ?
- Rody : I'm going to play computer games.

2) التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلًا فى حالة وجود دليل (أى يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشئ) :

e.g. : - My daughter is going to get married. She is engaged.
- It is very cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
- Look out ! We're going to crash! Why are you driving so recklessly
- My daughter is going to have a baby. She is pregnant.

3) وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عما سيحدث فى المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

decided / have decided / made a decision / make up .... mind

e.g. : - They are going to go shopping. They have decided.
- I've decided that I'm going to do more exercises in the future.

4) وتستخدم أيضًا للتحذير (التنبيه) عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث :

e.g. : - Watch out ! You are going to fall.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

هناك شرطان أساسيان لاستخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل هما :

١. أن يكون الفاعل عاقل. ٢. وجود تعبير زمنى يدل على المستقبل (ولو بشكل ضمنى).

1) يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل فى حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة (أى من الأطراف المشتركة بالحدث تعلم هذا الحدث والموعد معروف)، ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / have arranged / made arrangements / prepared / have prepared / made preparations

e.g. : - He has arranged everything. He's spending the next summer holiday in Paris.

- لاحظ أنه إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له :

e.g. : - I can't see you this evening. I'm doing my homework.

- لاحظ أن this evening تعبر عن وقت قادم.

❷ يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة اتخاذ خطوة تنفيذية :

e.g. : - Rodayna has bought some eggs, butter and flour. She is making a cake tomorrow.
- Mr Ali is flying to London next Monday. He has booked a ticket.

❸ لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

e.g. : - He's getting married next Friday.
- We're going back to the States in three years.

❹ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي تقوم بها المؤسسات تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

e.g. : - Our school is taking part in the sports competition next year.
- This company is sending a delegation to the conference next week.

4 The Present Simple for the Future

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث مستقبلية طبقًا لجداول المواعيد الخاصة مثل وسائل المواصلات (الطائرات والسفن والأتوبيسات..) والمسرح والسينما والمدرسة (الحصص والامتحانات والدروس) والعمل (الحضور والانصراف ..) والأفلام والبرامج والمباريات ... إلخ.

e.g. : - His plane leaves at 7:15.
- The match starts at 9 sharp تمامًا tomorrow.
- The launch of the spaceship is at 10 a.m. next Friday.

- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية :

مستقبل ⟵ After / As soon as / the moment (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) حدث أول

مستقبل ⟵ = Before / When / By the time + (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) حدث ثان

حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + till / until + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفي غالبًا

e.g. : - Before Rokaya leaves the office, she will send some e-mails.
- After Rokaya sends the e-mails, she will leave the office.
- Rokaya won't leave the office until she sends the e-mails.

5 The Future Continuous زمن المستقبل المستمر

.يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرًا فى وقت معين فى المستقبل ويتكون من :

Subject الفاعل + will / shall + be + inf. + ing ...

e.g. : - Ali : I'd like to invite you to my birthday party at five o'clock tomorrow.

- **Ahmed :** Sorry, I'll be helping my grandpa at the garage.

.يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرًا فى المستقبل عندما سيقع حدث آخر :

e.g. : - We will be watching the football match when my father comes home from work.

.يستخدم للتعبير عن خطط الآخرين (خاصة عندما نريد شيئًا من شخص) :

e.g. : - Will you be using your dictionary tomorrow ?

- No, you can borrow it.

.يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من المرجح حدوثه فى وقت معين فى المستقبل :

e.g. : - I'll be staying up late tomorrow night preparing for the English exam.

6 The Future Perfect زمن المستقبل التام

.يتكون المستقبل التام من : Subject فاعل + will have + P.P.

.وفى حالة المبنى للمجهول يتكون من : Object مفعول + will have been + P.P.

e.g. : - By 2050, they will have replaced the old buildings by modern ones.

- By 2050, the old buildings will have been replaced by modern ones.

.ويدل على أن حدث سيكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين فى المستقبل.

.يستخدم هذا الزمن عادة مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل مسبوقة بحروف الجر (before/in/by) :

By (the year) 2050 / By tomorrow morning / by next June / By next week / by next year / In three years' time / by 7 o'clock tomorrow / by next Ramadan

e.g. : - They will have built the house by next month.

- My father will have arrived home before five o'clock.
- By this time next week, I will have heard my test results.

- ويستخدم المستقبل التام أيضا للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهي او تم قبل وقوع حدث أخر في المستقبل ، وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام علي المعني :

e.g. : - When mum arrives home, we will have cleaned our rooms.

- (سيكون التنظيف قد تم قبل وصول الأم).

e.g. : - When mum arrives home, we will clean our rooms.

- (عند وصول الأم ، سنقوم بالتنظيف).

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

١. يمكن ان يُستخدم المستقبل التام وأزمنة المستقبل الأخري مع تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحروف جر وظروف أخري مثل :

- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week .... etc.)
- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.......) time.

e.g. : - This time tomorrow, I will have written the reports.

- (سأكون بالفعل قد كتبت التقارير).

e.g. : - This time tomorrow, I will be writing the reports.

- (سأكون مستمرا في كتابة التقارير).

e.g. : - This time tomorrow, I will write the reports.

- (سوف أقوم بكتابة التقارير)

٢. لاحظ أن الأساس في استخدام المستقبل التام أن يكون الحدث قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل كما في الأمثلة السابقة. أما في حالة عدم اكتمال الفعل فنستخدم المستقبل البسيط حتي في ظل وجود تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحرف الجر (by) :

- لاحظ المثال التالي :

e.g. : - English will be spoken by half the world's population by 2050.

- في هذا المثال ، تحدُث اللغة الإنجليزية من قبل نصف سكان العالم لن يتوقف عند هذا التاريخ ، بل سيكون أمر قائمًا و مستمرًا.

- لاحظ أيضا المثال التالي :

e.g. : - By 2040, people will use renewable sources of energy.

- في هذا المثال ،استخدام الطاقة المتجددة سيكون أمر قائما و قيد الإستخدام ، ولن يكون حدثا قد تم أو انتهي.

PART 1

Test Yourself

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She .... this article in two hours' time tomorrow.
   a. writes b. has been written
   c. 'll be written d. will have written
2. By the end of this year, more houses will .... for young people and newly married couples.
   a. be building b. have been built
   c. have building d. build
3. I will .... my final exams by the time you receive my letter.
   a. be finished b. have been finishing
   c. have finished d. be finishing
4. In the future, solar energy .... in homes and in industry.
   a. will use b. is used c. will have used d. will be used
5. They will .... by dinnertime.
   a. have arrived b. have been arrived
   c. arrive d. to have arrived
6. By 2025, the government will .... the problem of power shortage.
   a. solve b. be solved
   c. have been solved d. have solved
7. When will you .... all this work?
   a. have been completed b. have completed
   c. be completed d. have completing
8. More food .... to overcome the food crisis.
   a. may produce b. will be produced
   c. will produce d. shall be produced
9. I will .... all my pocket money by the end of the school trip.
   a. have been spent b. have spent
   c. be spent d. spent
10. Let's start tomorrow and .... the details later on.
    a. will have discussed b. will be discussed
    c. will discuss d. discuss
11. He won't .... work by seven.
    a. be finished b. have been finished
    c. have finished d. has finished

12. The drinks will .... already.
   a. have been ordered
   b. be ordering
   c. have ordered
   d. order
13. I expected that the prices will .... again.
   a. raise
   b. be raising
   c. have raised
   d. be raised
14. Surgeons will .... operations by using robots in the near future.
   a. perform
   b. have performed
   c. be performed
   d. have been performed
15. Most of the fruit on our farm will .... by the end of June.
   a. harvest
   b. have harvested
   c. have been harvested
   d. be harvested
16. He will .... his novel by the end of the month.
   a. publish
   b. be published
   c. have published
   d. have been published
17. He will .... her before the meeting.
   a. be rung
   b. have been rung
   c. have rung
   d. have been ringing
18. All Exams will .... electronic by 2025.
   a. make
   b. have made
   c. be made
   d. have been made
19. In four years' time, most of the old buildings will .... by modern offices.
   a. have been replaced
   b. have replaced
   c. be replacing
   d. replace
20. In the future, most of our energy will .... by wind power.
   a. have replaced
   b. have been replaced
   c. be replaced
   d. replace
21. We are saving up because we .... buy a car.
   a. will
   b. are going to
   c. would
   d. are going
22. My plane .... at ten o'clock.
   a. is going to leave
   b. leaves
   c. is leaving
   d. will be leaving
23. .... anything next Saturday?
   a. Will you be done
   b. Are you doing
   c. Do you do
   d. Have you done
24. Hi, Leen! My family .... me out today for passing my exams.
   a. takes
   b. are taking
   c. take
   d. will take

25. I .... apply to study medicine at Assuit University. That's what I've just decided.
a. am going to b. will c. would d. have

26. We need your help. .... do it for us?
a. Are you going to b. Will you
c. Do you d. Should you

27. I .... my next summer holiday in Australia. I have arranged everything.
a. will spend b. am spending c. spend d. have spent

28. It is predicted that people .... on space holidays in the next ten years.
a. are going b. are going to go
c. will go d. will be going

29. A : Are you leaving this evening? B : Yes, my train .... at 7:15. I think so.
a. is going to leave b. leaves
c. will leave d. will be leaving

30. It is arranged .We .... the Red Sea this summer.
a. will go b. are going to c. go d. have gone

31. I think my brother .... a doctor. He is very clever.
a. will be b. is going to be c. is being d. would be

32. Mr Ahmed .... 40 next year.
a. is b. will be c. is going to be d. is being

33. My English lesson .... at four o'clock this afternoon. That's what the timetable says.
a. finishes b. finish
c. will finish d. is going to finish

34. I .... I have arranged it with my boss.
a. will leave b. am leaving
c. am going to leave d. leave

35. If I wait for you any longer, I .... the train.
a. will miss b. am missing
c. miss d. am going to miss

36. I .... Tarek tonight. We have arranged that.
a. visit b. am visiting c. will visit d. visits

37. As soon as I hear the news, I .... you.
a. will tell b. am telling c. going to tell d. had told

38. Do you think we .... the match?
a. are winning b. will win
c. win d. are going to win

39. I don't have any plans , but I expect I .... some time with my friends.
   a. am going to spend b. spend
   c. will spend d. will be spending
40. My football team .... two players for next year. The two players signed the contract.
   a. is going to get b. are getting c. get d. will
41. I think the weather in England .... be cold and rainy.
   a. is going to b. will c. would d. shall
42. Omar looks exhausted. He ....
   a. is going to sleep b. will sleep
   c. sleeps d. would sleep
43. I .... to Moscow tomorrow. I've arranged it.
   a. am flying b. fly
   c. am going to fly d. will fly
44. He .... the children to the match tonight. He has booked 3 tickets.
   a. may drive b. shall drive c. drives d. is driving
45. There's not a cloud in the sky. It .... another very sunny day.
   a. will be b. is being c. shall be d. is going to be
46. I've decided what to do at the weekend. I .... my uncle.
   a. have visited b. will visit
   c. am visiting d. am going to visit
47. We .... to the Red Sea this summer. I've bought a guidebook.
   a. will go b. are going
   c. shall go d. have gone
48. The cup is on the edge of the table. It ....
   a. is falling b. has fallen c. is going to fall d. will be falling
49. She has already packed her luggage. She .... leave.
   a. is going to b. might c. will d. shall
50. .... you buy me some stamps, please?
   a. Might b. May c. Should d. Will
51. He .... to London tomorrow. He's got his ticket.
   a. will fly b. is going to fly c. flies d. is flying
52. The concert .... at 11 o'clock tonight. That's what the clerk says.
   a. starts b. will start c. is starting d. is going to start
53. **A :** The phone is ringing. **B :** I .... it.
   a. answer b. am answering
   c. will answer d. am going to answer
54. The forecast says it's .... be hot and sunny tomorrow.
   a. be going to b. going to c. will d. shall

PART 1

4 Kinds of Sentences الجمل بأنواعها

A Linking words (Conjunctions)

1 Conjunctions that express contrast أدوات ربط تدل على التناقض

1 تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض ويتبع هذه الروابط جملة (فاعل + فعل ...).

although - though - even though - even if - but - yet - however + subject + verb

e.g. : - Although Sami is upset, he keeps smiling.
- Even if this car is expensive, I am going to buy it.
- Ali was born in London, yet he can't speak English well.
- It is hot. However, I won't turn the fan on.

2 تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض. ويتبع هذه الروابط (noun or gerund):

In spite of - Despite - Regardless of + (gerund or noun)

e.g. : - In spite of her old age, she isn't married yet.
- Regardless of his wealth, he isn't satisfied with his life.
- Despite being wealthy, he isn't satisfied with his life.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (Whatever , However) فى بداية الجملة كالآتى :

However + ظرف / صفة + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - However tall he is, he can't play basketball.
- However hard he works, he doesn't get a promotion.

Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - Whatever the wealth he has, he is sad.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (as) كالآتى :

ظرف / صفة + as + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - Short as he is, he can jump so high.
- Well as he plays, he doesn't win the match.

- (In spite of / Despite) + the fact that + subject فاعل + verb فعل .... .

- لاحظ أن التركيبة السابقة يتبعها جملة كاملة :

e.g. : - Despite the fact that he is ill, he can work hard.

2 Conjunctions that express cause روابط تدل على السبب

١ للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويتبعها جملة (فاعل + فعل + ...) :

(because - as - since) + subject + verb

e.g. : - She won the competition (because / as / since) she worked hard.
- (Because / As / Since) Soha has a heart problem, she can't do sport.

٢ للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويتبعها (gerund أو noun) :

because of - due to - owing to - on account of -
thanks to - through - for بسبب + noun / (inf. + ing)

e.g. : - My grandpa died due to a heart attack.
- Owing to his intelligence, he can do any difficult sum.
- Because of being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (Being + adj.) بمعنى (كونه / كونها / كونهم) للتعبير عن السبب :

e.g. : - Being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أن هذه التعبيرات يمكن أن يأتى بعدها جملة كاملة :

- (Because of / Owing to / Due to / Thanks to / On account of) the fact that + subject + verb ....

e.g. : - The teacher punished him because of being rude / because of the fact that he was rude.

3 Conjunctions that express result روابط تدل على النتيجة

- تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على النتيجة :

so - that is why - therefore - consequently - As a result of - Hence - thus

e.g. : - He was wet so he had a severe cold.

- Nada was born with a phobia of dogs therefore she can't stand seeing a dog in the street.

- كذلك يمكن استخدام جملة so (adj. / adv.) that / such (adj. + noun) that للتعبير عن النتيجة :

e.g. : - The book was so successful that it was sold like sweet.

- It was such a successful book that it was sold like sweet.

4 Conjunctions that express time روابط زمنية تدل على الزمن / الوقت

- تستخدم الروابط الزمنية التالية لتدل على علاقة زمنية بين حدثين ويأتى بعدها جملة (فاعل + فعل) :

When - While - As (Just as) - After - Before
- By the time - till - until - As soon as

e.g. : - While it was raining, I fell down.

- After the train had left, Sally arrived at the station.
- By the time he got the prize, he had expected it.
- She didn't do the shopping till she had had her salary.
- We won't leave home until we have permission.
- As soon as Ali arrives, we will leave.

- لاحظ العلاقة بين الحدثين فى الجمل السابقة.

- لاحظ أنه عند حذف الفاعل يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد بعض هذه الروابط :

e.g. : - While raining, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام (During) بدلًا من (While) ويتبعها (noun) :

e.g. : - I fell asleep during the film.

- لاحظ أنه تستخدم (On) بمعنى (When) ويتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (noun).

e.g. : - When she got the prize, she felt extremely excited.

- On getting the prize, she felt extremely excited.
- On his arrival, we started the party.

- يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (When):

e.g. : - When reading the new novel written by Tom, he felt shocked.

5 Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

• If Present Simple (زمن المضارع البسيط) → , Present Simple (زمن المضارع البسيط) → (Zero conditional)

e.g. : - If you **put** wood in water, it **floats**.

• If Present Simple (زمن المضارع البسيط) → , will + inf. (زمن المستقبل البسيط) → (First conditional)

e.g. : - If I **remember** her address, I **will tell** you.

• If Past Simple (زمن الماضى البسيط) → , would + inf. / could / might + inf. → (Second conditional)

e.g. : If I **lost** Ahmed's CD, I **would buy** him another one.

• If Past perfect (زمن الماضى التام) → , would have + p.p. / could / might + have + p.p. → (Third conditional)

e.g. : If I had been more careful, I wouldn't have lost my book.

- يمكن استخدام "Were" مكان " If" فى الحالة الثانية :

- If she were a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.
  Were she a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.
- If he played well, he would win the game.
  Were he to play well, he would win the game.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of) مكان (If) فى الاثبات ويأتى بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : If Ali worked hard, he wouldn't be fired يطرد من العمل.
In case of working hard, Ali wouldn't be fired.

- يمكن استخدام (But for / Without) مكان (If) فى النفى أو بدلًا من (Unless) ويأتى بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - If Samia didn't eat vegetables, she wouldn't be healthy.
Without eating vegetables, Samia wouldn't be healthy.

6 Conjunctions that express purpose روابط تعبر عن الغرض

❶ Subject + present ⟶ so that / in order that / in the hope that + فاعل + can / will / may + inf. (من أجل / لكى)

e.g. : - We save money in the hope that we will buy a car.

❷ Subject + past ⟶ so that / in order that / in the hope that + فاعل + could / would / might + inf.

e.g. : - Ali went to the market so that he could buy some vegetables.

❸ Subject + verb + to / so as to / in order to لكى + inf. المصدر

e.g. : - She went there in order to enjoy the fine weather.
- I study hard to reach my goal.

❹ Subject + verb + in order not to / so as not to + inf. لكى لا

e.g. : - I go to bed early in order not to be late for school.

❺ Subject + verb + in the hope of + inf. + ing

e.g. : - I went home quickly in the hope of على أمل أن laying with my children before they slept.

❻ Subject + verb + lest خشية أن + فاعل + inf. / should + inf.

e.g. : - She turned away from the window lest any one see / should see her.

7 Conjunctions that express addition روابط العطف والإضافة

❶ and تُستخدم "and" لربط جملتين بإضافة شئ إلى شئ آخر (تربط بين جملتين)

e.g. : - We played tennis and went home.
- Ahmed is studying and Rodayna is cooking.

❷ Besides + noun or (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - Besides doing homework, she helped her mother.
- She helped her mother besides doing homework.

: Besides that + subject فاعل + inf. بالاضافة إلى ذلك (جملة)

e.g. : - She did her homework. Besides that she helped her mother.

❸ in addition to + noun / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - In addition to doing homework, she helped her mother.
- She helped her mother in addition to doing homework.

❹ In addition + جملة بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- تُستخدم in addition فى أول الجملة أو فى وسطها :

e.g. : - In addition she did homework, she helped her mother.
- She did homework . In addition, she helped her mother.

❺ As well as + (inf. + ing). إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - We went to the market. We went to the zoo.
- As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.

- إذا كان الفاعلان مختلفين بالجملتين فإن الفعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى فى حالة الربط بـ as well as كالآتى :

فعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى ... + فاعل ثانى + as well as + فاعل أول

e.g. : - I as well as Ali have a car.
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

❻ not only ..... but also (as well) ليس هذا فقط ولكن أيضًا

e.g. : - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.
- She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.

- لاحظ : عند إستخدام Not only فى بداية الجملة نستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Not only did she arrive late, but she also forgot her books.

7 Both .... and كلًا من

e.g. : - Mr. Ahmed is a doctor. His wife is a doctor.
- Both Mr. Ahmed and his wife are doctors.

- لاحظ : عند الربط بـ both .... and يكون الفعل فى حالة الجمع

يأتى بعد "Both of" ضمير مفعول جمع (you , us , them) ويمكن استخدامه كفاعل أو مفعول للجملة :

e.g. : - Both of the girls are polite.
- My aunt visited both of us yesterday.

8 Neither .... nor لا .... ولا

- تُستخدم neither ... nor لربط جملتين فى حالة النفى :

e.g. : - Rodayna isn't at home. Her brother isn't at home.
- Neither Rodayna nor her brother is at home.

- لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى كالآتى :

e.g. : - Malak isn't lazy. Her sisters aren't lazy.
- Neither Malak nor her sisters are lazy.

- عند استخدام Neither فى أول الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل :

e.g. : - I neither watched nor tried to watch the film.
- Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... Lemuel Gulliver was travelling at sea, there was a storm.
   a. Although b. If c. Because d. While
2. They were accused of stealing money .... they were innocent.
   a. despite b. although c. in spite of d. as
3. He failed the exam .... his intelligence.
   a. although b. however c. despite d. even though
4. Cheap .... the car was, I refused to buy it.
   a. however b. despite c. though d. as

5. They couldn't continue the race .... the bad storm.
   a. owing to b. because c. since d. as
6. He'd like to join the sports club .... he can get fit.
   a. so as to b. as c. so that d. in order
7. We visited Ahmed yesterday .... congratulate him on his success.
   a. so that b. in order to c. so as d. because
8. .... did he get full marks but he was chosen as the ideal student as well.
   a. As well as b. Not only c. Beside d. In addition to
9. .... he was in debt, we decided to help him.
   a. Since b. Because of c. Owing to d. In spite of
10. .... cleaning the house , she did the shopping.
   a. In addition b. As well as c. However d. Also
11. .... you say , I'll never believe you.
   a. Despite b. However c. Whatever d. In spite
12. .... swimming makes me fit, I don't like it.
   a. Although b. Despite c. In spite d. Because
13. I, as well as my friend, ... to leave at once.
   a. am b. is c. are d. were
14. Not only my brothers but also my sister .... going to Alexandria.
   a. are b. is c. were d. have been
15. Neither the library nor the bookshops .... that book.
   a. has b. have c. is having d. are having

B Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

1. **Zero conditional** الحالة الصفرية
2. **First conditional** الحالة الأولى
3. **Second conditional** الحالة الثانية
4. **Third conditional** الحالة الثالثة

PART 1

1 Zero conditional clause with "if" الحالة الصفرية

Formation : التكوين

If → present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

Usage : الاستخدام

- تستخدم هذه الحالة عند الكلام عن الحقائق العلمية والظواهر الطبيعية والفلكية والتجارب المعملية والكلام عن النظريات الهندسية والكلام المنطقى :

e.g. : - If we freeze water , it turns into ice.
- If you don't water flowers , they fade.
- If you heat ice , it melts.
- If we mix red and yellow, we get orange.
- If people don't get enough food, they become ill.
- I get a headache if I stay too long on the computer.

- تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتعبير عن عادات عامة وحقائق ولابد ان تكون الحقيقة عامة وليست شيء خاص، واذا كان شيء خاص نستخدم الحالة الأولى:

ويمكن معرفة الشيء الخاص بالآتي :

1. استخدام صفة اشارة (this / that / these / those) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول :

e.g. : - If goats eat the bark on a tree, the tree dies. (حقيقة عامة)
- If those goats eat the bark on a tree, the tree will die. (حقيقة خاصة)

2. استخدام صفة ملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / ......'s ...) لتحديد معنى خاص :

e.g. : - If the plants on our farm get very thirsty, we will irrigate them.

3. اقتران أو ارتباط حدوث الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد :

e.g. : - Streets will become wet if it rains tonight.

- يمكن استخدام (When) بدلاً من (If) فى الحالة الصفرية :

e.g. : - When you heat ice, it melts.
- Streets become wet when it rains.

2 First conditional clause with "if"

Formation : التكوين

If إذا/لو	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط	, will / shall / can / may / must / should + inf.

Usage : الاستخدام

- تعبر هذه الحالة عن امكانية حدوث شئ فى المستقبل إذا تحقق شرط حدوثه.

e.g. : - If we take a taxi, we'll get there in time.
- You'll catch a disease if you swim in the canal.
- If Ali buys a new car, he'll give me a lift.

حذف أداة الشرط (If) فى الحالة الاولى

- يمكن استخدام (should) بدلا من (If) فى الحالة الشرطية الاولى كالتالي :

Should + subject + inf. .... , ... will + inf. ....

e.g. : - If she studies hard, she will pass the test.

- لاحظ وضع فعل الشرط فى المصدر (study) لأن (should) يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل دائمًا :

e.g. : - Should she study hard, she will pass the test.

- لاحظ إذا كان جواب الشرط جملة أمرية :

e.g. : - If you don't have a solution, call me.

3 The second conditional clause with "if"

Formation : التكوين

If إذا/لو	past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط	,	would / 'd + inf. مصدر الفعل could / might + inf. مصدر الفعل

Usage : الاستخدام

- تستخدم حالة (If) الشرطية الثانية للتعبير عن حدث غير محتمل وقوعه فى المضارع أو المستقبل :

e.g. : - If you worked harder, you would get higher marks.
- I would visit my friends in Kuwait if I had more time.

- تستخدم (were) مع الضمائر المفردة والجمع فى حالة استحالة تحقيق جواب الشرط :

e.g. : - If I were ten years younger, I'd go cycling.
- If he were a bird, he would fly.
- If she were rich, she would help the poor.

- تستخدم حالة (If) الشرطية الثانية لإعطاء النصيحة :

e.g. : - If I were you, I would be more tolerant.
- If I were you, I wouldn't make any mistakes.

حذف أداة الشرط (If) فى الحالة الثانية

1 تستخدم (Were) مكان (If) إذا كانت فعل اساسى فى الجملة :

Were + فاعل + ...

e.g. : - If she were a doctor, she would save his life.
- Were she a doctor, she would save his life.

2 تستخدم (Were + فاعل + to + inf.) فى حالة وجود فعل أساسى آخر :

e.g. : - If he drank bad juice, he might be ill.
- Were he to drink bad juice, he might be ill.

3 يمكن استخدام (Had) محل (If) فى الحالة الثانية إذا كانت فعل أساسى :

Had + فاعل + ...

e.g. : - If I had enough money, I would live in a villa.
- Had I enough money, I would live in a villa.

4 The third conditional clause with "if"

Formation : التكوين

If → Past perfect (ماضي تام) , + ... would have + P.P.

... would have + P.P. + if + Past perfect → جملة ماضي تام

e.g. : - If I had studied harder, I would have passed the exam.
- We wouldn't have missed the plane if we had taken a taxi.

Usage : الاستخدام

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن شيء في الماضي لم يحدث لعدم توفر شرط حدوثه في الماضي أو العكس و تعبر عن الانتقاد او الندم لأن الحدث لا يمكن التعديل فيه.

e.g. : - If she had studied hard, she would have passed the exam. (Criticism)
- If I hadn't eaten so much, I wouldn't have felt sick. (Regret)

حذف أداة الشرط (If) فى الحالة الثالثة

- تحل Had محل If فى الحالة الثالثة ويليها الفاعل و تصريف ثالث :

e.g. : - If he had left the house at nine, he would have been on time for the interview.
- Had he left the house at nine, he would have been on time for the interview.

بدائل اداة الشرط (IF)

أولا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (if) ويليها جملة مع مراعاة معنى كل اداة :

only if فقط لو / in case فى حالة / providing (that) بشرط أن - provided (that) بشرط أن - As long as طالما / on condition that بشرط أن / even if حتى لو

e.g. : - I'll attend the party provided that he invites me.
- I'll lend you the money as long as you promise to pay it back soon.
- He will travel abroad in case he gets the passport.
- She will pass the test only if she studies hard.
- She would only pass the test if she studied hard.

ثانيا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (If) في جميع الحالات ويليها (noun / inf. + ing) :

In case of في حالة / With بـ / By بـ / But for (في حالة النفي) + (noun/ inf. + ing) .....

e.g. : - In case of getting his passport, he will travel abroad.
- She will pass the test with / by studying hard.

(Unless) إذا لم / لو لم

Unless = Except if = If not + جملة

e.g. : - You will be late if you don't hurry. = You will be late unless you hurry.
= You will be late except if you hurry.

- يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (unless) ويليها (noun / inf. + ing) :

Without (But for) + (noun/ inf. + ing) ....

e.g. : - Without (But for) hurrying, you will be late.

- يمكن ان تكون جملة (if) ماضي تام مستمر / ماضي مستمر :

e.g. : - If Ahmed hadn't been working hard, he wouldn't have achieved such a success.
- If she was coming, she'd be here by now.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Take these tools with you .... your car breaks down.
   a. without b. unless c. in case of d. in case
2. .... my help, he will pay back all his debts.
   a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless
3. If the book was cheap, I .... buy it.
   a. will b. would c. can d. may

4. If Hisham .... with us, he would have a good time.
   a. would come   b. had come
   c. would have come   d. came
5. .... today, he would get there by Thursday.
   a. Would he leave   b. Were he to leave
   c. If he leaves   d. Was he leaving
6. I would have attended the meeting if I .... time.
   a. had had   b. would have had
   c. have had   d. had
7. .... Adel hadn't lived in China, he wouldn't have learned to speak Chinese.
   a. Unless   b. Without   c. In case of   d. If
8. If I .... to bring my mobile phone, I would borrow my brother's.
   a. forget   b. forgot   c. had forgotten   d. forgets
9. Wood floats if it .... on water.
   a. put   b. puts   c. is put   d. will put
10. He wouldn't take a taxi if someone .... for him at the airport.
   a. had waited   b. waited   c. has waited   d. waiting
11. If they .... by car, the journey would have taken much longer.
   a. have gone   b. has gone   c. had gone   d. went
12. What .... do if you passed the exam ?
   a. you would   b. would you   c. will you   d. you will
13. If you .... difficulty understanding the instructions, call me.
   a. have   b. had had   c. had   d. has
14. If my watch .... been right, I wouldn't have been late.
   a. had   b. has   c. hasn't   d. hadn't
15. He would have visited Aswan if he .... my address.
   a. would have know   b. would know
   c. know   d. had known
16. If Sameh hadn't visited Aswan, he .... the High Dam.
   a. wouldn't see   b. wouldn't have seen
   c. will see   d. would have seen

17. You would have a good health if you .... a balanced diet.
   a. eat   b. had eaten   c. have eaten   d. ate
18. If Shakespeare had stayed in Stratford, he would probably .... a glove maker.
   a. became   b. have become   c. has become   d. becomes
19. If I .... enough money, I'd buy a second-hand car.
   a. have   b. had   c. had had   d. would have

C Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 who / which / whom / that الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى

- تُشير (who / that) الي فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل فى الجملة الموصولة:

e.g. : - I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.
- Teachers are people who / that work at schools.

- تُشير (who / whom / that) الي مفعول عاقل في حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفهم:

e.g. : - The man who /whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.
= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

- تُشير (which / that) الي فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل:

e.g. : - The dog which/ that chased me belongs to my neighbours.

- تُشير (which / that) الي مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما:

e.g. : - The car which/ that I bought has a problem with the engine.
- The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

- لا تستخدم (that) في الجمل الاعتراضية – أي بعد الفاصلة التحتية (,) :

e.g. : - Ismail Yassen, who is still a famous actor, died in 1970s. (Not: that is....)
- Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)

بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

أ. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية الجملة الموصولة :

e.g. : - This is my friend who I play tennis with. (Not: with who….)
- This is the motorbike that I go to school on. (Not: on that….)

ب. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

e.g. : - This is my friend whom I play tennis with.
= This is my friend with whom I play tennis.
- This is the motorbike which I go to school on.
= This is the motorbike on which I go to school.

2 where حيث / حيثما / المكان الذى

❶ تعود على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل :

e.g. : - This is the room where I sleep.
- She went to Cairo University where she studied Arabic language.

❷ لاحظ أن :

- where = (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + which) / (which +… حرف جر مناسب للمكان)

e.g. : - This is the room where I sleep.
= This is the room in which I sleep.
= This is the room which I sleep in.

❸ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجملة الوصل
- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين :

e.g. : - This is the house where we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)
- This is the house which we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

❹ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

e.g. : - I went to the room in which I sleep. (Not: the room in where ….)
- I went to the room which I sleep in. (Not: the room where …. in)

3 when حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت

1 تُشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل :

e.g. : - 2012 is the year when Rodayna was born.
- Friday is the day when we don't go to school.
- Two o'clock is the time when I return home from school.
- when = (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني + which) / (which +... حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني)
- 2012 is the year in which Rodayna was born.
= - 2012 is the year which Rodayna was born in.
- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.
= - Friday is the day which we don't go to school on.
- Two o'clock is the time at which I get up.
= - Two o'clock is the time which I get up at.

2 يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجملة الوصل :
– لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين :

e.g. : - August is the month when we go to Alexandria.
= We go to Alexandria in August.
- August is the month which we spend in Alexandria.
= We spend August in Alexandria.

3 لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمنى قبل أو بعد (when) :

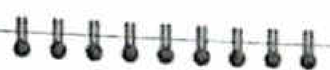
e.g. : - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not : the day on when ...)
- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not : the day when ... on)

4 whose = (Nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

- تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل) :

e.g. : - I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.
- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة



١ لا يتم ذكر ضمير يعود على الاسم الذي يشير إليه ضمير الوصل :

e.g. : - This is my friend who I go to school with him. (✗)
- This is my friend who I go to school with. (✓)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student there. (✗)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student. (✓)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought it. (✗)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought. (✓)

٢ يتم حذف كل من (who – which – whom) عندما يحلون محل مفعول (اي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

e.g. : - This is the woman who I helped.
= This is the woman I helped.

٣ هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل :

أ. تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (,) :

e.g. : - The man who /that lives next door works in a bank.

ب. لا تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه بل تعطي معلومة شائعة وفي هذا النوع نستخدم (,) :

e.g. : - Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is where I was born.

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

١ يمكن حذف كل من (who – which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. اذا جاء بعدهم زمن مستمر و في هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقي (inf.+ing) :

e.g. : - The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son.
= The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل :

e.g. : - The criminal who was arrested yesterday is very dangerous.
- The criminal arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

❶ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلاً من عبارة الوصل اذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل :

The first / the second .... /the last/the only...........

e.g. : - I was the first person who left the ship.

= I was the first person to leave the ship.

❷ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلاً من عبارة الوصل للدلالة علي الغرض مثل :

e.g. : - He has some books that he wants to read.

= He has some books to read.

❸ يمكن أن يأتي فعل بعد (whom) إذا جاء قبلها أحد التعبيرات الآتية :

all of, most of, none of, both of, neither of, either of, any of, one of, some of, many of, much of.........

e.g. : - The house was full of boys, ten of whom were my cousins.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I finally reached the café, ... I usually meet friends.
   a. who b. where c. that d. which
2. I thought that the woman in blue is the secretary .... I was waiting for
   a. whom b. whose c. where d. which
3. I feel relaxed in my bedroom .... I sleep, use my computer and study my lessons.
   a. where b. which c. when d. there
4. The Eastern Desert , ... is very dry, has very little wildlife.
   a. where b. when c. who d. which
5. Dr Zewail, ... discovered the femtosecond, was born in Egypt.
   a. whom b. whose c. who d. which

6. Lake Nasser, ... was formed behind the High Dam, is the largest man-made lake.
   a. where b. whom c. that d. which
7. My uncle, ... is a pilot, lives in Cairo very near to the airport.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. which
8. Mr Fathy Zaki, ... works as an inspector of English, lives in Edfu.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. which
9. The young man .... lives next door wants to marry my sister.
   a. whose b. whom c. that d. which
10. A florist is someone .... sells flowers.
   a. whom b. who c. when d. whose
11. Could you show me the photos .... you took yesterday?
   a. whom b. who c. when d. no pronoun
12. Uncle Omar, ... is a father of three sons, is a greengrocer.
   a. that b. who c. when d. whom
13. The gentleman .... I met yesterday is a successful businessman.
   a. whom b. whose c. when d. which
14. The cafeteria .... I have my drinks on is at the corner of a quiet street.
   a. where b. which c. when d. no pronoun
15. The person .... I really enjoy talking to is my grandfather.
   a. whose b. who's c. which d. no pronoun
16. Armstrong was the first .... on the moon.
   a. walking b. to walk
   c. man he walked d. one walked
17. A new tower was built next to the house .... I was born.
   a. in where b. in which c. when d. whose
18. Will you lend me the DVD .... you bought last week?
   a. in which b. whose c. when d. no pronoun
19. The watch .... I have bought is very expensive.
   a. where b. who c. that d. at which
20. This is the photo .... shows the location of our new house clearly.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. where

PART 2 Skills المهارات



Contents :



1 Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

How to answer a comprehension :

* كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :

قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (تبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :

لابد أن تقيس أسئلة قطعة الفهم المهارات التالية :

1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Topic الموضوع

• The topic / main idea of the passage is ....

= The text is mainly about ....

- موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هى ....

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟

• Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

- أى من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

Source المصدر

• This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from ....

- هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من ....

Title العنوان

• Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

- أى مما يلى يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟

Reference

• The underlined word / pronoun refers to ....

الضمير الذى تحته خط يشير إلى ....

2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

أمثلة كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Synonym المعنى / المرادف

• In line ...., the word .... is closest in meaning to ....

في السطر رقم ....، كلمة .... أقرب ما يكون فى المعنى لـ ....

• The underlined word .... gives the meaning of ....

الكلمة التى تحتها خط .... تعطى معنى ....

• Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to .... ?

أى مما يلى مرادف فى المعنى لـ .... ؟

• The word .... in the passage gives the synonym of ....

كلمة .... فى النص تعطى مرادف ....

Antonym التضاد / العكس

• In the .... paragraph, the word .... is the antonym of ....

في الفقرة رقم ....، كلمة .... مضاد لـ ....

• The word .... in the passage gives the opposite of ....

كلمة .... في النص تعطى عكس ....

• Which of the following gives the antonym of .... ?

أى مما يلى مضاد فى المعنى لـ .... ؟

• The word .... has two meanings in the passage. Explain.

كلمة .... لها معنيين فى النص. وضح.

3 Understanding details and extracting information

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

- أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد — Yes / No questions
- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام — Wh-questions

- أدوات وتعبيرات استفهامية هامة :

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	لِكَم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أي مدى
for whom	لأجل مَن	to whom	إلى مَن
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما لون
how far	كم بعد / لأي مدى	what size	ما حجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما وقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	أين
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	إلى أين
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أيّ
how often	كم مرة	who	من (فاعل أو مفعول عاقل)
how old	كم عمر	whom	مَن (مفعول عاقل)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لمن / ملك من
in / at which	في أيّ	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع مَن

أخرى مثل :

PART 2

True / Correct صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT ....
حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا ....
- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about .... ?
حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعَدُّ صحيحا فيما يخص .... ؟

False / incorrect خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT ....
حسب ما ورد فى النص، فكل ما يلى خطأ ما عدا ....
- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about .... ?
حسب ما ورد فى النص، أى مما يلى يُعَدُّ غير صحيح فيما يخص .... ؟

4 Critical Thinking Skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

عن أسئلة التفكير النقدى المرتبطة بقطع الفهم :

- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدى على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأى / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لابد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدى كما يلى :
١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال. ٢. منطقية أو عقلانية. ٣. صحيحة من الناحية اللغوية.

نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدى :

1 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على الرأي الشخصي للطالب بخصوص الكاتب أوالأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :

- Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person? What showed this to you?
هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير في السن؟ ما الذي أوحي إليك بذلك؟
- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?
في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

❷ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على قياس القدرة علي التعبير عن اتفاق أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب :

- Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced /raised? Why / Why not?

- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب؟ لم / لم لا؟

- Does the writer's idea make sense to you? Why / Why not?

- هل فكرة الكاتب مفهومة لديك؟ لم / لم لا؟

❸ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :

- What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.

- ما رأيك فيما قاله الكاتب؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.

- How would you put .... into your own words?

- كيف يمكنك صياغة .... بأسلوبك؟

- What do you think would be an example of .... ?

- ماذا تعتقد أنه مثالاً لـ .... ؟

= Give an example of .... = Illustrate ....

- اذكر مثالاً لـ .... / وضّح ....

❹ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على أن يفترض الطالب أنه فى موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :

- If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).

- لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستتبنى نفس الرأى؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.

- What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why.

- ما الذى كنت (ستفعله) لو أنك فى مكان الكاتب؟ وضح السبب.

- If .... hadn't ...., what do you think would have happened?

- لو .... لم يكن ....، ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث ؟

ركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على تقييم عرض الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا :

• Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail.

هل نجح الكاتب في توضيح أفكاره؟ وضح وجهة نظرك بالتفصيل.

• Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas?

هل أسلوب الكاتب مناسب للموضوع؟ كيف طوَّر أفكاره؟

ركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على تخيل ردود أفعال فئات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

• How do you think poor people / patients would view these ....? Illustrate.

فى رأيك، كيف سيكون رأى الفقراء / المرضى تجاه ذلك ....؟ وضح.

• How would people who differ in age or gender react to ....?

كيف سيكون رد فعل الناس الذين يختلفون فى العمر أو الجنس تجاه ....؟

ركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدى على التعبير عن المغزى أو الدروس المستفادة أو القيم الموجودة بالنص :

• How can you make use of (benefit from) ....?

كيف يمكنك أن تستفيد من ....؟

• How could .... be put into practice?

كيف يمكن تطبيق ....؟

• What is the moral of the story?

ما المغزى الأخلاقى للقصة؟

Vocabulary used in Reading comprehension questions :
مفردات شائعة الاستخدام فى الأسئلة المرتبطة بقطع الفهم

- لابد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نَص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدى الى
according to	طبقًا لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	يوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	يدعم بالدليل	moral	مغزى أخلاقى
based on	قائم على	moralities	قيم أخلاقية
be against	يعارض	opinion	رأى
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بخلاف / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
claim	يدعى / يزعم	passage	قطعة القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصَنِّف	point of view	رأي / وجهة نظر
comment	يعلق / تعليق	practical	عملى

core	جوهر / لب	predict	
demerits = disadvantages	عيوب	principle	
		pros and cons	
discuss	يناقش	quality	
effect	أثر / تأثير	rather than	
equal	مساوي	reject	
equivalent	مرادف	result in	
essay	مقال	short for	
essence	جوهر / لب	simplify	
example	مثال	state	
explain	يشرح / يفسر	summarise	
express	يعبر عن	support	
extra	إضافي / آخر	synonym	
impact	انطباع / أثر	underlined	
impression	انطباع / تأثير	value	
introduce	يطرح / يقدم	writer	

Read and learn

✪ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A All the different plants and animals in a natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other and with their non-living surrounding.
An example of a natural community is woodland, and woodland is usually dominated by a particular species but there are also many other plants.

The plants of a community are the producers : they use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant eating animals (herbivores) which are in turn eaten by the flesh-eating animals (carnivores). Thus, plants produce the basic food supply for all animals of the community. The animals themselves are the consumers, and are either herbivores or carnivores in a woodland community.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice, and snails, and insects, such as aphids and **caterpillars**. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes.

Some carnivores feed on herbivores and some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains or food webs. All food chains start with plants. The links of the chains are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are some organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top : for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

Another important section of the community is made up of the decomposers. They include the bacteria and fungi that live in the soil and feed on dead animals and plants. By doing this, they break down the tissues of the dead organisms and release mineral salts into the soil.

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Decomposers .... soil for plants.
   a. disturb b. enrich c. kill d. spoil
2. The sun is .... nutrition in plants.
   a. catalyst b. an element
   c. responsible for d. secondary for
3. According to the passage, a natural community comprises ....
   a. living organsisms b. non-living organsisms
   c. neither of them d. both of them

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context | معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

4. The underlined word "**caterpillars**" in the passage is similar to ....

a. forests b. mice c. moth d. snails

Critical thinking skill | مهارة التفكير النقدى

B. Answer the following questions :

5. According to the passage what do you think the writer's message man?

- Man should interact with the elements of nature to benefit from them not to damage them.

6. In your opinion, what are the three components of a food chain mentioned in the passage ?

- Plants, herbivores & carnivores.

7. From your view point, what is meant by the balance in the pa...

- There should be a balance between plants (producers), herb... and carnivores (consumers).

B How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to a planet that is 400 million kilometers from Earth ? And how would feel if you had been told that you could never return ?

That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars one mission in 2031. Surprisingly, 200000 applications have been recei... from people who want to join the mission, even though they will ne... see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not ver... different from the first Europeans who went to America, or thousa... of people who have left their countries because of war or diseases. ... also knew that their new lives would be difficult and that they wou... probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to ... special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any frie... family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars.

The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long jo... into space. A special <u>settlement</u> will be built on Mars where foo...

be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life. There will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, it is an adventure they can not refuse.

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The number of people who will be made ready through training is ....
   a. a thousand people
   b. less than a thousand people
   c. two hundred thousand people
   d. less than ten people

Understanding the main idea فهم الفكرة الرئيسية

2. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a. One day we will all live on Mars
   b. Life on Mars will be very difficult
   c. The people who will go to Mars will be famous
   d. Life on Mars will be impossible

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

3. The underlined word "**settlement**" means ....
   a. a farm
   b. a place where a group of people live
   c. a factory
   d. a rocket

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

4. The thing that made those who sent applications want to travel to Mars is that ....
   a. they want to know if they can survive there
   b. they want to see the dust storms
   c. scientists made them go there
   d. they don't like Earth

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What do you think the qualities of people who wanted to travel to Mars ?

   I think they should be adventurous and brave.

6. How would you feel if someone told you that you will never return to the Earth ? Why would you have such a feeling ?
   It's a terrible feeling to know that you will never see your family or friends again.
7. What difficulties do you think will be found on Mars ?
   On Mars, there will be very little water. People who will go there will have to grow their own food. Mars is known for its giant dust storms.
8. Whay do you think people want to go into space despite the difficulties ?
   Because it is a real adventure they can not refuse

Practise by yourself تدرب بنفسك

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

1 There is a common expression in the English language referring to a blue moon. When people say that something happens "**only once in a blue moon**," they mean that it happens only very rarely, one in a great while. This expression has been around for at least a century and a half; there are references to this expression that date from the second half of the nineteenth century.

The expression "a blue moon" has come to refer to the second full moon occurring in any given calendar month. A second full moon is not called a blue moon because it is particularly blue or is any different in the hue from the first full moon of the month. Instead, it is called a blue moon because it is so rare. The moon needs a little more than 29 days to complete the cycle from full moon to full moon. Because every month except February has more than 29 days, every month will have at least one full moon (except February, which will have a full moon unless there is a full moon at the very end of January and another full moon at the very beginning of March). It's on the occasion when a given calendar month has a second full moon that a blue moon occurs. This doesn't happen very often, three or four times a decade.

The blue moons of today are called blue moons because of their rarity and not because of their colour; however, the expression "blue moon" may have come into existence in reference to unusual circumstances in which the moon actually appeared blue. Certain natural phenomena of **gigantic** proportions can actually change the appearance of the moon from Earth. The eruption of the Krakatoa volcano in 1883 left dust particles in the atmosphere, which clouded the sun and gave the moon

a bluish tint. This particular occurrence of the blue moon may have given rise to the expression that we use today. Another example occurred more than a century later. When Mount Pinatubo erupted in the Philippines in 1991, the moon again took on a blue tint.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This passage is about ....
   a. an unusual colour b. an idiomatic expression
   c. a month on the calendar d. a phase of the moon

2. The expression "**once in a blue moon**" means ....
   a. for around fifty years b. for less than one hundred
   c. for more than one hundred d. for two hundred years

3. The antonym of the underlined word "**gigantic**" is ....
   a. large b. huge c. colossal d. tiny

4. According to the passage, the moon actually looked blue ....
   a. when it occurred late in the month
   b. several times a year
   c. during the month of February
   d. after large volcanic eruptions

B. Answer the following questions :

5. Do you think February can have more than one full moon ? Why/ Why not ?

   ....

   ....

6. Do you think the "blue moon" seldom occurs ? Why ? Why not ?

   ....

   ....

7. Do you think that natural catastrophes have an influence on the lunar system ? Why ? Why not ?

   ....

   ....

8. Give a suitable title to the passage.

   ....

2 Most human beings are awake during the day and sleep all night. Owls live the opposite way. Owls are nocturnal. This means that they sleep all

day and stay awake at night. Because owls are nocturnal, this means they must eat at night. But finding food in the dark is generally difficult. To help them, they have special eyes and ears.

Owls also have very good hearing. Even when owls are in the trees, they can hear small animals moving in the grass below. This helps owls catch their prey even when it is very dark.

Like owls, mice are also nocturnal animals. Mice have an excellent sense of smell. This helps them find food in the dark.

Being nocturnal helps mice to hide from the many different snakes and lizards that want to eat <u>them</u>. Most of the birds, snakes, and lizards that like to eat mice sleep at night except, of course, owls.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The owl ....
   a. can't see at night
   b. has trouble seeing in the dark
   c. can see well at night
   d. is likely to be eaten by an owl
2. Being nocturnal helps mice to ....
   a. find food for other animals
   b. keep themselves safe
   c. kill owl sand snakes
   d. release stress
3. Owls use .... senses to find food.
   a. smell and hearing
   b. sight and smell
   c. hearing and sight
   d. taste and smell
4. The underlined word "**<u>them</u>**" refers to ....
   a. mice b. lizards c. snakes d. owls

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What do you think is special about nocturnal animals ?

   ....

   ....
6. Why do you think owls have special eyes and ears ?

   ....

   ....
7. Find a word in the passage which means :
   a) take in = ...
   b) sleepless = ...
8. Give a suitable title to the passage.

   ....



مهارة الكتابة

Forms of composition you have to master for the exam
الصيغ التعبيرية التى يجب أن تجيد كتابتها

عزيزى الطالب / عزيزتى الطالبة :

- لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية فى نظام التقويم الجديد، وعلى الطالب أن ينمى هذه المهارة ليصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعدًا للكتابة عن أى موضوع ، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة جميع الصيغ التالية :

1. A narrative essay /short story — مقال سردى أو قصة قصيرة
2. A descriptive essay — مقال وصفى
3. A comparative/argumentative essay

مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف) / مقال جدلى

- Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation card, a book review or brochure.

صيغ مختلفة مثل: رسالة البريد الإلكترونى الرسمية وغير الرسمية - وصف الوظائف - وصفات الطهى - الخطابات - بطاقة الدعوة - عرض نقدي لكتاب - نشرة ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائى؟

- كتابة حوالى (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد الصيغ (مقال - قصة ...)
- يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه
- يتم صياغة رأس الموضوع على شكل:
  - عبارة قد تحتوى علي العنوان المطلوب مباشرة
  - حكمة أو قول مأثور يتخذه الطالب محورًا أساسيًا لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائى
  - سؤال مباشر

أمثلة :

Write about 180 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."

- An essay or short story about the statement: "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

- وفيما يلى سيتم عرض مبسّط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعبيرية وهى :

❶ Essay writing	كتابة المقال
❷ Short story writing	كتابة القصة القصيرة
❸ Email writing	كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay) ؟

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بفكرة معينة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة فرعية متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفَضَّل أن يحتوى المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

- إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال:

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها ، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

- من حيث الشكل Form
  - تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
  - ترك مسافة صغيرة (١ سم تقريبًا) فى بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
  - لابد أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف (Capital).
  - وضع نقطة (.) فى نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) فى نهاية السؤال.
- من حيث المضمون Content
  - يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التى تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
  - من المهم جدًا أن تلتزم بالحديث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بموضوعية وبساطة.
  - ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أى جملة رئيسية تحتوى على الفكرة التى تناقشها الفقرة.
  - لابد من تنويع بدايات الجمل.
  - استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
  - استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع فى أخطاء أنت فى غنى عنها.

The Form of the Essay الشكل العام للمقال

Title العنوان

↓

Education and Technology

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive تفاعلي and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. No more paper will be wasted. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

Identation
المسافة البادئة في أول كل فقرة

Introduction المقدمة

Body الجزء الأساسي

Conclusion الخاتمة

PART 2

The main parts of the essay الاجزاء الرئيسية للمقال

(1) Introduction : المقدمة

- هي الفقرة الأولي في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع، وكيف سيتم تسلسل وعرض الأفكار.

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي يجيد الكتابة، هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ بها فقرة المقدمة مثل :

① جملة عامة تعبر بها عن الفكرة التي يدور حولها الموضوع :

- مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن نبدأ كالتالي:

- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعليم الطلاب وحياتهم الخاصة على السواء.

Or :

- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.

- جميعنا ندين بالكثير لمعلمينا وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

② حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.

- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل ويشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

③ جملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.

- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

سؤال عام يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع : 4

What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صياغة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التى تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- بالنسبة للطالب الذى لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعده مثل :

• We all agree that … is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

- نتفق جميعًا أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء فى حياتنا وله دورًا حيويًا هذه الأيام.

• We all admit the importance and necessity of … in our life.

- كلنا نقر بأهمية وضرورة... فى حياتنا.

• No wonder if we say that … has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.

- لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعًا.

• We all agree that …. is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.

- كلنا نتفق أن ... ضرورى جدًا ويلعب دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا.

• We should put into consideration that … has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.

- يجب أن نضع فى الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحدًا من أهم الأشياء فى حياة كل شخص.

• In my opinion, … is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because … may bring all the good to our society.

- في رأيى ... هو حقا مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعًا وإننى أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعنا.

• No one can deny that … plays a very important role in our life.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا.

• There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

- لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيرًا بالغًا علينا.

* لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم جمع يراعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل.

الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات السلبية

- In my opinion, ... is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring evils to our society.

من وجهة نظري ... خطير وضار هذه الأيام، وقد يكون له آثار سيئة وسلبية علينا جميعا. وانني اعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعنا.

- There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له اثاره السيئة والسلبية في وقتنا هذا.

- Frankly speaking, ... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.

بصراحة أقول أن ... واحدا من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا. وعلى هذا فان دولتنا لا تدخر جهدا لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسى)

(2) Body :

لكي يكون المقال الذى تكتبه معبرًا ومفهومًا ومؤثرًا، عليك بمراعاة ما يلى :

1. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات جيدًا واختر أفضلهم وأسهلهم بالنسبة لك.
2. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب.
3. لابد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار.
4. تحدث عن كل فكرة فى فقرة مستقلة.
5. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.
6. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هواياتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).
7. يجب تنويع بدايات الجمل، ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يناسب من العبارات التالية فى بدايات الجمل :

- Everyone knows that + جملة	- يعرف الجميع أن ...
- I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة	- لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ...
- I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة	- لا أفشى سرًا عندما أقول أن ...
- It can't be denied that + جملة	- لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ...
- It goes without saying that + جملة	- غنى عن البيان أن ...

- It is crystal clear that + جملة
- It is known that + جملة
- It is taken for granted that + جملة
- There is no doubt that + جملة

- من الواضح تماما أن ...
- من المعروف ان ...
- من المسلم به ان ...
- مما لا شك فيه ...

٨. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :

- I think / believe that ... أعتقد أن
- In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظرى
- As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمى

٩. عندما تريد أن تعطى مثالاً ابدأ جملتك بـ :

- For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال

(3) Conclusion :

الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

- غالبًا ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصًا (summary) للأفكار التى تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التى وصلت إليها.
- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأى أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التى يمكن استخدامها فى الفقرات الختامية للمقال

- Finally, it is quite clear that ...(الموضوع) ... is really...(صفة).
  - أخيرًا، من الواضح أن ... فعلاً ...
- I can end my speech saying that...
  - يمكننى أن أنهى حديثى بالقول أن ...
- In brief, I think that ... is really ...
  - باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقًا ...
- In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear.
  - في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطرقت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحًا.
- To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.
  - ختامًا، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتى كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.
- To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...
  - الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلاً ...

PART 2

Related essay models نماذج المقالات المرتبطة بموضوعات القراءة

1 How to use the internet

Introduction

Nowadays, most people use the internet. I think there are both good and bad things about using it. In this essay, I'm going to throw light on both the merits and demerits مزايا وعيوب of using the internet.

Advantages

On the one hand, the internet makes life easier. There is so much information on the internet that people don't need to go to libraries to do research into. People can also use emails through the internet and they no longer have to send letters through traditional post offices. With emails, they can expect the other person to get their messages and reply to them at once على الفور.

Disadvantages

On the other hand, the internet makes people waste much time. There are too many interesting things on the internet. People can download music and movies, read blogs, and play games. Many people spend so much time on the internet that they don't have time to do their work or sleep. Children can sometimes see things that are harmful or not suitable for their age.

Conclusion

To conclude, too much internet is bad. If people don't spend too much time on the internet, it is a useful thing. There should be some sort of control on the content المحتوى children can see.

2 Living in the countryside

Introduction

Where would you prefer to live: in the city or in the countryside? Most people prefer living in the city. However, I would rather live in the country. I'll tell you the reason for this preference.

Disadvantages of city life

People may think that the country is not as exciting as the city. It is true that the city has many activities to do like going to cinemas, parks and clubs. However, you probably have to pay for all these activities. Some of these activities are also very expensive. City life is noisier with the sounds of busy streets and car horns. The city has much air pollution because of exhaust fumes.

Advantages of countryside life

In contrast, you can enjoy many nice things for free in the countryside. You can go fishing in the rivers or hiking الترنيض in the fields. In addition, the country is cleaner and quieter than the city. The country has fresh air and many quiet places. There's also the enjoyable green landscape. There's one more advantage to live in the countryside : the simple kind-hearted people.

Conclusion

To sum up باختصار, the city is expensive, not clean, and loud. The countryside is cheaper, cleaner and quieter. I wish I could spend all my life in the countryside.

3 Keeping Healthy

Introduction

I think health is one of the most important things in our life. Everyone wants to keep healthy. However, some people think it is too hard to be healthy because they are too busy. In this short essay, I'm going to tell you about some easy things you can do to keep healthy.

Advice about food and drink

Instead of drinking fizzy drinks, you should drink water. Fizzy drinks taste good, but they have sugar. Eating too much sugar will make you gain weight or get cavities تجاويف. If you are eating a snack or meal, drink a cup of water with it. You'd better avoid eating much food. Much food means much weight but less health.

Doing exercise

You can also exercise. Exercising will help you not get sick or feel tired. If you don't have time to play sports or run outside, you can do other things. For example, you can walk up the stairs instead of taking the lift. If you are watching television or doing homework, get up now and then بين الحين والآخر and move around. It's also better to depend on yourself for doing what you need.

Conclusion

In brief باختصار, you don't have to have a diet or do hard exercises every day to be healthy. Making small changes will help you be healthier, fitter and happier.

PART 2

2 Email Writing format كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى

يختلف رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email) عن المقال (Paragraph) في الشكل فقط.

يجب اتباع قواعد الكتابة الصحيحة التي سبق تناولها في كتابة المقال.

1 The form of the email الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الإلكترونى

رسالة البريد الإلكترونى (email) فى الامتحان الشكل التالى :

To : .... إلى

From : .... من

Subject : .... الموضوع

Dear + اسم المُرسَل إليه

How are you? I hope you are well. I send you this email to + inf.

....

.... (موضوع الرسالة) ....

That's all I want to say. I'm waiting for your reply.

Best wishes

توقيع المُرسِل

2 The main parts of the email الأجزاء الرئيسية لرسالة البريد الإلكترونى

عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمُرسَل إليه: ويُكتب فى أعلى الصفحة من ناحية اليسار بعد كلمة (To) مثل :

To : samamohammed@elmoasser.com

عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمُرسِل: ويُكتب بعد كلمة (From) مثل :

From : ahmedbar@elmoasser.com

عنوان الموضوع: ويُكتب بعد كلمة (Subject / About) مثل :

Subject : Tourist attractions in Egypt

4 بداية الرسالة: تبدأ الرسالة بكلمة (Dear) ثم اسم المُرسَل اليه، ويجب مراعاة ما يلي :

- إذا كانت الرسالة إلى صديق: نكتب اسم الصديق مباشرة بدون كلمة (friend) مثل :

Dear Rokaya,

- إذا كانت الرسالة إلى قريب: نكتب درجة القرابة مثل :

Dear my uncle,

- إذا كانت الرسالة إلى مسؤول:

- نكتب لقب المسئول قبل الاسم إذا كنا نعرفه، مثل :

Dear Mr Ashraf,

- نكتب لقب المسئول بدون الاسم إذا كنا لا نعرفه، مثل :

Dear General Manager,

- إذا لم نكن نعرف ما إذا كان رجل او امرأة نستخدم :

Dear Sir or Madame,

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التى تصلح لرسائل فى مناسبة عادية

- How are you? I hope you are happy and in good health. I'm very happy to send this e-mail to you.
  - كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكون بخير وبصحة جيدة، ويسعدنى أن أرسل لك هذه الرسالة.
- I'm very pleased to send this email to you. I hope that you are well when you receive it.
  - يسعدنى جدًا أن أرسل إليك هذه الرسالة وأتمنى أن تكون بخير عندما تتسلمها.
- You can't imagine how pleased I am while I'm typing this email.
  - لا يمكنك أن تتخيل مدى سعادتى أثناء كتابة هذه الرسالة.

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التى تصلح لرسائل فى مناسبة غير سعيدة

- I am so unhappy to hear about that (illness / accident /...)
  - إننى حزين جدًا منذ أن سمعت عن ذلك (المرض / الحادث / ...)
- I am so sorry I won't be able to accept your invitation because...
  - يؤسفنى أننى لن أستطيع قبول دعوتك لأن ...
- I have been shocked since I heard your bad news. I hope you overcome this situation soon.
  - إننى أشعر بالصدمة منذ أن سمعت أخبارك غير السعيدة، وأتمنى أن تجتاز هذا الموقف سريعًا.

3 Email (writing) topic الموضوع الرئيسى لرسالة البريد الإلكترونى

الموضوع الرئيسى بعد فقرة المقدمة مباشرة، ويمكنك أن تبدأه بإحدى العبارات التالية :

- I send this email in order to thank you for …
  إنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أشكرك على …
- I send this email in order to invite you to …
  إنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أدعوك إلى …
- I send this email in order to tell you about …
  إنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أخبرك عن …
- I send this email in order to apologise to you for …
  إنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أعتذر لك عن …
- I send this email in order to congratulate you on …
  إنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أهنئك على …
- I send this email in order to ask you about …
  إنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أسألك عن …
- I send this e-mail in order to discuss … with you.
  إنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أناقش … معك.

4 How to end an email كيفية إنهاء رسالة البريد الإلكترونى

لابد أن تكتب الخاتمة فى نهاية الموضوع وفى منتصف السطر أو بعد ترك مسافة لا تقل عن ٢ سم من جهة اليسار، وهناك نهايات كثيرة مثل:

- I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon. أتطلع لرسالة منك قريبًا .
- Remember me to all at home. بلغ تحياتى لجميع أفراد العائلة .
- Please, write back soon. رجاء الرد سريعًا .

5 Signing an email توقيع رسالة البريد الإلكترونى

يتم توقيع رسالة البريد الإلكترونى في نهايتها، ولابد أن تستخدم الاسم الذى يُعطى لك فى الامتحان وليس اسمك الحقيقى، وغالبًا ما يتم التوقيع بعد إحدى التعبيرات التالية:

- Best wishes, أطيب الأمنيات
- Yours / Yours sincerely, المخلص
- Love from me, مع أصدق مشاعرى

Email Model

نموذج لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني

To : sadhorizon@yahoo.com
From : mrmohammed@elmoasser.com
Subject: Tourist attractions in Egypt

Dear Kate,

How are you, Kate? I'm very happy to send this email to you. I hope that you and your family are all in good health. I write this email in reply to your last email in which you asked me about tourist attractions in Egypt. I'm going to tell you about both historical and natural attractions.

As you know, Egypt has one of the oldest and greatest civilizations in the world. In Luxor and Aswan, there are thousands of historical sites and monuments which attract millions of tourists from all over the world. In Cairo, you can visit the Egyptian Museum. The Pyramids of Giza are famous all over the world. Cairo and Alexandria are also full of Muslim and Coptic tourist sites.

As for natural attractions, Egypt has some of the most beautiful beaches in the world. You can enjoy your time on healthy beaches with great tourist facilities. The Egyptian deserts are also great places to explore.

You can find detailed information and guidebooks about tourist attractions in Egypt online. I have attached some nice photos of some tourist attractions.

I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon.
Best Wishes
Mohammed

PART 2

Follow your progress in writing skill

تابع مستواك فى إتقان مهارة الكتابة باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكترونى المستمر

UNIT 1

1. Write an essay of about (180) words on eco-tourism.

....

....

....

UNIT 2

2. Write an essay of about (180) words on a famous person.

....

....

....

UNIT 3

3. Write an essay of about (180) words on describing a character from a book, film or TV who is similar to you.

....

....

....

UNIT 4

4. Write an eassy of about (180) words on to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

....

....

....

UNIT 5

5. Write an essay of about (180) words on the internet, possible advantages disadvantages and how to protect yourself online.

....

....

....

UNIT 6

6. Write an essay of about (180) words on a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.

....

....

....

3 Translation الترجمة

السادة معلمي اللغة الإنجليزية، أبنائنا وبناتنا طلبة و طالبات المرحلة الثانوية :

نقدم لكم هذا الجهد المتواضع "El-Moasser Translation Guide" كإسهام بسيط منا للقضاء نهائيا على مشكلة الترجمة بالنسبة لأبنائنا في المرحلة الثانوية، وذلك باستخدام أسلوب السؤال و الإجابة الوافية السلسة البسيطة في عرض المادة العلمية الخاصة بكيفية الترجمة ، وقد تم تقسيم المادة العلمية في هذا الدليل إلى عدد من الحصص ، و في كل حصة نتناول جزئية محددة ثم نعقبها بتدريبات مُتعلقة بما تم عرضه في الحصة.

تنويه : كل مجموعة تدريبات يتبعها جدول مرتب أبجديا للمفردات الهامة للطالب، كما يوجد جدول لبعض التعبيرات الهامة في نهاية هذا الجزء.

Introduction Expressing the sense of (words or text) ترجمة المعنى

السؤال : هل المقصود بالترجمة ترجمة الكلمات الموجودة بالجملة حرفيًا ؟

طبعا لا ، فالترجمة تعني نقل المعنى من لغة إلى أخرى دون التقيد بالألفاظ ، لاحظ ترجمة الجملة التالية:

- Diamond cuts diamond

الماس يقطع الماس.

هذه ترجمة حرفية ولا تؤدي معنى المقولة الإنجليزية ، لكن إذا أردنا أن نترجم بشكل صحيح فنقول لا يفل الحديد إلا الحديد :

- It's raining cats and dogs.

إنها تمطر بغزارة.

ولكي تترجم بشكل صحيح عليك بمراعاة ما يلى :

(أ) اقرأ النص الذي تريد أن تترجمه بالكامل لكي تفهم الفكرة العامة له.

(ب) اقرأ النص من جديد قراءة جيدة لتعرف ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب وكيف كان إحساسه حين قال هذا الكلام، فمثلا كيف تترجم الجملة التالية ؟

- Ahmed is always listening to loud music.

أعتقد أنك ستترجمها كالتالى : «يستمع أحمد دائما إلى موسيقى صاخبة»

وتلك بالطبع ترجمة غير سليمة ، حيث أن استخدام "always" مع المضارع المستمر "is listening" يوحي بضيق وضجر المتحدث، لذلك فإنه من الدقة أن تترجم الجملة كما يلي: «يستمع أحمد دائما إلى تلك الموسيقى الصاخبة؟».

لاحظ أننا استخدمنا صيغة السؤال و علامة استفهام رغم أن الجملة الأصلية ليست كذلك ، فالأهم هو نقل المعنى بالإحساس الموجود في النص الأصلى.

(جـ) لا تترجم الكلمات كمعاني مستقلة ، لكن حسب استخدامها في السياق ، لاحظ كيف تترجم الجملة التالية:

- The teacher asks me to use my right hand to draw a right angle right now.

لاحظ تكرار كلمة "right" ثلاث مرات بثلاث معان مختلفة :

- right hand اليد اليمنى - right angle زاوية قائمة - right now الآن على الفور

وهكذا تكون ترجمة الجملة كالتالي: «يطلب مني المعلم أن أستخدم يدي اليمني لأرسم زاوية قائمة الآن على الفور».

PART 2

(د) اقرأ النص الذي قمت بترجمته ، هل فهمت نفس المعني الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المُترجم نفس الإحساس الذي يصل من النص الأصلي؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس المعني بنفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة.

Part I Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية

1 Starting the English Sentence كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية

السؤال : كيف أبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(أ) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفاعل:

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحرا، الغربية.

- Dr Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذى ينوب عن الفاعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالى لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(د) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالى :

يتكون الأمر المثبت في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

→ Inf. الفعل في المصدر + obj. مفعول + comp. تكملة

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" فى بداية جملة الأمر المثبت لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : دومًا ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفى (النهى) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

→ Don't + Inf. الفعل في المصدر + obj. مفعول + comp. تكملة

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلًا من "Don't" فى بداية جملة النهى لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تُصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالا بـ «هـل»

ابدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الزمن:

- Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had
- Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought / Need / Dare ....

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فاعل إذا كان السؤال مبنيا للمعلوم :

مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لتشارلز ديكنز؟ (لاحظ الفعل فى زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أتمارس الرياضة بشكل يومى؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يوميًا ؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل فى صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنيا للمجهول :

مثال : هل شُرِحَ لك هذا الدرس بالأمس؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ(أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد المنفي:

مثال : ألست تتبع نظاما غذائيا؟ / أليس من عاداتك اتباع نظامًا غذائيًا ؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بمشاهدة الأفلام؟ (عادات فى الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالا بأداة استفهام إبدأ بأحد أدوات الإستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة حسب الزمن:

What	ما / ماذا	Which	أى
Where	أين	When	متى
Why	لماذا	Who	من
Whose	لمن	How	كم / كيف

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن تفعله لتحمي البيئة من التلوث؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه الغش في الامتحانات؟

- How can we fight exam cheating?

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. تعمل اختى مضيفة طيران وترتدى زياً خاصاً بالشركة التى تعمل بها.

....

٢. تُستخدم الأقمار الصناعية في اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن و البترول.

....

٣. فى كل عام يأتى السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل فى الشتاء.

....

٤. تُبنى المدارس والجامعات في كل المحافظات لتوفر تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.

....

٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش معًا فى حب وسلام.

....

٦. ساعد والديك و اعمل بجد.

....

٧. لا تُكثر من الطعام و لا تنسي ممارسة الرياضة.

....

٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.

....

٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.

....

١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟

....

١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة في وقت فراغك؟

....

١٢. أتغسل أسنانك بالفرشاة مرتين يوميا ؟

....

١٣. كيف تمكّن قدماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟

....

١٤. لماذا تضيع وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟

....

١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعيا ؟

....

Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	يضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

2 Tenses of Sentences أزمنة الجمل

السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمني المضارع و الماضي ، و يتم التعبير عن المستقبل ب «سوف / سـ + الفعل المضارع» ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمنا ، فكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة؟

- تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة و معرفة استخدامات كل زمن و هذا متروك لدروس القواعد اللغوية ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التي قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة:

(أ) الجملة التي تدل علي حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يُوضع فعلها في صيغة المضارع البسيط (inf. / inf. + s, es, ies) :

مثال : المخ البشري يتحكم في كل شيء نقوم به.

- The human brain controls everything we do.

مثال : يتسلم الكُتّاب والعلماء جوائز قيّمه كل عام.

- Writers and scientists receive valuable prizes every year.

مثال : التعليم ليس غاية في حد ذاته، إنما وسيلة تؤدي إلى غاية.

- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التي تدل علي حدث مستمر في الوقت الحالي يُوضع فعلها في المضارع البسيط إلى مضارع مستمر (am / is / are + inf. + ing) :

مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهودا كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.

- Nowadays, the government is exerting great efforts to improve health and education.

(جـ) الجملة التي تدل علي خبرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير علي الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p.p.) بشرط عدم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتي الآن.

- Ahmed has won two gold medals so far.

- أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.

- Ahmed won two gold medals last year.

(د) عادات الماضى يتم التعبير عنها كالتالى :

- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never .... التصريف الثانى

مثال : كان جدي أحيانا يأخذنا لزيارة أقاربنا في الريف.

- My grandfather sometimes took us to visit our relatives in the countryside.

(هـ) عادات الماضى التى تتوقف فى الحاضر :

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing

مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية بدراجتي الصغيرة.

- I used to go to primary school on my small bike.

مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل.

- My grandmother was used to making bread at home.

(و) الجملة التي تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي(غالبا تحتوي عل كلمة «كان + فعل مضارع») تُترجم إلى ماضي مستمر (was / were + inf. + ing) :

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه.

- Ahmed was playing football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التى تدل علي حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي نستخدم ماضي تام (had + p.p.) :

مثال : انتهي المُعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطى لنا بعض التدريبات.

- The teacher had finished explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التى تدل علي المستقبل (سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل) تُترجم الي الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing) :

مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم.

- Huda is celebrating her fifth birthday next month.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

1. يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامه فى كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.

....

2. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب فى كثير من الأمراض.

....

3. لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا فى إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

....

٤. أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي هاما للحصول علي وظيفة.

....

٥. في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا علي قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.

....

٦. فى بعض المنازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية فى تسخين المياة.

....

٧. قد قام السد العالى بحماية مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياة لوقت الحاجة.

....

٨. لن تتحقق أهدافك دون أن تعمل بجد.

....

٩. كنت عائدا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمتي في الشارع.

....

١٠. اعتادت جدتي أن تحكي لنا قصصا شيقة.

....

١١. أحاول جاهدا أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة.

....

Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهدًا	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مسألة / مشكلة	try hard	يحاول جاهدًا
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	ينشيء	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

3 Translating Adjectives and Adverbs كيفية ترجمة الصفات والظروف

السؤال : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟

(أ) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف علي عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ:

- interesting stories قصص شيقة - a beautiful girl فتاة جميلة - a clever boy ولد ماهر

مثال : العمل الجاد والخُلق الحسن من سمات الإنسان الناجح.

- Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person.

(ب) علي غير العادة ، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف و ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكلمات التالية :

something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone / everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody - somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere

شيء ما مهم - something important

- someone evil شخص ما شرير -

مثال : وضع أحمد شيء ما صغير الحجم في حقيبته.

- Ahmed put something small in his bag.

(هـ) تأتي الصفة وبعدها موصوف أو بدون موصوف بعد أفعال مثل :

be - get يصبح - become يصبح - feel يشعر - taste له مذاق - smell له رائحة - sound يبدو

- seem يبدو - look يبدو

مثال : لقد أصبح عجوزا / لقد أصبح رجلا عجوزا.

- He became old. / He became an old man.

(د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط نبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة، لاحظ:

رجل ثرى مشهور.

- a famous rich man

سيدة شابة ذكية.

- an intelligent young lady

مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة تُساعد أطفال الشوارع المشردين.

- Different charitable organisations help homeless street children.

(هـ) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا في الغالب نكتب الصفة الأولى أولا ثم الثانية، لاحظ:

رجل ثرى ومشهور.

- a rich and famous man

سيدة شابة وذكية.

- a young and beautiful lady

مثال : العمل الجاد والمستمر هو الخطوة الأولى نحو تحقيق هدفك في الحياة.

- Hard and continuous work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life.

(و) إذا وضعنا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يتبع الصفة اسم فنقصد بذلك كل من يتصفون بهذه الصفة.

- a blind man رجل كفيف - blind men رجال مكفوفين - The blind المكفوفين

مثال : ينبغى على الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.

- Rich people should help poor people.

= The rich should help the poor.

السؤال : وماذا عن الظرف؟ كيف يُترجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه فى الجملة ؟

(أ) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) ويمكن أن يأتي بعضها في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never ....

مثال : تحاول أمي دائما الحفاظ على بيتنا نظيفًا و مُرتبًا.

- My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

- Always my mother tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

مثال : غالبا ما أكون في عملي في الموعد المحدد.

- I am usually at my work in time.

(ب) ظروف الكيفية التى تدل على كيفية أو طريقة حدوث الفعل تأتى بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

مثال : أسير إلى مدرستي مسرعا.

- I walk quickly to my school.

مثال : من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية.

- It is your right to express your opinion freely.

(جـ) ظروف الدرجة التالية تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة ، و توضع قبل الصفة مباشرة :

extremely للغاية / absolutely بشكل مُطلق / utterly كليا / completely تماما / really حقا / very / so جدا / quite إلى حد ما / rather إلى حد ما

مثال : إنني فى الحقيقة غاضب جدا من ذلك الجار السيء.

- I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.

(د) في اللغة الانجليزية يُفضل ان يكون ظرف الزمان أو المكان إما في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها وذلك حسب المعنى :

مثال : أسافر إلى أوروبا مرتين كل صيف.

- I travel to Europe twice every summer.
- Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من اجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.

....

٢. العلم الحديث والتخطيط الجيد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.

....

٣. هبة تذهب إلى الفراش مبكرًا.

....

٤. يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزه الكمبيوتر فى مدارسهم.

....

٥. يقدم العلماء شيء ما جديد كل يوم لخدمه البشرية.

....

٦. كان الجو حارا للغاية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.

....

٧. يجب أن تقود السيارة بحرص حتي تبقي بأمان.

....

٨. أحيانا أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

....

٩. المكفوفون يمكنهم التعلم و العمل.

....

١٠. الوجبات الصغيرة الخفيفة مفيدة للصحة.

....

١١. حصلت علي درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد و المستمر.

....

١٢. يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضبا بعد خسارة المباراة.

....

Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	الوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	البشرية	humanity	البشرية

4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (1)

سؤال : كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبنى للمجهول؟

(أ) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم كالتالى :

- **Subj. فاعل + consider** (حسب الزمن) **+ that +** جملة **....**
- **Subj. فاعل + regard** (حسب الزمن) **+ obj. مفعول + as + noun ....**

مثال : تعتبر الحكومة التعليم استثمارًا فى مستقبل مصر.

- The government considers that education is an investment in the future of the country.
- The government regards education as an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمجهول كالتالى :

- **Obj. مفعول + be** (حسب الزمن) **+ considered ....**
- **Subj. فاعل + be** (حسب الزمن) **+ regarded + as + noun ....**

مثال : يُعتبر التعليم استثمارًا فى مستقبل مصر.

- Education is considered an investment in the future of Egypt.
- Education is regarded as an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحيانًا يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم)، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟

هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هي الأفعال الأساسية للجملة، وفي هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلي :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدي معنى (تحاول)، فتترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- All nations try to solve the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم مُعلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدرستنا بشرح الدروس جيدًا.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معني فيتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، وتُترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- The teachers of English in our school explain lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التي تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم علي التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معني ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :

- The problems which face students are solved to help them learn well.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

(أ) هناك الجمل الاسمية التي ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

- Hard work is your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة لـ (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن):

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

- Healthy food and sport are the keys to good health and happiness.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يعتبر المصريون نهر النيل مصدر الحياة لهم.

....

٢. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام المروري.

....

٣. يُعد السد العالي أفضل إنجاز للرئيس عبد الناصر.

....

٤. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

....

٥. يعتبر أبي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيعة للوقت.

....

. تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين.

....

. التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقى لمستقبل أفضل.

....

. يُعتبر الدكتور الباز رمز من رموز العلم في كل أنحاء العالم.

....

. إن الإنترنت أضخم مكتبة في التاريخ.

....

. يقوم أبي بزيارة جدى في الريف كل شهر.

....

. إن زراعة الصحراء شيء ضرورى لتوفير الغذاء.

....

. تقوم الحواس بإرسال رسائل إلى المخ.

....

Related Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	source	مصدر
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	symbol	رمز
president	الرئيس	traffic jam	الازدحام المرورى

5 Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (٢)

سؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عندى / عنده / عندنا / لها / لهم ... إلخ) وليس بها فعل؟

نترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالى مع مراعاة زمن الجملة :

I have	عندى - لدى - لى - أملك	You have	عندكم - لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - لديه - له - يملك	We have	عندنا - لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - لها - تملك	They have	عندهم - لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لديه - لديها - له - لها	One has	للمرء - لدى المرء - يمتلك المرء
You have	عندك - لديك - لك - تملك		

مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات فى وقت فراغنا.

- We have a lot of interests in our free time.

مثال : كان لأبى دور كبير فى نجاحى.

- My father had a great role in my success.

مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير فى تقدم الوطن.

- Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (عليه / عليها / عليك / لابد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي ....إلخ) ؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب القاعدة التالية :

- Subj. فاعل + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf ....

مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.

- We should keep the environment clean.

مثال : لابد أن تُطيع والديك و تحترم مُعلميك.

- You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.

مثال : كان عليّ أن أراجع دروسي جيدا لأجتاز الإمتحان.

- I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسي / لعل / ليت) ؟

(أ) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.
- I hope + subj. + will + inf.
- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتني أقدر أن أساعدك.

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.
- I hope I will be able to help you.
- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضي فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...
- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتني ذاكرت جيدا العام الماضي.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I regret not studying hard last year.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(أ) نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

- standard of living	- living standard	مستوى المعيشة
- pollution of the air	- air pollution	تلوث الهواء
- the rate of birth	- birth rate	معدل المواليد

PART 2

تستخدم ('s) الملكية غالبًا عندما يكون المضاف إليه عاقل أو اسم حيوان :

- My mother's house. ('s) ملكية مفرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

1. يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربيه أطفالنا.

....

2. تعمل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتنميه مواهبهم.

....

3. يجب أن ننشيء الأطفال علي حب الوطن و احترام الوالدين.

....

4. علينا ان نشارك بإيجابية في تقدم وطننا.

....

5. علينا أن نداوم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.

....

6. يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.

....

7. من الضروري أن ننمي الإهتمام بالعلم لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.

....

8. للعلماء دور هام في إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.

....

9. ليتني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.

....

10. للتليفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

....

Related Vocabulary

bringing up	تربية	positively	بإيجابية
conditions	ظروف	progress	تقدم
culture	ثقافة	share	شارك
effective	مؤثر	society	مجتمع
generation	جيل	solutions	حلول
interest	اهتمام	talents	مواهب

6 Special Cases (3) حالات خاصة (٣)

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

(أ) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام فى حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضى :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة علي الماضي :

مثال : لقد إجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.

- My brother passed the driving test last week.

(جـ) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

مثال : لقد إجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.

- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف ونستخدم بدلًا منها زمن الماضى البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

(أ) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل ماضي) مثل (لقد) :

مثال : قد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة مؤخرا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :

مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غدا.

- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التى تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية غالبا ما تبدأ بـ (noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة؟

(أ) الجملة التى تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :

مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ علي البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.

- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.

PART 2

٤) كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم :

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولا لمشكلاتنا الإقتصادية و الإجتماعية.

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كره القدم بمباراة هامة.

....

٢. لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحية والطقس الرائع.

....

٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لا يمكن أن يحدث إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

....

٤. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياه أطول.

....

٥. إن هوايتى المفضلة هى قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس.

....

٦. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء فى إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

....

٧. إن إهدار مياة النيل جريمة في حق الوطن.

....

٨. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غني عنها للحصول علي وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي.

....

٩. إن البحث العلمى وسيلة هامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أى أمة.

....

١٠. إن زراعه الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

....

١١. إن زيادة الانتاج واجب وطنى لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان.

....

١٢. لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

....

١٣. إن سيناء جزء هام من أرض مصر يجب الاهتمام بتنميتها ورعاية أهلها.

....

Related Vocabulary

against	في حق / ضد	nation	أمة
co-operation	تعاون	national	وطنى / قومى
crime	جريمة	production	إنتاج
duty	واجب	research	بحث
fictional	خيالى	resources	موارد
grant (ed)	يهب	skills	مهارات
increasing	زيادة	wasting	إهدار
means	وسيلة		

7 Special Cases (4) حالات خاصة (٤)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التى تبدأ بـ (يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك .... الخ) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been / will be/ can be / must be .... + noun اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض.

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة.

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بدائل للبترول في المستقبل.

- There will be replacements for oil in the future.

مثال : لابد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء.

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التى بها (كلما ... كلما) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- The + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb......+ the + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb .....

مثال : كلما تمرنت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة.

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما تكون أكثر طولا كلما تستطيع أن تجري أسرع.

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل بفعل ؟

(أ) ضمير الفاعل المتصل بفعل يترجم ضمير فاعل (I - he - she - it - you - we - they). لاحظ :

- I wrote كَتَبْتُ   - She wrote كَتَبَتْ   - We wrote كتبنا

مثال : زرت جدتى مع أخى واشترينا لها هدية.

- I and my brother visited my grandmother and bought her a present.

ب) ضمير المفعول المتصل بفعل أو حرف جر يُترجم ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them):

مثال : سمعته يقول بعض المعلومات الهامة فاستمعت إليه بحرص.

- I heard him say something important, so I listened to him carefully.

سؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل باسم ؟

الضمير المتصل بالاسم يُترجم إلى صفة ملكية (my - his - her - its - our - your - their - 's) لاحظ :

كتابى my book -　　　كتابها her book -　　　كتابنا our book -

مثال : يبذل جميع المواطنين ما بوسعهم من أجل وطنهم.

- All citizens do their best for their home.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. توجد بعض قواعد النظافة الشخصية التى يجب اتباعها لتجنب الأمراض.

....

٢. علمتنى الحياة ألا أحزن على ما ضاع منى لأنه ليس لى.

....

٣. كلما ساعدت الناس وقت الحاجة كلما شعرت بالسعادة.

....

٤. كان هناك حادثًا مروعًا على الطريق الصحراوى إلى أسوان.

....

٥. تحتاج الدولة جهودنا نحن الشباب لتحقيق التقدم.

....

٦. أعتقد أن الناس سوف تستمر فى قراءة الكتب من أجل المتعة.

....

٧. كلما زاد العمل والإنتاج كلما ارتفع مستوى المعيشة.

....

٨. لا يوجد دين يدعو إلى القتل وترويع الناس.

....

٩. ندين بالكثير للعلماء لما قدموه لنا من إنجازات.

....

١٠. أفكر جديًا فى دراسة الطب فى الجامعة.

....

١١. تعطينا الشمس الحرارة والضوء، وهى مصدر للطاقة النظيفة.

....

١٢. نعيش الأن عصر الاتصالات الذى جعل العالم عالمًا مفتوحًا.

....

Related Vocabulary

achievements	إنجازات	in need	وقت الحاجة
age	عصر	owe	يدين
for fun	من أجل المتعة	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة

8 Special Cases (5) حالات خاصة (٥)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التى تبدأ بـ (من + صفة) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- It is + adj. صفة + (for + فاعل أو ضمير مفعول) + to + inf. ....

مثال : من الجيد أن تقضي وقت فراغك بشكل مفيد.

- It is good (for you) to spend your free time in a useful way.

مثال : من الضروري أن يشارك الطلاب في الأنشطة المدرسية.

- It is necessary for students to take part in school activities.

السؤال : كيف أترجم المفعول المُطْلَق إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- بصفة عامة يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.

مثال : تتأثر الصحة تأثرا كبيرا بالتدخين.

- Health is greatly affected by smoking.

السؤال : هناك أيضًا الأعداد ، هل تُترجم أرقامًا حسابية أم حروفًا ؟

(أ) الاعداد من (1 - 9) تكتب هجائياً دائما ، أما إذا زاد عن ذلك فيكتب أرقامًا حسابية :

مثال : أرسلت دعوات الحفل لخمسين صديقًا لكن لم يحضره منهم إلا ثمانية.

- I sent the invitations of the party to 50 friends, but only eight of them attended it.

(ب) عندما تبدأ الجملة الانجليزية بذكر العدد فانه يكتب هجائيًا دائمًا :

مثال : وصل ثلاثون مسافرا إلى المحطة بعد أن غادر القطار.

- Thirty passengers arrived at the station after the train had left.

السؤال : وماذا عن حروف الجر ؟

- لحروف الجر استخدامات يعرفها الطالب بالتدريج من خلال دراسته للّغة ، و المهم هنا أن هناك بعض الأفعال التى لا تأخذ حرف جر مثل :

admire	يعجب بـ	include	يشتمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق بـ
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين بـ

celebrate	يحتفل بـ	pass	ينجح / يجتاز / يمر على
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognise	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ

- Smoking affects health badly.   مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. من الضرورى أن نهتم أكثر بالتعليم والصحة.

....

٢. يجب أن تهتم الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالمشرعات فى صعيد مصر.

....

٣. من الطبيعى أن يكون لمصر جيش قوى يحمى حدودها وشرطة قوية تحمى أمنها الداخلى.

....

٤. من المتوقع أن تكون الحروب القادمة بين الدول هى حروب للسيطرة على مصادر المياه.

....

٥. تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

....

٦. تتأثر السياحة تأثرًا كبيرًا بالأحداث الجارية فى العالم.

....

٧. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحذيرًا شديدًا من التدخين.

....

٨. تتطلع مصر تطلعًا كبيرًا لتحسين مستوى معيشة مواطنيها.

....

٩. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.

....

١٠. تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأنهم قادة المستقبل.

....

١١. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

....

Related Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	pay attention	تولى اهتمامًا
deep thought	تفكير عميق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
It is wise	من الحكمة		

Part II Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التى قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلى :

السؤال : ما الذى يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

(أ) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزى لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للموضوع.

(ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية للوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.

(جـ) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.

(د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربى سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلًا أساسيًا ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه فى الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

(أ) المعنى الأساسى للفعل (be) فى اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. - My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتى صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيدًا عن الوطن.

(ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل أخر فى اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g. - The wedding was last week. — تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضى.

- A knife is for cutting food. — تستخدم السكين لتقطيع الطعام.

(جـ) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصى مثل (هو / هى / هما / هم / هنَّ) فى اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g. - My mother is everything to me. — إن أمي هى كل شيء بالنسبة لى.

- Our children are the joy of our life. — أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

(د) يمكن إسقاط الفعل (be) نهائيًا من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g. - Ahmed is a hard-working student. — أحمد طالب جاد فى العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city. — يقع منزلى فى جزء هادئ من المدينة.

السؤال : قالوا لى أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعانى، فكيف أترجمه إلى العربية ؟

هذا كلام صحيح، فهذا الفعل يستخدم بمعانى كثيرة منها :

(أ) المعنى الأصلى للفعل (have) هو (يمتلك / عنده / لديه) حسب الزمن :

- I have a house with a small garden. - لدى / عندى / أمتلك منزلًا ذو حديقة صغيرة.

(ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يتناول طعامًا أو شرابًا) :

- I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday.

- تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز فى الغداء أمس.

(جـ) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يُقيم / يعقد / يَحضر) :

- I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success.

- سأقيم حفلًا كبيرًا بمناسبة نجاح ابنتى.

(د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعانى / لديه معاناه) :

- She had a bad headache after the party.

- لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد الحفل.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة فى الترجمة ؟

نعم بالفعل، ولكى تترجم بشكل سليم لابد أن تتذكر دائمًا أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التى تأتى بعده مباشرة:

- Only my mother helped me with my homework.

- أمى فقط هى من ساعدنى فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother only helped me with my homework.

- لم تقم أمى إلا بمساعدتى فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother helped only me with my homework.

- ساعدتنى أمى أنا فقط فى واجبى المنزلى.

- My mother helped me with only my homework.

- ساعدتنى أمى فى واجبى المنزلى فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية مبنيًا للمجهول ؟

(أ) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنجليزية المبنية للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم عند الترجمة للعربية طالما كان الفاعل معروفًا :

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.

- لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.

(ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلى مثل :

e.g. - The task was carried out on time. - تم تنفيذ المهمة فى الوقت المحدد.

Now, test yourself

Translate into Arabic :

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Be free and respect others' freedom.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour.
6. Children learn good habits by imitating of their elders.
7. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.
8. Currently, there're major powers trying to dominate the whole world through technology.
9. Don't cry over spilt milk.
10. Eat less, exercise more, and fill your eyes with sleep.
11. Egypt is one of the earliest cradles of human civilisation.
12. Everyone has the right to express their opinion freely and take part in the social life.
13. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2050.
14. Good citizens are ready to sacrifice their lives when their country is in danger.
15. Great efforts have been made for the equality between men and women.
16. Growing older is a natural process that we cannot stop.
17. Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood.
18. Has technology made the world a better place to live in?
19. If an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it.
20. If you risk nothing, then you risk everything.
21. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence.
22. In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up.
23. In the third world countries, the number of smokers is increasing, mainly due to ignorance.
24. Inside their homes, children get their first lessons in behaving towards others.

PART 2

El Moasser's Glossary for Translation Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالترجمة.

Economy and work الاقتصاد والعمل

English	Arabic
ambitions	تطلعات/ طموحات
bargains	صفقات
budget	ميزانية
capital	رأس المال
capitalism	رأسمالية
commerce	تجارة
commercial	تجارى
compete	ينافس
congestion	التكدس / الزحام
consume	يستهلك
consumer	مستهلك
consumption	استهلاك
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة
creation	خَلْق / إيجاد
crime	الجريمة
current stage	المرحلة الراهنة
dealer	وكيل
development	تنمية / تطوير
discount	تخفيض/ خصم
dissatisfaction	عدم إشباع
due care	الاهتمام اللازم
economic	اقتصادى
economic crisis	الأزمة الاقتصادية
economical	موفر / اقتصادى
economics	علم الاقتصاد
economist	خبير اقتصادي
enterprise	مشروع / منشأة
expenses	نفقات
facing	مجابهه / مواجهة
famine	مجاعة
finance	مال / يموِّل
financial	مالى
food shortage	نقص الطعام

English	Arabic
low income	دخل منخفض
manufacture	يُصنِّع
manufacturer	مُصنِّع
marketing	تسويق
monopolist	محتكر
monopoly	احتكار
national duty	واجب وطني
national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
national income	الدخل القومى
nationalization	تأميم
nationalize	يؤمم
necessitate	يستلزم
overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني
price control	ضبط الأسعار
priorities	أولويات
products	منتجات
profits	أرباح
promote	يُرقي / يُروِّج
prosperity	ازدهار
rate	مُعدَّل
rationalise	يضبط / يُرَشِّد
rationalization	ترشيد
reclaim	يستصلح
reclamation	استصلاح
recycling	إعادة تصنيع
reduction	تخفيض
reform	إصلاح
renaissance	نهضة
resources	موارد
revenue	عائد
risky	خطير
sales / discounts	مبيعات / تخفيضات
shares	أسهم
short-term	قصير الأجل
slogan	شعار
slums / squatters	العشوائيات

foreign aids	معونات خارجية	long-term	طويل الأجل
funds	مدخرات	spread	انتشار / ينتشر
goods/commodities	السلع / البضائع	standard of living	مستوي المعيشة
grant(ed)	يهب / يمنح	statistics	إحصائيات
greed	جشع / طمع	stock market	بورصة
growth	نمو	strict measures	معايير صارمة
handmade	صناعة يدوية	strict procedures	إجراءات صارمة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	subsidy	الدعم
high income	دخل مرتفع	tax	ضريبة
humour	الفكاهة / المرح	trade	يتاجر/ تجارة
in turn	بدوره	trader	تاجر
inflation	التضخم	unemployment	البطالة
inhabitants	سكان	unrest	اضطراب
inject	يضخ	vast	كبير / شامل
insurance	تأمين	via	من خلال / عَبْر
investment	استثمار	violence	العنف
investor	مستثمر	welfare	رخاء / رفاهية
job opportunities	فرص عمل	youth	الشباب
labour force	القوى العاملة		

The Nile and saving water النيل وتوفير المياه

a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت	improve relationships	تحسن العلاقات
artery of life	شريان الحياة	International Treaty	معاهدة دولية
civilisation	الحضارة	lack of water	نقص المياه
constructive dialogue	الحوار البناء	majority	معظم / أغلبية
cradle	مهد	must	ضرورة
dam	سد	national security	الأمن القومي
date back to	يعود تاريخه إلي	Nile Basin	حوض النيل
demand for	الطلب علي	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
downstream countries	دول المصب	shortage	نقص
drought	جفاف/قحط	supplies	موارد
Egypt's share	حصة مصر	main source	المصدر الرئيسى
emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ	thirst	الظمأ
essential	ضروري	tributaries	روافد
generate	يُوَلِّد	upstream countries	دول المنبع
company	صُحْبة	water security	الأمن المائى

English	Arabic
consequently	لذلك
contributions	إسهامات
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
creativity	الأبداع
creatures	مخلوقات
deforestation	إزالة الغابات
destructive	مدَمِّر
developed countries	دول متقدمة
developing countries	دول نامية
deviation	إنحراف
diabetes	مرض السكر
diagnose	يُشَخِّص
diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض
disaster	كارثة
disastrous	مدمر / كارثي
distance learning	تعلُّم عن بُعد
donation	تبرع
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات
eagle	صقر
ecology	علم البيئة
Egyptology	علم المصريات
end / target / goal	غاية / هدف
endanger	يعرِّض لخطر
epidemic	وباء
erosion	تآكل / تعرية
evergreen	دائم الخضرة
evils	شرور
existence	وجود
extinction	إندثار / إنقراض
females	إناث
fever	حمى
noncommunicable	غير ساري
noninfectious	غير معدي
nuclear	نووي
nuclear waste	النفايات النووية
observatory	مرصد
owe	يدين
pathology	علم امراض الدم
pharmaceutical	خاص بالصيدلة
philosophy	الفلسفة
photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئى
physical illness	مرض بدني
physiology	علم وظائف الأعضاء
physiotherapy	العلاج الطبيعي
pillars	ركائز
positive	بنَّاء / إيجابي
potentials	قدرات
power plant	محطة توليد طاقة
preservation	صيانة
prevention	وقاية
properly	بشكل صحيح
proportional to	متناسب مع
psychiatrist	طبيب نفسى
psychologist	عالم نفسى
psychology	علم النفس
public opinion	الرأي العام
radiation	إشعاع
rare species	فصيلة نادرة
reactor	مفاعل
reform	إصلاح
regional	إقليمي
remarkable progress	تقدم ملحوظ
remedy	علاج

field	مجال
fragile	هش / ضعيف
frustration	إحباط
generation	جيل / توليد (طاقة)
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية
global warming	الإحتباس الحراري
harness	يُسَخِّر
herbal medicines	الأدوية العشبية
heritage	تراث
hibernation	بيات شتوى
humidity	رطوبة
hurricane	إعصار
ideal solution	حل مثالى
immune system	جهاز المناعة
impact	أثر
incurable	لا علاج له
indigestion	عسر الهضم
individual	الفرد
infection	عدوى
infectious	معدى
injection	حقن
innovation	الإبتكار
insomnia	أرق
instinct	غريزة / فطرة
intensive care	عناية مركزة
issue	قضية
kidneys	كليتين
knowledge	المعرفة
limit	يحُد من / يقلل
lungs	رئتين

respiratory system	جهاز تنفسى
restoration	ترميم
scales	قشور / موازين
scientific research	البحث العلمى
seabed	قاع البحر
self	النفس / الذات
set up	ينشئ
sociology	علم الاجتماع
sooner or later	عاجلا أم اجلا
sterilization	تعقيم
stubborn	عنيد
support	يدعم / دعم
surgery	جراحة
symptoms	أعراض
tame	أليف
techniques	تقنيات
thanks to	بفضل
therapist	معالج
therapy	علاج
thinkers	مفكرين
tide	المد والجذر
tornado	إعصار
transfusion	نقل دم
tropical	إستوائى
tumor	ورم
vaccine	مصل /لقاح
vegetarian	إنسان نباتى
vehicle	مركبة
waterfalls	شلالات
wheel of production	عجلة الإنتاج
zoology	علم الحيوان

Literature & Different Arts الأدب والفنون المختلفة

ancestors	أسلاف/ أجداد	kindergarten (KG)	حضانة
aware	واع	loyalty	ولاء
awesome	مدهش/ رهيب	manners	سلوكيات
barriers	حواجز	manuscripts	مخطوطات
borders	حدود	masterpieces	روائع
brain drain	هجرة المتفوقين	merely	فقط
bringing up	تنشئة	motives	دوافع
bullying	بلطجه	nobility	نبل
censorship	رقابة	non-verbal	غير لفظى
coherence	ترابط / تناغم	nutrition	تغذية
commemorate	يحيى ذكرى	objective	موضوعى
cope with	يجارى / يساير	obstacle	عقبة
core	لب / جوهر	peer	نظير / ند
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	personal interests	مصالح شخصية
craftsmen	أصحاب الحرف	personify	يُجسِّد
creative	مبدع	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
cultural	ثقافى	potentials	قدرات
curriculum	مناهج	pre-historic	يخص ما قبل التاريخ
descendants	ذرية / نسل	principles	مبادىء
deterioration	تخلف / تدهور	procedures	إجراءات
edition	نسخة/ طبعة	producer	مُنتج
elegance	اناقة	professional	مهني
enrich	يُثري	public library	مكتبة عامة
exceed	يتجاوز	public opinion	الرأي العام
faithfulness	إخلاص	reference	مرجع
fashion designer	مصمم أزياء	science fiction	خيال علمي
fashion houses	بيوت الموضة	spiritual	روحي
fashion show	عرض ازياء	sponsor	راعى
fine arts	فنون جميلة	sponsorship	رعاية
for entertainment	من أجل المتعة	storyteller	قصاص
		strategy	خطة

fortification	تحصين	sufficiency	إكتفاء
fortress	حِصن	suspense	تشويق
glory	مجد	talented	موهوب
graphics	فن الجرافيك	tastes	أذواق
heritage	تراث	timid	متحفظ / جبان
hero	بطل	traditions	تقاليد
heroine	بطلة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
honest	صادق	unique	فريد
imagination	خيال	values	قيم
immigrants	مهاجرين	verbal	لفظى
immortal	خالد	vision	رؤية
incidents	أحداث	warmth	دفء
inspiration	الهام	weave	ينسج
invaders	غزاة	willingness	إستعداد
justice	العدالة	wonders	عجائب

Politics & Society السياسة والمجتمع

activist	ناشط	military	حربى / عسكرى
administrative capital	العاصمة الإدارية	military secrets	اسرار عسكرية
ambassador	سفير	miracles	المعجزات
armed forces	قوات مسلحة	Muslims	المسلمين
assassinate	يغتال	nation	أمة
assassination	إغتيال	national security	الامن القومي
belonging	الإنتماء	national unity	وحدة وطنية
betray home	يخون الوطن	nationalism	القومية
bomb	قنبلة/ يفجر قنبلة	negotiate	يفاوض
carry out	يُنَفِّذ	negotiation	التفاوض
citizen	مواطن	obstacles	عقبات
citizenship	المواطنة	parliament	برلمان
civilian	مدني	partner	شريك
civilized	متحضر	party	حزب
commitment to	الإلتزام ب	peace	السلام
conflict	صراع		

congested	متكدس
conspiracy	مؤامرة
constitution	دستور
contribute to	يساهم في
cooperation	التعاون
Copts	الأقباط
crossroad	مُلتقي
democracy	ديموقراطية
democratic	ديموقراطي
devote	يُكَرّس
dictatorship	ديكتاتورية
difficulty	صعوبة- مأزق
diplomacy	دبلوماسية
domination	هيمنة / سيطرة
efforts	جهود
eliminate	يقضي علي
emigration	الهجرة
equality	مساواة
exert	يبذل
extremism	تطرف
extremist	متطرف
fatal	قاتل / خطير
flourish	يزدهر
formal request	طلب رسمى
freedom	حرية
government bodies	المؤسسات الحكومية
governorate	محافظة
heavenly religions	الديانات السماوية
housing	الإسكان
human rights	حقوق الإنسان
human values	القيم الإنسانية
ignorance	الجهل
illegal	غير شرعي
peace makers	صناع السلام
policy	سياسة
politician	سياسى (شخص)
politics	علم السياسة
pray	يدعو / يصلي
president	رئيس
prevail	يسود/ ينتشر
prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
principles	المبادئ
progress	التقدم
protective	واقي
rebel	يتمرد
rebellion	تمرد / متمرد
refugee	لاجيء
regime	نظام حكم
rejecting	رفض - نبذ
require	يتطلب
resistance	مقاومة
restrictions	القيود - الضوابط
revolutions	الثورات
rights	حقوق
sacrifice	يضحي - تضحية
secret agent	عميل سرى
security forces	اجهزة الامن
service	خدمة
shield	درع
spy	جاسوس
spying	تخابر
stability	استقرار
strictness	الحزم
subjects	رعايا
tendency	تَوَجُّه

illiteracy	الأمية	terrorism	الإرهاب
impose	يفرض	terrorist	إرهابي
independence	إستقلال	the state	الدولة
injustice	الظلم	tolerance	التسامح
intelligence	المخابرات	transitional stage	مرحلة إنتقالية
leak secrets	يسرب أسرار	treason	خيانة عظمى
legal	شرعي / قانوني	treaty	معاهدة
lethal	قاتل	truce	هدنة
liberation	تحرير	tyranny	طغيان
loyalty	انتماء	victim	ضحية
major	كبير - رئيسي	violate	ينتهك
martyr	شهيد	violation	انتهاك
		weapons	أسلحة

Various Issues قضايا متنوعة

accommodation	إقامة	intimacy	أُلفة – مودة
acquire	يكتسب	journalism	صحافة
amateur	هاو	local tourism	سياحة داخلية
amuse	يمتع / يسلى	magical	ساحر - خلّاب
ancient / long-standing	عريق	major powers	قوي عظمي
annually	سنوياً	manufacturer	صانع
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوي	mass tourism	سياحة جماعية
attractions	أماكن جذب	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
audience	جمهور		
ban	يحظر	monuments	أثار
bear	يحمل	motivate	يحث / يدفع
broaden	يُوَسِّع	mountaineers	متسلقو الجبال
champion	بطل رياضى	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
championship	بطولة رياضية	news agency	وكالة انباء
coach/ trainer	مدرب	Olympic games	الالعاب الاوليمبية
competition	منافسة	outlet	مُتَنَفَّس - مخرج
competitors	منافسين	pay	راتب / أجر
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	pharaohs	فراعنة
critical	نقدي / حرج	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية
criticism	نقد	professional	محترف
criticize	ينقد	prohibition	حظر – منع

cultural tourism	سياحة ثقافية
current events	الأحداث الجارية
decisive	حازم / حاسم
deprive	يَحْرِم
deviation	الإنْحراف
dignity	كرامة
disasters	كوارث
disputes	النزاعات
dominance	هيمنة / سيطرة
dominate	يهيمن / يسيطر علي
earner	مصدر دخل
ecotourism	سياحة صديقة للبيئة
enrich	يُثري
equality	المساواة
erosion	التعرية
fair play	اللعب النظيف
farming	الزراعة
finals	نهائيات
flourish	يزدهر
flow of traffic	انسياب المرور
free press	صحافة حرة
migration	هجرة
friendship	الصداقة
gallantry	الشهامة
generous	كريم
glory	المجد
grateful	شاكر / ممتن
greed	جشع / طمع
hard currency	عملة صعبة
homesickness	حنين للوطن
honour	شرف / يكرم
hospitality	كرم الضيافة
humour	فكاهة
hurricanes	أعاصير
ideal	مثالى
ignorance	الجهل
impression	إنطِباع
instruct	يُعَلِّم
interpret	يترجم فوري
interpreter	مترجم فوري

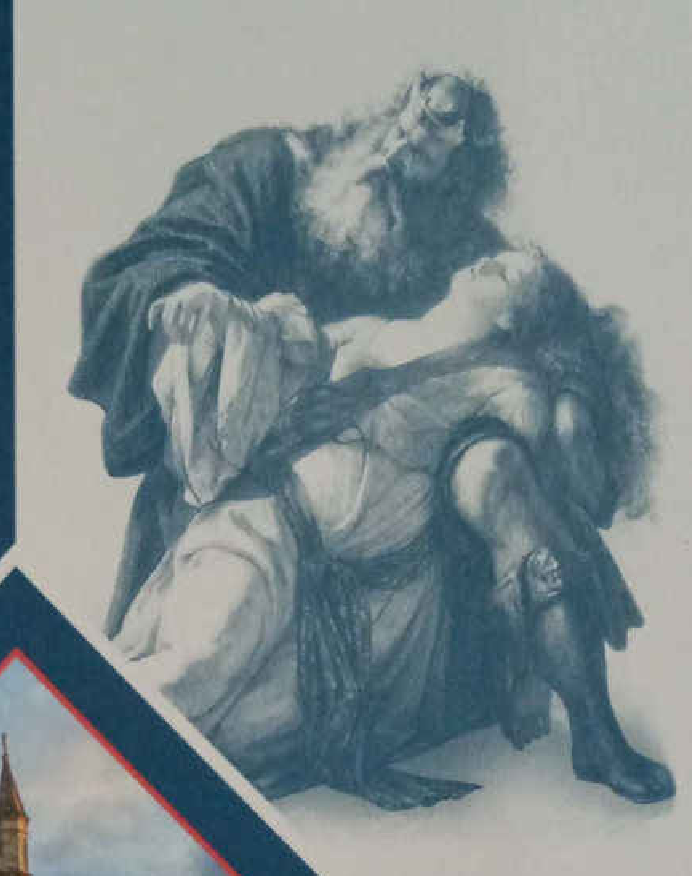
propaganda	الدعاية
public relations	علاقات عامة
public transport	المواصلات العامة
purity	نقاء
rapprochement	التقارب
rare	نادر
recreational tourism	سياحة ترفيهية
reinforce	يعزز - يدعم
relationship	العلاقة
resort	منتجع
rights	الحقوق
risk	خطر
rumour	إشاعة
satisfy	يُرضي / يُشْبِع
security	أمن
seek	يسعي / يرغب في
self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
self-dependence	الإعتماد علي النفس
selfishness	الأنانية
set a record	يسجل رقما قياسيا
set an example	يعطي قدوة
settlement	تسوية / حل
sightseeing	زيارة المعالم
silver	الفضة / فضي
source	مصدر
stamina	قوة الاحتمال
stream	التيار
surroundings	الأشياء المحيطة
take drugs	يتعاطى المخدرات
teamwork	العمل الجماعي
therapeutic tourism	سياحة علاجية
tourist site	موقع سياحي
tournament	دورة
traffic regulations	قواعد المرور
transition	تَحَوُّل
travel agency	وكالة سفريات
unite peoples	توحد الشعوب
unselfishness	الإيثار
vacations	عطلات/ اجازات
victory	نصر
virtues	الفضائل

New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

Interactive Notebook

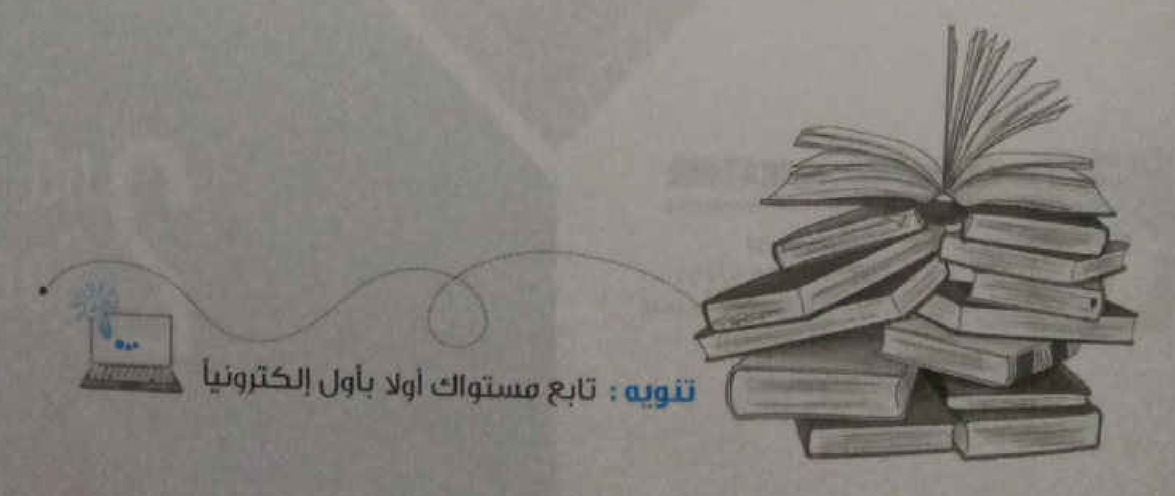
الصف الثانى الثانوى
الفصل الدراسى الأول





2nd Sec.
2021
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS



تنويه : تابع مستواك أولا بأول إلكترونيا

PART 1

Student's Follow-up

المتابعة المستمرة للطالب

1- Follow your progress in vocabulary

١. تابع مستواك فى إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكترونى المستمر

2- Homework

٢. واجب منزلى

3- Al-Azhar Exercises & Islamic selections

٣. تدريبات لطلبة الأزهر الشريف

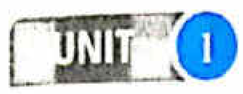
تنويه

تابع مستواك أولا بأول إلكترونياً



Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر





باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

....	إرشاد	viral	....
....	أُسْلُوب / تِقْنِيَّة	sick	....
....	التتويج الرياضي	severity	....
....	تشغيل	severely	....
....	التنفس	serious	....
....	تنفيذي	resilience	....
....	الجهاز المناعي	reaction	....
....	خلية	place	....
....	الدعم - يدعم	pioneer	....
....	سماح - علاوة	persuasive	....
....	شديد - حادّ	persuading	....
....	الصدر	persuade	....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

1. .... : when an illness or injury that is very serious
2. .... : very small living thing that causes disease
3. .... : to do something because something else has been done
4. .... : to do an action
5. .... : the smallest separate part of a plant or animal
6. .... : help someone or something to improve يتحسن or get better
7. .... : a way that your body protects you from disease
8. .... : a way of doing something with a skill
9. .... : a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
10. .... : a disease caused by a virus or bacteria

2 Homework

Part I Exercises on Vocabulary مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Taking protective measures will help reduce the ....
   a. technique b. immune system c. infection d. cell
2. A / An .... can make lots of people very ill.
   a. organ b. virus c. muscle d. brain
3. She has cut her finger and now it is .... She tries to stop it by covering the cut.
   a. infecting b. reacting c. boosting d. bleeding
4. The skin is the body's largest ....
   a. organ b. virus c. muscle d. brain
5. The advertisement will really .... the number of toys the shops sell.
   a. infect b. react c. boost d. bleed
6. You can see a/an .... of an onion using a simple microscope.
   a. technique b. immune system c. chest d. cell
7. A lot of people have been .... with COVID – 19.
   a. infected b. reacted c. boosted d. bled
8. A good diet can help to support the ....
   a. technique b. immune system c. chest d. cell
9. We hope the patient will .... to the new medicine.
   a. infect b. react c. boost d. bleed
10. Don't repeat yourself. Try using a new .... to solve the problem.
    a. technique b. membrane c. organ d. cell

Part II Exercises on Structures مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The heart .... pump a lot of blood through your body.
   a. has to b. need to c. doesn't have to d. mustn't
2. You .... eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them.
   a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to
3. Wrap the bandage around the injured person's arm. You .... make it very tight, but make sure it can't come off.
   a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. a & c

4. You .... pay to go in the museum. It is free to enter.

a. mustn't   b. don't have to   c. needn't   d. b & c

5. If anything is in the injured person's arm, you .... pull it out because it could hurt them more.

a. have to   b. don't have to   c. must   d. mustn't

6. Leila .... work hard if she wants to pass her exams.

a. must   b. has to   c. had to   d. needn't have

7. You .... take a bandage or cloth and press it down on the area which is bleeding.

a. have to   b. don't have to   c. must   d. a & c

8. You .... forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold!

a. must   b. mustn't   c. needn't   d. b & c

9. You .... put on gloves before helping someone who's bleeding.

a. have to   b. don't have to   c. must   d. mustn't

10. You .... buy a ticket before you get on the train.

a. should   b. shouldn't   c. have to   d. don't have to

Part III Writing Skill

Write an essay of about 180 words on :

"The immune system"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

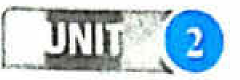
....

....

....

....

....



 باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

....	عيدان الأكل	questionnaire	....
....	فضولي	prepared	....
....	كمية	preparation	....
....	متحيّر	personality	....
....	المحّار	past	....
....	محمّر - مقلي	optional	....
....	معتقدات	occasionally	....
....	مُعقّد	occasional	....
....	مُناسَبة هامة - حدث	light	....
....	مُناسَبة - يُسبب	festival	....
....	يأكل خارج المنزل	extract	....
....	يحتفل به	difficulty	....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

1. .... : a choice you can make in a particular situation
2. .... : a time when something special happens
3. .... : belonging or relating to one person, rather than to other people or to people in general
4. .... : do something fun to show that an event is special
5. .... : following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time
6. .... : get something ready for use
7. .... : give someone food or drinks as part of a meal
8. .... : have a meal outside your home
9. .... : how much of something there is
10. .... : meet people and spend time with them
11. .... : not difficult or complicated to do or understand

2 Homework

Part I Exercises on Vocabulary مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. A person who is obese has to reduce the .... of food they eat.
 a. occasion b. amount c. chopsticks d. extract
2. Talk to little children using a .... language they can understand.
 a. simple b. curious c. personal d. complicated
3. The Aymans .... his promotion in a five-star hotel.
 a. served b. ate out c. celebrated d. prepared
4. Celebrating Sham El-Nessim outdoors is a / an .... I will never miss.
 a. occasion b. amount c. chopsticks d. extract
5. I need help with this lesson because I find it ....
 a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated
6. I must .... myself to what will happen to a void being shocked.
 a. serve b. eat out c. celebrate d. prepare
7. I've read a / an .... of this novel. It is really worth reading.
 a. occasion b. quantity c. chopsticks d. extract
8. Colouring eggs on Sham El-Nassim day is something .... It dates back to the time of the Pharaohs.
 a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated
9. They .... great seafood here in this restaurant.
 a. serve b. eat out c. celebrate d. prepare
10. The Chinese find it easy to eat using ....
 a. oysters b. amount c. chopsticks d. seafood

Part II Exercises on Structures مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Tomorrow, I will be .... We can meet then.
 a. busy b. busier c. less busier d. less busy
2. The .... you work, the more you will achieve.
 hard b. harder c. hardly d. less hard
3. Let's leave. This's .... film I have ever watched here in this cinema.
 a bad b. a worse c. the worst d. best

4. Alexandria is the second .... city in Egypt.
   a. largest b. the largest c. larger d. least large
5. My car is expensive, but your car is .... expensive.
   a. the most b. more c. even more d. b & c
6. Most students have gone home, but .... are still waiting in front of the school.
   a. all b. none c. some d. any
7. They don't allow .... here.
   a. smoking b. smoke c. to smoke d. a & c
8. My tablet is good, but my sister's is ....
   a. good b. better c. best d. more good
9. Sama is the same .... as Abdulrahman.
   a. old b. older c. oldest d. age
10. Nasser is my .... friend.
   a. close b. closest c. a & b d. the closest

Part III Writing Skill

Write an email of about 180 words on :

"My favourite dish"

Address the email to Hany whose email is hany@yahoo.com

Your name is maher and your email is maher@yahoo.com

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





تنويه باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

1 Check your Vocabulary

marks

A Vocabulary

....	يلخِّص	farmland	....
....	يلتئم - يمتلئ	proposal	....
....	يطرح - يقدم	summary	....
....	يتضمن - يُضَمِّن	solution	....
....	يستثمر	agriculturalist	....
....	يدير / يشرف علي	farming	....
....	يخلق - يبتكر	hydroponics	....
....	يتكهَّن - يتنبأ	agricultural	....
....	مصدر	algae	....
....	مُستَدَام - صديق للبيئة	various	....
....	محصول غذائي	seaweed	....
....	كوكب الأرض	rainforest	....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

1. .... : (the introduction of) new ideas or methods
2. .... : a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way
3. .... : a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food
4. .... : a plant that grows in the sea
5. .... : a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from
6. .... : a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water
7. .... : able to continue without causing damage to the environment
8. .... : animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
9. .... : food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold

10. .... : someone who does not eat meat or fish
11. .... : the planet that we live on
12. .... : the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm
13. .... : the practice or science of farming
14. .... : the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil
15. .... : the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities

2 Homework

Part I Exercises on Vocabulary
مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Around 30% of Egyptians work in farming and ....
   a. algae b. agriculture c. source d. variety
2. It is not ....to use petrol in cars, as one day, we will have no more oil.
   a. clear b. various c. sustainable d. extraordinary
3. My uncle keeps .... on his farm, such as sheep and goats.
   a. proposal b. chemicals c. innovation d. livestock
4. The weather has been very good for the cotton .... this year.
   a. crop b. evidence c. education d. rainfall
5. Food .... went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.
   a. hydroponics b. vegetarian c. production d. algae
6. Technological .... means that we can now make seawater safe to drink.
   a. livestock b. innovation c. information d. seaweed
7. The .... of crops grown on that farm is huge.
   a. algae b. agriculture c. source d. variety
8. The Nile is the main .... of freshwater for drinking and agriculture.
   a. source b. produce c. organisation d. rainforest
9. Being a .... he eats no meat at all.
   a. agriculturalist b. vegetarian c. farmer d. nocturnal
10. To be healthy, your diet should .... fresh fruit and vegetables.
    a. invest b. include c. involve d. b & c

Part II Exercises on Structures
مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I think he .... fish for dinner.
   a. will have b. having c. are going to have d. will have had

2. Someone's at the door. .... who they are.
a. seeing b. am going to see c. will see d. will have seen

3. After I .... this book, I'll have read all Mahfouz's novels.
a. finish b. will finish c. will have finished d. will be finishing

4. This autumn, I .... a karate training course.
a. join b. will be joined c. going to join d. am joining

5. We .... fish for dinner. It's been planned.
a. will have b. having c. are going to have d. will have had

6. At one o'clock tomorrow, I.................. lunch with my friends.
a. will have eaten b. will be eating c. going to eat d. eat

7. When I finish my course, I .... in a hospital.
a. will probably work b. am probably working
c. am probably going to work d. will probably have worked

8. There are a lot of people on the bus. It .... difficult to find a seat.
a. is going to be b. will be c. will have been d. is being

9. I .... the office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.
a. won't leave b. wouldn't leave c. hadn't left d. wasn't left

10. It's 38 degrees and it's only 9 a.m. It .... very hot today.
a. was b. is going to be c. is being d. will be being

Part III Writing Skill

Write an essay of about 180 words on :

"The future of farming"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





 باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

....	تعبيرات(وجه)	suffix	....
....	خبير لغة	prefix	....
....	رسمي	introduction	....
....	رمز تعبيري	blog(ged)	....
....	علي علم - مُدْرِك	blogger	....
....	مُبتكر - مُخترع	section	....
....	موسوعة مفردات	linguistics	....
....	موضوع - فكرة رئيسية	necessary	....
....	نغمة الصوت - النَبرة	necessity	....
....	وجهي	selfie	....
....	يستشهد بـ - يُنوّه	message(v)	....
....	يسئ استخدام	conclusion	....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

1. .... : to not understand properly
2. .... : to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy
3. .... : the system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment
4. .... : the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking
5. .... : someone who studies or teaches linguistics
6. .... : someone who introduces changes and new ideas
7. .... : information that is discovered as the result of research into something
8. .... : formal language is used in official or serious situations
9. .... : an icon used in electronic messages and on websites
10. .... : a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something
11. .... : a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
12. .... : a short form of a word or expression
13. .... : a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct

14. .... : a photograph you take of yourself
15. .... : a personal website diary for other people to read
16. .... : a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word
17. .... : a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word
18. .... : a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings

2 Homework

Part I Exercises on Vocabulary مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. We usually use .... English when we send text messages to friends.
   a. formal b. informal c. official d. unofficial
2. He is a real .... He can improve or create new devices.
   a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
3. A photo that I take to myself is called a / an ....
   a. selfie b. acronym c. message d. emoji
4. Donating money does not .... mean that someone is rich. It usually means they are generous.
   a. positively b. negatively c. necessarily d. loudly
5. A person who does not like you is more likely to .... you.
   a. recommend b. support c. understand d. misunderstand
6. Mm! don't expect her to agree after she has ....
   a. followed b. frowned c. concluded d. communicated
7. "OU" is a / an .... of 'Open University'.
   a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
8. His sharp .... frightens her.
   a. tone b. suffix c. selfie d. thesaurus
9. A well-known .... has created the material for this course.
   a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
10. A smiling icon is a / an .... which expresses happiness or satisfaction.
    a. selfie b. acronym c. message d. emoji

Part II Exercises on Structures مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Ahmed .... have been unkind to his sister, Rodayna. He knew she would be upset.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
2. Hossam was working with me all day, so you .... have seen him at the park.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't

3. Omar .... have helped Ali, but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
4. Why hasn't he called? You said he would call when he got to the hotel and he .... have arrived by now.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
5. Thank you. It's a fantastic gift, but you .... have spent so much money on me.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
6. I .... have gone to bed earlier last night. I'm really tired today.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
7. I .... have practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
8. You .... have shouted at your sister. You knew it would make her unhappy and it was the wrong thing to do.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
9. You .... have caught the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
   a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
10. You .... have seen Manal in the park this morning. She has been with me at my house all day.
    a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
11. I can't believe that you still haven't received the parcel. I sent it three weeks ago, so it .... have arrived by now.
    a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
12. He .... have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
    a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't

Part III Writing Skill

Write an essay of about 180 words on :

"The advantages and disadvantages of using international technology words in a language"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



تنويه باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

....	أثر	advertise	....
....	تطبيق	rely	....
....	سطحيَّة	install	....
....	سلوك - تَصَرُّف	behave	....
....	عرض - رؤية	follow	....
....	عيوب	profile	....
....	لافتة إعلانية	advertisers	....
....	مُتابع	subscriber	....
....	مُحَدَّث	pros	....
....	مُدمن	downloadable	....
....	مزيف - مكذوب	instant	....
....	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	unreliable	....
....	مُموِّل	sociology	....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

1. .... : to save something from the internet onto your computer
2. .... : to remove a message or photo you have put on social media
3. .... : to put information on social media
4. .... : to make something better
5. .... : to install the most recent version of a program
6. .... : to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something
7. .... : the things that a person or animal does
8. .... : the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech etc.
9. .... : someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites
10. .... : information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again
11. .... : including all the latest information
12. .... : an occasion when a post, an image or a video is watched online

2 Homework

Part I Exercises on Vocabulary مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Click here to be a .... of the person or group.
   a. post b. view c. follower d. tone
2. Click here to .... a message or photo and share it.
   a. subscribe b. post c. addict d. chat
3. This shows you how many .... the video has had.
   a. unlikes b. views c. likes d. b & c
4. If you .... to the page, you will become a follower.
   a. subscribe b. post c. addict d. chat
5. My laptop has a problem. I need to .... a technician about it.
   a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
6. I will .... a new an important file to this site.
   a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt
7. Please .... my photo. I don't like sharing my photos online.
   a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
8. This version of the application is out of date. You need to .... it.
   a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt
9. The free service on this website is not good enough. I will .... to premium.
   a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
10. I am not sure if I will be able to .... to living abroad.
    a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt

Part II Exercises on Structures مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Nada is supposed .... dinner.
   a. to cook b. to cooking c. to be cooked d. cooking
2. Dinner is supposed .... by Nada.
   a. to cook b. to cooking c. to be cooked d. cooking
3. I seem .... the first student to arrive at school today.
   a. being b. to being c. be d. to be
4. It .... to snow last week.
   a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed c. isn't supposed d. doesn't suppose

5. I .... it would snow last week.

a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed c. isn't supposed d. don't suppose

6. Leen meant .... you but she unluckily forgot.

a. to call b. to have called c. to be called d. calls

7. Amr seems .... a good day.

a. have b. having c. to be having d. has

8. The train is meant .... at 9 o'clock.

a. leaves b. leaving c. to be left d. to leave

9. My teacher .... to be happy with my work.

a. meant b. supposed c. a & b d. seemed

10. My mother .... to be angry with me.

a. seem b. seems c. is seeming d. is seemed

Part III Writing Skill

Write an email of about 180 words on :

"How to use social media well"

Address the email to Reda whose email is reda@gmail.com

Your name is Nour and your email is nour@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



تنويه باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

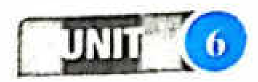
....	مُتسوِّل (شحات)	leader	....
....	مدفأة	employer	....
....	يبقي على اتصال بـ	main	....
....	يتشاجر - يتساقط	memory	....
....	يتنهد - تنهيدة	pocket	....
....	يتوسَّل - يتسول	feedback	....
....	يُحسِن التعامل مع	including	....
....	يُذكِّر - يُعيد ذكري	donation	....
....	يُعاشِر - يألف - يُرافق	attention	....
....	يُكدِّس - يتكدس	friendship	....
....	يندم - الندم	gift	....
....	يندمج - يألف	generous	....

marks

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

1. .... : to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
2. .... : to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
3. .... : stop communicating
4. .... : stop being friendly
5. .... : spend time with
6. .... : not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
7. .... : continue to communicate with
8. .... : be friendly with
9. .... : a group of things put on top of each other
10. .... : a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed
11. .... : – make you remember







باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

....	مُتسوِّل (شحات)	leader	....
....	مدفأة	employer	....
....	يبقي على اتصال بـ	main	....
....	يتشاجر - يتساقط	memory	....
....	يتنهد - تنهيدة	pocket	....
....	يتوسَّل - يتسول	feedback	....
....	يُحسِن التعامل مع	including	....
....	يُذكِّر - يُعيد ذكري	donation	....
....	يُعاشِر - يألف - يُرافق	attention	....
....	يُكدِّس - يتكدس	friendship	....
....	يندم - الندم	gift	....
....	يندمج - يألف	generous	....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

1. .... : to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
2. .... : to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
3. .... : stop communicating
4. .... : stop being friendly
5. .... : spend time with
6. .... : not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
7. .... : continue to communicate with
8. .... : be friendly with
9. .... : a group of things put on top of each other
10. .... : a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed
11. .... : – make you remember

2 Homework

Part I Exercises on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Does that photo .... a lot to you?
   a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
2. The race starts when you .... the gun.
   a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
3. I'm sure Taha didn't .... to upset you.
   a. attend b. mean c. intend d. b & c
4. He doesn't work, so his boss will .... him.
   a. fire b. sack c. a & b d. shoot
5. He was so .... that he wouldn't spend money on anything.
   a. mean b. main c. generous d. a & c
6. Mr Mohammed has .... of work to do. He doesn't have any free time.
   a. feedback b. piles c. tones d. gifts
7. He didn't say anything, but I knew Dad was disappointed when I heard him ....
   a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
8. Anna will .... her mum to make her a chocolate cake for her birthday because it is her favourite.
   a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
9. Hassan and I are no longer friends. I have .... with him.
   a. fallen out b. hung out c. got into d. kept in
10. I didn't see him all day yesterday. He .... with his friends all day.
   a. fell out b. hung out c. got into d. kept in

Part II Exercises on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If I hadn't learnt English, I .... international friends.
   a. would have b. wouldn't have c. would have had d. wouldn't have had
2. He wouldn't have felt so alone if he .... about people.
   a. cares b. cared c. had cared d. hadn't cared
3. If we didn't take our map with us, we .... lost.
   a. might get b. might have got c. should get d. should have got
4. If you don't water plants, they ....
   a. die b. don't die c. died d. would die

5. He will be late if he .... the early train.
   a. miss b. misses c. missed d. had missed
6. If she had enough money, she .... a new tablet.
   a. will buy b. would buy c. would have bought d. buys
7. Mobile phones usually stop working if they .... in water.
   a. fall b. are fallen c. fell d. were fallen
8. He .... happier if he weren't so mean.
   a. is b. was c. would be d. will be
9. If we .... that fast taxi, we would have been late for the train.
   a. had taken b. hadn't taken c. didn't take d. took
10. If he had less time on social media, he .... his time.
   a. won't waste b. wouldn't waste c. wouldn't have wasted d. wasted

Part III Writing Skill

Write an essay of about 180 words on :

"A mistake you have learnt from"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. You don't have the right to interfere with other people's arsenal lives.
2. We are accelerating my sister's birthday tomorrow.
3. You need to repair for your next exams.
4. This restaurant introduces great shrimps.
5. Homemade food is healthier, but sometimes I have to eat in.

II Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. I have never met such a best friend.
2. I think Ping pong is the less popular game all over the world.
3. It is not so colder today as yesterday.
4. January is coldest month of the year.
5. Ahmed and Khalid aren't the same tall.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. Ali and Ahmed are the same height. (tall)
2. Everest is the highest mountain in the world. (high)
3. He is the best history teacher I have ever met. (better)
4. He got the worst marks in school. (worse)
5. He got the best marks in our class. (Nobody....)



مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. Sugar cane is one of the main corps in Egypt....
2. Increasing pollution will solve our economic problems....
3. Farming is the science and practice of growing plants....
4. Keeping lifestock on farms needs experience....
5. The ground is the planet on which we live....

II Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. Do you please look after the baby while I am away?
2. Don't leave food uncovered after you had prepared it.
3. Don't throw away any of these papers until I had told you.
4. According to the timetable, we are having English after break.
5. We have hired a chalet. We will spend the next two weeks in the North Coast.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. My father has just said, "I'll buy you a computer if you succeed." (promised)
2. He intends to travel abroad. (going)
3. I'll cut off the electric current if you don't pay the bill. (He threatens)
4. I'm going to decorate my flat. (decided)
5. I've arranged to give my wedding party next week. (am)

UNIT 4 مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب



I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. His ton shows that he has been disappointed.
2. We use format language when we write to officials.
3. Having a degree in a flaw doesn't necessary mean that he is an expert.
4. He has introduced a lot of new ideas. He is a real elevator.
5. The brown on his face shows that he is not happy.

II Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. I want he to behave well.
2. Nada warned me to use her things again.
3. Your knee could have hurt. We need to check.
4. Ahmed could be played tennis in the club right now.
5. He must have gone out. I don't know.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. I regret wasting my time. (have)
2. I suppose he will be here soon. (supposed)
3. You should have got up early. (shouldn't)
4. The train to Cairo had left before I reached the station five minutes ago. (travelling)
5. He didn't solve the problem although he had the ability to do so. (solved)



UNIT 5 مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. I trust him because he is reliant.
2. You should learn how to adopt to living in the countryside.
3. This video had thirty thousand viewing in ten minutes.
4. Keep your applications out-of-date.
5. Facebook allows you 5000 friends in addition to other following.

II Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. He seems not working hard.
2. I can hear loud voices while talking to him on the phone. He seems to have walked in a market.
3. He felt exhausted. He seems to work hard all day.
4. She is seeming to be busy.
5. She seems to be taller than she really is.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. I have to be home by midnight. (supposed)
2. Did you expect us to be here so early? (supposed)
3. We are discussing the wrong topic. (supposed)
4. We expected the weather to be sunny. (supposed to be)
5. Rokaya seems to be happy these days. (as if)



مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. Someone who is main won't offer you anything.
2. He is busy checking the pales of files in front of him.
3. I like Ann because we get off well with each other.
4. He was lucky to get on the team from the first match.
5. Old songs bring at childhood memories.

II Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. If it is fine tomorrow, the match won't be played.
2. If she was taller, she would have played basketball.
3. If it had rained anymore, there would be serious floods.
4. If I'd have more time, I'd go for long walks.
5. If I were rich. I will buy a big house.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. He didn't work hard. Perhaps that's why he failed. (If)
2. He was put in prison because he accepted bribes. (Unless)
3. Adel left his coat at home, so he caught a cold. (If)
4. You didn't do very well in the test because you didn't do enough revision. (If)
5. Reem lost her tennis match because she didn't have enough practice. (Had)

Islamic Selections

Chapter (4) Fasting



Answer the following questions :

1. What is fasting ?
2. For whom was fasting made compulsory ? Why ?
3. What should the faithful do to get closer to Paradise ?
4. When was the Holy Quran revealed ?
5. What would happen if a Muslim adheres to fasting and the recitation of the Holy Quran ?

Chapter (5) Pilgrimage

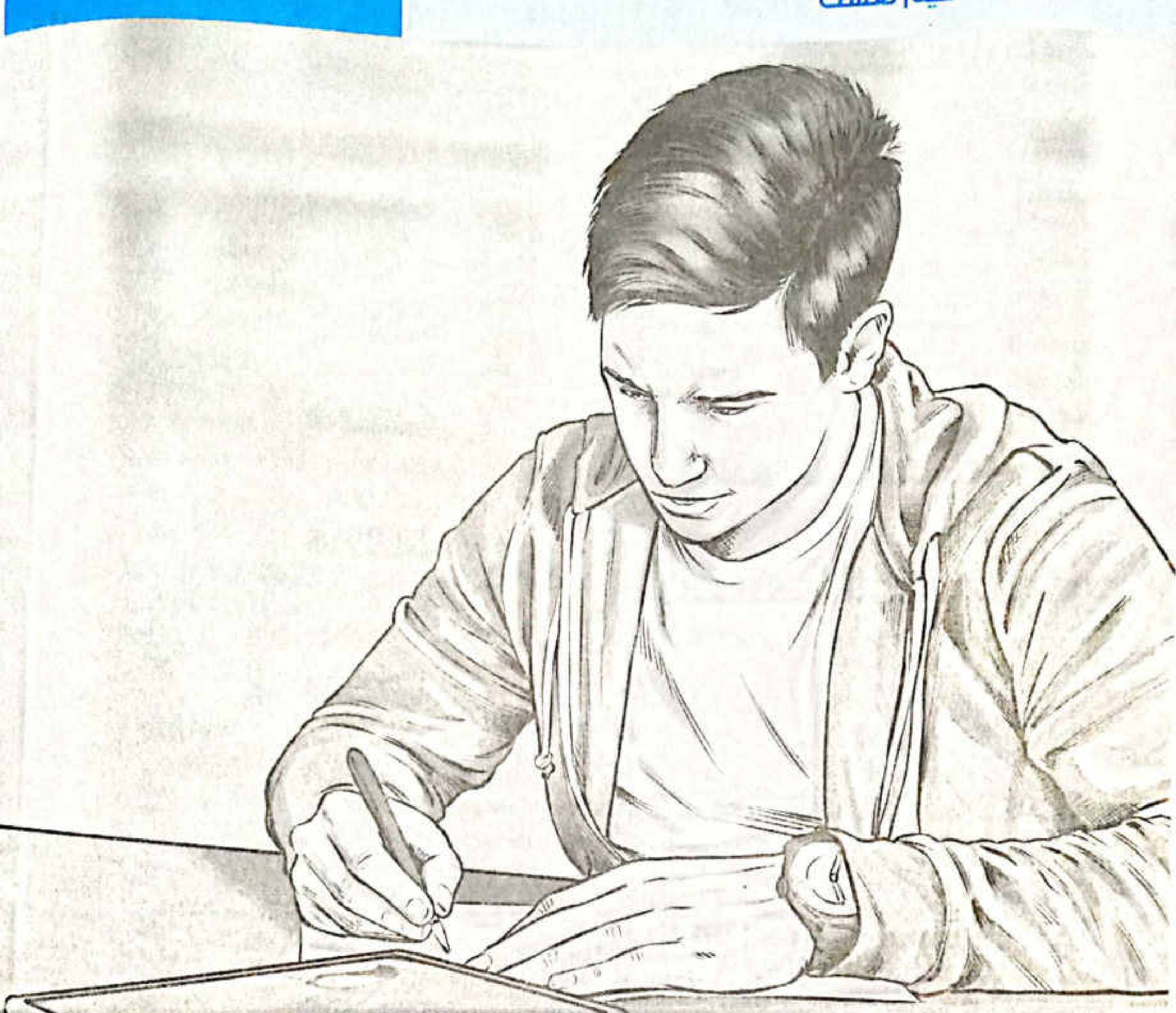
Answer the following questions :

1. What does Allah grant those who perform accepted Pilgrimage ?
2. Where do millions of Muslims go every year to perform Pilgrimage ?
3. How do pilgrims come to Blessed Mecca ?
4. What do all Muslims know well ?
5. What does the Muslim Brotherhood show ?

PART 2

Assess yourself

قيم نفسك



1. 5 Accumulative Assessment Model Tests on Units (According to the New System)

خمسة نماذج إختبارات تراكمية للتقييم على الوحدات طبقًا للمنظومة الجديدة.

2. 15 Assessment Model Tests on the whole curriculum (According to the New System)

خمسة عشر نموذج اختبار للتقييم على المنهج بأكمله (طبقًا للمنظومة الجديدة).

3. SB & WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

Vocabulary Of Exams

المفردات اللغوية التى قد تكون جديدة عليك داخل الاختبارات

5 Accumulative sample Tests

Test (1) based on Units 1 & 2

poverty	فقر
salutations	تحيات (خاصة العسكرية)
declare	يصرح بـ
regain	يستعيد
composure	رباطة الجأش - رصانة
forsake	يهجر / يتخلى عن

Test (2) based on Units 3 & 4

frustrated	محبط
tension	توتر
toughness	حدة - صلابة

Test (3) based on Units 5 & 6

compartment	مقصورة - حجرة
optimistic	متفائل

Test (4) based on Units 1, 2 & 3

contrary	عكس - مضاد
visible	مرئى
naked eye	العين المجردة
self sacrifice	التضحية بالنفس
deviation	الانحراف

Test (5) based on Units 4, 5 & 6

embarrassed	مُحرج
justification	تبرير

15 Assessment Model on the whole curriculum

خمسة عشر نموذج للتقيم على المنهج بأكمله

Model 1

nuisance	مصدر إزعاج
inhibit	يمنع - يردع
unconsious	فاقد الوعى

Model 2

facial features	ملامح الوجه
tendency	إتجاه
validate	يصدق على - يثبت صحة كذا
highbrow	ذو ثقافة رفيعة

Model 3

sense (v)	يستشعر / يشعر
hesitation	تردد

Model 4

dismiss	يطرد
resistance	مقاومة

Model 5

deprive of	يجرد من / يحرم من

Model 6

(be) associated with	يرتبط بـ
enrich	يثرى

Model 7

enroll in a course	يسجل فى دورة تدريبية
curious	فضولى / محب للاستطلاع
acquire	يكتسب

Model 8

ecotourism	السياحة البيئية

Model 9

ambiguous	غامضه - ملتبس
dominate	يسيطر على
drawback	عائق
inadequate	غير مناسب/غير ملائم
profitable	مربح
slogan	شعار

Model 10

waggle	يهز

Model 11

globalisation	العولمة
compliment	يجامل
glance	يلقى نظرة خاطفة
unemployment	البطالة
illiteracy	الأمية
eradicate	يمحو

15. .... to get him out of prison?

a. What have do they to do

b. What do have they to do

c. What have they do to do

d. What do they have to do

16. Of the two novels, which is .... to read tonight?

a. most interesting

b. more interesting

c. less interesting

d. least interesting

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Once Wealth and Poverty approached a merchant and introduced themselves as **visitors**. The merchant offered his salutations to both of them and said: "May I know what brings you to my humble shop?" Wealth said: "We want you to judge and tell us who is more beautiful between us two?" The merchant was in a **fix**. If he were to declare wealth as more beautiful than poverty, it would curse him. If he were to declare poverty as more beautiful than wealth, wealth would forsake him. However, he regained his composure and said: "I have great respect for you both. Would you please act according to my instructions? Then only I can judge properly." The visitors agreed. He said: "Mother wealth, would you please go to the entrance (gates) and walk into the house? Mother, poverty! Would you please walk from here towards the gates? I can have a good look at you both, from near and far." The two visitors did walk as the merchant wished them to. Then the merchant happily declared: "Mother wealth! You appear very beautiful when you enter the house. Mother poverty! You look very beautiful when you leave the house.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The word "**visitors**" refers to ....

a. wealth and poverty

b. the wisdom

c. the problems

d. the merchants

18. The way to solve a problem is to ....

a. stop thinking

b. hesitate

c. think calmly

d. rush

19. The underlined word "**fix**" can be replaced by ....

a. repair

b. mend

c. mess

d. miss

20. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?

a. Poverty wins

b. Wealth wins

c. Both wealth and poverty lose

d. A wise reaction

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What are the morals of the story? Mention TWO moral lessons.

....

....

22. What do wealth and poverty symbolize يرمز إلى in this story? Explain your opinion.

....

....

23. Do you think the merchant knows who the visitors are? How do you know?

....

....

24. What do you think of the merchant? What do you think of the way he acted?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Water conservation means using water resources wisely to do useful things. This is important because it keeps the water pure and helps us protect the environment.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

قبل اتخاذ قرارات مهمة، فكر في مزاياها وعيوبها، فهذا سيساعدك على اتخاذ أفضل قرار ممكن.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

The immune system

....

....

....

....

....

Test (2) based on Units 3 & 4

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Money for someone who finds or helps someone important means a / an ....
   a. prize b. reward c. award d. occasion
2. To make long and difficult words easier, people often use .... for these words.
   a. abbreviations b. explanations c. titles d. addresses
3. You should accept his generous offer before he ....his mind.
   a. does b. leaves c. changes d. charges
4. He didn't know how to drive a car, so he .... much damage to his father's car when he tried driving it.
   a. made b. caused c. gave d. saved

5. Focus .... your study and don't pay attention to anything else.

a. on b. for c. by d. at

6. Countries are always interested in their innovators in all fields. The word "innovators" here can be replaced by ....

a. customers b. criminals c. youth d. creators

7. The match .... at 8:30 in the evening. I want to watch it.

a. is going to start b. starts c. is starting d. will start

8. My cousin asked me .... him my new laptop, but I refused because I needed it badly.

a. to lend b. lending c. to lending d. lend

9. Mayar has decided to paint her car after the accident. She .... it.

a. is going to paint b. paints c. will paint d. is painting

10. Sorry, I forgot to bring my homework with me. I .... put it in my bag before coming here.

a. shouldn't b. can c. should have d. couldn't have

11. The mobile is ringing. I .... it.

a. am answering b. answer c. am going to answer d. will answer

12. Parents always advise their children .... friends with bad people.

a. to make b. not to make c. not to making d. to making

13. At seven o'clock tomorrow morning, I ....to Luxor. My bus leaves at 6 a.m.

a. will travel b. will have travelled c. am going to travel d. will be travelling

14. I must buy a nice present for my little sister. I promised her .... one.

a. to buying b. not to buying c. not to buy d. to buy

15. Laila .... seventeen next Monday.

a. will be b. is going to be c. is d. will being

16. I was invited .... a wedding party, but I couldn't come.

a. to attend b. attending c. to attending d. attend

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognized that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success. In every situation where you are in a group, you will need a skilled leader. All groups need leaders and all successful groups have good leaders. Groups without leaders always break down. Members of a leaderless group often begin to feel dissatisfied and frustrated. There are often arguments and tensions between people as there is nobody to keep the goals clear.

Some people are natural leaders. True leaders are born and you can spot them. They are people who combine toughness, fairness and humour. Although a lot of people agree that there are some natural-born leaders, most people now recognize that leadership can also be taught in training courses which use activities and techniques to develop a range of qualities which are necessary to be a good leader, such as self-confidence, calmness and intelligence. They also need to be able to work under pressure. Lastly, and probably most

importantly, good leaders need to be sensitive, sociable and be able to get on with a wide range of people. Good leadership is the ability to influence others and allow all members of the group to contribute.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is "..........".
    a. Teamwork is the main key to success
    b. Teamwork is not necessary for succeeding the group
    c. Leaderless groups are always frustrated
    d. A good leader must be joking
18. According to the passage , Good leadership is ....
    a. the capability to insult the members and discourage them
    b. the power to have an effect on the members and give them chance to add new ideas
    c. the capability to have a bad effect on the members
    d. the ability to influence the members negatively
19. The word "toughness" in the passage means ....
    a. the quality of being strong and determined
    b. the quality of being difficult to deal with
    c. the quality of being cruel
    d. the quality of being severe
20. Why can't people in leaderless groups often achieve what they want?
    a. because they have a skilled leader.
    b. because there are a lot of members in the group.
    c. because they are sensitive, sociable and be able to get on with each other.
    d. There are often arguments and tensions between them as there is nobody to keep the goals clear.

B. Answer the following questions:

21. If you were a leader , how would you be ? Why ?

....

....

22. Are you for or against the idea of Teamwork ? Give your justification.

....

....

23. What is your opinion of the leaders who are selfish? Give a reason.

....

....

24. Not everyone can be a leader, do you agree? Illustrate .

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

People are liked or disliked for their deeds and behaviour, some are honest and efficient, so they are respected and loved by all. Others are dishonest and selfish, so they are hated.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

التعليم ليس غاية ولكنه وسيلة لغاية بمعنى آخر نحن لا نعلم أطفالنا لمجرد التعليم ولكن لأجل أن نعدهم للحياة العملية وأن يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين قادرين على خدمة بلادهم عندما يكبروا.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Hard work is the key to success.

....

....

....

....

....

Test (3) based on Units 5 & 6

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed means a / an ....
   a. sigh b. lung c. experience d. effect
2. It's important to .... your doctor. You are very hot.
   a. recommend b. persuade c. consult d. ignore
3. You can get any information you need at the touch of a / an ....
   a. bullet b. button c. expert d. essay
4. It's difficult to get a good job nowadays. You must .... your language and computer skills first.
   a. decrease b. lose c. prove d. develop
5. Hala's father was very angry with her and turned his back .... her.
   a. for b. on c. in d. at
6. You can rely on him to do this job. Don't worry, he can do it well. Another word for "rely on" in this sentence is to ....
   a. depend on b. come on c. get on d. congratulate on

7. They can catch their train .... getting up early.
a. if b. in case c. unless d. in case of

8. The plane .... at 9:30 in the morning.
a. is meant to fly b. is meant to flying c. is meaning to fly d. is meaning to flying

9. If it .... for your mobile, I couldn't phone the police for help.
a. isn't b. weren't c. hasn't been d. hadn't been

10. My coach seems .... happy with my performance.
a. to being b. being c. to be d. be

11. ....if someone robbed you of your money?
a. What would you do b. What you would do
c. What would you have done d. What you will do

12. .... today?
a. What you are supposed to do b. What supposed you are to do
c. What are supposed you to do d. What are you supposed to do

13. I would have lunch with you if I .... enough time.
a. had had b. have had c. had d. have

14. My brother .... to clean the bedroom, but he didn't do it.
a. is supposed b. was supposed c. isn't supposed d. wasn't supposed

15. If you boil water, it .... into steam.
a. will turn b. turned c. would turn d. turns

16. What .... like next week?
a. is the weather meant to be b. is the weather meaning to be
c. does the weather mean being d. does the weather meaning to be

B. Reading



Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

As the train approached the seaside town where I was going to spend my holidays, I went into the corridor to stretch my legs. When I turned to go back to my seat, I happened to glance into the compartment next to mine. Sitting there was a man who many years before had been my neighbour. He was a great talker, I remembered , it used to take hours to get away from him once he began a conversation.

Luckily , at that moment , he was much too busy talking to the man opposite him to catch sight of me. I slipped back into my compartment , took down my two suitcases and carried them to the far end of the corridor so as to be ready to get off the train as soon as it stopped.

When I reached the hotel, I went straight to my room and rested their until it was time for dinner. Then I went down to the lounge and ordered a drink, I had hardly raised the glass to my lips when an all too familiar voice greeted me. I had not escaped from my tiresome neighbour after all ! He grasped me warmly by the hand and insisted that we should share a table in the dinning room. "This is a pleasant surprise", he said. "I never expected to see you again after all these years".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The story is about a man who ....

a. tried to get away from an ex-neighbour but didn't succeed.

b. got off the train to avoid meeting an ex-neighbour.

c. was surprised to meet his ex-neighbour in a small seaside hotel.

d. went with an ex-neighbour to spend a holiday at the seaside.

18. The idiom "catch sight of" in the second paragraph means ....

a. to escape when you see someone noisy

b. to avoid seeing someone or something

c. not to be happy when you meet someone you don't like

d. to see someone or something only for a moment

19. Why did the writer avoid his ex-neighbour ?

a. as his ex-neighbour is patient and sociable.

b. as his ex-neighbour is annoying and making you lose patience.

c. as the writer had problems with his ex-neighbour.

d. as they didn't like each other.

20. The main idea of the passage is that ....

a. you should be boring

b. it is good to have a charming manner

c. it is not good to have a charming manner

d. travelling by trains is not comfortable

B. Answer the following questions:

21. How do you see the writer's ex-neighbour ? Do you want to be like him?

....

....

22. Would you prefer to spend your holiday in a seaside town? Why ?

....

....

23. What do you think of travelling by trains ? Give your reasons.

....

....

24. I think it is better for someone to have an attractive behaviour, do you agree? Why ?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

The choice to become a leader is not an easy one and there will not always be an easy path. You must possess some qualities and work on them. Learn how to be optimistic, patient, sensible, tolerant and understanding.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

الانضباط عادة ضرورية في كل شئون المجتمع المتحضر، بدونه لا يمكن لنا إنجاز أى شئ وسيصبح كل شئ فى حالة من الفوضى والارتباك.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Dalia inviting her to your birthday party. Your name is Zahra and your email address is zahra@gmail.com and your friend email is dody@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

Test (4) based on Units 1 & 2 & 3

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 . A small part of a play which happens in one place means a / an ....
a. occasion b. interview c. view d. scene

2 . After the accident, he needed .... donor.
a. blood b. oxygen c. emergency d. chest

3 . The best punishment for them is to make them have a / an ....of their own medicine.
a. meal b. amount c. taste d. award

4 . It may .... months or years from scientists to have a safe medicine for coronavirus.
a. give b. take c. make d. send

5 . You can help your mother with the housework instead ....playing games all the time.
a. for b. of c. in d. on

6 . The manager of the new involved him in his new staff. The antonym of the word "involved" in this sentence is ....
a. included b. added c. recommended d. excluded

7 . The festival was cancelled yesterday, so many people .... come.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. didn't have to d. needn't have to

8 . Coming first in the final exam was .... event this year for Ali.
a. the worst b. the best c. better d. worse

9 . My uncle, Maher, ... a new house next week. Everything is arranged.
a. is building b. is going to build c. builds d. will build

10. Using mobiles phones is prohibited here. You .... use it.

a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to

11. No player in Liverpool scored goals as Mohamed Salah. This means that ....

a. Salah scored the fewest goals.

b. Salah scored the least goals.

c. All the players scored more goals than Salah.

d. All the players scored fewer goals than Salah.

12. Stop talking or you ....

a. will punish b. will be punished

c. are punishing d. are going to punish

13. Mariam .... study physics and chemistry this year. She wants to join the faculty of medicine.

a. has to b. mustn't c. had to d. needn't

14. I like my father ....

a. well b. better c. best d. good

15. .... I be here on time or I can be late for half an hour?

a. Need b. Must c. Have d. Ought

16. Hurry up, please. Our bus .... in five minutes.

a. will leave b. is leaving c. is going to leave d. leaves

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

What are falling stars? Contrary to popular belief, "falling (or shooting) stars" are not stars at all. They are meteors which are solid bodies that travel through space. Meteors range in size from that of a pinhead, which can't be seen, to huge objects weighing many tons, which are visible to the naked eye at night. Most meteors, except the really huge ones, burn up when they enter the earth's atmosphere. If they do land successfully, they are renamed meteorites.

Meteors usually travel together in swarms like bees. This nature's interesting fireworks show is called a meteor shower. It comes into view when these swarms of meteors hit the earth's atmosphere and then fall towards the earth in a beautiful display of light. One must be quite patient to see the most interesting meteor storms, as these cross the earth's path only once every thirty-three years. Believe it or not, this scientific fact took the scientists many years to prove.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Falling stars are ....

a. ordinary stars in the sky

b. insects which look like bees

c. meteors which are solid bodies travelling through space

d. kinds of fireworks

18. Meteors and bees are alike because they all travel ....

a. in space b. in the atmosphere c. in swarms d. individually

19. According to the passage, some meteors are so huge that they can be seen .... at night.
    a. with a telescope
    b. without the help of an instrument
    c. with glasses
    d. binoculars
20. The idiom "It comes into view" in the second paragraph of the passage means ....
    a. It can be seen
    b. It disappeared out of view
    c. It is an opinion
    d. It is too far to be seen

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think it is important for man to study meteors ? Why?

....

....

22. Some people think that space exploration is a waste of money, do you agree ? Explain your point of view.

....

....

23. Would you like to be an astronaut ? Why?

....

....

24. What do you think might happen if a huge meteor hit the earth? How do you think space scientists can avoid that?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Sports and games play an important role in building up one's body and character. They are also an effective means of acquiring many virtues such as co-operation, self. sacrifice and discipline. Through games and sports young people find an outlet to their energies and they can be protected from deviation.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

مقاومة الإرهاب واجب وطني وديني، كل الأديان السماوية تنبذ(ترفض) الإرهاب ولذلك فإن الحرب التي تشنها الدولة على الإرهاب تتطلب مشاركة الجميع لاستئصال هذا الطاعون الخطير.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Tom who lives in London to invite him to come to Egypt to spend a week with you. Your name is Marwan and your email address is mero@gmail.com. Your friend's email is tom12@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

Test (5) based on Units 4 & 5 & 6

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To make benefit from something means to ....
   a. improve b. profit c. celebrate d. develop
2. The referee gave the player a yellow card because he .... to be injured.
   a. attended b. intended c. pretended d. predicted
3. URL is an abbreviation for ....
   a. union resources location b. useful repeated language
   c. university repeated learning d. uniform resource locator
4. She gave a loud cry when she .... a bad dream.
   a. had b. sent c. made d. got
5. He is a very sociable student. He gets on .... all the school students and teachers.
   a. for b. at c. with d. by
6. The earthquake ruined many buildings in the city. The antonym of the word "ruined" here is ....
   a. destroyed b. constructed c. damaged d. smashed
7. .... to have enough money, he'd buy that new house.
   a. If he b. Were he c. Unless he d. In case he
8. Your last exam marks weren't good. You .... harder.
   a. should study b. must have been studied
   c. should have studied d. must study
9. She .... first in the competition, but her bad performance wasn't the expected one.
   a. was supposing to come b. was supposed to come
   c. is supposing to come d. is supposed to come
10. If he had crashed into the tree, the car ....
    a. would have damaged b. would have being damaged
    c. would have been damaged d. would be damaged

11. Where was Amr yesterday's evening? He .... the car for his father.

a. could wash b. could have washed
c. should wash d. should have been washing

12. Take an umbrella with you. It .... sunny this afternoon.

a. was supposed being b. is supposing being
c. was supposed to be d. is supposed to be

13. .... paying the bill, your mobile will offline.

a. Without b. In case of c. Unless d. Provided

14. Teachers often instruct their students .... the best use of their time.

a. not to making b. not making c. not to make d. to make

15. .... she answer all the questions correctly, she can win the prize.

a. Should b. Has to c. If d. In case

16. He seems .... by all his colleagues.

a. to be loving b. to being loved c. to be loved d. being to love

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day I was doing a lot of shopping in my local supermarket , I had a long list of things , fruit, vegetables , sugar, tea, nuts, biscuits and so on. I waited in the queue until I got to the cash desk. The assistant added up the price of all the things I had bought. I paid her and began putting things into my basket . "Thank you . Goodbye ," I said , and went out of the shop with all my things.

I was walking down the street when I heard voice shouting behind me, I turned round and noticed it was the lady who had been behind me in the supermarket . She looked very angry . "You put my handbag in your basket with all my things," she said. I looked in my basket and saw the lady's handbag. "I'm very sorry," I said, "I picked your handbag up by mistake." My face was red as I gave the lady her bag . I was very embarrassed . The lady took her bag without a word, but looked at me strangely.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The lady ran after the writer because ....

a. the writer robbed the lady
b. the writer took her bag on purpose
c. the writer took the lady's bag accidentally
d. the writer thanked the assistant but didn't thank her

18. The writer .... , as a result his face was red.

a. felt ashamed b. was embarrassing
c. was guilty d. forgot to pay the assistant

19. The lady took her bag without a word as she ....

a. looked at the writer strangely. b. was dump
c. thought the writer was a thief. d. put her bag into the writer's basket.

20. The phrase «and so on» in the first paragraph means ....
a. nothing else
b. everything except this
c. together with other similar things
d. nothing more

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think "A critical situation" is a good title for this passage? Why? Why not?
....
....

22. Would you call the police if you were in the lady's situation? Why ? Why not?
....
....

23. How would you behave if you were the man in this situation? Give justification to your answer.
....
....

24. Do you prefer traditional shopping from shops or shopping online ? Why?
....
....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilized behaviour like helping people in need. Imagine you were in their place, wouldn't you like to have other people standing by your side ?
....
....

26. Translate into English:

من المهم أن يكون لك رأيك الشخصي الخاص بك و تقرر ما ينبغي أو لا ينبغي القيام به. فقدرة المرء على التأثير مستمدة من قوة شخصيته. وهناك حالات تحتاج فيها إلى أن تكون صارمًا وحاسمًا ولا تنسى أبدًا أن السمك الميت فقط يسبح مع التيار.
....
....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Reading enriches our culture.
....
....
....
....
....
....

15 Assessment Models on the whole curriculum according to the New System

خمسة عشر نموذج للتقييم على المنهج بأكمله طبقا للمنظومة الجديدة



يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If I had your mobile phone number, I .... from time to time.
   a. would have called b. will call c. may call d. would call
2. Next week, my grandfather .... 69 years old.
   a. will be b. can be c. is going to be c. would be
3. I have never bought more expensive mobile than this mobile before. This means that ....
   a. this mobile is the most expensive mobile I have ever bought.
   b. this mobile is the least expensive mobile I have ever bought.
   c. no other mobile is cheaper than this mobile
   d. all mobiles are more expensive than this mobile
4. This man is a very dangerous criminal who escaped from prison last week. We .... tell the police about him.
   a. had to b. needn't c. didn't have to d. must
5. He was supposed .... the game yesterday.
   a. winning b. to win c. to winning d. win
6. The doctor .... the injured boy not to walk on his leg for a week.
   a. encouraged b. suggested c. warned d. recommended
7. Our Chemistry lesson .... at two o'clock this afternoon.
   a. will start b. starts c. is starting d. is going to start
8. .... his help, I could have come first.
   a. In case of b. In case c. Without d. Unless
9. English is .... difficult subject this year. All the other subjects are more difficult.
   a. the most b. the more c. the least d. the less
10. Three houses collapsed in the same street, so people in other houses must .... to a safe place.
    a. take away b. be taken c. to be taken d. taking away
11. As a secondary school student, you should rely .... yourself in your studying.
    a. in b. with c. about d. on
12. To .... means to do an action.
    a. perform b. reform c. reuse d. compare

13. He fell off that high building. Fortunately, he ....

a. died b. survived c. searched d. donated

14. Don't .... the chance and try to make the best use of it.

a. lose b. forget c. spend d. miss

15. This technology is bang up-to-date. The synonym of the word "up-to-date" is ....

a. old-fashioned b. ancient c. modern d. creative

16. We live at the age of technological ....

a. innovation b. organization c. reclamation d. immigration

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people have been recently discussing the use of seat belts while driving their cars. Although seat belts have been shown to save lives, people give a number of reasons for not using them. First, many people think that they are a nuisance; they say that the belt is uncomfortable and **inhibits** freedom of movement. Second, many people are lazy. For them, it is too much trouble to put on and adjust a seat belt, especially if they are only going a short distance. Third, many people believe they will not have an accident because they are clever and careful drivers. They think that they are able to avoid accidents. Finally, some people are worried they think the seat belts may trap them in their cars and prevent them from running away. If they have an accident, they may not be able to get out of a car that is burning, or they may be unconscious. In spite of all these reasons, statistics prove that wearing seat belts saves lives and prevents serious injuries.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Many accidents happen because ....

a. drivers are worried b. of using seat belt
c. of high speed d. drivers are lazy

18. According to the passage, statistics prove that wearing seat belts .... the bad results of accidents.

a. double b. reduce c. occur d. increase

19. The underlined word '**inhibits**' in the passage can be replaced by ....

a. allows b. permits c. embarrasses d. prevents

20. Which of the following words from the passage is an antonym of "aware"?

a. Worried b. Careful c. Unconscious d. Uncomfortable

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Give a suitable title to the passage. Why do you think it is suitable?

....

....

22. Do you think 'nuisance' has a positive or a negative meaning? How are seat belts considered a nuisance to some drivers?
....
....

23. Why do you think some people think they will not have accidents? Do you agree with them or not?
....
....

24. Do you think a seat belt is really a trap? Why / Why not?
....
....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Each student has a talent of some kind. The problem is that it is not logical to teach all students in the same way. Can you ask a fish to climb a tree?
....
....

26. Translate into English:

إن المعلم الناجح هو من يتعامل مع كل طالب بشكل مختلف حسب قدراته واهتماماته، فلا جدوى من إهدار الوقت والجهد في إجبار الطالب أن يتعلم شيئًا لا يتوافق مع مَلَكَاته الطبيعية.
....
....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

The Olympic Games
....
....
....
....
....

Model 2

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They would have called me if the results ....
   a. had shown
   b. were shown
   c. had been shown
   d. are shown
2. I'll have a shower as soon as I .... home.
   a. am going
   b. are going to go
   c. go
   d. will go

3. Mr. Mahmoud is .... teacher I've ever seen. He gives a hand to everyone.

a. the more helpful b. more helpful c. the most helpful d. the least helpful

4. People in public transport .... wear face masks or they will be fined.

a. have to b. should c. must d. could

5. It was meant .... a painting of Cairo Tower, but I damaged it.

a. to be b. to being c. being d. to been

6. They lost the match easily. They should .... harder.

a. train b. be training c. have training d. have trained

7. Mrs Nagwa .... to Hurghada with her family next weekend. This is her plan.

a. will fly b. is flying c. flies d. is going to fly

8. She would have taken part in the race .... she had been ill.

a. if b. unless c. in case d. as long as

9. Tamer and Sherif are twins. Tamer is .... Sherif.

a. as old as b. older than c. oldest than d. the older

10. Doing sports regularly is very necessary to avoid illness. You .... do it.

a. must b. should c. have to d. need

11. Can you divide this melon .... two equal parts ?

a. onto b. into c. out to d. away from

12. The scientific study of the nature and the development of society and social behaviour means ....

a. physiology b. psychology c. sociology d. biology

13. This site usually has fake news. The synonym of "fake" in this sentence is ....

a. correct b. false c. real d. true

14. The teacher asked me to .... an answer to his question, but I couldn't do.

a. save b. win c. take d. give

15. When he had an accident, he was .... badly and very weak.

a. bleeding b. forgiving c. acting d. performing

16. I think he is .... in the crime.

a. contained b. excluded c. consisted d. involved

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

We do it every day, making decisions about people just from looking at their faces. The tendency to link facial features to personality has even crept into the English language, with words like <u>**'highbrow'**</u>.

For Naomi Tickle, these are the basis of 'personology' (the study of persons). This science was developed by a judge in the USA who discovered a pattern in the physical characteristics of the witnesses and defendants paraded before him. Since then, studies of thousands of individuals have validated his observations.

Ms Tickle, who had a practice in London, claims that 'personology' can act as an **invaluable** tool for planning careers. It is known that most of us spend 40 years of our life at work, so it is not surprising that 75 percent of our clients come to us for career guidance.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The word "invaluable" in the third paragraph can be replaced by ....
    a. not valuable b. very valuable c. fake d. valueless
18. What is 'highbrow' an example of ?
    a. Facial features b. Funny personality
    c. Make-up d. Serious illnesses
19. People visit Ms Tickle to ask for career ....
    a. promotion b. training c. tips d. audience
20. What is this passage mainly about?
    a. Physical characteristics b. Planning careers
    c. Career guidance d. Facial features and personality

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think that facial features are linked to personality? Why?

....

....

22. How do you think personology can help you plan your career? Mention **TWO** points at least.

....

....

23. Do you think '**highbrow**' gives a positive or a negative meaning? What do you think a 'highbrow person' mean?

....

....

24. Have you ever judged a person you don't know by their facial expression? Were you right in your judgment?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Time management allows you to do more tasks in a shorter time. This results in lowering your stress and leads to more career success.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

المشاركة فى الألعاب الرياضية مهمة للأطفال لأنها تقلل من التوتر وتحسن من مزاجهم. فهى تبنى عظام وعضلات صحية، وتزيد من اللياقة، وتحسن النوم وتطور مهارات تعاونهم.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words to your friend Salma on :

How to attract more tourists to visit Egypt

Your email address is hala@elmoasser.com and your friend's email address is salma@elmoasser.com

....

....

....

....

....

Model 3

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I can give you a lift if you .... with me to the mall.
   a. will come b. come c. came d. would come
2. My cousin's plane .... at 7:00 am.
   a. takes off b. is going to take off c. will take off d. is taking off
3. My brother ran 1000 metres in five minutes. I ran it in 4 minutes fifty-five seconds. This means I'm ....
   a. much slower than him b. much faster than him c. slightly faster than him d. slightly slower than him
4. To build a new building, you .... take a licence.
   a. must b. have to c. should d. ought to
5. She was meant .... first in the final exam. She studied hard.
   a. coming b. to be come c. to come d. to coming
6. My English teacher always encourages me .... better in my exams.
   a. not to do b. to do c. to doing d. not to doing

7. Do you intend to take part in the competition ? This means ....
   a. Are you taking part in the competition ?
   b. Are you going to take part in the competition ?
   c. Do you take part in the competition ?
   d. Will you take part in the competition ?
8. Were he .... , he would come on time.
   a. hurrying b. hurry c. to hurry d. hurried
9. The Amazon River is .... river in South America.
   a. the larger b. the largest c. larger than d. largest than
10. Wearing face masks in public transport is a / an .... nowadays.
   a. joke b. offer c. idea d. must
11. "Get .... your tablets and do the exercise on page 35, please." The teacher said to the students.
   a. from b. with c. off d. out
12. .... means the fact of having a place to live or stay, considered as a basic human need.
   a. Hatred b. Confidence c. Cooperation d. Shelter
13. Do you think he is an experienced mechanic ? The synonym of the word "experienced" is ....
   a. skilful b. amateur c. genius d. fable
14. They tried hard to .... first aid, but he was badly injured.
   a. make b. have c. do d. treat
15. He refused to reveal the .... of his information about the accident.
   a. source b. production c. author d. method
16. I like eating beans for breakfast. It is ....
   a. suspicious b. previous c. delicious d. ambiguous

B. Reading

2 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

As the plane circled over the airport, everyone sensed that something was wrong. The plane was moving unsteadily through the air. At that moment, the airhostess appeared. Speaking quickly, but almost in a whisper, she informed everyone that the pilot had fainted and asked if any of the passengers knew anything about machines, or at least how to drive a car. After a moment's hesitation, a man got up and followed the hostess into the pilot's cabin.

Moving the pilot aside, the man took his seat and listened carefully to the urgent instructions that were being sent by radio from the airport below. The man had to circle the airport several times in order to become familiar with the controls. The terrible moment came when he had to land. Following instructions, the man guided the plane

towards the airfield. It shook violently as it touched the ground, but after a long run, it stopped safely. Outside, a crowd of people who had been watching anxiously, rushed forward to congratulate "the pilot" on the perfect landing.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The main problem with the plane was ....
    a. the busy airport
    b. the unconscious pilot
    c. the difficult landing
    d. running out of fuel
18. The man who replaced the pilot ....
    a. was an ex-pilot
    b. flew a plane in the army
    c. needed to get used to the controls
    d. followed the hostess's instructions
19. But for ...., the man wouldn't have been able to land the plane safely.
    a. the hostess
    b. the pilot
    c. the fainting
    d. the airport controller
20. The word "**sensed**" can be replaced by ....
    a. felt
    b. fell
    c. filled
    d. failed

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Did that plane have its full crew? How do you know?

    ....

    ....

22. What distinguishes يميز a man who drives a car in this situation? Mention TWO points.

    ....

    ....

23. If you were the man who replaced the pilot, would you agree to fly the plane? Why/ Why not?

    ....

    ....

24. If you were a passenger on that plane, How would you feel? How would you help ?

    ....

    ....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

We should carry out high-quality educational programmes to upgrade primary stage students. These programmes should cope with the latest strategies that result in a truly creative child.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

إن المواطن العالمي هو شخص يدرك العالم من حوله ويعرف مكانته فيه، ويقوم هذا المواطن بدور مؤثر في مجتمعه، ويعمل مع الآخرين لجعل كوكبنا أكثر مساواة واستدامة.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words to your friend Reda on.

Tolerance

Your email address is nour@elmoasser.com and your friend's email address is reda@elmoasser.com

....

....

....

....

....

Model 4

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If I were you, I'd .... the tablet with me everywhere.
   a. take b. took c. had taken d. have taken
2. My father .... me a new laptop. He promised me to do that.
   a. buys b. is buying c. will buy d. is going to buy
3. My mother works in a bank near our house. It takes her .... time to be there.
   a. many b. few c. much d. little
4. If you ate while driving, you'd be fined. You .... do it.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. shouldn't
5. I .... yesterday.
   a. am supposed to travel b. was supposed to travelling c. am supposed to travelling d. was supposed to travel
6. Why didn't you take part in the race ? You .... it.
   a. can win b. couldn't won c. could have won d. can't win
7. From ten to twelve tomorrow morning, I .... an English exam.
   a. will have b. will be having c. am having d. have

8. Take this medicine .... you feel ill.

a. without b. unless c. in case of d. in case

9. Students aren't .... to use their books during exams. It is an open-book exam.

a. encouraged b. recommended c. prohibited d. allowed

10. My aunt arrived .... Luxor Airport coming from Mecca.

a. in b. for c. at d. on

11. A time when something special happens means a / an ....

a. meal b. revision c. occasion d. organisation

12. When something is extremely bad or serious, It is ....

a. comfortable b. comparable c. severe d. foreigner

13. She's always been mean with her money. The antonym of "mean" here is ....

a. generous b. active c. negative d. aggressive

14. People don't use .... means of communication. They are old-fashioned.

a. modern b. global c. artificial d. traditional

15. The car agent gave me an offer to .... my old car with a new one.

a. place b. produce c. replace d. introduce

16. My elder sister is very kind. She always tries hard to .... me happy.

a. do b. make c. support d. boost

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A lot of people like to keep a pet. However, those pets sometimes put their owners in embarrassing situations. That's what exactly happened to us.

Our dog, Rex, is a nice little one, which we have had for almost five years. He has soft and white hair, which is so smooth that every one of the family enjoys moving his hand on him. Rex is now convinced that he is actually a member of the family, and so has equal rights. It is his rights that Rex insists on but duties he has none. One day we were expecting some guests for dinner. Mother woke up early to prepare food before the guests arrived. Rex followed her and started barking asking for some food. Mother dismissed him from the kitchen, closed the door and carried on her cooking in peace. The guests arrived; took their seats around the table and started eating. All of a sudden Rex jumped in front of one of the lady guests. She was so frightened that she screamed loudly. In spite of Rex's strong resistance, my sister took him away. He kept shouting when he was locked up in a room. Finally, my mother gave him something to eat. One of the good things about Rex is that he forgets our little cruelties to him. Anyhow, he looked up at my mother gratefully, and ate with great appetite.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Rex jumped in front of the lady to ....
    a. welcome her
    b. show her that he had equal rights
    c. make her scream
    d. take food from her plate
18. One of the good things about Rex is that he ....
    a. remembers cruelties
    b. doesn't remember unkindness
    c. was ugly
    d. helps everyone
19. Rex has .... duties.
    a. lots of
    b. many
    c. no
    d. not
20. The underlined word '**equal**' in the passage can be replaced by ....
    a. the same
    b. same
    c. alike
    d. different

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Would you like to keep a pet? Why / Why not?

....

....

22. What do people like most about Rex? How do they express their feeling?

....

....

23. Do you think Rex is stupid in that situation? Why / Why not?

....

....

24. Did Rex tolerate the mother's punishment? How do you know?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Global warming is the long-term rise in temperature of the Earth's climate. It is a major aspect of current climate change demonstrated by direct temperature measurements.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

إن الطبيعة البشرية هي الخصائص النفسية العامة، والمشاعر، والصفات السلوكية للبشرية. هناك دائمًا صراع بين الخير والشر تعكسه هذه الطبيعة البشرية المتغيرة.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Spending time at a café may destroy your personality.

....

....

....

....

....

Model 5

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you feel thirsty, ... very cold water.
   a. not drink b. not to drink c. don't drink d. didn't drink
2. My sister has an interview tomorrow. She hopes that she .... well.
   a. will do b. is doing well c. is going to do d. does
3. Being bitten by a snake was .... experience I had during camping for years.
   a. the best b. the worst c. worse than d. better than
4. After coming home, you .... wash your hands to avoid coronavirus infection.
   a. have to b. ought c. must d. need
5. She .... the bedrooms on Fridays.
   a. is supposed to tidy b. was supposed to tidying c. is supposed to be tidied d. was supposing to tidy
6. The football coach warned the players .... shout with each other again.
   a. don't b. to not c. not to d. to
7. When I finish my homework, I .... a football match.
   a. am playing b. am going to play c. am playing d. will play
8. .... she a good car, she would travel by it to Assuit.
   a. Had b. Had had c. Having d. To have
9. Samah needn't .... the garbage. Her younger brother did two hours ago.
   a. collect b. to collect c. be collecting d. have collected
10. London is colder than Cairo in winter. This means that ....
    a. Cairo isn't as hot as London in summer. b. Cairo is hotter than London in winter.
    c. London isn't so cold as Cairo in winter. d. London is hotter than Cairo in summer.

11. When she saw the fire, she called .... help.
a. at b. with c. in d. for

12. Don't be nervous and .... calm.
a. stay b. forget c. bring d. forgive

13. Mr. Nabil is known to be meant with his children. The synonym of "mean" is ....
a. stingy b. kind c. tolerant d. confident

14. To .... means to do something funny to show that an event is special.
a. celebrate b. prevent c. protect d. estimate

15. This restaurant serves .... meals. I like eating there with my friends.
a. spicy b. tricky c. rotten d. dirty

16. Don't be .... You have to apologise for your colleague.
a. smart b. rude c. selfish d. fashionable

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Animals enjoy sports, just like people. Nobody would try to stop animals running in a field, for example, Horse racing is just the same really. Some horses like to run fast. Nobody can seriously argue that horse racing is cruel to animals.

I don't think that you can say that the circus **treat** animals cruelly. The animals get used to it, anyway. It's good entertainment for us, and the animals work hard for their living. At least nobody kills them or eats them !

More and more people think that hunting is wrong. Man doesn't have to kill wild animals any more, and we should all get used to the fact that killing for fun is pointless.

The most important point is that zoos are cruel to animals, and are worse than prisons because animals can never get used to being locked up in cages. And everybody goes and stares at them. We treat people in prison better than that.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. .... people see that hunting is wrong.
a. A few b. Only a few
c. The minority of d. The majority of

18. When animals are locked in cages, they are deprived of ....
a. starvation b. freedom c. prison d. leisure

19. The synonym of the word "**treat**" in the passage is ....
a. cure people and animal b. pay for something
c. behave towards or deal with d. punish someone

20. According to the passage, animals and people have something in common. It is that ....
a. they get pleasure from sports b. they loathe sports
c. they are cruel d. they stare at each other

B. Answer the following questions:

21. From your point of view, what is the best title for this passage ?
Why do you think that?

....

....

22. Are you for or against keeping animals in zoos? Justify your answer.

....

....

23. What do you think of using animals in circus? Why?

....

....

24. Do you think hunting animals for fun is wrong? Give a reason.

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

We should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in our life. Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats our hopes and aspirations . We should always look cheerfully at the future.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

يحلم الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم بعالم من الحب والصداقة، عالم حيث يستمتعون بالحرية والمساواة، وحيث يحب الفقراء الأغنيا، لأنهم يساعدونهم، عالم حيث يوجد احترام متبادل بين الكبار والشباب.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

How to help your community

....

....

....

....

....

Model 6

A. Vocabulary and Structures



يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونياً وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We would have stayed home if it .... yesterday night.
   a. rained b. has rained
   c. had rained d. rains

2. Next weekend, we .... in Ain-Sokhna. It's arranged.
   a. will go diving b. are going diving
   c. go diving c. are going to go diving

3. In your opinion, of maths and English which is the .... subject this year ?
   a. more difficult b. little difficult c. most difficult d. least difficult

4. In a "No Camera" area, people are .... to take photos.
   a. prohibited b. allowed c. asked d. permitted

5. Reham hasn't lost the game, but she seems .... joking.
   a. to being b. being c. to be d. be

6. I'm very late. .... me to the club, please ?
   a. Do you drive b. Are you driving
   c. Will you drive d. Are you going to drive

7. Were they to train well, ... the competition ?
   a. will they win b. would they win
   c. can they win d. would they have won

8. .... you practice English, the weaker you are.
   a. The most b. The more c. The less d. The least

9. In very cold countries, people .... wear heavy clothes in the street.
   a. don't have to b. must c. needn't d. should

10. Her birthday is .... the fifth of December. I will buy her a present.
    a. at b. in c. by d. on

11. A / An .... means something that you tell other people to make them laugh.
    a. tale b. aim c. ambition d. joke

12. Living costs are rising all the time. The synonym of "rising" in this sentence is ....
    a. decreasing b. reducing c. increasing d. producing

13. Try this exercise. It strengthens your ....
    a. injuries b. muscles c. members d. armies

14. My uncle is very .... He can make you do what he wants easily.
    a. aggressive b. effective c. cooperative d. persuasive

15. Breakfast in this restaurant is .... between 7 and 9 a.m.

a. survived b. served c. separated d. celebrated

16. Don't be .... Everything will be OK.

a. upset b. cool c. exhausted d. magnificent

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of the things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are widely used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use computers a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be **obtained** quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are generally associated with the world of science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Computers can store .... amounts of information.

a. few b. massive c. little d. a few

18. .... everything we do in the world is controlled by computers.

a. Never b. Early c. Rarely d. Almost

19. The word '**obtained**' in the passage can be replaced by ....

a. lost b. existed c. gained d. applied

20. The passage is mainly about ....

a. the uses of computers b. the drawbacks of computers

c. computers endanger the world d. computer in medicine

B. Answer the following questions:

21. "Computers are far more efficient than human beings". Do you agree or not? Why?

....

....

22. Which field do you think computers can help most? Why?

....

....

23. Give a suitable title to the passages and say why you think it is suitable.

....

....

24. Do you think computers will control the world one day? Why / Why not?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Literature offers readers the profound pleasure of enriching their lives culturally and morally. Literature tells us about history, epics, heavenly books and wonderful classical works.

....

....

26. Translate into English :

إن المرأة الحديدية هى واحدة من أهم روايات الخيال العلمى للكاتب البريطانى تيد هيوز، وتُعتبر هذه الرواية الهادفة تكملة لرواية الرجل الحديدى حيث تتناول واحدة من القضايا العامة.

....

....

D. Writing

4 Write an email of about 180 words on :

Write an email to your friend telling him about the bad habits people do in the streets and how to get rid of them. Your email address is magdi@gmail.com and your friend's email address is helmi@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

Model 7

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you have a problem with your tablet, ... the technician at once.
   a. will phone b. phone
   c. phoned d. would phone
2. I get up late, so I missed the first lesson. It .... at 8 a.m.
   a. will start b. is going to start c. is starting c. starts
3. He is .... careful driver in the factory. He has many accidents recently.
   a. the least b. the less c. the most d. the more
4. When it is very hot and sunny, people .... walk in the street with umbrellas.
   a. needn't b. aren't allowed c. must d. have to

5. He .... the first prize.

a. was meaning to win
b. was meant to win
c. was meant to winning
d. was meaning winning

6. My uncle has decided to build a new floor next month. He .... it.

a. is going to build
b. is building
c. will build
d. builds

7. If it weren't for his assistance, the meeting ....

a. would been cancelled
b. will have cancelled
c. would be cancelled
d. would cancel

8. The weather forecast says that it is warmer today .... yesterday.

a. than it was
b. as it was
c. than was it
d. as was it

9. Old cans and bottles must ....

a. be recycling
b. recycle
c. recycling
d. be recycled

10. Can you give me a reply .... this question ?

a. for
b. at
c. to
d. by

11. Tarek was very happy when he .... his final exam.

a. controlled
b. succeeded
c. followed
d. passed

12. To .... means to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet, or computer.

a. download
b. upload
c. update
d. upgrade

13. In summer, the sun rises at 5 : 30 every morning. The antonym of "rises" is ....

a. sets
b. moves
c. sends
d. sits

14. The soldier used his .... to defend himself against the enemies.

a. sword
b. torch
c. fork
d. spoon

15. They were very happy to .... their son's success. They had a big party.

a. negotiate
b. appreciate
c. celebrate
d. stimulate

16. I received an encouraging .... to my new advertisement. I was hopeful.

a. linguist
b. suffix
c. response
d. object

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A student passed all his school examinations and then went to a college to continue his studies. There, he enrolled in a course in geography. But after the first lecture, he didn't attend any more lectures. The geography lecturer noticed this student was always absent and that he had changed to another course, so he was very surprised to see the boy's name on the list of students who wanted to take the geography examination at the end of the year.

The lecturer had prepared a difficult examination paper, which followed his lectures very closely, and he was eager to see how this student answered the questions. When he examined the answers, he found only one small mistake. So, he sent for the student and told him that he was curious to know how he was able to find only one little mistake although the student came to the first lecture and he was absent from all the others. To his great surprise, the student told him that he would not have made that mistake if he hadn't been confused by his first lecture.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Why was the lecturer surprised when he saw the student's name on the list of the students wanting to take the exams?
    a. As the student didn't like geography lectures.
    b. As the student attended only one lecture.
    c. As the student had changed to another course.
    d. As the student only attended geography lectures.
18. .... is the synonym of "enroll".
    a. Register b. Pay c. Cost d. Research
19. The student mentioned in the passage must have been ....
    a. foolish b. a fool c. bright d. sap
20. According to the student, he attended the first lecture .... he made the mistake.
    a. therefore b. despite c. because d. although

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think learning at universities is different from learning at school? How ?
....
....
22. What do you think of the student mentioned in the passage ? Would you like to be like him?
....
....
23. Are you for or against difficult exams? Justify your answer.
....
....
24. In your opinion, is it useful or not for university students to attend lectures? Why?
....
....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic : Reading is certainly a good habit.

Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood. Children learn good habits by
It amuses, instructs, and broadens people's minds.
instruction and encouragement.
imitation of their elders as well as by
....
....

26. Translate into English :

إن سر النجاح فى الحياة هو أنه يجب على المرء أن يكون مستعداً حين تواتيه الفرصة. لذلك لا تنتظر أن يقدم لك النجاح على طبق من فضة. فعليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تتحلى بالعزيمة لتحقق ما تصبوا إليه.
....
....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

What the youth can do to change the future of their country.

Model 8

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He .... the faculty he likes if he exerts more efforts.
   a. may join b. would join c. could join d. would have joined
2. Today, there's a football match between Al-Ahly and Zamalek. Which team do you think .... the match ?
   a. is winning b. will win c. wins c. is going to win
3. Of the two tablets, my tablet is ....
   a. more cheapest b. less cheap c. cheapest d. the cheaper
4. The manger told the employees that they .... work two additional hours tomorrow.
   a. will need b. had to c. must d. will have to
5. It .... a nice poem, but it wasn't.
   a. was meant being b. was meant to being c. was meaning to be d. was meant to be
6. Mariam refused .... to the club with me.
   a. to coming b. not to come c. to come d. not to coming
7. Everything is arranged for my brother's birthday party. He .... it tomorrow evening.
   a. has b. is going to have c. is having d. will have
8. .... his report, the truth would have been hidden.
   a. In case b. Unless c. As long as d. Without
9. When it is a holiday, all the governmental offices have to ....
   a. be closed b. closing c. be closing d. closed
10. To take all the money, he plotted .... his brother.
    a. on b. against c. behind d. above
11. A / An .... means money for someone who finds or helps someone important.
    a. reward b. gift c. award d. indicator

12. Before the exam result, Mona was very upset. The synonym of "upset" is ....
a. confused
b. disappointed
c. anxious
d. marvelous

13. Your teaching methods are .... You should depend on some modern ways.
a. natural
b. industrial
c. normal
d. traditional

14. My uncle works as a guide in a tourist company. The word "guide" here is a / an ....
a. noun
b. verb
c. adjective
d. adverb

15. When someone acts in plays, he is a / an ....
a. novelist
b. inspector
c. author
d. character

16. Modern technology may be very harmful if it is ....
a. followed
b. respected
c. wasted
d. misused

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most countries in the world now welcome tourists because of the money they bring in. Many countries make great efforts to encourage tourism, and many also depend on what they earn from it to keep their economies going.

People who travel as tourists can choose the form of tourism best suits them. Some people like adventure tourism while others prefer cultural tourism. People who have an illness of some kind prefer medical tourism. Those who care about wildlife and the environment prefer ecotourism.

People who like adventure will even try to visit countries. Companies regularly arrange trips through the Sahara Desert or to Himalayan Mountains for whoever enjoys such trips, but the numbers of visitors are small. Most tourists try to choose whichever places have fairly comfortable, cheap hotels, quite good food, reasonable safety, sunny weather or unusual things to see. Their choice of a place for a holiday also depends on when they can get away; it is not very pleasant to go to a place when it is having its worst weather.

One big problem for a nation wishing to attract tourists is the cost of building hotels for them. Building good hotels swallows up a lot of money, and many of the countries that need the tourists are poor. What they spend on building has to be borrowed from foreign banks. Another problem is that more and more big international companies are building hotels all over the world, so that the profits from a hotel often do not stay in the country in which it has been built.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Some people don't go to a place for a holiday although they like it because ....
a. it is very pleasant
b. it is fairly comfortable
c. they might be treated well
d. of worse weather

18. Which of the following is not a positive thing for poor countries?
a. Comfortable Hotels.
b. Hospitable people.
c. High cost of having good hotels.
d. Job opportunities.

19. Young people would be more likely to choose .... tourism.

a. adventure
b. medical
c. conference
d. cultural

20. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?

a. Drawbacks of Tourism
b. Forms of Tourism
c. Benefits of Tourism
d. Little about Tourist Industry

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What type of tourism would you choose? Why?

....

....

22. What type / types of tourism can Egypt provide? Mention at least TWO types.

....

....

23. Which tourist destination do you recommend to tourists visiting Egypt? Why?

....

....

24. What solutions do you suggest to help poor countries attract more tourists? Make at least two suggestions.

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Personal hobbies are vital for the health and time of individuals in modern societies. Hobbies help them satisfy their desires and get rid of the pressures of heavy work.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

لابد من الاهتمام بالأدب الموجّه إلى الطفل، فأدب الأطفال يلعب دورًا حيويًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، فهو يطور كلًا من الثروة اللغوية للأطفال وحسهم النقدى كما يؤدى إلى إثراء خيال الطفل وتطلعاته.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Your past habits

....

....

....

....

....

Model 9

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you had had enough money, ... ?
   a. would have you bought that car
   b. would you that car have bought
   c. would you bought have that car
   d. would you have bought that car
2. Stop ! I .... you.
   a. am killing b. kill c. will kill c. am going to kill
3. Smoking .... here. You can smoke outside this building.
   a. isn't banned b. isn't allowed c. is allowed d. is permitted
4. This is .... hotel I've every been to.
   a. best b. better c. the better d. the best
5. He is supposed .... the site all night.
   a. to guard b. to guarding c. being guard d. to be guard
6. The shopkeeper asked his customers .... noise at the supermarket.
   a. to make b. not to make c. making d. to making
7. Experts think that electric cars .... in the near future.
   a. are spreading b. spread c. are going to spread d. will spread
8. We will travel by bus .... we get train tickets.
   a. unless b. if c. as long as d. in case of
9. People .... use their mobile phones during driving.
   a. have to b. should c. mustn't d. oughtn't to
10. No sport is more popular than football. This means that ....
    a. all sports are more popular than football b. football is the most popular sport
    c. sports are as popular as football d. football isn't so popular as other sports
11. I used to stay .... touch with my friends in summer holidays.
    a. in b. on c. at d. of
12. A / An .... is a letter or a group of letters added at the end of a word to make another word.
    a. suffix b. award c. article d. prefix
13. It is unhealthy to eat big .... of ice cream during summer.
    a. amounts b. levels c. grades d. degrees
14. You should follow the proper procedures for dealing with complaints. The synonym of the word "proper" in this sentence is ....
    a. correct b. wrong c. ambiguous d. positive

15. Your essay is very long. Can you .... it, please ?

a. recognize b. realize c. specialise d. summarise

16. Rania wanted to buy her mother a new bag, but she doesn't .... enough money.

a. win b. spend c. pay d. have

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Sport is an important part of today's society and plays a large role in people's lives. Now, more than ever, sport events dominate headlines and athletes have become national heroes.

From a social standpoint, sport plays a positive role in uniting people from different social backgrounds in support of their favourite team. However, just as sport unites people so it can divide them, as is often demonstrated by crowd violence at football matches. Sport is also an important part of every child's schooling, as it plays a big role in their physical and mental development. It teaches children how to work as part of a team and cooperate with others, while at the same time improving their physical condition. The only drawback to this is that children who are less able to perform well in sports are likely to feel inadequate in comparison with their more gifted classmates, which may affect their self-confidence.

From an economic point of view, sport can be very profitable as it attracts a lot of advertising. On one hand, this creates profit for the sporting industry which allows for improvement and expansion, on the other hand, large sums of money are often paid to event organizers to promote products such as cigarettes, which are harmful to one's health.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. According to the passage, sport has two social effects on people, what are they?

a. As well as combining people , it can divide them.

b. It can split people but has no positive effect.

c. It can't unite people and has a negative effect.

d. It can be profitable as it attracts a lot of advertising.

18. The children who are likely to feel inadequate are usually ....

a. good at sport b. experts at sport c. fan of sport d. weak in sport

19. One demerit of sport at football matches is that ....

a. it improves the physical condition. b. it often leads to violent actions.

c. it creates profit for the sporting industry. d. it develops the mental condition.

20. The word "..........." in the passage is the antonym of "loss" .

a. support b. profit c. drawback d. expansion

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Are you in favour of involving sport during the school day ? Why / Why not ?

....

....

22. What do you think of "Fair play" as a sporting slogan? Justify your answer.

....

....

23. Do you agree that sporting competitions have a moral ? If yes, what is it? If no, why?

....

....

24. Do you think the government should encourage people to practices sport? How?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life. He has to be valued like treasures . In fact, the feeling of friendship bears the meaning of intimacy and the purity of relationship.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

لقد أدركت الدولة أن التعليم هو حجر الزاوية فى تحقيق التقدم، ولذا تزود وزارة التربية والتعليم المدارس بكل المقومات الممكنة التى تجعل اليوم الدراسى مفيد وممتع. فالمدرسة ليست أماكن لتعلم العلوم المختلفة فقط، ولكن أيضًا لاكتساب السلوكيات الصحيحة.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Friendship.

....

....

....

....

....

Model 10

A. Vocabulary and Structures



يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They .... the charity if they had enough time.

a. visit
b. would have visited
c. would visit
d. visited

2. **Amal :** My birthday party will be next Thursday. Will you come ?
Soheir : Yes, of course. How old .... ?
a. will you be b. are you being c. are you going to be c. are you

3. Young people .... show respect to the old people in their conversations.
a. need b. needn't c. mustn't d. must

4. My friend's school bag is .... mine. He only takes his tablet.
a. heavier than b. the heaviest c. lighter than d. the lightest

5. I recommend buying this flat. It .... the best flat that you can buy.
a. was supposed to be b. is supposed being
c. is supposed to be d. was supposed being

6. Doctors advised people .... their face masks in public places.
a. not to wear b. wearing c. to wearing d. to wear

7. At this time next week, I .... on the beach in Sharm El-Sheikh.
a. play b. will play c. am going to play d. will be playing

8. If it .... for his laptop, I wouldn't have been examined.
a. had been b. hadn't been c. were been d. weren't

9. Which is .... popular, football or basketball ?
a. most b. many c. much d. more

10. Our children .... to follow healthy habits from their early days.
a. must be taught b. should teach c. must teach d. have be taught

11. You should get .... with your neighbours.
a. in b. about c. by d. on

12. A / An .... means a letter or group of letters added at the beginning of a word to change its meaning.
a. apex b. index c. suffix d. prefix

13. It .... three hours to clean your father's car. Hurry up, please.
a. takes b. does c. spends d. makes

14. Being upset all the time is bad for your health. The antonym of the word "upset" is ....
a. cold b. cool c. warm d. hot

15. The police are investigating the .... everywhere to know the killer.
a. suspect b. respect c. aspect d. defect

16. My mother asked me to .... the food because she had had a bad headache.
a. do b. serve c. create d. imagine

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Does anyone know the number of living beings? Have scientists studied all the known species? Do you have an idea that some species have already disappeared or will disappear in the future?

What we know about many creatures on earth is still very little. Even the species that we know haven't all been studied well yet. Here is a marvelous kind of insect. It is the bee. Bees cannot talk, so they dance instead. They do this to let each other know where food can be found. A dancing bee begins by running in a straight line, and as she does so, she <u>waggles</u> her body to attract the other bees' attention. After going a certain distance along, she runs to the left and hurries back to her run again. But this time, she turns to the right at the end, and thus completing a sort of figure eight.

To human observers, the dance lacks meaning. To bees, it is full of detail, and the detail is not only meaningful but it is also vital to survival. It shows them which direction to take off and how far to go to reach the flowers on which they depend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The underlined word "**waggles**" can be replaced by ....
   a. runs b. dances c. shakes d. washes

18. People wrongly think the bees' dance has no ....
   a. vitality b. meaning c. detail d. colour

19. Why does a bee waggle her body?
   a. To get in shape.
   b. To please other bees.
   c. To warm herself.
   d. To tell other bees where to find food.

20. What is the best title for the passage?
   a. The Language of Bees
   b. Unknown Species
   c. Endangered Species
   d. Extinct Species

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What language do bees speak? Is it a verbal language?

....

....

22. Which arithmetic figure does the bee complete in her dance? How do you think she knew how to complete it?

....

....

23. Do you think dancing is important to bees? Why / Why not?

....

....

24. Are the bees that dance male or female? How do you know?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Students with special needs are in urgent need of a special educational environment. That's why teachers should maintain an organized classroom and limit distractions to help them.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

يصبح اقتصاد البلد أكثر إنتاجية بالتزامن مع زيادة نسبة العمال المتعلمين، فالتعليم هو استثمار في رأس المال البشري، على غرار الاستثمار في معدات أفضل.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Doing things late does not help you succeed.

....

....

....

....

....

Model 11

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If we water plants regularly, they ....
   a. will grow b. grow
   c. would grow d. can grow
2. We .... a play at the theatre tonight. We've got the tickets.
   a. will watch b. are watching
   c. watch c. are going to watch
3. Some students think that electronic exams are .... than paper exams.
   a. easier b. as easy as c. the easiest d. the easiest
4. .... bring my tablet to school every day or it isn't necessary ?
   a. Do I have b. Must I c. Should I d. Had I
5. It can't be a cat. You seem ....
   a. be lying b. being lie c. to lying d. to be lying
6. Our English teacher advised us .... El-Moasser English book because it is very useful.
   a. to buy b. not to buy c. to not buy d. to buying

7. I intend to take an English course during the next summer holiday. I .... it.
   a. will take b. am taking c. am going to take d. take
8. .... he offer me an apple, I will take it.
   a. Had b. Were c. Should d. Unless
9. Shakespeare is .... writer in the world.
   a. most famous b. more famous c. the most famous d. the more famous
10. It is necessary to pay your bill before the 10th of May or you will pay a fine. You .... pay it.
   a. ought to b. should c. have to d. must
11. Can you bring .... some events happened in your childhood ?
   a. forward b. back c. on d. off
12. The car explosion .... damage to the surrounding buildings.
   a. caused b. got c. saved d. sent
13. To .... means to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy.
   a. laugh b. boost c. frown d. exclaim
14. Black pearls are very rare, so they are very valuable. The synonym of the word "rare" in this sentence is ....
   a. scarce b. familiar c. popular d. frequent
15. It's very useful to learn any language from a .... speaker.
   a. negative b. foreign c. strange d. native
16. You can trust him because he is a / an .... person.
   a. recognizable b. reliable c. unreliable d. employable

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I'm going to tell you a meaningful story. Once upon a time, two friends were travelling through a forest on foot. One of them is called Atef. The other is called Hamdi. A bear appeared out of the blue and started to run after them. Without hesitation, Atef rushed to the nearest tree and climbed as fast as he could to its top branches. His friend, Hamdi, threw himself to the ground and pretended he was dead. He stayed very <u>still</u> when the bear came close to him. He didn't move when the bear's nose touched his ear. Then the bear went away.

He waited for a little time and then he called Atef who was in the tree, "It's all right now. The bear has gone. You can come down." Atef, who was frightened, came down slowly, "The bear was close to your ear." Atef said "What did it say?" Hamdi laughed and said, "It told me to look for another friend because a friend who runs away when there is danger isn't a real friend."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The bear didn't eat the friend who pretended to be dead because ....

a. he was thin
b. he was brave
c. it doesn't eat the dead
d. he smelt bad

18. The underlined word "**still**" in the passage can be replaced by ....

a. movable
b. moving
c. motionless
d. active

19. Atef can be described as a / an .... friend.

a. brave
b. cowardly
c. loyal
d. evil

20. Which of the following is the best title for the story?

a. A False Friend
b. A True Friend
c. An Intelligent Bear
d. A Walk in the Forest

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think the bear really told Hamdi anything? How do you know?

....

....

22. Who is wiser, Atef or Hamdi? Why?

....

....

23. Which do you think is safer in this situation, climbing a tree or pretending to be dead ?

....

....

24. What moral lessons do you learn from this story? Mention at least TWO lessons.

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

School leadership teams have a vital role in shaping the right culture of students. This enables us to create good citizens who can share effectively in society.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

تُعد صعوبات التعلم من أهم الأمور التى تهم العديد من التربويين فى الوقت الحاضر. يمكن أن تعيق بعض هذه المشكلات مهارات التعلم الأساسية مثل القراءة والكتابة.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on :

Write an email to your friend telling him about the best ways she can follow to develop her skills. Your email address is soha@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is lamya@gmail.com

Model 12

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My aunt would be a millionaire if she .... that factory.
   a. bought b. buys c. has bought d. had bought
2. I don't think it .... tomorrow.
   a. rains b. is going to rain c. is raining c. will rain
3. The higher you go, ... oxygen there's in the air.
   a. the more b. the most c. the less d. the fewer
4. My father's car broke down last Friday. He .... a taxi to his work every day.
   a. necessary take b. has to take c. had to take d. should take
5. She was .... by now.
   a. meaning to recover b. meant recovering c. meant to recovering d. meant recover
6. My cousin promised .... me a new T-shirt. He is very kind to me.
   a. not to buy b. to buying c. to buy d. not to buying
7. The pharmacy .... at 12 p.m. Hurry up to buy the medicine we need.
   a. closes b. will close c. is closing d. is going to close
8. .... I the manager, I would hold a meeting at once.
   a. Had b. Should c. Would d. Were
9. You should read "King Lear" many times. It is .... play I have ever read.
   a. more exciting b. few exciting c. the most exciting d. less exciting
10. My brother spent much time .... an essay about globalisation.
   a. to write b. writing c. write d. to writing
11. At the age of technology, you can do many difficult things .... the touch of a button.
   a. at b. in c. on d. for

12. Damietta is known for .... good furniture.

a. doing b. transporting c. importing d. making

13. This dance is one of the traditional customs in this area. The synonym of the word "traditional" is ....

a. informal b. classical c. abnormal d. global

14. A / An .... means the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.

a. idea b. tone c. topic d. aim

15. I have just made a / an .... to the Wikipedia article on guerillas.

a. effect b. target c. update d. button

16. Do you think he .... punishment for his bad behaviour ?

a. deserved b. reserved c. served d. preserved

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last week, I went to a favourite restaurant of mine, where I often went to eat two or three times a week. I knew the owner well and frequently complimented him on his excellent cooking. While I was waiting for the soup to arrive, I noticed that a man sitting at a corner table near the door kept glancing in my direction , as if he knew me. I certainly didn't know him , for I never forget a face. He was keeping an eye on me. When the waiter brought my soup, the man was clearly puzzled by the familiar way in which the waiter and I addressed each other. Eventually he got up and went into the kitchen . After a few minutes he came out again, paid his bill and left without another glance in my direction.

When I had finished , I asked the owner of the restaurant what the man had wanted. "Well," he said , "That man was a detective" , "Really ?" I said , considerably surprised. "He was certainly interested in me, But why?" "He followed you here because he thought you were a man he was looking for", the owner of the restaurant said, "When he came into the kitchen , he showed me a photograph of the wanted man, he certainly looked like you ! Of course, since we know you here, I was able to convince him that he had a mistake".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. We understood from the passage that the detective ....

a. was following the wrong man b. didn't suspect the writer

c. was following the right man d. knew the man wanted by the police

18. "He was keeping an eye on me" . This means he was .... me.

a. glancing at b. looking at

c. watching d. looking in the direction of

19. The word "..........." in the passage is the antonym of "disapproved" .

a. puzzled b. complimented c. addressed d. glanced

20. According to the passage, which of the following is not true ?
 a. The detective paid the bell before leaving b. The restaurant's food was delicious
 c. The waiter hasn't seen the writer before. d. The writer knew the restaurant owner well

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you prefer to have your food at restaurants or at home? Give a reason.

....

....

22. The job of a detective needs special qualities, do you agree or not ? Justify your answer.

....

....

23. If you were the writer, how would you behave if someone looked at you strangely ? Why ?

....

....

24. Do you think that the writer was lucky ? Why / Why not ?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Unemployment and illiteracy are two major causes that may lead to crimes and violence. So we have to create job opportunities for youth. It is also the responsibility of all sectors of society to eradicate illiteracy.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

الإدمان هو أحد أخطر الأمراض فى هذا العصر. المشكلة التى تواجه معظم الدول ليست فقط فى كيفية مكافحة هذه العادة الضارة بل أيضًا فى كيفية محو آثارها الخطيرة على الشباب.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Esam telling him about the place where you are going to spend your mid-year holiday. Your name is Hamza and your email address is hamza2003@gmail.com and your friend's email is esam100@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....





A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... if your tablet had been broken before the final exam ?
   a. What you would have done b. What would have you done
   c. What you have would done d. What would you have done
2. The more you study, the .... marks you gain.
   a. less b. higher c. most c. highest
3. Shahd has an important meeting tomorrow morning, so she .... early.
   a. should have slept b. oughtn't to sleep c. has to sleep d. mustn't have sleep
4. Ahmed is known to be clever. He .... the full mark easily.
   a. is getting b. gets c. is going to get d. will get
5. It was supposed .... the easiest exam.
   a. to being b. being c. be d. to be
6. The oculist warned me .... too much TV.
   a. to watch b. not to watching c. to watching d. not to watch
7. .... Ali come early, he'd have taken a rest before the conference.
   a. Should b. Had c. Were d. Have
8. Do you think life in the country is .... life in a new city ?
   a. quieter than b. the most quiet c. the quietest d. as quiet
9. Our teacher said that he .... walk about 3 km to school every day during his childhood.
   a. has to b. needs to c. had to d. must
10. His theft was like a stab........... the back for his father. He couldn't believe it.
    a. of b. on c. in d. at
11. When you have a health problem, you have to .... your doctor.
    a. consult b. advise c. suggest d. recommend
12. .... means old ways of doing things that don't change.
    a. Local b. Traditional c. Normal d. Vocational
13. It's rare to find such loyalty these days. The antonym of "rare" is ....
    a. dishonest b. unusual c. common d. traditional
14. He .... us for hours by his stories and jokes.
    a. annoyed b. bothered c. interrupted d. entertained
15. The villagers often .... livestock on their farms.
    a. buy b. eat c. keep d. sell

16. You should control your .... or you will face a big problem.

a. degree b. anger c. democracy d. bravery

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of the things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are **widely** used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use computers a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be obtained quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are generally associated with the world of science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Computers ...., so the modern world is controlled by them.

a. are as inefficient as people b. are huge machines

c. more efficient than people d. work in an old-fashioned way

18. Computers can store........... amounts of information.

a. few b. massive c. little d. a few

19. You can tell the computer the field of science you are interested in and it supplies you with information ....

a. in no time b. after a long time c. after two hours d. two hours later

20. The antonym of "**widely**" is ....

a. to a great extent b. slightly c. little d. narrow

B. Answer the following questions:

21. In your opinion, what is the best title for this passage ? Why is this title in particular ?

....

....

22. Computers save time and effort , do you agree ? Why ?

....

....

23. Are you for or against using the computer in every thing we do instead of humans ? Explain your point of view.

....

....

24. Do you think that modern technology has improved our life. How ?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Bosses used to discourage humour in the workplace. They thought that if people were laughing or having fun, then they weren't working hard. But now, that opinion has changed. Studies have shown numerous benefits of combining humour and work.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

مصر لديها تاريخ ثقافى عريق، ويشهد التاريخ أن أجدادنا هم المعلمون الأوائل للبشرية، وأن مصر هى مهد الحضارة وستظل شريك مسئول وفعال فى جهود نشر التنوير والمعرفة.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Encouraging local products, why and how ?

....

....

....

....

....

Model 14

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your English .... if you want to get this job. You can take a course.
   a. would improve
   b. will be improved
   c. should be improved
   d. can improve
2. I don't think it .... tomorrow. The sky is very clear.
   a. rains
   b. is going to rain
   c. is raining
   c. will rain

3. Samia is the same weight as Ola. This means that ....
   a. Ola is heavier than Samia
   b. Samia is heavier than Ola
   c. Ola is as heavy as Samia
   d. Samia isn't as heavy as Ola
4. .... before going camping ?
   a. What you do have to buy
   b. What do have you to buy
   c. What do you have to buy
   d. What have you buy to do
5. This novel .... great success, but it didn't succeed.
   a. was meant to make
   b. was meaning to make
   c. was making to mean
   d. was meant to making
6. The police officer asked the driver .... the limited speed or he will be fined.
   a. to exceed b. to exceeding c. not to exceed d. to not exceeding
7. Nourhan will be punished for her mistake .... she apologizes for her teacher.
   a. unless b. provided c. as long as d. in case
8. This laptop is .... one in the shop. I can't buy it.
   a. more expensive
   b. most expensive
   c. the more expensive
   d. the most expensive
9. You have a big competition next week. You .... train very hard.
   a. must b. have to c. had to d. will
10. The metro train was full, so he had to wait .... the next one.
   a. about b. of c. for d. behind
11. The criminal .... himself not to be recognised by the police.
   a. disappointed b. disguised c. described d. discovered
12. This fish has a nice smell. I think it is going to be delicious. The antonym of the word "delicious" is ....
   a. tasteless b. spicy c. tasty d. harmless
13. It's kind of you to .... his financial problem with the bank.
   a. give b. solve c. stay d. evaluate
14. To give people food or drink means to ....
   a. serve b. deserve c. reserve d. preserve
15. When he spilled his cup of coffee on the carpet, he was ....
   a. relaxed b. confusing c. confused d. amazing
16. He .... for his government for more than ten years. He was active.
   a. applied b. spied c. attacked d. attracted

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The neighbours closest to my house are my favourite . The man is a retired army officer and his wife is still working for the nearby university .They are hospitable and usually invite friends to lunch. It is enjoyable to wake up on a Friday morning to the

sounds of their music. However , I also love their laughing when they make a mistake in their playing. The man's main interest is carpentry, he practices his hobby in the garden, making pieces of furniture.

They are ideal because they are helpful . I respect them as they never interfere in my private affairs. We've helped each other with **numerous** emergencies as fire and car accidents. We cooperate with each other in little ways as bringing in the mails. We invite them to with some of their friends who are poets, painters and professors to have meals. Sometimes , we go out together to share special occasions. Simply we live next to door peacefully side by side and I'm happy to say in a friendly neighbourhood.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. One of the reasons why the writer likes his neighbours is that ....
    a. they always make mistakes in their playing
    b. they are welcoming to guests
    c. they interfere in the writer's affairs
    d. they are unemployed people

18. The writer and his neighbours are .... to each other especially at the time of need.
    a. neighbourly b. neighbouring c. cruel d. tricky

19. The word "**numerous**" in the passage is synonymous with the word "...........".
    a. almost b. rare c. many d. few

20. The male neighbour of the writer ....
    a. works for the university nearby
    b. is noisy when he practices his hobby
    c. no longer has a job
    d. he works as an army officer

B. Answer the following questions:

21. It is important to live in a friendly neighbourhood , do you agree ? Why ?

....

....

22. Are you for or against helping our neighbours? If yes, say how giving one suggestion, if no say why ?

....

....

23. Do you have neighbours from hell? Justify your answer.

....

....

24. The writer's neighbour practise his hobby in his garden, do you approve that ? Why /Why not?

....

....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

A man cannot live in society without considering the interests of others as well as his own interests. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions ought not to be unjust or harmful to others.

....

....

26. Translate into English:

تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية لتحقيق معدلات عالية من النمو والاستثمار في محاولة لخلق فرص عمل جديدة للشباب والقضاء على البطالة التي تعتبر التحدي الرئيسي الذي يواجه مصر في الوقت الحاضر.

....

....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Noha congratulating her on her success. Your name is Lamia and your email address is lamia20@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

Model 15

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you were a celebrity, ... ?
   a. how you would behave
   b. how would you behave
   c. how behave you would
   d. how you behave would
2. Shady is the most intelligent student in the class. This means that ....
   a. No student is more intelligent than Shady
   b. Shady is more intelligent than a student
   c. Other students are more intelligent than Shady
   c. All students are as intelligent as Shady
3. Huda will be free till eleven o'clock. After that, she .... an important meeting with her employees.
   a. has
   b. will be having
   c. is going to have
   d. will have

4. If you are very hot or have a cough, you .... by a doctor at once.

a. have to see b. must be seen c. had to be seen d. should see

5. It was meant .... a nice taste, but I burnt it.

a. giving b. give c. to giving d. to give

6. My grandfather advised me .... my teeth before sleeping.

a. to brush b. to not brush c. not to brush d. to brushing

7. You can join the faculty you want .... passing your exams with high marks.

a. without b. in case c. in case of d. unless

8. Which is .... the internet or the mobile phone ?

a. most useful b. little useful c. more useful d. much useful

9. .... to fasten my seat belt while driving ?

a. Must I b. Have I c. Is it must d. Is it a must

10. She was guilty .... stealing the gold ring.

a. of b. in c. on d. with

11. To .... means to get something ready to eat or use.

a. repair b. remind c. appear d. prepare

12. It's accepted to .... a mistake, but it isn't accepted to repeat it many times.

a. create b. invent c. make d. speak

13. Maha cooks delicious food for her family. The synonym of "delicious" is ....

a. distasteful b. tasty c. unique d. familiar

14. Mr. Nabil is the .... of the new branch of this clothes factory.

a. detective b. director c. athlete d. surgeon

15. The oculist asked me if I could .... the difference between the two letters.

a. tell b. say c. speak d. talk

16. My brother's or sister's son is my ....

a. cousin b. niece c. daughter d. nephew

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Are supermarkets designed to persuade us to buy more? When you enter a supermarket, the manager knows better than you do how you will behave – which way you will walk, where you'll look, what will make you buy one product rather than another. The layout of a supermarket is designed to take shoppers around the store, from left to right. Then, shoppers will **pay attention to** all the products.

Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown near supermarket entrances. This gives the **impression** that only healthy food is sold in the shop. Basic foods that everyone buys, like sugar and tea, are not put next to each other. They are kept in different places so customers go past other attractive goods before they find them. In this way, shoppers are encouraged to buy products that they do not really need.

Customers also buy more when the shelves are full than they are half-empty. They do not like to buy from shelves with few products on them because they feel there is something wrong with those products.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title of this text is ....
    a. Supermarket Owners
    b. Supermarket and Children
    c. Successful Supermarkets
    d. Supermarket entrances

18. The best antonym of the expression " **pay attention to**" in this passage is ....
    a. distract
    b. ignore
    c. attract
    d. forget

19. The word '**impression**' in the passage can be substituted by ....
    a. impact
    b. admiration
    c. opinion
    d. disgust

20. Which of the following is not an attractive thing for customers?
    a. Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown away from supermarket entrances.
    b. Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown near supermarket entrances.
    c. Shelves are empty or with few products.
    d. Sugar and tea are shown near supermarket entrances.

B. Answer the following questions:

21. If you were the owner of a supermarket, would you organise it the way mentioned in the passage? Why / Why not?

22. Have you ever bought something you do not need? Why?

23. Why do you think people are attracted by the view of fresh fruit and vegetables? What else can affect them?

24. How do you think a shopper can protect himself from buying things he do not need? Make at least TWO suggestions.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Food preservation prevents the growth of microorganisms besides slowing the oxidation of fats. In fact, this oxidation causes a lot of serious diseases such as cancer.

26. Translate into English:

يُمكن تدوين البيانات على الأطعمة المواطنين من الحصول على معلومات مفيدة حول محتوى المنتجات الغذائية. وهذا يساعد المستهلكين على اتخاذ قرار مستنير أثناء شراء المواد الغذائية الخاصة بهم.

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on :

Write an email to your foreign friend about the best habits your neighbours have. Your email address is suzy87@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is areej@mail.com

General Exercises collected from SB&WB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

Practice Exercises 1

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. My mother has .... a delicious meal of chicken and rice.
   a. prepared   b. celebrated   c. done   d. cook
2. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or .... food such as fish and nuts ?
   a. salt   b. salty   c. spicy   d. small
3. Where do you have to put your hands when you .... CPR ?
   a. prepare   b. make   c. perform   d. act
4. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your ....
   a. muscle   b. cell   c. surface   d. lungs
5. You aren't late. You .... hurry.
   a. had to   b. don't have to   c. didn't have to   d. have to
6. In next week's programme, we .... to a famous scientist.
   a. talk   b. will be talking   c. talking   d. have talked
7. There was food at my friend's party, so I .... eat before I went there.
   a. mustn't   b. didn't have to   c. had to   d. don't have to
8. Did you know that Indian food is one of the .... food in UK ?
   a. most popular   b. poor   c. best popular   d. popular
9. COVID-19 can spread in crowded places, so we should be careful to avoid ....
   a. protection   b. injection   c. infection   d. perfection
10. This is the .... book I have ever read; I learned so much about athletes' hearts.
    a. least valuable   b. most valuable   c. much valuable   d. more valuable
11. All King Lear wanted was to keep the .... of King.
    a. inheritance   b. promotion   c. address   d. title
12. Travelling by plane is .... expensive than travelling by train.
    a. many more   b. much   c. much more   d. a lot
13. We must look for more .... solutions that involve producing a wider variety of food.
    a. unavailable   b. sustainable   c. traditional   d. insupportable
14. I think my brother .... this mobile phone most.
    a. going to like   b. is liked   c. will like   d. has liked
15. She felt .... for getting angry, so she apologised to her sister.
    a. guilty   b. fond   c. proud   d. capable
16. We can't go to the club this evening; we .... for Amr's birthday party.
    a. will be preparing   b. had to prepare   c. going to prepare   d. won't prepare

2 **Choose the correct answers :**

Last Saturday was an exciting **(1) occasion/tradition** because we celebrated my grandfather's 80^{th} birthday ! All the family got **(2) out/together**, so there were 30 of us! My grandfather's daughters (my mother and aunts) cooked a special meal and I helped to **(3) celebrate/serve** the food to everyone at the party. In my **(4) conclusion/opinion**, it was the **(5) better/best** meal I've ever eaten! You must see the photos that I took on my phone! I **(6) will/was** show them to you when we meet

3 **Translate the following into Arabic :**

The immune system is made of the cells and organs in our bodies working together to protect us from infections and diseases. The immune system keeps us healthy because people with strong immune systems get ill less often.

....

....

4 **Translate the following into English.**

الكل يخطئ لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أخطائه المختلفة. التعلم من الأخطاء ، مهارة علينا جميعًا اكتسابها ، فمن لا يتعلم من أخطائه لا ينجح أبدًا.

....

....

5 **Read the text and answer the questions :**

What do you have to give to a plant in your home ? Most people would say food, water and light. However, an Englishman did an experiment and he found that you only have to give a plant sunlight for it to grow. In 1960, David Lattimer put a plant inside a large glass bottle with a little soil. In 1972, he gave the plant some water, then he closed the bottle. He has not opened the bottle since that time, and years later, the plant is still growing inside the bottle. The plant, which is in David Latimer's house, needs light form a nearby window, but nothing else. He doesn't have to water it or give it food. The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air. This means that the plant can use the water to survive. The plant's food source is its old leaves, which the water in the bottle helps to recycle. The plant is now more than 50 years old and it will continue growing inside the bottle for many more years.
Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space. The plants will be a sustainable food source, and they will also help to take pollution from the air of a spaceship.

1. What does David Latimer give to his plant every day ?
   a. some water b. food and water c. old leaves d. nothing
2. When did David Latimer last open the glass bottle ?
   a. 1960 b. 50 years ago c. 1972 d. last year
3. What does the plant need from outside the bottle ?
   a. light b. water c. oxygen d. leaves

4. In the future, this plant will ....

a. go into space
b. become a food source
c. continue growing
d. take pollution from the air

5. How was the plant able to live inside the glass bottle ? ....

6. Why are scientists interested in this plant ? ....

7. How might plants like this help people in space ? ....

8. Suggest two other things that can replace traditional food types. ....

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write an essay to describe a dish that has a great deal of popularity in Egypt but is not Egyptian. Why do people eat it ?
2. White a short story about an emergency. What did the people have to do and why ?

....

Practice Exercises 2

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. CPR is a famous ....
   a. abbreviation b. acronym c. word d. punctuation
2. Ali .... what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.
   a. misunderstood b. deceived c. ruined d. fell out with
3. They have just .... the timetable, so we know these train times are correct ?
   a. upgrade b. got into c. solved d. updated
4. Mr Omar is a .... man. He always gives us the right advice.
   a. well-known b. wise c. wealthy d. wild
5. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you .... me!
   a. could phone b. should have phoned c. should phone d. would have phoned
6. The teacher told the students .... their books at page 150.
   a. to open b. open c. you open d. opening
7. I .... send the report to the General Manager, he needed it urgently.
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. had to d. didn't have to
8. My brother would have been a doctor if he .... his exams.
   a. passed b. would pass c. had passed d. pass

9. .... are used to express emotions in electronic messages.
a. Abbreviations b. Emojis c. Keys d. Symbols

10. I wish I .... that food yesterday; I got very sick from it.
a. had eaten b. didn't eat c. hadn't eaten d. won't eat

11. Don't .... files from the internet unless you are sure they are safe.
a. upload b. download c. overload d. load

12. I'm so sorry; if I .... free time, I'd have met you yesterday.
a. had had b. had been c. would have d. hadn't had

13. Samir is very busy. He has an enormous .... of papers on his desk.
a. bell b. bill c. pile d. ball

14. The airline .... postpone the flight to Rome yesterday because of the bad weather conditions.
a. has to b. had to c. doesn't have to d. didn't have to

15. He .... me to help him because he was in trouble.
a. begged b. made c. apologised d. insisted

16. They are happy; they .... be having a nice time.
a. are meaning to b. supposed to c. seem to d. won't

2 Choose the correct answers :

If it **(1) can/was** not for technology, language **(2) have/would** probably be very different today. New inventions **(3) meant/seem** to get their names from old words, or from the innovator who made them. For example, if you ask for a biro, someone **(4) to/will give** you a type of pen that gets its name from Laszlo Biro, who invented it **(5) Do/If** you want to clean the carpet, yo might hover it And the verb hoover also comes from an innovator, William Hoover. So, if you must to have your name on an important product, **(6) became/become** an innovator!

3 Translate the following into Arabic :

All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

....

....

4 Translate the following into English.

لقد تأثر سوق العمل والاقتصاد العالمى كثيرًا فى كل أنحاء العالم بجائحة كورونا، حيث تضررت العمالة اليومية وظهرت العديد من الوظائف التى تؤدى من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الإنترنت.

....

....



Read the text and answer the questions :

Last year, my friend Hesham and I derided to visit an old friend called Adam. We had first met Adam at Cairo. University, but we lost touch with him when he moved to Thessalonian in the north of Greece. I had always wanted to see Athens and so Hesham agreed to spend a few days there before we went to meet our friend. We decided to use an old guidebook of the city that my cousin, Sami, had given to me. It was supposed to be the best guide to the city. It seemed to be very detailed and it had a lot of maps. At the time, I didn't realise that it had been more then fifteen years since my cousin last visited Athens. If we had known hat his book had been written in 2003, we wouldn't have used it ! It told us to avoid a lot of **hazardous** places in the city, so we did. Adam later told us that those areas were fantastic. We should have realised that a lot of changes had been made to the city for the 2004 Olympic Games. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved. If we had known about them, we would have gone to see those areas for ourselves.

When we left Adam, he gave us an up-to-date and reliable new guide to Greece, which we used to visit some of the islands. You could also read it online and download maps and updates. It was fantastic ! If I went travelling again, I would definitely use an up-to-date guide.

1. Why didn't Hesham and the writer keep in touch with Adam?
   - a. They fell out him
   - b. He went to a different school
   - c. He lived in a different country
   - d. He spoke a different language
2. What did the writer first think of the guidebook his cousin gave him?
   - a. It seemed to be good.
   - b. He did not trust it
   - c. It was very old
   - d. It was new and reliable.
3. Why did the writer and Hesham not visit some parts of Athens?
   - a. Adam ordered them not to go there
   - b. The Olympic Games were happening.
   - c. The guidebook did not recommend them.
   - d. They did not have time.
4. How did they get information to travel around the islands?
   - a. from an online guide
   - b. from an ebook
   - c. from a guide that Adam wrote
   - d. from a man who knew the islands
5. What had changed in Athens since 2003 ?
6. What do you think the word **"hazardous"** in the text mean ?
7. What do you think the writer learnt from his trip to Greece ?
8. What problems do you think online guides might have?

6 **Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :**

1. Write a blog about your life so far. What are your wishes and regrets ?
2. You receive an email from an uncle advising you how to use social media well. Report what your uncle told you to a friend.

Practice Exercises 3

1 **Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :**

1. Firefighters have to .... quickly when there is an emergency.
   a. sigh b. divide c. persuade d. react
2. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a .... ?
   a. sword b. post c. torch d. frown
3. If you are rude to someone, you should ....
   a. apologise b. perform c. shelter d. deceive
4. In their game, some of the children .... to be animals.
   a. rewarded b. did c. pretended d. looked
5. You .... sit on that wall. It is dangerous
   a. mustn't b. don't have to c. must d. had to
6. The students all feel .... now that the exams have finished.
   a. the happiest b. happier c. more happy d. happiest
7. In the future, I think we .... electric cars.
   a. drive b. be driving c. will be driving d. are driving
8. Ahmed feels ill and wishes he .... eaten so' many sweets.
   a. hasn't b. didn't c. won't d. hadn't
9. The teacher asked students to cooperate together to .... a certain task.
   a. form b. reform c. perform d. inform
10. The Athletic Heart Center .... have the best technology to check athletes' hearts.
    a. must b. had to c. doesn't have to d. needn't
11. There will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050, so we will have to increase food .... by about 70 percent.
    a. reduction b. protection c. production d. construction
12. Mohamed Abdelwahab .... to be very healthy before having a heart attack in 2006.
    a. meant b. supposed c. seemed d. known
13. Messaging language isn't suitable in .... emails
    a. informal b. friendly c. formal d. forming
14. I was locked .... my house; I had left my keys at work.
    a. in b. out of c. out d. into

15. We are going to .... today because my father was promoted!

a. compete b. complete c. celebrate d. construct

16. Shehab travelled by train, even though he .... by car. He thought it would be safer.

a. had to travel b. has to travel

c. could have travelled d. couldn't have travelled

2 Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the verbs :

My cousin Haytham lives in the far west of Egypt, and he visited our house for the first time last year. One day, we had a picnic near a canal and he told me he wanted to explore the area. I would have **(1)** .... (go) with him, but I was tired. When we saw him swimming in the canal, we **(2)** .... (tell) him to get out quickly! If we had known that he **(3)** .... (want) to swim, we would have stopped him. The next day, he **(4)** .... (get) quite ill. I **(5)** .... (wish) I had told him not to swim in the canal. However, he **(6)** .... (seem) to understand that he had made a mistake. They do not have big canals in his part of Egypt, so Haytham didn't know that it is not safe to swim in them. Luckily, he is better now!

3 Translate the following into Arabic :

The world is experiencing a lot of epidemics, such as COVID-19. Maintaining personal hygiene in this case is a must, not a luxury anymore.

4 Translate the following into English.

يُعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. لذلك توفر الدولة كل سبل الدعم لتمكن الطلاب من المشاركة بفاعلية.

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

When you learn English, you should remember that languages are always changing. New words and phrases will appear and sometimes old words start to have new meanings. If you want to be really effective at learning a language, it is important to know about these new words. A list is published online every year. For example, unfriend is a new verb that is used when you stop being friends with someone on social media. The phrase fake news was added to dictionaries in 2019 after many false stories stared to appear on social media. The phrase social distancing was first used in 2020 during the health emergency and it means keeping away from other people. The German word uber has recently been used in informal English to mean' very successful' adding to the many other foreign words used in English, such as café (from French) and the small motorbike called a moped (from Swedish).

You might wish that English followed the example of the Portuguese language to make spelling easier. Portugal and Brazil both speak the same language, but the Portugyese recently changed the spelling of many words to follow to same rules that they use in Brazil because they are much easier. At the moment, however, if you learn English in many parts of the world, you usually have to learn the British English spellings, which can be more difficult than American English spellings.

1. It is important to .... changes to the English language.
   a. be aware of
   b. take control of
   c. be tempted by
   d. bring back
2. You can use the verb "unfriend" when you want to stop .... friends on social media
   a. losing touch with
   b. keeping in touch with
   c. subscribing to
   d. uploading
3. The German word uber is an example of ....
   a. an informal use of an old word
   b. a new informal word in English
   c. a foreign word used by successful people
   d. a very common word in English
4. They changed the spelling of Portuguese because they wanted it to be ....
   a. like English
   b. the same as the American spelling
   c. more traditional
   d. easier
5. Why were phrases such as "fake news" and "social distancing" added to dictionaries recently ?
6. What has not changed about the English language, according to the article ?
7. Why do you think English uses words from other languages ?
8. Do you think people should change the rules of a language to make it easier to learn? Why/Why not ?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write an essay to persuade a friend of yours of how important it is to stay safe and healthy.
2. Write a summary of King Lear or any other play you like.

1. Answers of Homework Exercises

إجابات تدريبات الواجب المنزلي



Exercises on Vocabulary

1. c. infection
2. b. virus
3. d. bleeding
4. a. organ
5. c. boost
6. d. cell
7. a. infected
8. b. immune system
9. b. react
10. a. technique

Exercises on Structures

1. a. has to
2. c. mustn't
3. b. don't have to
4. d. b & c
5. d. mustn't
6. a. must
7. d. a & c
8. b. mustn't
9. c. must
10. c. have to



Exercises on Vocabulary

1. b. amount
2. a. simple
3. c. celebrated
4. a. occasion
5. d. complicated
6. d. prepare
7. d. extract
8. b. traditional
9. a. serve
10. c. chopsticks

Exercises on Structures

1. d. less busy
2. b. harder
3. c. the worst
4. a. largest
5. d. b & c
6. c. some
7. a. smoking
8. b. better
9. d. age
10. c. a & b



Exercises on Vocabulary

1. b. agriculture
2. c. sustainable
3. d. livestock
4. a. crop
5. c. production
6. b. innovation
7. d. variety
8. a. source
9. b. vegetarian
10. d. b & c

Exercises on Structures

1. a. will have
2. c. will see
3. a. finish
4. d. am walking
5. c. are going to have
6. b. will be eating
7. a. will probably work
8. a. is going to be
9. a. won't leave
10. b. is going to



Exercises on Vocabulary

1. b. informal
2. d. innovator
3. a. selfie
4. c. necessarily
5. d. misunderstand
6. b. frowned
7. c. abbreviation
8. a. tone
9. b. linguist
10. d. emoji

Exercises on Structures

1. d. shouldn't
2. b. couldn't
3. a. could
4. c. should
5. d. shouldn't
6. c. should
7. c. should
8. d. shouldn't
9. a. could
10. b. couldn't
11. c. should
12. a. could



Exercises on Vocabulary

1. c. follower
2. b. post
3. d. b & c
4. a. subscribe
5. b. consult
6. b. upload
7. d. take down
8. c. update
9. c. upgrade
10. d. adapt

Exercises on Structures

1. a. to cook
2. c. to be cooked
3. d. to be
4. b. wasn't supposed
5. a. didn't suppose
6. a. to call
7. c. to be having
8. d. to leave
9. d. seemed
10. b. seems



Exercises on Vocabulary

1. b. mean
2. a. fire
3. d. b & c
4. c. a & b
5. a. mean
6. b. piles
7. c. sigh
8. d. beg
9. a. fallen out
10. b. hung out

Exercises on Structures

1. d. wouldn't have had
2. c. had cared
3. a. might get
4. a. die
5. c. missed
6. b. would buy
7. a. fall
8. c. would be
9. b. hadn't taken
10. b. wouldn't waste

2. Answers to Al-Azhar Exercises

٢. إجابات تدريبات الأزهر

Unit 1

I Vocabulary

1. boasts ⟶ boosts
2. microbe ⟶ virus
3. mute ⟶ immune
4. sell ⟶ cell
5. origin ⟶ organ

II Language

1. need to ⟶ don't need to
2. has ⟶ have
3. mustn't ⟶ must
4. must ⟶ mustn't
5. mightn't ⟶ mustn't

Rewrite

1. You must avoid those mistakes.
2. We mustn't park here.
3. You must drive slowly.
4. You mustn't take photos in the Egyptian Museum.
5. Does he have to attend the party?

Unit 2

I Vocabulary

1. arsenal ⟶ personal
2. accelerating ⟶ celebrating
3. repair ⟶ prepare
4. introduces ⟶ serves
5. in ⟶ out

II Language

1. best ⟶ good
2. less ⟶ least
3. colder ⟶ cold
4. coldest ⟶ the coldest
5. tall ⟶ height

Rewrite

1. Ali is as tall as Ahmed.
2. No other mountain in the world is as high as Everest.
3. No other history teacher I have met is better than him.
4. His marks are worse than other students' marks at school.
5. Nobody in class go as good marks as his.

Unit 3

I Vocabulary

1. corps ⟶ crops
2. pollution ⟶ production
3. Farming ⟶ Agriculture
4. lifestock ⟶ livestock
5. ground ⟶ earth

II Language

1. Do ⟶ Will
2. had prepared ⟶ prepared / have prepared
3. had told ⟶ tell / have told
4. are having ⟶ have
5. will spend ⟶ are spending

Rewrite

1. My father has just promised to buy me a computer if I succeed.
2. He is going to travel abroad.
3. He threatens to cut off the electric current if I don't pay the bill.
4. I've decided to decorate my flat.
5. I'm giving my wedding party next week.



Unit 4

I Vocabulary

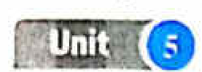
1. ton ⟶ tone
2. format ⟶ formal
3. necessary ⟶ necessarily
4. elevator ⟶ innovator
5. brown ⟶ frown

II Language

1. he ⟶ him
2. to ⟶ not to
3. have hurt ⟶ have been hurt
4. played ⟶ playing
5. must ⟶ could

Rewrite

1. I shouldn't have wasted my time.
2. He is supposed to be here soon.
3. You shouldn't have got up late.
4. I should be travelling on the train to Cairo, but the train had left before I reached the station five minutes ago.
5. He could have solved the problem, but he didn't.



I Vocabulary

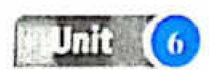
1. reliant ⟶ reliable
2. adopt ⟶ adapt
3. viewing ⟶ views
4. out-of-date ⟶ up-to-date
5. followers ⟶ following

II Language

1. working ⟶ to work
2. have walked ⟶ be walking
3. work ⟶ have worked
4. is seeming ⟶ seems
5. seems to be taller ⟶ seems taller

Rewrite

1. I am supposed to be home by midnight.
2. Were we supposed to be here so early ?
3. This topic isn't what we're supposed to be discussing.
4. The weather was supposed to be sunny.
5. It seems as if Rokaya is happy these days.



I Vocabulary

1. main ⟶ mean
2. pales ⟶ piles
3. off ⟶ on
4. on ⟶ into
5. at ⟶ back

II Language

1. If ⟶ Unless
2. would have played ⟶ would play
3. be ⟶ have been
4. 'd have ⟶ had
5. will ⟶ would

Rewrite

1. If he had worked hard, he wouldn't have failed.
2. Unless he had accepted bribes, he wouldn't have been put in prison.
3. If Adel hadn't left his coat at home, he wouldn't have caught cold.
4. If you had done enough revision, you would have done very well in the test.
5. Had Reem had enough practice, she wouldn't have lost her tennis match.

Islamic Selections

Chapter (4) Fasting

1. Fasting is the fourth pillar of Islam.
2. For the faithful. So that they may be pious.
3. The should have their hearts fed and their souls vitalized.
4. More than 14 centuries ago in Al-Qadr Night.
5. He/She would get pleased and hopeful when they know that both fasting and the Holy Quran will mediate for them on the Day of Resurrection.

Chapter (5) Pilgrimage

1. a neonatal status.
2. They go to Blessed Mecca.
3. They come on foot and mounted.
4. Prayer in the Holy Mosque in Blessed Mecca equals one hundred thousand prayers.
5. It shows that all Muslims of the world are but one unified family whose members sympathize with one another.

3. Answers of Accumulative Exams

Test (1) based on Units 1 & 2

Vocabulary & Structures

1. c	2. b	3. d	4. a
5. c	6. a	7. c	8. b
9. b	10. d	11. a	12. a
13. d	14. c	15. d	16. b

Reading & Critical thinking

17. a.	18. c.	19. c.	20. d.

21. It is sometimes wise to tell a person what they want to hear. It is intelligent to get out safe from difficult situations.
22. I think wealth symbolizes everything good. poverty, on the other hand, symbolizes everything bad.
23. Yes, I think so. He asked wealth to get in and he asked poverty to stand outside.
24. I think he is wise and intelligent. He acted wisely with both wealth and poverty.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

الحفاظ على المياه يعني استخدام موارد المياه بحكمه في فعل أشياء مفيدة. هذا مهم لأنه يحافظ على المياه نقية ويساعدنا في حماية البيئة.

26. Translate into English :

Before taking important decisions, negotiate their advantages and disadvantages that will help you make the best decision possible.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (2) based on Units 3 & 4

Vocabulary & Structures

1. b	2. a	3. c	4. b
5. a	6. d	7. b	8. a
9. a	10. c	11. d	12. b
13. d	14. d	15. a	16. a

Reading & Critical thinking

17. a	18. b	19. a	20. d

21. If I were a leader, I would be cooperative, sensible and decisive I think by this I can lead my group well and achieve too much.
22. I'm for it as teamwork makes it easy to achieve our targets.
23. I think they are losers and don't deserve to be leaders. Selfishness is a bad quality. The leader should be selfless not selfish.
24. Yes, I agree. As a leader should have the qualities that enable him / her to be so.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

يحب الناس أو يكرهوا لأفعالهم وتصرفاتهم (سلوكهم)، البعض منهم أمناء وأكفاء لذلك هم محترمون ومحبوبين من الجميع. الأخرين غير أمناء وأنانيين ولذلك هم مكروهين.

26. Translate into English :

Education is not an end but a means to an end. In other words, we don't educate our children for just education, our purpose is to fit them for practical life to be good citizens who can serve their country when they grow up.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (3) based on Units 5 & 6

Vocabulary & Structures

1. a	2. c	3. b	4. d
5. b	6. a	7. d	8. a
9. b	10. c	11. a	12. d
13. c	14. b	15. d	16. a

Reading & Critical thinking

17. a	18. d	19. b	20. b

21. He is talkative and boring. Of course, I don't want to be like him.
22. It would be fantastic to spend my holiday in a seaside town to be able to enjoy swimming in the sea or maybe dicing.
23. I think travelling by trains is more comfortable than travelling by cars, particularly if it is a long distance.
24. Yes, I think so. Having an attractive behaviour makes people love your company.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

إن الاختيار أن تكون قائدًا ليس بالاختيار السهل ولا يوجد دائمًا طريقًا سهلًا. يجب أن يكون لديك بعض السمات وأن تعمل عليها. تعلم أن تكون متفائلًا، صبورًا، عقلانيًا، متسامحًا ومتفهمًا.

26. Translate into English :

Punctuality is a necessary habit in all affairs of a civilized society. Without it, nothing could ever be brought to a conclusion. Every thing would be in a state of chaos and confusion / disorder.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (4) based on Units 1, 2 & 3

Vocabulary & Structures

1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b
5. b	6. d	7. c	8. b
9. a	10. c	11. d	12. b
13. a	14. c	15. b	16. d

Reading & Critical thinking

17. c	18. c	19. b	20. a

21. Yes, to avoid them and to know how to protect the earth from them.
22. No, I don't agree. We must know the secrets of the universe. That must be useful to life on the earth.
23. Yes, to be an astronaut will give me a chance to explore the unknown space.
24. It might destroy a big part of the earth. I think space scientists make some kind of explosion on its way if the meteor is coming towards the earth to change it and be away from the earth.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

تلعب الرياضة والألعاب دورًا هامًا في بناء جسد المرء وشخصيته، وهي أيضا وسيلة فعالة لاكتساب فضائل كثيرة مثل التعاون، والتضحية بالنفس والانضباط ومن خلال الألعاب الرياضية يجد الشباب متنفسًا لطاقاتهم، ويمكن حمايتهم من الانحراف.

26. Translate into English :

Fighting terrorism is a religious and national duty, all heavenly religions reject terrorism, so the war which the state wages against terrorism requires everyone participation to uproot this dangerous plague.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (5) based on Units 4, 5 & 6

Vocabulary & Structures

1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a
5. c	6. b	7. b	8. c
9. b	10. c	11. b	12. d
13. a	14. d	15. a	16. c

Reading & Critical thinking

17. c	18. a	16. c	20. c

21. Yes, I think so because it describes an embarrassing situation.
22. No, I wouldn't call the police as it might be accidentally not on purpose.
23. I would apologize for the lady because I was the one who had made the mistake and I'd try to explain the situation to her.
24. I prefer traditional shopping because I can check what I'm going to buy before buying it.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

لتكون مواطن صالح هذا يتطلب الكثير من السلوك الحضارى مثل مساعدة الناس وقت الحاجة. تخيل أنك فى مكانهم الا تحب أن يقف الآخرون بجانبك ؟

26. Translate into English :

It is important to have your own personal opinion and to decide what should or shouldn't be done. One's being influential lies in the strength of one's personality. There are situations where you need to be strict and decisive. Never forget that only dead fish swim with the stream.

Writing

27. student's own answer



ENGLISH

2nd SEC

Model Tests for

The first Term Exam

اللغة الإنجليزية

الصف الثانى الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الترم الأول

طبقًا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٢

Model Tests

Model Test 1

Part 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When fertile land always produces good crops, it is ....
   a. negative b. cooperative c. productive d. selective
2. It's polite to use formal language with people we don't know. Another word for "formal" is ....
   a. sociable b. official c. artificial d. special
3. A good journalist must .... his sources before writing any news.
   a. create b. repair c. fix d. check
4. A small part of a play which happens in one place means a /an ....
   a. activist b. chapter c. act d. scene
5. When his car broke down, he .... walk a long distance looking for a mechanic.
   a. had to b. needn't have c. didn't have to d. has to
6. No girl is .... Nourhan in the class.
   a. the fastest b. faster than c. as faster d. faster as
7. I think the English exam .... easy this year.
   a. is going to be b. is c. is being d. will be
8. "What .... when you were seven?" My teacher said to me.
   a. could you do b. you could do c. you can do d. can you do
9. **Mother:** You .... to tidy your bedroom. I tidied it for you.
   Son : Thank you, mum.
   a. must b. needn't c. don't have d. have to
10. .... if your car had broken down in the high way?
    a. What you would have done b. What would you have done
    c. What have you would done d. What would have you done
11. It seemed .... the teacher was tired during the lecture.
    a. as b. such c. though d. like

12. He got .... marks in this exam, so he was very happy.
    a. the best b. the worst c. worse than d. the better
13. It's clear that COVID 19 .... bad effects on all the countries around the world.
    a. needs b. has c. gives d. takes
14. When you invent a password for a safe or a mobile, it should consist of special .... as numbers, symbols or letters.
    a. acts b. scenes c. events d. characters
15. The detective asked the boy to .... the people who kidnapped his sister.
    a. arrest b. describe c. forget d. inspire
16. A / An .... means official name of a job.
    a. attendant b. address c. nickname d. title
17. At libraries, people .... speak quietly.
    a. must b. don't have to c. need d. needn't
18. .... I have enough time, I'll visit you.
    a. Unless b. Should c. Had d. Were
19. Jana's training course .... at five tomorrow.
    a. starts b. is starting c. will start d. is going to start
20. It seemed .... me as if the head teacher wouldn't accept my apology.
    a. by b. of c. off d. to

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most people worry about forgetting things as they get older. But do you know that we have different kinds of memory? What most people think of as memory is, in fact, five different **categories** of memory. Remembering things from the past depends on two categories of memory, remote and recent memory. If you can't remember things about your last birthday, you are having a problem with your remote memory. If you can't remember what you ate for lunch yesterday, that is a problem with your recent memory.

When we take a test, we need to draw on our semantic memories. That is the sum of our acquired knowledge. Or maybe we want to remember to do or use something in the future. Here we use our immediate and prospective memories. Many people think that developing a bad memory is inevitable as we get older, but this is actually not correct. Of our five kinds of memory, immediate, remote, and prospective do not degrade with age.

To have good memories, we need to do some activities like learning new things or even doing crossword puzzles. Regular physical activity is useful to have a better blood supply to the brain. The only thing to avoid is stress. When we are stressed, our bodies release a hormone called cortisol, which is harmful to our brain cells and our memories. Reducing stress through meditation, exercise, or other activities can help to preserve our mental abilities.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Which category of memory would you use to remember where your car keys are?
   a. Recent memory. b. Immediate memory.
   c. Remote memory. d. Semantic memory.
22. The synonym of the underlined word **"categories"** is ....
   a. events b. facts c. hormones d. kinds
23. The main topic of this passage is ....
   a. Types of human memory b. Functions of brain chemicals
   c. Tricks for remembering things d. How to stay active and healthy
24. Which of the following would positively affect your memory?
   a. Watching TV b. Producing cortisol c. Stretching d. Working a lot
25. We need to do some activities like doing crossword puzzles to have good ....
   a. hearts b. brains c. memories d. technologies
26. Remembering things from the past depends on .... and recent memory.
   a. near b. distant c. immediate d. late
27. Regular .... activity helps to have a better blood supply to the brain.
   a. medical b. technological c. mental d. physical
28. Cortisol is a/an .... which harms our brain cells and our memories.
   a. exercise b. enzyme c. hormone d. cell

Part 3

29. **Translate into Arabic :**

People are liked or disliked for their deeds and behaviour, some are honest and efficient, so they are respected and loved by all. Others are dishonest and selfish, so they are hated.

....

....

30. **Translate into English :**

لا يأتـى النجـاح صدفـة أو بالحـظ وبدون بذل مجهود . لكنه يأتى نتيجة لمجهـود وصبر وتخطيط جيد وتحديد واضح للهدف المراد تحقيقه وتعاون فريق العمل.

....

....

31. **Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :**

Do you think that writers play an important role in our modern life? Who are favourite writers or novelists and why?

....

....

Model Tests

Model Test 2

Part 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. One of the most important tasks for a farmer is to .... livestock.
   a. kill b. keep c. find d. rise
2. People should .... their parents when they become old.
   a. avoid b. look after c. look for d. take part in
3. My mother's cake is very delicious. The synonym of the word "delicious" is ....
   a. tasteless b. tasty c. painless d. crazy
4. Despite its danger effects which are the main reason for the global warming phenomenon, some countries .... cutting down trees.
   a. bring b. neglect c. avoid d. keep
5. Being .... is a bad quality of this player.
   a. cruel b. kind c. cheerful d. tolerant
6. A / An .... is a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre.
   a. incident b. play c. story d. action
7. No girl is more brilliant than Eman. This means that ....
   a. Eman is the more brilliant girl b. All girls are as brilliant as Eman
   c. Many girls are more brilliant than Eman d. Eman is the most brilliant girl
8. Adham asked me .... I had enough money to buy that mobile.
   a. to b. not to c. if d. that
9. Look out! You .... your mobile in water.
   a. are going to drop b. will drop
   c. drop d. will have dropped
10. He didn't mean to hit your car. This means that ....
    a. he intended to hit it b. he didn't intend to hit it
    c. he didn't hit it d. he doesn't intend to hit it
11. It is healthy to drink much water in hot and sunny days. You .... do it.
    a. have to b. should c. shouldn't d. don't have to

12. If it hadn't been for the bad weather, they'd have............ early.
    a. reaching   b. to reached   c. been reaching   d. reached
13. The repairs .... tomorrow. It's arranged.
    a. are doing   b. will do
    c. are being done   d. are going to do
14. The more you exercise, ... you are.
    a. the fatter   b. the fattest   c. the fitter   d. the fittest
15. Do you think your reasons to fight with your colleague are............ ?
    a. sociable   b. social   c. logical   d. traditional
16. This winter is severe, so you must be careful. The antonym of the word "severe" here is ....
    a. difficult   b. harmful   c. painful   d. gentle
17. If you want to .... any noise, go out of here now. I want to read a novel.
    a. make   b. save   c. have   d. speak
18. The money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died means ....
    a. intelligence   b. violence   c. inheritance   d. confidence
19. Security rules .... or you will be fined.
    a. have to be following   b. needn't be followed
    c. have to be followed   d. shouldn't be followed
20. Oliver Twist is one of .... interesting novel I've ever read.
    a. the more   b. the most   c. more   d. most

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Would you believe that your diet can make a big difference in keeping a youthful appearance? According to a scientific theory, our bodies start aging because of oxidation. This is caused by certain oxygen-containing molecules in our cells, called free radicals.

Free radicals have the capability to attach to and damage parts of our cells, including our DNA. Our bodies have the ability to repair this damage. However, as we get older, these repair mechanisms start to break down, resulting in signs of aging, such as wrinkles. Free radicals are actually produced by our bodies, but their numbers can also increase because of the food we eat. So, we should avoid eating foods that produce more free radicals and eat foods that contain vitamins which help produce molecules called antioxidants that reduce the production of free radicals.

Common antioxidants, like vitamins A and E, can be found in many dark-colored vegetables as carrots, seaweed, spinach, and broccoli. Also, Fruits like apricots and peaches. These nutrients strengthen your skin and make it soft. Also you can eat cow's liver which contains a lot of vitamin A.

Green tea has also been tentatively added to the list of youth promoting substances although we still don't know much about it. It is said that green tea's antioxidant properties can repair cell damage already sustained as well as prevent damage in the future. In fact, green tea works even better if you apply it directly to your skin as an ingredient in facial cream.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. To keep healthy and have a youthful appearance, we should ....
    a. avoid eating vegetables and fruits
    b. eat dark vegetables only all the time
    c. eat food which contain more free radicals
    d. avoid eating foods with more free radicals
22. What kinds of vegetables contain a lot of vitamin A?
    a. Tasty vegetables. b. Dark vegetables. c. Green ones. d. All of them.
23. What is the main idea of the passage?
    a. Our bodies old-aged. b. Carrots are good for us.
    c. Food affects aging. d. We should use facial cream.
24. Which of the following can summarise the third paragraph?
    a. Which foods can contain vitamins A and E?
    b. When can we eat vitamin A and E?
    c. How can our bodies produce vitamins A and E?
    d. How can we waste vitamins A and E?
25. Green tea works better as a/an .... in facial cream if you apply it directly to your skin.
    a. recipe b. ingredient c. containing d. container
26. .... reduce the production of free radicals.
    a. Oxidants b. Antioxidants c. Nutrients d. Fruits
27. According to science, our bodies start .... because of oxidation.
    a. aging b. death c. damage d. vitamins
28. The cow's .... contains a lot of vitamin A.
    a. seaweed b. kidney c. heart d. liver

Part 3

29. **Translate into Arabic :**

Population problem doesn't mean the same for all the countries, some countries suffer from overpopulation. However, other countries suffer from lack of population and encourage immigration to them.

....

....

30. **Translate into English :**

لـم يعـد التعليـم معتمدًا علـى الطرق التقليدية للتعلم مثل الحفـظ، ولم يعد المدرس المصدر الوحيـد فى الفصل. بل أصبح الطالب مطالبًا بالبحث والمعلم ميسر.

....

....

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :**

Modern technology affects our behaviour and life.
How do you think it does ? How can we adapt to this ?

....

Model Tests

Model Test 3

Part 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you say something .... by mistake, you'd better apologise at once.
   a. kind b. rude c. polite d. well
2. I trust him because he is ....
   a. guilty b. rude c. wise d. mad
3. One of my favourite hobbies is to .... online.
   a. score b. match c. goal d. game
4. Good people are always friendly .... other people.
   a. at b. for c. with d. against
5. The new team leader chose his men according to their .... to him.
   a. cruelty b. loyalty c. possibility d. dishonesty
6. A fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions means a /an ....
   a. child b. toddler c. adult d. infant
7. I asked him what .... have a new identification card.
   a. do I have to do to b. I have to do to
   c. have I do to do d. I do have to
8. Mohamed Salah is Egypt's .... player nowadays.
   a. best b. the best c. better d. the better
9. I will watch a film at the cinema tonight. It .... at nine o'clock.
   a. will start b. is going to start c. is starting d. starts
10. The criminal threatened the old woman .... him all her money or he'll kill her.
    a. to giving b. to give c. give d. giving
11. You have a long school day tomorrow, so you .... stay up late.
    a. have to b. needn't to c. mustn't d. should
12. If you .... late again, you won't be allowed to attend the lecture.
    a. come b. came c. had come d. coming

13. There .... some boys playing in my garden yesterday.
    a. seemed to be b. seemed to being c. seeming to be d. seem to being
14. Hany and Hala are twins. Hany is .... as Hala.
    a. as older b. older as c. as old d. old as
15. Do you know a word that .... the opposite meaning of "hospitality"?
    a. sends b. forgives c. takes d. gives
16. Thanks to modern technology, you can do many things at the touch ....
    a button.
    a. of b. by c. about d. for
17. You must .... away all your bad ideas towards him. He is an honest man.
    a. give b. escape c. run d. get
18. To use violence to try to hurt or kill someone means to ....
    a. attach b. adapt c. attract d. attack
19. It's not allowed to smoke at hospitals. We .... smoke.
    a. have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. ought to
20. This quiz is the most difficult quiz this term. This means that ....
    a. No quiz is more easier than this quiz
    b. This quiz isn't as difficult as any other quizzes
    c. No quiz is as easy as this quiz
    d. This is quiz is less difficult than any other quizzes

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Are you preparing for a big test? If so, you may want to go and play some basketball between hitting the books. Researchers see an apparent connection between exercise and brain development. According to Judy Cameron, a researcher at Oregon Health and Science University, it seems that exercise can make blood vessels, including those in the brain, stronger and more fully developed. Cameron claims this allows people who exercise to concentrate better.

The effects of exercise on brain development can even be seen in babies. Babies who do things that require a lot of movement and physical activity show greater brain development than babies who are less physically active. Margaret Barnes, a pediatrician, believes in the importance of exercise. She thinks that many learning disabilities children have in elementary school or high school can be traced back to a lack of movement as babies. "Babies need movement that stimulates and connects

their five senses," says Barnes. In this way, as they get older, children will begin to associate physical activity with higher learning."

The benefits of exercise on the brain are not just for babies. Older people can beef up their brains by working out as well. Researchers at Cornell University studied a group of seniors ranging in age from seventy to seventy-nine. Their study showed a short-term memory increase of up to forty percent after exercising just three hours a week. The exercise does not have to be very difficult, but it has to increase the heart rate.

Also, just like the **motion** for infants, exercise for older people should involve some complexity. Learning some new skills or motions, such as with yoga or tai-chi, helps open up memory paths in the brain that may not have been used for a long time. The main goal is to increase the brain's flow of blood. Your brain can benefit from as little as two to three hours of exercise a week.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Why is yoga recommended for seniors?
   a. It is easy on joints.
   b. It does not increase the heart rate.
   c. It can be done in groups.
   d. It includes learning new motions.
22. Which of the following sentences can summarize the passage?
   a. Exercise helps our brains.
   b. We should exercise individually.
   c. We should pass our tests.
   d. Our brains change our exercise.
23. What type of patient does a pediatrician probably treat?
   a. Poor people
   b. Children
   c. Animals
   d. Old people
24. According to the passage, what is the connection between exercise and brain development?
   a. Exercise makes us less intelligent.
   b. The brain needs special mental exercise.
   c. The more exercise, the bigger the brain.
   d. Physical exercise helps think better.
25. According to the passage, people who exercise .... better.
   a. concentrate
   b. eat
   c. drive
   d. sleep
26. The word **"motion"** can be replaced by ....
   a. complexity
   b. movement
   c. exercise
   d. flexibility

27. Margaret Barnes says babies need movement that .... and connects their five senses.
    a. thinks b. disconnects c. motivates d. moves
28. Babies who show greater brain development .... a lot.
    a. stay b. move c. drive d. ride

Part 3

29. Translate into Arabic :

Personal hobbies are vital for the health and time of individuals in modern societies. Hobbies help them satisfy their desires and get rid of the pressures of heavy work.

....

....

30. Translate into English :

قدمـت المـرأة المصريـة العديد من النماذج الرائعة علـى مدار التاريخ فى كثيرًا من المجالات، فنجد لطفية النادى كأول امرأة تلتحق بمدرسة الطيران ونبوية موسى كأول ناظرة لمدرسة مصرية.

....

....

31. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

Do you think that scientific research is a waste of money and time?

....